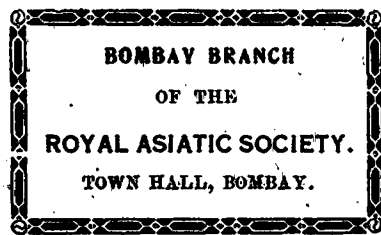




00031873



85-
AN



A B R I D G M E N T

OF

UNIVERSAL HISTORY,

31873

BY

THE REV. E. W. WHITAKER,

RECTOR OF ST. MILDRED'S AND ALL SAINTS, CANTERBURY.

IN FOUR VOLUMES.

VOL. III.

LONDON:

PRINTED FOR THE AUTHOR;

BY T. C. HANSARD, PETERBOROUGH COURT, FLEET STREET;

AND SOLD BY F., C., AND J. RIVINGTON, ST. PAUL'S CHURCH-YARD;

AND

J. HATCHARD, PICCADILLY.

1817.

22. a. 7

g o o

Whi / P

31873



00031873

C O N T E N T S.

VOL. III.

SEVENTH PERIOD, or that of Apostacy; containing eleven hundred and fifty-seven years.

	<i>page</i>
<i>Preliminary Observations</i>	1
CHAP. I. <i>Transactions in Europe during the Seventh Century</i>	9
CHAP. II. <i>Transactions in Europe during the Eighth Century</i>	35
CHAP. III. <i>Transactions in Europe during the Ninth Century</i>	63
CHAP. IV. <i>Transactions in Europe during the Tenth Century</i>	90
CHAP. V. <i>The History of Europe during the Eleventh Century</i>	128
CHAP. VI. <i>The History of Europe during the Twelfth Century</i>	172
CHAP. VII. <i>The History of Europe during the Thirteenth Century</i>	219
CHAP. VIII. <i>The History of Europe during the Fourteenth Century</i>	273
CHAP. IX. <i>The History of Europe during the Fifteenth Century</i>	347
CHAP. X. <i>The History of Europe during the Sixteenth Century</i>	425

UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

VOLUME THIRD.

SEVENTH PERIOD,

OR

THAT OF APOSTACY;

CONTAINING ELEVEN HUNDRED AND FIFTY-SEVEN YEARS.

Preliminary Observations.

THE attentive reader of this History can but have noticed the very depraved state of religion and morals, into which what had been the Roman empire had sunk at the close of the last period; the very wide departure which those who called themselves Christians had made both in worship and in life from the purity of the Gospel doctrine; how corrupt the clergy, who should have taught that doctrine, were become, and consequently, how imperfectly instructed in the real principles of Christianity must have been their converts from among the barbarians. And when he recollects, that it was the doctrine of human salvation that was first preached by the Lord, and confirmed to the nations by those who heard Him, God also bearing witness to the truth of their report by signs and wonders, and divers miracles, and gifts of the Holy Ghost, which had thus suffered in the hands of those to whom it was entrusted, he will not wonder, that a

PRELIMINARY
OBSERVATIONS
~~~~~  
SEVENTH  
PERIOD.

The leading  
characteris-  
tick of this  
period.

punishment correspondent to its offence was inflicted on apostate Christendom; or that to the idolatry, from which the professors of the Gospel had made it their boast that they had cleansed themselves and the world, returning in another shape, they were again given up, and the great Champion of that idolatry, the bishop of Rome, was permitted to acquire a despotick power over the Church. It is the great apostacy from the real doctrine of Christ conducted by that prelate, which forms the leading characteristick of the period, on the history of which we are now entering; and the disturbed state of the world, and of Europe in particular, of which so much has been already stated, and more yet remains to be told, and under the troubles of which the empire of ancient Rome had sunk, had been in the sacred writings, by its proper emblem the sea, represented as that out of which this revived power rose again.\* A more convincing proof of the reality of Divine inspiration cannot in reason be demanded, nay, cannot in fact be conceived, than the accurate delineation, more than five centuries previous to its appearance, of a power so peculiar in its nature as the papal. Let any man consider with himself, what but the divine fore-knowledge could possibly intimate to the prophetick writers, that the Roman empire would be succeeded by a power professedly Christian, and which should assume the government of the Church, claiming to rule it by Divine authority? yet such particulars are undeniably specified by the Apostles Paul and John. Or, to take a more enlarged view of these very interesting facts, whence but from Divine revelation could three natives of Asia, Daniel, Paul, and John, imbibe an idea, that Europe would, to the grand consummation of all things, prove the leading quarter of the world; yet such have they indicated it should be.†

---

\* See the Commentary on the Revelation, ch. 13.

† I am not unaware, that I here assume, what has of late years been much controverted; but with how little reason, five minutes attention will demonstrate to the reader: this assumption is, that under the emblem of "the little horn" in the seventh chapter of Daniel, and that of "the seven-headed beast" in the Revelation, the same power is pre-signified. In proof of which, let it be considered, first, that powers which end at the same time, and have the same duration, must begin at the same time; secondly, that powers which begin and end at the same time must be cotem-

Whence but from the same source could the first of these learn, that the time of the end would be marked by the increase of research and of knowledge, as is declared in the fourth verse of his last chapter? in which too, if, as may be perhaps justly inferred, an allusion be made to the vast extension of navigation and commerce in these last ages, the manifestation of the continuance of the great characteristic of the sons of Japhet in colonization, has not been passed unnoticed by this prophet: but however that be, to the increase of knowledge on the subjects of revelation the passage now referred to certainly relates. And, what a burst of light have the researches of modern divines, and with happiness are we able to say, particularly those of the Church of England, thrown on the prophetick Scriptures! By the labours of one in particular, the illustrious Joseph Mede, have the arrangements of the wonderfull book of the Revelation been explained to us, by the discoveries of which we are admitted, as it were, behind the scenes of this great theatre, and see the characters mentioned in it performing those parts which it was from the beginning intimated they should act. Thus the Being of whom, as stated in a very early part of this History, it had been declared, that he should bruise the heel of the promised seed, is revealed, in the predictions relating to the latter part of the period just closed, as continuing the persecution of the followers of the Saviour, which he had prompted the heathen emperours to perpetrate, by exciting those troubles which arose after paganism was dethroned, and the seat of empire was removed from Rome to Constantinople, but not with the success he wished. Since the barbarians, whom the remaining pagans endeavoured to prejudice against the Christians, as having brought down on the world the judgments which it then suffered,

---

porary; and thirdly, that two powers cannot hold the supremacy over the same body at the same time. Yet the little horn in Daniel, and the seven-headed beast in the Apocalypse, are both announced as to continue until the coming of the Lord, while the continuance of each in authority is specified to be twelve hundred and sixty years; they are therefore represented as cotemporary. But it is said of each, that it shall have the saints in subjection; and as these cannot be in undisputed subjection, as this is represented to be, to two powers at the same time, it is evident, that the power spoken of by the Prophet and Evangelist must be the same.

instead of endeavouring to exterminate, became professors of Christianity. Although such was the system of doctrines then propagated under this name, that the true Church is represented, like Elijah, when all Israel but seven thousand had bowed their knees to Baal, as flying into the wilderness, there to be nourished by Divine Providence for a specified time. Enraged at this, the adversary is represented as devolving his power on that emblematical wild beast, which rising from the sea of troubles existing in the Western world, should attain, under a former form of government revived, not only a pontifical but a dictatorial power over the nations. That such authorities have actually been exercised by the bishops of Rome, the reader will in the subsequent pages find sufficiently proved, and it is to be hoped, not without awakening his mind to the conclusive evidence of divine communication, afforded by the veracity with which has been predicted a domination so very peculiar as that which the popes have both claimed and possessed over the Christian world; and not less, too, by the accuracy with which the success of the disciples of Mahomet has been predicted, and the very singular circumstance foretold, that his doctrine should be propagated by the swords of two different nations successively, the prosperous periods of whose arms are accurately defined. Though the fury of the above-mentioned instruments of Divine justice has been for some time suspended or spent, yet are we plainly warned by the same writers that foretold their appearance, that the cup of wrath is not yet exhausted, but that a woe, an exterminating woe, will at the appointed, and that, it is manifest, no very distant time, overtake those who, though He has thus made bare His holy arm, know not God, and obey not the Gospel of Christ. Long ago, possibly, had the measure of the iniquity of Christendom been full, had not a partial reformation in the Church taken place. Neither was this left unnoticed by the spirit of prophecy; and it particularly claims the reader's attention, that the account of the effects of that reformation which is given in the predictions, is more correct than the representations made of it by Protestants themselves. Indisputably, viewed in themselves, beyond all estimate great are the benefits which flowed from the Reformation; it rescued from oblivion the real truths of the

Gospel, which were nearly forgotten among men ; it served as a republication of them for the consideration and instruction of those to whom they had not before been fairly propounded ; it produced some little amendment even in that church which excommunicated those who endeavoured to purify their doctrine and their worship from the corruptions that had been introduced, and replace them on the apostolick model ; and among these last it gave free access to all the just reasoning, all the sublime prospects, all the pure and righteous morality of the Gospel, and made known all the consolations of truth, and the inestimable comfort of trusting in that Arm alone which is able to save. Yet in too glowing colours have its consequences been sometimes mentioned ; for in fact its prevalence was limited in space, and partial in operation. While its principles have been distorted to the introduction of the most unrestrained licentiousness in argument, and the most shameless breach of the injunctions laid upon Christians not to think highly of themselves, but to reverence those who are set over them in the Lord, and to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. The scene of disorder and of trial which has thus been produced, was intimated in the prophecy by the declaration of those being blessed, who should from the close of the Reformation die in the Lord, because they would rest from their labours, and find their reward in another state ; and the reader will, in the period of this History on which we are entering, discern ample cause for deeming their struggle severe, who would now preserve their faith pure, and their consciences undefiled.

PRELIMINARY  
OBSERVATIONS  
~~~~~  
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Geography.

No part of science has received greater improvement since the beginning of the seventh century, than geography. For some of this we are indebted to zeal for the propagation of religious doctrine, but for much more to thirst for empire, and the love of gain. The application of the polar quality of the magnet to the mariner's compass, took, as it were, the shackles off from navigation, and not only facilitated the sailor's passage from point to point, but rendered it more secure ; and by providing a guide over the trackless deep, prepared for those voyages of discovery which have detected another continent, and made us acquainted with almost all the regions of the globe. Political negotiations between nation and nation, individual curiosity,

PRELIMINARY
OBSERVATIONS—
~~~~~  
SEVENTH  
PERIOD.

---

Prevalent  
empires.

military expeditions, and mercantile speculation, have increased our knowledge of the interior of both continents, while the improvement of mathematical delineation, has supplied the means of disseminating the knowledge acquired, with ease and accuracy, and to any extent.

The fluctuation of empire in the leading quarter of the world has not been great for the last twelve centuries. In Western Europe, when by the reduction of the weaker tribes of barbarians, which had broken into the empire, under the arms of their more powerful neighbours, the great states became once formed, no one grew so eminent as to subdue the rest, though partial and transitory conquests have taken place. Yet in the Eastern part of this division of the earth, the overwhelming power of the Turks swept away the remaining portion of the ancient Roman empire. But in Asia more violent have been the revolutions. The conquests of the Saracens, the Turks, and of Tamerlane, have in their turns astonished the world by their rapidity and their extent: while farther East other conquerors have signalized their names by successful wars. Still the permanency of the Ottoman sway, and the number of kings in Christendom during the following period, never having varied much from the round one of ten, are circumstances which more especially claim the reader's attention, as having taken place in perfect correspondence with the prophecies.

Commerce.

During the troubles and confusion that pervaded the whole of the Roman empire for some centuries, we hear little of the enterprising spirit of commerce; the first people who signalized themselves in its revival were the Venetians, who trading to the Levant, by which alone when the Saracens had got possession of Egypt was a communication preserved with India, whether by the northern route, or through the Persian Gulf, acquired that opulence which in time rendered them a people of so much influence in Europe. Yet in a very early part of this period had the northern nations commenced those fisheries, which have since been increased to an object of so much importance. Ere the Venetian commerce rose to its greatest height, by their gaining permission of the Saracens to trade to Egypt and to Syria, the Genoese had embarked in the same trade, but could not support a rivalry with the former republic: while

other Italian states, and particularly that of Pisa, rose to great eminence in trade. As Christianity and civilization spread in Europe, commercial intercourse naturally increased between the nations: their mariners improving in skill, and consequently becoming more adventurous. While the trading cities vied with each other in pursuing those measures which they thought most conducive to the support and extension of their commerce. At length the discovery of a passage by sea to India and the coasts of the East, and that of the existence of a Western continent, opened a field to commercial speculation, on which the nations of Europe have contested, quarrelled, and fought ever since.

PRELIMINARY  
OBSERVATIONS  
~~~~~  
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

As the extension of commerce produced wealth, the possession of this last gave occasion to the encouragement of arts and of science; and where the former first revived, there the latter first began to flourish anew, in the friendly soil of Italy. But slow was the progress, and confined the possession of knowledge, until the very important invention of printing occurred. This discovery, with that of the mariner's compass, are two particulars which distinguish the period on which we are now entering, beyond all others that have gone before it in the importance of their consequences; but the utility of the former would have been much confined, had it not been preceded by the invention of paper. By the co-operation of the three, the stock of human knowledge is not only greatly augmented, but the information gained is rapidly diffused, and by the multiplied copies of works more securely preserved.

Arts and
sciences.

Happy would it be for mankind if their advancement in knowledge had been accompanied with an adequate improvement in morals. But, what the Reformation did excepted, neither their reverence for that Being, the Volume of Whose Works has been in these last centuries so much more widely spread before them, their attention to His moral dispensations, their devotion to His Will, or compliance with His directions for their own improvement, have corresponded with the testimonies they have received of His government of the world, or with the warnings He has, and does yet give

Morals.

them, that the day in which He will judge, is rapidly approaching; until in our own time, such is the apostasy from the faith of His Gospel, such the practical atheism exhibited, that the real Christian may well hope, that future historians will not have the occurrences of a very long course of years to add to those, which are in this Compilation laid before the reader.

MARE FIGURÆ ET CRONICUM
CUM RE MORINARUM A.D. 1700

EUROPE,

As known to the
A.V. 1700.

English Miles
0 100 200 300

Hypocenters of 1700



Longitude East 20 from Greenwich 25

London Published by J. Knapton, at the Sign of the Gunpowder, in St. Pauls Church-yard.

1700

CHAPTER I.

Transactions in Europe during the seventh Century.

IT not being consistent with the purposed brevity of this Work separately to trace the history of the several fragments into which the Roman empire was broken, a new arrangement must now be followed in the course of narration ; and to render this as compendious as possible, the story of each quarter of the world will be told after the order in which it is usual in this part of the earth to enumerate them ; Europe, Asia, Africa, and America : and still further to secure perspicuity, the occurrences requisite to be noticed in each will be related under the centuries in which they took place. To begin then with Europe : the reader has seen the bishops of Rome brought by the embroiled situation of publick affairs to act in some measure in a political capacity. The respect paid to them as prelates of the metropolis of the world seems long so to have inflamed their spiritual pride, as to excite them to aim at the universal rule of the Church. In this, however, they had met with powerfull opponents and rivals in the bishops of Constantinople. But though at one period these last appeared to triumph, and even assumed the title of universal bishops (still not in the absolute sense in which the bishops of Rome charged them with taking it), the Roman prelates, at length, by taking advantage of various favourable circumstances, carried the prize of precedency ; and, as has been stated, Boniface the third hesitated not to take, and, it is asserted, under an imperial grant from Phocas, the title of universal bishop ; thus first introducing the papal

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Transactions
in the Eastern
empire.

A. D. 606.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 529.

supremacy. In their support and extension of which they met with most zealous and effectual assistance from a monastick order, first established early in the fifth century by Benedict of Nursia, a man, for the age in which he lived, of piety and good fame, whose institution at length absorbed all the other religious societies. But this ecclesiastical supremacy was not followed by independent temporal power for more than a century; for the attainment of this last was gradually acquired in the successive reigns of several emperours. The execrable Phocas, instead of protecting his empire against the Persians, who had under Cosrhoes over-run Syria, Palæstine, and Phœnicia, and, defeating the troops sent against them, advanced into Galatia and Paphlagonia, raged with such cruelty against his own subjects as to excite the fears of Priscus, to whom he had given his daughter in marriage, for his own safety, and who therefore entered into a conspiracy that was carrying on by Heraclius, governour of Africa, whose son the following year assuming the title of emperour, sailed with a very powerfull fleet to Constantinople, where he totally defeated that of Phocas; who was pursued by a party of his own soldiers, taken, and delivered up to Heraclius, who had him put to a death, which, though he deserved it, did not proclaim the mercy of his conquerour; for he was slain piece-meal: his reign had continued seven years. Heraclius was now proclaimed and crowned: he was of a noble family in Cappadocia, majestick in person, and of military reputation. The joy of the people on their change of sovereign, was alloyed by advices of the success of the Persians, who ravaged the Roman territories uncontrouled both this and the following year, returning home loaded with booty, and with a multitude of captives. The offers of peace which Heraclius made being rejected by them, another irruption gave to the Persians the city of Jerusalem; where they committed cruelties not easily paralleled. The same year Heraclius celebrated an incestuous marriage with his brother's daughter. Such conduct did not promise to secure the Divine protection; and the next year the Persians not only over-ran Egypt, but, having plundered Alexandria, advanced unopposed into Africa as far as Carthage; but being unable to reduce that city, returned home with the spoils of the several provinces through which they had

A. D. 610.

passed. Heraclius, sensible of his inability to meet the enemy, offered to accept the terms of peace which Cosrhoes should dictate; but receiving only an insolent and most impious answer, he roused himself to the adoption of vigorous measures, and by several successful consequent campaigns drove Cosrhoes back into Persia, who there fell by the hands of his own eldest son, and the parricide immediately concluded a peace with Heraclius on terms both advantageous and honourable to the last, by which he recovered all the provinces which Cosrhoes had seized. Five years after this, the Saracens broke into Palæstine, and with an uninterrupted course of victory proceeded to make themselves masters of Damascus and Phœnicia. By one body Egypt was menaced, but submitting to a tribute, during three years that that was paid, the country was left unmolested: but when the governour that Heraclius sent thither refused any longer to pay it, the Saracens invaded the country, put him to flight, and separated from the empire Egypt, which had been subject to it from the reign of Augustus. Egypt being thus reduced, the then caliph, Omar, sent the forces which had conquered it into Syria, of which province and Antioch its capital in the course of two years they became masters: while Omar himself marched without opposition to Jerusalem, and took it after a two years siege. While the richest and most beautiful provinces of the empire were thus torn from it, Heraclius's attention seemed to be absorbed by captious questions in religion and publick festivals: at length, when he had reigned thirty years and some months, he died of a dropsy. He was succeeded by his son Constantine, who reigned only seven months, being, it was supposed, poisoned by his step-mother Martina, to make room for her own son Heracleonas, who was accordingly proclaimed, and crowned with the usual solemnity. But he had reigned scarcely six months, when the senate rebelling, deposed him, and having most cruelly cut off his nose, and pulled out his mother's tongue, sent them both into exile: after which they raised to the throne Constans, the son of Constantine the third. Few were the occurrences of the early part of this prince's reign: in the third year of it the Saracens reduced Africa, and in the following, the islands of Cyprus, Aradus, and Rhodes; and in the mean time another body of them ravaged Arme-

A. D. 632.

A. D. 641.

A. D. 642.

nia, while the emperour, like his grandfather, was employed at Constantinople in religious disputation. His contemptible negligence encouraged the Saracen general Moawiyah to make an attempt on Constantinople itself, but this was prevented by the exertions of two Greeks, who contrived to burn the fleet he had prepared in Phœnicia. Moawiyah with admirable expedition fitted out another fleet, with which he defeated that of Constans, commanded by himself in person: who escaping in disguise to Constantinople, thence to retrieve his reputation marched in the following year against the Sclavi, who had seized on the country from them since denominated Sclavonia, and from which, though he repeatedly defeated, he could not expell them. The Saracens being now induced by internal divisions to solicit a peace, the indolent emperour readily ceded to them the many provinces they had seized, on condition of their paying to him and his successors an annual tribute of a thousand nummi, an horse and a slave. Constans having become jealous of the esteem which the people manifested for his brother Theodosius, first caused him to take holy orders, and then to be murdered. After this, tormented with remorse, and unable to remain where he was, he conceived the idea of removing the seat of empire into Sicily; but in this being counteracted, he wandered like a second Cain, and from the misery he suffered, became an object of compassion to his bitterest enemies: while he took the opportunity of a war between the Franks and Lombards, to fit out a powerfull fleet, and, landing at Tarentum, take several cities in Italy from the last. But when besieging Beneventum, Grimoald, duke of that place, having gained a signal victory over the Franks, marched to the relief of it; on which Constans hastily raised the siege, and retired to Naples. Soon after this, the loss of twenty thousand Romans, entirely cut off by the son of Grimoald, inducing the emperour to lay aside all thoughts of dispossessing the Lombards of what they held in Italy, he entered Rome in great pomp, and having stripped that city of its greatest rarities to send them to Constantinople, he returned into Sicily. Here committing the most enormous exactions, and plundering even the churches, he rendered himself so odious and contemptible to all his subjects, that one of them murdered him while in a bath, in the

twenty-seventh year of his reign. When his death was known, the people of Syracuse proclaimed one Mezizius, an Armenian, and that solely for the fineness of his person : but no sooner had advice of this promotion reached Constantinople, than Constantine, the son of the deceased emperour, rapidly equipped a fleet and sailed to Sicily, where having defeated, taken, and put to death the usurper, he caused himself to be proclaimed emperour. On his return from Sicily, where he seems to have remained some time, he was received at Constantinople with great acclamations. But being soon pressed to take his two brothers as partners of his throne, he put to death the authors of the request, and most barbarously endeavoured to incapacitate the two princes from reigning, by having their noses cut off. The following year the Saracens made a descent on Sicily, plundered Syracuse, and ravaged the whole island. In the year six hundred and seventy-two, a swarm of the same locusts entered Thrace, and laid siege to Constantinople itself ; but so firmly were they received by Constantine, who had reformed both the army and the court, that they retired in the autumn, yet returned in the spring, and continued so to do for some years. Wonderfull was the number of men lost by the Saracens in this protracted siege, and many were their ships consumed by the famous Greek fire, invented by one Callinicus of Heliopolis in Egypt, which burnt under water. These losses induced them at length to abandon the siege ; in returning from which their fleet was shipwrecked. About the same time a numerous body of them suffered a severe defeat from the imperial lieutenants in Syria, in which their commander lost thirty thousand of his men. These reverses of the fortunes of the Saracens, encouraged the Maronites to seize on Mount Libanus, and there fortify themselves ; when being joined by multitudes of Christian captives, they reduced the whole country between Mount Taurus and Jerusalem, and by frequent incursions into Syria so harassed the Saracens, that Moawiyah not thinking himself able to contend with them and the emperour at the same time, concluded a truce for thirty years with the last, on condition, that the Saracens should retain the provinces which they had seized, and pay a yearly tribute of three thousand pounds weight of gold, fifty slaves, and as many choice horses. Scarcely was this treaty

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

concluded, when the Bulgarians, leaving their native seats on the banks of the Volga or Bulga, advanced as far as the Danube, and passing that river unopposed, entered the imperial territories to the number of an hundred thousand, ravaged all the country which they passed, and defeating a considerable army sent against them, the emperor chose rather to engage to pay them an annual pension, than pursue an expensive and uncertain war. Being thus free from all wars, the emperor turned his exertions to procure peace to the Church, assembling with this view the sixth general Council, which was opened at Constantinople on the twenty-second of November, six hundred and eighty. In this the doctrine of the Monothelites being condemned, tranquillity was in great measure restored to the Church. The remainder of his reign Constantine passed in peace; and in the year six hundred and eighty died of a lingering disorder, after he had reigned seventeen years and some months. Constantine was succeeded by his son Justinian, then but sixteen: he unwarily entered into an engagement against the Maronites, and incapacitated that people for molesting the Saracens for some time. He next unjustly attacked the Bulgarians, but by them he was worsted: but being attended with better success against the Sclavi, he hence took courage to break the truce with the Saracens, who had given him no cause of complaint, and was very justly defeated by them: when returning to Constantinople, between the measures he took, and the men he employed, he rendered himself so odious to the people, that Leontius, a patrician, and commander of some forces then going into Greece, was very easily persuaded to seize the empire; and being readily supported by the people, Justinian was seized, deprived of his nose, and banished to Chersona; having reigned nine years. In the beginning of the reign of Leontius, the truce with the Saracens having been broken by Justinian, that people continued hostilities, and the emperor's officers in Africa having precipitately abandoned that country, through dread of being called to account for their conduct, they prevailed on their troops to revolt, and proclaim Apsimar, one of their generals, emperor. This faithful subject readily accepted the imperial dignity, and repairing immediately to Constantinople, surprised the city, took Leontius prisoner, and having

deprived him of his nose, confined him in Dalmatia, after he had reigned scarcely three years. Apsimar, who was afterward called Tiberius, having thus mounted the throne, pursued the war against the Saracens with various success: but in the fifth year of his reign, the deposed Justinian having escaped from the place of his exile, on his arrival at the court of Trebelis, king of the Bulgarians, was entertained very magnificently by that prince, who accompanied him with a powerfull army to Constantinople, into which in three days he by a particular incident obtained entrance, when Tiberius fled with his treasures, and left Justinian the second once more master of the empire. The restored monarch not only loaded the Bulgarian king with presents, but bestowed on him some additional territory. But now leaving this worthless prince to shew how little improvement adversity had wrought in him, let the reader turn his attention to what was passing during the same century in another part of Europe.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 698.

History of
Italy during
this century.

Italy during this century continued divided between the Lombards and imperialists, and in general exhibited a scene of commotions and bloodshed. Agisulf, who at the commencement of it was on the throne of the Lombards, declared his son Aldaluald, an infant, his colleague: after which the Hunns made an irruption into the dukedom of Friuli, and by treachery made themselves masters of its metropolis, then Forum Julii. In Ravenna at the same time the populace, enraged at the additional taxes he had imposed, rose and murdered the exarch. This season of anarchy the duke of Naples seized to render himself independent of the emperour, but his effort ended in his own execution. During these disturbances, Agilulf died in the twenty-fifth year of his reign, being the first king of the Lombards who had embraced the Catholick faith. His example being followed by great numbers of his subjects, the inhabitants of Italy became less averse to them, and their government more tolerable. Adaluald, already mentioned, succeeded his father Agilulf, during whose reign the Lombards enjoyed profound tranquillity. But in the exarchate of Eleutherius, that exarch elated with his success against the rebellious duke of Naples, and encouraged by the distance of the emperour, and his engagements with the Saracens, formed the purpose of assuming the crown of Italy; but when this

A. D. 616.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 626.

A. D. 638.

was seen to be his intention, his troops preserving their fidelity to the emperor sent his head to Constantinople; and Isaaccius, a foreigner, was by Heraclius appointed exarch. In the eighth year of Adalwald's reign, great disturbances were raised in the kingdom of Lombardy by the treachery of an ambassador from Heraclius, which terminated in the deposition of the king, and the exaltation to that throne of Ariovald, duke of Turin, who had married his sister: soon after which Adalwald died. The new king passed a reign of peace, except some domestick disturbances caused by the nefarious villainy of one of the lords of his court: nor did Ariovald long survive these. On his death the nobles not agreeing as to a successor, they determined, as had been done on a former occasion, to receive for a sovereign whomever Gundeberg, his widow, should select for an husband; when she made choice of Rotharis, duke of Brescia, who was in every respect equal to the station, but tainted with the impious doctrines of Arius. He was the first sovereign who gave the Lombards written laws: these, to the number of three hundred and eighty-six, he enacted with the consent of his nobles in a general diet holden in Pavia, in the year six hundred and forty-three. Neither is this prince's reign memorable solely for his laws, for to these he added conquests; reducing under his power the province of the Cottian Alps, with several cities in that of Venetia, belonging to the Romans, and afterwards totally defeating the exarch; which victory put an end to hostilities between the imperialists and the Lombards for more than a century. About this time the governour of Rome, Mauritius, yielded to the temptation afforded by the distracted state of the empire, to usurp the sovereignty of that city, but his revolt was quelled by the measures taken by the exarch Isaaccius, and himself put to death. Isaaccius dying soon after this, Theodorus Calliopa was sent to succeed him, who filled the office with great applause for seven years, when Olympius was appointed. By this officer the Saracens were expelled Sicily, but the fatigue of that expedition wore him out, and he died in the third year of his exarchate; when Theodorus was again sent into Italy. Rotharis king of the Lombards died after a reign of sixteen years, in which he gained the reputation of the most illustrious prince of his age. He was succeeded by his

A. D. 653.

son Rodoald, who had reigned scarcely one year, when he was slain by a Lombard, whose wife he had debauched. As he died without issue, the Lombards elected for their sovereign Aripert, the son of Gundoald, who reigned at most nine years, though some reduce his reign to five. At his death he weakly divided his kingdom between his two sons, who soon quarrelling, Grimoald duke of Benevento, at the persuasion of a treacherous ambassador sent him by the youngest of them, took advantage of their difference ; and having been led by further treachery of the same ambassador to kill one and seize his kingdom, he drove the other into banishment, and was then himself unanimously proclaimed king of the Lombards. To establish himself more firmly in his throne, he married Gundebert, sister to the two unhappy young princes : but Partharit, the survivor of them, finding himself at length obliged to throw himself on the generosity of Grimoald, was by him kindly received, and permitted to reside in Pavia, when the attention shewn him by the Lombards excited the jealousy of the king ; to avoid whose purpose of putting him to death he fled into France ; and so deeply was Clotaire the third affected by his misfortunes, that in the following year he sent a powerfull army into Italy to replace him on the throne, which Grimoald contrived to destroy by the employment of a very old stratagem. The king of the Lombards had not been long freed from this war, when Constans the second made the expedition into Italy which has been already mentioned ; after the miscarriage of which the Lombards reduced all the region now known by the name of *Terra d'Otranto*. Grimoald's attention was next attracted by the revolt of the duke of Friuli, for the reduction of whom he employed Chagan, king of the Hunns ; which prince, after having, with the loss of many men, accomplished his task, refused to evacuate the country he had conquered, when Grimoald marched against him in person, and so terrified him by a stratagem, that he retired in great fear to his own dominions. About this time one of the princes of the Bulgarians entered Italy with a body of his countrymen, and offering his service to Grimoald, had several cities allotted to him and his followers in the dukedom of Benevento. The king of Lombardy being now at rest from war, reviewed the code of laws enacted by Rotharis, and, making the

A. D. 662.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 672.

alterations requisite in it, published a new edict. Grimoald having given these proofs of his fitness for his station, was suddenly carried off by an accident of the orifice of a vein in which he had been bleeding; opening again, when he died through loss of blood. Grimoald, though educated in them, renounced the errors of Arius, and his successors following his example, that heresy was soon forsaken by the whole nation of the Lombards. His kingdom he bequeathed to his youngest son Garibald, but he enjoyed it not long; for Partharit, hearing in Gaul of the death of his rival, hastened into Italy, and being joyfully received by great numbers of the Lombards, he advanced to Pavia, where he was received by the inhabitants and great men of the nation as their sovereign, Garibald having withdrawn to his brother in Benevento, after a short reign of three months. Partharit having reigned alone in great tranquillity for eight years, took his son Cunipert for his colleague, and reigned with him ten years more. During their joint reign Alachis, duke of Trent, assumed the title of king of the Lombards; but his revolt was quickly quelled by Partharit, and he himself, at the request of Cunipert, the king's son, both received into favour, and created duke of Brescia. Some time after Partharit died, leaving behind him the character of a pious, just, and beneficent sovereign. Three years previous to this demise of the crown of Lombardy, Deodorus Calliopa the exarch was recalled, and one John sent to govern the imperial dominions in Italy. Alachis, now duke of Trent and Brescia, no sooner heard of the decease of Partharit, than, with the usual gratitude of a malefactor, he resolved to drive Cunipert from the throne and occupy it himself; and having assumed some associates into his conspiracy, in the absence of Cunipert, he seized on the palace of Pavia, and assumed the royal title. Cunipert, unprovided for resistance, fled, and fortified himself in an island in the Lake Larius, now that of Como. But the usurper's tyrannical conduct soon changed the scene; the city of Pavia was seized in his absence, and Cunipert replaced in his palace. Alachis then retreated into Istria, and raised an army, with which attacking that of the king, he was slain, and his troops were put to flight, and almost totally destroyed. After the suppression of this rebellion, Cunipert lived in great tranquillity until the year seven hundred and three.

A. D. 689.

The history of France was last suspended when Theodobert was on the throne of Austrasia, and Thierri his brother on that of Burgundy. A difference arising between these princes, they appealed to arms, and in the second engagement between them Theodobert was taken prisoner, and after being treated with the utmost inhumanity by his brother, and having his son Meroveus, though a child, put to death, he was himself slain by the orders of his grandmother Brunehaut. The conquerour himself, however, did not long survive; for having determined to turn his arms against Clotaire, king of Soissons, hoping by the defeat of him to become master of all France, he was, on his march to attack him, seized with a dysentery, of which he died in a few days, having reigned sixteen years. On this event Clotaire advanced with his army, and Brunehaut, who had caused Sigebert the eldest of Thierri's four sons to be proclaimed king, was on his approach deserted by the nobility of both Austrasia and Burgundy, and herself, with Thierri's four sons, betrayed into the hands of Clotaire, by whose order two of the last were put to death, a third was carried away, and never afterwards seen; and the fourth, to whom Clotaire himself had been sponsor, was bred up as a private man; while Brunehaut was publicly executed, by being tied to the tail of an unbroken horse. Clotaire was now master of the whole empire of the Franks, and for the government of it he appointed three mayors of the palace, who from this time became a kind of vice-roys. His own conduct as sovereign was mild, carefull, and generous; he applied himself to restraining the licentiousness of his subjects, rather than to the extension of his dominions. He instituted courts in his palace for the determining of pleas, to which he gave also a criminal jurisdiction, and even remitted to them cases of high treason: he permitted the Lombards to redeem their tribute. To his eldest son Dagobert he ceded the chief part of the kingdom of Austrasia, sending him to reside at Metz, and giving him Pepin for the mayor of his palace. The prince so far imitated his father's government, that several barbarous tribes quitted their woods and morasses, and voluntarily submitted to him. But though on his arriving at a proper age his father associated him in the whole government, he made a peremptory demand of all the districts formerly belonging to the

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

History of
France during
this century.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 623.

kingdom of Austrasia. This, though much provoked at the insolence and ingratitude of it, Clotaire referred to the decision of twelve prelates and barons, who assigned to the young king the places most convenient for him, and set aside his claim to all the rest. The duke of Saxony, Bertoalde, having withdrawn his allegiance from Dagobert, invaded Austrasia, at first successfully, but in the end he was defeated and slain by Clotaire; who died soon after this victory, in the forty-fifth year of his age. Dagobert succeeded to the whole of his father's dominions, in prejudice of the claim which his brother Charibert had, by the custom of France, to at least one of his kingdoms; but the latter was obliged to be content with the country between the Loire and the Pyrenees, which Dagobert bestowed on him; when, fixing his residence at Toulouse, he took the title of king of Aquitaine. Though Dagobert discharged well the publick duties of a sovereign, his private life became most profligate, nor was he ashamed to have three queens at once. When his brother the king of Aquitaine died, he took possession of his dominions and treasures, making the children whom he had left victims of his ambition. About this time, through the insolence of an ambassador which Dagobert sent to the king of the Slavonians, a war was kindled with that people; in which the king of France gained neither territory or honour. But the Slavonians continued to make irruptions into his territories; when the Saxons proffered to defend the borders against them, on condition, that the annual tribute of five hundred head of cattle imposed on their own nation by Clotaire the first was remitted, to which Dagobert readily consented: but the crafty barbarians having obtained the release, never performed their contract. To repress the Slavonians, however, a king of Austrasia was named; and in that character Dagobert's son Sigebert, though only three years old, was sent to reside in that kingdom; and having proper officers appointed under him, the inhabitants of it, under the conduct of these, acted so vigorously, that the Slavonians soon refrained from their attacks. The same year another son was born to Dagobert, whom the prelates and nobility of Neustria and Burgundy almost immediately intreated him to declare his successor, as to those two crowns; which he accordingly did, settling the manner

in which his dominions should on his decease be divided between his two sons. The Gascons and Bretons having renewed their incursions into his dominions, the former were quickly by force, and the latter by negociation, brought to renew the ancient treaties, and give hostages for the performance of them. These satisfactory events Dagobert did not long survive ; but died in the thirty-sixth year of his age, and in the tenth of his reign from the death of his father. At this æra the wealth of the kingdom of France was great, and the splendour of the court of Paris was scarcely surpassed in Europe : Clotaire had had a chair of state of massy gold, and Dagobert a throne of the same metal. This last monarch having recommended to his queen Nantilde one of his ministers named *Æga*, as the properest person to direct the affairs of the young king of Burgundy, he was directly appointed mayor of the palace. Soon after, Sigebert king of Austrasia demanding a share of his father's treasure and moveables, a conference, in which the bishop of Cologne and Pepin assisted, was holden, and there one-third of the treasure which the king had acquired since his marriage was assigned to the queen, and the remainder divided between his two sons : this was one of the last acts of Pepin's ministry, who died quickly after. The minority of Sigebert and Clovis gave rise to that extravagant power which was afterwards possessed by the mayors of the palace, and which was partly grounded on the conduct of Pepin and *Æga*, both men of great parts, true piety, and uncorrupted probity. To the former of these succeeded his son Grimoalde, who made his way to that post by the murder of Otho, his rival, and continued to govern the kingdom of Austrasia for something more than either fourteen or sixteen years in the name of Sigebert, who died at Metz recommending his son, named Dagobert, with great tenderness, to the care of Grimoalde. In the mean time Clovis, king of Neustria and Burgundy, though carefully educated, achieved nothing in his reign, but bringing on himself the evil report of the monks of St. Denis, by causing the silver shrines in their monastery to be coined into money to relieve the poor with corn during a dearth. He had by his queen three sons, Clotaire, Childeric, and Thierri. The second of these was during his father's life-time placed upon the throne of Austrasia : for on the decease of

A. D. 638.

A. D. 654.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 660.

Sigebert, Grimoalde did not suffer his son Dagobert to wear the diadem long; and having him shaved, and removed to a distant monastery, advanced his own son Childebert to the throne, under the plea of his having been adopted by Sigebert. On this step application being made by the queen to the court of Clovis, Archambaud, mayor of the palace in Neustria, who was himself allied to the royal family, marched into Austrasia, deposed Childebert, carried away Grimoalde, who soon died in captivity, and placed Childeric, then only three years old, on the throne. Clovis himself did not long survive this event: he is the first of those kings whom the French writers have entitled 'Les Rois Fainéans.' Immediately on the death of his father, Clotaire the third was declared king of Neustria and Burgundy, being about five years old, under the tuition of his mother the queen Batilde, and Ebroin being chosen mayor of the palace. His reign, in which nothing occurred more remarkable than his mother retiring into a monastery, lasted fourteen years, when he died, having lived about nineteen. Ebroin on this occurrence caused Thierri, the third son of Clovis the second, to be proclaimed king; but the nobility, displeased with the administration of Ebroin, rose and drove him to a monastery for security, and forced Thierri into a convent, and to be shaved, and then called Childeric king of Austrasia to the throne. This prince becoming a slave to his passions, and resenting by a gross punishment the representation of some grievances urged by a man of quality named Bodillon, the latter conspired against him, and slew him, his queen, and one of his sons; which threw the kingdom into a wild and bloody anarchy. In the mean time the son of king Sigebert, whom Grimoalde had sent to a monastery in Scotland, had obtained possession of that part of Austrasia which lay beyond the Rhine, and, taking advantage of these confusions, he at length recovered the best part, if not the whole of his father's dominions, over which he ruled under the title of Dagobert the second, but a few years indeed, being treacherously slain by the remnant of the faction of Grimoalde, which in the end exterminated the whole race of Clovis. In a short time after his brother's death, Thierri, who ever since his deposition had lived as a private man in the monastery of St. Denis, mounted the throne; but Ebroin, who

had quitted his monastery, not being restored to the office of mayor of the palace, for some time carried on open hostilities against Thierri, and at length compelled him to accept him in his former place. But behaving in it so tyrannically as to induce the nobility of Austrasia to unite in preventing him from extending his power over that kingdom, they for this purpose elected two powerfull men, named Martin and Pepin, dukes of Austrasia; against whom Ebroin marched, defeated them, and having by treachery got the former into his power, he put him to death: but ere he could again attack Pepin, he himself was assassinated. The nobility of Neustria and Burgundy supplied his place with Waraton, a man of mild disposition, who yet continued the war against Pepin as a rebel to Thierri. At length, however, after two others had successively filled the office, Pepin defeated the king's army, and got possession of both the kingdom and the royal person. The conquerour, who is generally known by the name of Pepin d'Heristal, is said to have been a great captain, a consummate statesman, and of such singular prudence, that he seldom lost a friend, and never made an enemy. He received Thierri and treated him with all possible respect. The last appeared always in state, gave audience to ambassadors, received homage from tributary princes, and was present at all publick solemnities with a pageantry which at once pleased and deceived the people. But Pepin executed all the weighty duties of the sovereign, while he was contented with the title of duke and prince of the Franks. Here, in fact, ended the empire of Clovis, since from this time the Merovingian race were in reality nothing but phantoms of royalty. The sudden and extraordinary alteration wrought by the vigorous and salutary administration of Pepin, in redressing grievances, regulating the finances, and making the laws rule, rendered him so renowned, that ambassadors from the most powerfull states around arrived to pay their compliments to Thierri; who himself survived this change but three years, and then died, leaving two sons, Clovis and Childebert. The eldest of these was proclaimed king, and bore the title about four years, during which Pepin humbled the Frisians and other barbarous nations, who would have shaken off the French yoke. On the demise of Clovis, Childebert was saluted king, and passed the same

A. D. 691.

A. D. 695.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Spain to
the end of
the seventh
century.

inactive life his father led, while Pepin humbled the Alemanni, Bavarians, and other nations. But this reign extending beyond the century, our attention must now be turned to occurrences in Spain.

The history of Spain was suspended in the reign of Witeric, who being disappointed of forming a coalition against Theodoric, king of Burgundy, to revenge the insult offered by that prince to his daughter, became despised by his own subjects, and then suspected of such designs against them, that he was assassinated. On this event, a man of high quality, named Gundemar, one of the chiefs of the malcontents, was elected king, and in the short time he reigned preserved, though by a pension, peace with the Franks, repressed the Gascons and the imperialists, and made some regulations in the Church: he died having reigned not two years. On the demise of Gundemar was chosen Sisebut, who pursued the design of taking from the imperialists what they yet possessed in Spain, and so ably pursued it, that he closed his war with them by a treaty, in which the emperor Heraclius ceded all he possessed on the coast of Spain, except Algarve. The piracies of the Africans being highly vexatious to his subjects, Sisebut next attacked them, and by reducing Tangier, Ceuta, and the adjacent district, he freed his people for a permanency from the injuries to which they were on that side exposed. A sudden death closed the reign of this successful monarch. His son, Reccared the second, was chosen for his successor, though a minor; but surviving his father only a few months, prince Suintila, who had much personal merit, was next placed on the throne. The tranquillity which this monarch established by due execution of the laws, was disturbed by an irruption of the Gascons: these, however, he brought to go most submissively back. Suintila next, partly by force, and partly by persuasion and presents, prevailed on the imperialists to quit the little which they yet had in Spain, and thus became first sole monarch of all that country. The reputation of this prince was now so high, that he easily obtained the consent of the nobility for associating his son Ricimer in the government. But having thus secured all he desired, his prosperity seems to have changed his character, for he became so profligate and oppressive, that his subjects were ready to take the first opportunity of revolting. This was soon

A. D. 610.

A. D. 612.

A. D. 621.

afforded them by Sisenand, then governour of the Visigoths in Gaul ; who having by promises purchased the assistance of Dagobert, king of France, marched into Spain, and there by the treachery of Geilan, Suintila's brother, was proclaimed king of the Visigoths, and Suintila to preserve his life was obliged to retire privately. In the third year of the reign of Sisenand a council was holden at Toledo, in which, among other acts, the deposition of Suintila was publicly confirmed, by declaring him and his children incapable of any publick office. Sisenand reigned somewhat more than five years. After him was raised to the throne Chintila ; the most remarkable transaction in whose reign was the expulsion of the Jews from his dominions, the particular cause of which has not been assigned. In all other respects he passed a reign of uninterrupted peace ; it lasted, however, but four years, when he died greatly regretted. A. D. 636. Regard to the memory of this monarch caused his son Tulga to be chosen for his successor ; but though free from vice, his want of firmness encouraged such disorders in the kingdom, that the nobility quietly put him into a convent, and placed on the throne a man they conceived possessed of the qualities requisite to form a great prince, named Chindasuintho. A. D. 640. These strong measures, however, produced a civil war ; but the new king acted with such vigour, that he at length obliged all the inhabitants of Spain to acknowledge him for their sovereign. About this time appeared at his court a young adventurer from the East, named Ardabasta, who soon became equally a favourite with the king and the people, and whose posterity afterwards ascended the throne. When those severities were over, which the civil war obliged him to exercise, Chindasuintho became by degrees so beloved by his people, that the nobility unanimously consented, that for his relief his son Recesuintho should share with him the regal authority ; after which he survived only three years, being upwards of ninety years of age at his death. Ere this, however, great discontents manifested themselves among those who were displeased at the assumption of Recesuintho into participation of the throne ; and one of these, a man of great quality, named Froja, brought an army of Gascons into the kingdom. This the young king defeated, and adding clemency to the terror of his arms, brought all the malcontents to submit. On the

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 672.

death of his father, Recesuintho held an assembly of the states, in which very various regulations indicative of great justice and moderation in the monarch were made, and from this time his reign was perfectly undisturbed. But his apprehensions from the rapidity of the conquests of the Saracens, added to the weight of the other objects of his attention, reduced him to a bad state of health, and his distemper overcoming the skill of his physicians, he died in the twenty-fourth year of his reign. The succeeding monarch, Wamba, was literally compelled by menaces of death to accept the crown. Soon after whose election the Gascons made an irruption into Spain, Hilderic count of Nismes revolted, and count Paul, who was entrusted with the command of the army sent to reduce him, having entered Narbonne, there got himself crowned king; in which usurpation he was supported by the Franks, and the inhabitants of Catalonia. All these enemies the prudence and fortitude of Wamba with some trouble reduced, when he returned to Toledo in triumph, and there applied himself to the regulation of such disorders as had crept into the church or state. Yet he was not so occupied in this, but that he attended to the defence of the coasts of Spain; and when the Saracens, thinking to crush his fleet, attacked it with their whole naval force, they were after a long and obstinate engagement defeated, losing two hundred and seventy of their vessels. While the attention of Wamba was absorbed by the interests of the kingdom, a son of Ardebasta or Ardabastus, the adventurer already mentioned, named Erviga, eager to obtain the crown, which he hoped to gain on the death of Wamba, too impatient to wait for that event, gave him an intoxicating potion, and while he was under the influence of it, caused him to be shaved and clothed in the habit of a penitent. The king, when he recovered his recollection, preferring the peace of his subjects to every other consideration, recommended by a written document Erviga for his successor, to prevent a civil war; and then peaceably retired into a monastery, where he spent several years in devotion. On Wamba's abdication, Erviga ascended the throne with the consent of the nobility, and quickly assembled a council, in which were passed several laws fitted to calm the minds of the people, and secure the new monarch a tranquil reign. He afterwards mani-

A. D. 680.

fested so much courage and conduct as to ingratiate himself with his subjects, whose affections he left nothing untried to gain. In his reign Spain was afflicted with a severe famine, followed by a destructive pestilence. At length being attacked by a disease that left him little hope of recovery, he thought of regulating his affairs; and began with appointing Egiza, the nephew and heir of king Wamba, his successor; and then, by taking an habit of penitence, abdicated the throne, and soon after died in the eighth year of his reign; his predecessor being living to see circumstances so satisfactory to himself. The succession of Egiza was attended with no difficulty; yet it was not long ere the tranquillity of his reign was disturbed, by a conspiracy formed by Sisebert, the archbishop of Toledo, to cut off the king, queen, and all their children; but this being detected and defeated, the turbulent prelate was deposed by a council, and banished by the king. Another conspiracy formed by the Jews for a general insurrection, occasioned the assembling of another council, in which that people were prohibited from publicly exercising their religion, and it was directed that their children should be taken from them at seven years old to be bred up Christians. The Saracens, who had now conquered the larger part of Mauritania, having a considerable fleet at sea, the Spanish monarch sent one out to guard his coasts under Theodomir, his own son or son-in-law. This was quickly attacked by the Saracens, but a decisive victory was obtained by Theodomir. Some irruptions of the French into the Gallic territories that belonged to the Goths next followed, and after some battles both parties became weary of the war. Egiza being now far advanced in years, obtained the consent of the nobility to associating his son Witiza with him in the government, and sent him into Galicia to keep his court in the city of Tuy; and when he perceived that his abilities had made him a favourite with the people, he summoned a council at Toledo, in which this measure was ratified. And in the very year that closed this century,

A. D. 687.

A. D. 700.

The history of Britain, already brought down to the full establishment of the Saxon heptarchy, must now be resumed. But though the Saxons had thus divided their conquests into seven kingdoms, for

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
seventh
century.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the common support and benefit, they appointed a principal leader of all, invested with certain prerogatives; on whose decease another was chosen by the unanimous consent of the seven kingdoms: yet the wars and divisions frequently caused a long interregnum. Besides this monarch they had, as the centre of the heptarchical government, a general assembly, consisting of the principal members of the seven kingdoms or their deputies, and called the Wittenagemot, where the concerns of the *whole nation only* were considered; but each kingdom had its particular parliament. When the Saxons arrived in England they were all pagans; neither were they instructed in Christianity until an hundred and fifty years after their coming, when it employed the space of sixty to convert them all. As the whole history of the heptarchy is little else than a tale of mutual hostilities between these small states, little interesting as a portion of universal history, it is now purposed, without detailing such occurrences, to give a list of the monarchs in each kingdom, noticing any event or achievement that deserves to be particularized; and a brief history of the broken line of general sovereigns to the end of the seventh century, resuming the story in the same method afterwards. The first king of North-umberland (for the extent and divisions of the kingdom itself have been already mentioned) was Ida, whose reign began before the division of the kingdom, the cause of which is unknown, took place.

The kingdom
of North-
umberland.
A. D. 547.

A. D. 559—
566—572—
579—586.

In Bernicia, Ida was succeeded by Adda, in five hundred and fifty-nine, and in Deira by Alla. Adda was succeeded by Glappa, the latter by Fridulp, he by Theodoric, and the last by Athelric, whose son Adelfrid marrying the daughter of Alla, king of Deira, on his death, which occurred not until five hundred and eighty-eight, obtained possession of his kingdom, to which he added that of his own father's; while a son whom Alla left, named Edwin, wandered about without any one venturing to assist him in recovering his father's kingdom, but at length Redowald, king of East Anglia, gave him refuge in his court, and braved a war with Adelfrid for his sake; in which this usurper fell. Redowald generously gave to Edwin the whole kingdom of Northumberland. On the death of his friend, who appears to have holden the office of sovereign of the league of the Saxons, Edwin openly aspired to it; and after a con-

A. D. 590.

A. D. 617.

test with Cinigisil and Quicelm, joint kings of the West Saxons, was invested with the dignity he sought; and even the Welsh consented to pay him tribute. In peace and honour Edwin reigned over the Saxons for fifteen years, carrying his prerogatives higher than any of his predecessors, and embracing with his peculiar subjects Christianity, at the preaching of Paulinus, whom his wife Ethelburga, sister of Ebal, king of Kent, had brought with her into Northumberland; but he was at last slain in battle against the Mercians and the Welsh, whose kings had entered into alliance to free themselves from his command. After the Northumbrians had suffered deplorably from the conquerors, they placed Osric, the son of Adelfrid, on the throne of Deira, and his brother Anfrid on that of Bernicia; but these were cut off by Cadwallo, king of the Welsh. A. D. 634.

Oswald, another son of Adelfrid, pitying the sufferings of his countrymen from the relentless fury of Cadwallo, undertook and accomplished their deliverance, by the death of that prince, and the total rout of his forces: after which Oswald became not only monarch of both divisions of Northumberland, but was chosen sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons. But after he had enjoyed this dignity several years, the jealousy of Penda, king of Mercia, induced this prince to attack him, and in the contest Oswald fell. On Penda's retreat from ravaging their country, the Bernicians placed Oswy, the brother of Oswald, on their throne; and those of Deira, Oswin, the son of Osric, on theirs. A. D. 643.

The former, covetous of the whole kingdom, rested not until he had quarrelled with Oswin, who being betrayed into his hands, he put him to death. Exasperated at this, the people of Deira immediately set Adelwalt the son of Oswald, Oswy's brother, on the throne. A. D. 644.

The latter endeavoured to strengthen himself with the alliance of the kings of Mercia and East Anglia; but after he had engaged them to attack his uncle in conjunction with himself, he treacherously deserted them; and his allies being both slain, Oswy gained a temporary possession of Mercia, and was also chosen sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons. The sons of Penda, however, after three years recovered Mercia; and one of them, Wulpher, ascended the throne. For this loss Oswy was partly recompensed by adding Deira to his dominions on the death of Adelwalt without heirs: yet

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 670.

the union of these two kingdoms endured not long; since Oswy made his natural son Alfred king of Deira. Having reigned twenty-eight years, Oswy died, and was succeeded by his son Egfrid, who on the revolt of the Deirians from Alfred, became monarch of all Northumberland. This prince, though young, so ably defended his dominions against both the Picts and the Mercians, that he obtained the dignity his father held, of sovereign of the heptarchy. When he had reigned several years, he attempted without success the conquest of Ireland: disappointed in this quarter, he endeavoured to extend his borders toward the North; but the Picts practised such a mode of defence, that he was compelled to engage them under great disadvantage, and fell himself in the action in the fifteenth year of his reign; and leaving no issue, the Northumbrians recalled Alfred from Ireland, and crowned him monarch of both kingdoms; which thenceforwards remained always united. This monarch was employed in defending his dominions from the perpetual attacks of his neighbours, and the sovereignty of the Saxons was transferred to the kings of Wessex. Alfred reigned twenty years, being five beyond the close of this century.

The kingdom
of Mercia.

A. D. 615.

The first king of Mercia was Crida: on whose death, in five hundred and ninety-four, Ethelbert, king of Kent, and then sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons, conquered Mercia, but after a time restored it to Wibba, the son of Crida; on whose decease, after permitting Mercia to be without a king for one year, Ethelbert set Cearlus, a relation of Wibba, on the throne; who after the death of Ethelbert delivered Mercia from its subjection to the kings of Kent. He reigned nine years; and dying without children, Penda, the son of Wibba, whom Ethelbert had set aside on account of his disposition, succeeded him. His wars and his death in Northumberland have been already stated. When the last occurred, he was in his eightieth year: Wutfer, Penda's second son, his elder brother having been poisoned by his own wife, succeeded to the throne of Mercia, when he had driven the king of Northumberland from thence after three years possession. After he recovered the crown he became a Christian, and brought up his children as such, and after a reign of several wars and various success, he died, meaning to leave his crown

A. D. 624.

A. D. 675.

to his son Cenrid, but his brother Ethelred supplanted his nephew, and ascended the throne of Mercia. Though this monarch's reign was successfull, after sitting on the throne near thirty years, he grew tired of the world, and resigning the crown to the right heir Cenrid, became himself a monk.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 704.

Over the East Angles Uffa first assumed the title of king. He was succeeded by his son Titilus, and he by his, Redowald, of whom mention has been made in the history of Northumberland ; he left his crown to his son Erpwald, who was during his reign in subjection to the king of Northumberland, and after having reigned about nine years he was assassinated. After an interregnum of three years unaccounted for, the East Angles placed on the throne Sigebert, half-brother of their last king. The great achievement of this monarch was bringing his subjects to the knowledge of the true God, having established which in his kingdom he resigned the crown to his cozen Eglic. Soon after his coronation he was attacked by Penda, king of Mercia, in a battle with whom both he and his predecessor were slain. To him succeeded Annas, who after a reign of glory was on his decease succeeded by his brother Ethelric, who bribing Penda to desist from war with the East Angles, and accompanying him in his invasion of Northumberland, was there slain. Adelwald, a brother of Ethelric, next ascended the throne, and occupied it about nine years, when he was succeeded by Aldulph, his nephew, son of Ethelric. Whether this prince lived to the end of the century or not is uncertain ; but his successor Alfwald went far into the next.

Kingdom of
the East
Angles.

A. D. 571.
A. D. 578—
599.
A. D. 624.
A. D. 633.

A. D. 636..

A. D. 644.

A. D. 654.

A. D. 655.

The first king of Essex, Erchenwin, began his reign in five hundred and twenty-seven, which continued sixty years. His son Sledda succeeded him ; and his son Sabert or Saba, the first Christian king of Essex, next occupied the throne : to whom succeeded his three sons, Saxred, Seward, and Sigebert, who agreed in renouncing the Christian faith, and all three were cut off with their whole army in a battle with the kings of Wessex. Their successor was Sigebert the Little ; who had for his, Sigebert the Good : he restored in his dominions the Christian religion. This prince died by assassination, and was succeeded by his brother Swithelm ; and the last by Sebba and Siger, the last of whom returned to idolatry. On the decease

A. D. 587.

A. D. 599.

A. D. 616.

A. D. 655.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 683.
A. D. 694.
Kingdom of
Kent.
A. D. 498—
512.
A. D. 534.
A. D. 568.

A. D. 616.

A. D. 640.

A. D. 664.

A. D. 673.

A. D. 685.

A. D. 686.

The kingdom
of Sussex.

A. D. 514.

of Siger, Sebba, who continued steadfast in Christianity, reigned alone about eleven years, when he became a monk, relinquishing his crown to his two sons, Sighard and Senofrid; and these were on the throne at the end of the century.

Hengist, who assumed the title of king of Kent, in four hundred and fifty-five was succeeded by his son Exus. His successor was Octa his son, who was succeeded by Hermenric; who ere his death associated in his throne his son and successor Ethelbert. This was the first Christian king of his nation; and signalized himself in other respects: he was elected sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons. He reigned fifty-two years, and was succeeded by his son Edbald, who returned to heathenism, lost the authority his father had gained over the other kings, but at length embraced again the Christian faith. His younger son Ercombert succeeded him, in prejudice of his elder brother. He had the idol temples razed, and their images broke; but his integrity does not seem to have kept pace with this apparent zeal. Egbert his son next ascended the throne, and had two sons of his uncle Ermenfrid murdered because they had a better title to it than himself. On his death the crown was seized by his brother Lothair, who wore it unmolested for ten years, when Edric, the son of Egbert, obtaining assistance from the king of Sussex, vanquished him, and Lothair dying of the wounds he had received in the contest, Edric ascended the throne. This, however, he filled only two years, leaving at his decease his crown to his brother Widred, who was compelled to take as his associate Swabert, an individual of unknown origin. In the reign of these kings an invasion of Kent by Cadwallo, king of Wales, took place, by which that kingdom was so reduced, that it made no more a figure in the heptarchy. Widred survived Swabert twelve years, and at his death leaving three sons, the two elder, Ethelbert and Eldert, jointly succeeded him: but his decease occurred not until the next century had commenced.

As for the kingdom of Sussex, Ella its first monarch assumed the crown in four hundred and ninety-one, and so highly was he esteemed by the Saxons, that they elected him to command their armies on the death of Hengist. He left the crown to his son Cissa. The last reigned seventy-six years, but leaving no children, Ceaulin, king of

Wessex and sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons, seized the kingdom, and it continued in subjection to the king of Wessex near threescore years, when the South Saxons seized a favourable opportunity of revolting, and raised to their throne a king named Adelwalch. Of this prince's war with Wulpher, king of Mercia, notice has been already taken ; he seems to have recovered his throne, yet was slain in an irruption by a West Saxon prince. When Authun and Berthun, whether the sons or the generals of Adelwalch is not ascertained, succeeded him. Berthun was quickly slain in a battle with the king of Wessex ; and on the death of Authun, that prince would not suffer the throne to be filled. Neither, though the South Saxons attempted it repeatedly, did they recover their liberty ; but in the next century their country became entirely a province of Wessex.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 648.

A. D. 688.

Cerdic, the first king of Wessex, was crowned in the year five hundred and nineteen, and left his crown to his son Cenric, who was succeeded by his eldest son Ceaulin. The attempts of this prince to reduce his neighbours caused a league against him, by which he was vanquished, and obliged to retire to some unknown corner, where he soon ended his days. The nephew of Ceaulin, named Ceolric, next reigned in Wessex, and on his death was succeeded by his brother Ceolulph ; who had for his successor Cinigisil, the son of Ceolric. This prince divided his kingdom with his brother Quicelm, the latter of whom became a Christian a little before his death, which his brother had done some time before. Cinigisil, who, reigned alone one year, left his crown to his son Cenowalch ; who after a troublesome reign of thirty years, bequeathed his crown to his queen Sexburga. This princess, who was eminent for her courage and abilities, reigned but one year, when the kingdom was divided among several great men, of whom Cenfus, a prince of the blood royal, was the chief. He at length remaining sole ruler, associated in the kingdom his son Escwin ; and probably was compelled to let Centwin, brother to the late king Cenowalch, reign also over some part of the kingdom. Cenfus reigned but three years, nor did his son long survive him ; and thus Centwin remained alone, and reigned for ten years ; when he was on his death succeeded by Cedwalla. This prince was elected sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons, and after being

Kingdom of
Wessex.
A. D. 534.

A. D. 560.

A. D. 594.
A. D. 598.
A. D. 611.

A. D. 643.

A. D. 672.

A. D. 676.

A. D. 686.

CHAPTER
I.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 688.

the cause of much bloodshed, he took a journey to Rome to be baptized (which, though a great zealot, he had not yet been) by the pope; and on his arrival was baptized by Sergius the second, who gave him the name of Peter; soon after which he died, leaving two sons, on account of whose infancy Ina, his cozen, ascended the throne. Such was the reputation of this prince, that in the same year he was chosen sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons: but his reign running into the next century, here must be suspended the history of Britain.

CHAPTER II.

Transactions in Europe during the eighth Century.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in the Eastern
empire.

SO few were the occurrences worthy of notice at this period among the more northern nations of Europe, and the inhabitants of that part of Germany which was not subject to the French, as well as among the barbarous tribes East of them, that it seems adviseable to postpone all mention of them until their history can be taken up at a more interesting period, and now to pass on to the transactions of the eighth century in the Eastern empire. Justinian the second having, by the assistance of the Bulgarians, recovered his throne, raged with implacable fury against the adherents of his enemies, and afterwards most ungratefully turned his arms against the Bulgarians, with intent to recover the country he had ceded to them. This iniquitous attempt, however, succeeded no better than it deserved, and after a signal defeat he left his troops, and escaped to Constantinople. Having next wreaked his vengeance on the inhabitants of Chersona and the Bosphorus for their intentions against him, while in exile among them, the cruelty he thus exercised, led to the proclamation of Philippicus, who had been banished by Tiberius; and he being joined by an army that had revolted from Justinian, entered Constantinople; whither Justinian's head was soon sent to him, by one whom he had dispatched against him. The conduct of Philippicus in embracing the party of the Monothelites, with what the empire suffered from the Bulgarians and the Saracens, rendered him odious to his new subjects, and he was soon deprived of his eyes and

A. D. 711.

Philippicus
emperor.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 713.
Anastasius.

Theodosius.

A. D. 714.

A. D. 716.
Leo.

his crown, and his chief secretary Ariemius was crowned emperor. This monarch, afterwards known by the name of Anastasius, was a man of abilities, and gave fair promise of amending the situation of the empire; but a mutiny breaking out in his fleet, the mutineers, dreading the punishment due to them for having murdered their commander, proceeded to declare Anastasius unworthy of the empire, and obliged Theodosius, a person of low birth, to assume the purple, who having by a siege reduced Constantinople, Anastasius renouncing all claim to the empire, took the habit of a monk, and was banished to Thessalonica. But Leo, who was commander-in-chief of his troops, refused to acknowledge Theodosius, and at the persuasion of some potent friends assumed the purple himself; when meeting with great success, Theodosius, perceiving that it was in vain to contend with him, offered to retire on condition of having his life spared: to this Leo readily agreed, and Theodosius with his son entered into orders. The new emperor was a native of Isauria, and first enlisted as a common soldier, but, on account of his person, was removed into the imperial guards. Ere he had been a year on the throne, the empire was attacked by the Saracens, and in his third year Constantinople was invested by them by sea and land; but most of their ships being destroyed by the artificial fire already mentioned, or by storms, they abandoned the enterprize. Provoked at this miscarriage the Kaliph turned his rage against the Christians dwelling in the territories he possessed, putting to death those who refused to embrace the doctrine of the Arabian impostor. A short revolt took place at this time in Sicily, and ended in the chief exciter of it, Sergius, the governour, fleeing for refuge to the Lombards in Italy, and the usurper he set up losing his head. To the emperor a son was born in the same year, to whom was given the name of Constantine. The rejoicings on this event were interrupted by the appearance of an army of Bulgarians, led by the late emperor Anastasius; but meeting with more opposition than they expected in their attack on Constantinople, they seized the unfortunate Anastasius, and delivered him up to Leo, who put him and all his accomplices to death. This storm appeased, the emperor had his son Constantine, who had early acquired the surname of Copronymus, solemnly crowned. The

ravages of the Saracens on the coasts of Italy and Sicily, and in the island of Sardinia, being stopped by the internal dissensions which arose among that people, the emperor had leisure to attend to the correction of the abuses that had crept into both the court and state; nor did he overlook those of the Church: since in the tenth year of his reign, he commanded all images to be removed from the churches, and forbade any kind of worship to be paid to them. The execution of this edict was violently opposed by the populace, long far gone in idolatry, as well as by the patriarch of Constantinople; but to this opposition the imperial power soon put an end. In the West, however, the people revolted; when Luitprand, king of the Lombards, seized the opportunity of taking possession of Ravenna, and several other cities in the exarchate: but the Venetians, now become considerable in Italy, soon after drove him out. To this their duke was excited by Gregory the second, then bishop of Rome, who for this service thought himself warranted to write a letter to the emperor, begging him (so far had that bishop then apostatized from the real doctrine of the Gospel) to revoke his edict against images. This opposition to his will Leo retaliated by a step no more justifiable than the letter; and the pope found from the people of Rome and the other inhabitants of Italy sufficient support to enable him to resist the execution of the imperial edict, though he did not renounce his allegiance to the emperor. The remainder of this prince's reign was employed in repressing throughout his dominions the worship of images, but not in a manner so laudable as a cause so good deserved; while the Saracens ravaged the Eastern provinces uncontrouled. In the seventeenth year of his reign he married his son Constantine to the daughter of the king of the Chazari, after she had been instructed in Christianity, and at her baptism received the name of Irene. An attempt made the same year to reduce the revolted parts of Italy, failed through the wreck of the fleet fitted out for that purpose; and in the year in which Leo died, Constantinople was visited by a fearful earthquake, which wrought great destruction. This emperor's death occurred when he had reigned five-and-twenty years: his son Constantine succeeded to the throne, and immediately marched to repel an irruption of the Saracens: when

A. D. 741.
Constantine
Copronymus.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Artabazdus, who had married his sister, misled the people by a false report of his death to acknowledge himself for emperor. Hence ensued a civil war, which ended in the reduction by famine of the city of Constantinople, the capture of Artabazdus and his son, whom he had assumed as his partner in the empire, and the privation of both of them of their eyes; while the metropolis, which had supported them, was given up by Constantine to be plundered by his soldiers. His domestick enemies thus subdued, Constantine again turned his arms against the Saracens, recovered from them several places, and destroyed a large fleet, which they had assembled. But from pursuing these advantages he was prevented by the numerous earthquakes that occurred at this period, followed by a pestilence, which after ravaging Calabria, Sicily, and the islands in the Ægean Sea, raged at Constantinople for three years with that violence, that the survivors scarcely sufficed to bury the dead. When the plague had ceased, Constantine caused his son Leo, though scarcely a year old, to be proclaimed emperor, and then marched against the Saracens, recovering from them several more places. But against the Bulgarians, who made an irruption into Thrace, he had different success, having his army utterly defeated, and escaping himself only by flight. After his return from this war, he renewed his father's edict against idolatry, and prohibited his subjects from embracing a monastick life; but seems, as men too often do, to have brought censure on good measures by the violence with which he enforced them. Another irruption of the Bulgarians gave Constantine an opportunity of recovering the credit he had lost by his last defeat; the barbarians were entirely cut off, and the emperor returned in triumph to his capital. This was his last victory; for, ere he could renew the war, he was seized with the disorder that brought him to his end after he had reigned twenty-four years. Though this monarch had with both success and courage defended the empire against the Saracens and the Bulgarians, yet he could not prevent the loss of the greater part of his Italian dominions; Astulphus, king of the Lombards, having in seven hundred and fifty-one reduced the exarchate and the Pentapolis, which were soon after wrested from him by Pepin, king of France, and given to pope Stephen the third,

A. D. 775.

whence arose the temporal dominion of the pope in Italy ; who thus enriched with extensive territories, would no longer consider himself a subject of the empire, but adding the sovereignty to the priesthood, created a new principality in Italy ; in which country remained to the Eastern empire only the provinces of Calabria and Brutium, with the dukedoms of Naples, Amalfi, and Gaeta. Constantine was succeeded by his son Leo, who, soon after his accession, took his son Constantine, whom he had by Irene, partner in the empire : when Leo's brother Nicephorus formed a conspiracy against both ; but it was detected, and the author of it and his accomplices were banished. At this time the king of Bulgaria, from a wish to embrace Christianity, resigned his crown, and repaired to Constantinople, where after his baptism he was married to a relation of the empress Irene. In the fourth year of his reign Leo revived the edicts against the worship of images ; and when he had reigned five years, his death was caused by a violent fever. To him succeeded his son Constantine Porphyrogenitus, so named because he was born while his father was emperor : but being only ten years old, Irene his mother assumed the administration of affairs. A short time only passed ere a conspiracy to place Nicephorus on the throne induced the empress to compell all the late emperor's brothers to take holy orders. The Saracens, on the news of Leo's death, broke into the Eastern provinces, but were repulsed with great loss. To procure a powerful alliance for her son, Irene proposed a match between him and the daughter of Charles, king of France, which however was, for some reason not plainly ascertained, broken off seven years afterwards by the empress. Helpidius, the governour of Sicily, having revolted, was driven to take refuge with the Saracens in Africa, who, acknowledging him for emperor, fell so furiously on the Eastern provinces, that Irene gladly pacified them by an annual tribute. A difference having arisen between the emperor and his mother, some of the courtiers of the former took occasion from it to incense him against her, when, after a considerable struggle on her part, Constantine, being now of age, took the government into his own hands, and with a great appearance of respect led his mother from the palace. Yet the following year he was prevailed on to recall and restore her to

Leo. 4th.

A. D. 780.

Constantine
Porphyro-
genitus.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 797.

Irene.

her former authority : after which marching, as he had once before done, with little success, against the Bulgarians, he was defeated with great loss : irritated by which the emperor became distrustful and cruel, put out the eyes of his uncle Nicephorus on suspicion of his aspiring to the empire, and then those of his three other uncles. His mother, far from endeavouring to restrain him from similar measures, stimulated him to what she thought would render him odious to the people. But the effect of this was prevented by his success against the external enemies of the empire, and therefore this unnatural mother and nefarious woman, by endeavouring to have him deposed, occasioned his being most barbarously murdered, after having reigned seventeen years. On the news of her son's death Irene assumed the imperial authority, and being convinced by a conspiracy formed against her by her chief favourite, that her best security was in the love of her people, she endeavoured to gain it by annulling the edicts against the worship of images. We are now arrived at the end of the century, but as a very little more will lead us to the close of the reign of Irene, it may here be added, that having declined an offer of marriage made to her by Charlemagne, through the influence of an eunuch, named Aetius, the nobility, to whom his imperious conduct had rendered him odious, conspired to depose Irene, and raise to the throne a patrician of great wealth and interest, named Nicephorus, who removing her to the island of Lesbos, she there died of grief, after having reigned five years.

A. D. 802.

Transactions
in Italy.
Cunipert,
king of the
Lombards.

Luitbert.

Ragumbert.

A. D. 704.
Aripert.

While the transactions now related were passing in the Eastern empire, in Italy Cunipert, king of the Lombards, having suppressed the rebellion of Alachis, reigned in great tranquillity until the year seven hundred and three, when he died, leaving one son named Luitbert, who succeeded to his kingdom, but, being an infant, under the care of a man of great distinction among the Lombards, named Asprand. But Ragumbert, duke of Turin, soon assumed the regal title, which he supported by defeating Asprand ; and though the former died the same year, his son Aripert succeeded in taking Luitbert prisoner, whom he put to death ; but not being able to get Asprand into his hands, he wreaked his malice on his family, yet spared and sent to his father his younger son, named Luitprand.

Aripert, notwithstanding his cruelty to his rival and opponents, is said to have made a good king; but this perhaps arises from his liberality to the Church. In the ninth year of his reign Asprand, having procured the assistance of the duke of the Boioarii, returned and defeated him; when, in attempting to swim over the Tesino, that he might retire into France, he was drowned. On the throne, thus become vacant, the Lombards unanimously placed Asprand himself; and he dying in three months, his son Luitprand succeeded him. This prince signalized himself as a legislator, by the enactment of several laws in addition to what the Lombards already had: but the wisdom he manifested in these, was much eclipsed by his boundless ambition; incited by which, he took advantage of the troubles raised in the exarchate by the emperor Leo's edict against images, to break the peace which had for many years existed between the imperialists and the Lombards, and attack Ravenna, of which he at length made himself master, as well as of several other cities; all which he reduced to a dukedom, appointing Hildebrand, his grandson, to govern it. This conquest made by Luitprand, so alarmed Gregory the second, bishop of Rome, that, though then at variance with the emperor, he, as before stated, prevailed on Ursus, duke of Venice, to assist the exarch in the recovery of Ravenna, and hoped by this service to have induced Leo to relax in his interdiction of image worship. But the latter being so provoked at the pope as first to endeavour by private means to have him assassinated, and then to order the exarch to proceed with a body of troops to take him, the king of the Lombards deemed it policy to defend the bishop; and by the reinforcement he sent them, the Romans were enabled to compel the exarch to return to Ravenna. Nor did the further efforts of the emperor to give effect to his edict avail aught but to render the pope more obstinate in his opposition to it; under whose guidance the various powers of Italy, however differing in other points, combined in defence of idolatry; and the citizens of Rome, and the inhabitants of Pentapolis, now Marca d'Ancona, openly revolted from the emperor: while in Ravenna the party supported by the pope took to arms, and made a dreadful slaughter of the Iconoclasts, murdering the exarch himself. The city, however, continued to

A. D. 712.

Asprand.

A. D. 712.

Luitprand.

CHAPTER
II.
SLVINTH
PERIOD.

acknowledge the sovereignty of the emperor; though most of those of Romagna belonging to the exarchate, and all those of Pentapolis, abhorring him as an heretick, submitted to the king of the Lombards. And thus that open and predicted apostacy from the doctrine of revelation, that shameless transgression of the second of the Divine commandments became, in opposition to the imperial authority, and through the influence of the bishop of Rome, established in that which then did and still does call itself the Catholick Church, and *the Man of Sin* was fully revealed. In the rest of Italy the imperial edict met through the same influence with the same opposition, and Leo's additional attempts at the destruction of the pope ended only in the revolt of the Romans from him, their appointing their own magistrates, and uniting themselves under the pope, not yet as their prince but only as their head: and from these slender beginnings rose the temporal sovereignty of the popes in Italy. Still the new exarch Eutychius, having prevailed on Luitprand to join him, advanced to Rome; but there Gregory making his peace with the king of the Lombards, was by him reconciled to the exarch. But the emperor still insisting on the execution of his edict, the Romans, impelled to it by their bishop, made a final renunciation of their allegiance, paid no more tribute, and withdrew for ever their obedience to the emperours of the East. On receiving information of this, Leo prepared to chastise the Romans, and revenge himself on the pope, to preserve himself from which the last had recourse to Charles Martel, then sovereign of France, and generally reputed the best general of his time. The ambassadors sent by the pope were most honourably received; and a treaty was concluded, by which Charles engaged himself to defend the Romans and the Church against both the emperor and the Lombards; and the Romans agreed to acknowledge him for their protector, and confer on him the consulship. Soon after the return of these ambassadors, died Gregory the second, being succeeded by Gregory the third. In the mean time the decease of Leo, and accession of Constantine Copronymus occurred. An edict published by the new emperor, forbidding not only the worship of images, but the invocation of saints, and especially of the Virgin Mary, raised fresh disturbances in Italy,

and induced the Romans, trusting to the protection of Charles Martel, to expel from Rome the few imperial officers yet resident there. Gregory the third survived the emperor Leo but a short time, being succeeded by Zachary, who prevailed on Luitprand to restore four cities, which had been ceded to him on his raising the siege of Rome. To this the king added the restoration of the patrimony in Sabina; and afterwards, at the request of the same pontiff, relinquished his design of once more conquering Ravenna. Not long after which Luitprand died in the thirty-second year of his reign, leaving behind him an high reputation. Luitprand was succeeded by his grandson Hildebrand, who, being unequal to the charge, was after seven months deposed, and Rachis, duke of Friuli, highly esteemed for his virtues, raised to the throne in his room. This prince having had some new laws enacted, and settled the internal affairs of his kingdom, attacked the imperial dominions, but on a personal application by Zachary, was not only prevailed on to desist from further aggression, and restore what he had already taken, but induced to return the visit of the pope at Rome the following year, where he took the Benedictine habit, and retired to the monastery on Monte Cassino, his wife and daughter following his example, and founding a monastery of nuns. A brother of Rachis, named Astulphus or Aistulphus, was chosen by the Lombards to succeed him: pope Zachary, too, dying was succeeded by Stephen the second; who held the see but three days, and on his death another Stephen was chosen. This pope sent to king Astulphus to confirm the peace between the Lombards and the Romans, to which the king both assented, and extended it to forty years more, to prevent the pope from thwarting his designs on the exarchate. Against this he accordingly marched, and laying close siege to Ravenna, forced Euty chius to abandon that city, and then reduced with great ease all the other cities holden by the imperialists, and thus put an end to the exarchate, after it had continued an hundred and eighty-three years. Astulphus being master of the exarchate, thought himself entitled to all that depended on it, and insisted on being acknowledged by the pope and the Romans for their sovereign. In this distress the pope applied for protection to the emperor, who being

A. D. 741.

A. D. 743.

Hildebrand.
A. D. 744.
Rachis.

A. D. 751.

A. D. 752.
Astulphus.

A. D. 752.

unable to send any thing but an ambassador, he was by Astulphus received with the utmost contempt. When the pope resolved to recur for assistance to France, of which Pepin, son of Charles Martel, was then king, and being, at his request to Astulphus, permitted to pass safely into France, he was there received most honourably, and not only obtained a promise of assistance, but was invited to stay until the season would admit of the march of the army; and in the mean time he solemnly anointed Pepin and his two sons Charles and Carloman kings of France. While the pope was thus employed, Astulphus was occupied in revising and adding to the laws of the Lombards: the illness of the pope caused the expedition to be deferred, during which delay he endeavoured by letters, and Pepin by embassies, to prevail on Astulphus to desist from his claims on Rome; but the last remaining determined, the king of France advanced with his army, and having cleared the passes through the mountains, entered into Italy, and laid close siege to Pavia, whither Astulphus had fled. The king of the Lombards, conscious of his danger, sued for peace, and obtained it, on conditions of restoring the places which he had taken in the dukedom of Rome, the exarchate, and Pentapolis, not to the emperor, but to the pope: for the performance of this he gave to Pepin forty hostages. Yet when his conquerour had left Italy, Astulphus, instead of delivering up the places he had seized, regardless of both his oath and his hostages, broke into the Roman dukedom, and made himself master of several places, and at length laid close siege to Rome. Under these circumstances Stephen renewed his application to Pepin, who returned into Italy, and, as before, laid siege to Pavia, whither Astulphus had retired. While before this city he was addressed by an ambassador from the emperor Constantine, who requested that the exarchate might be restored to that prince as its rightfull owner; but Pepin, pleading that it had by conquest become his, persisted in giving it to the pope. Then pursuing vigorously the siege of Pavia, he reduced Astulphus again to sue for peace, which was granted on the former terms, with the addition of his ceding to the pope the city of Com-machio. And then Pepin renewed his donation to St. Peter and his successors of the exarchate, Romagna, and the Marca d'Ancona, and

appointed a commissary who took possession of all the cities in the name: when Pepin left Italy, and returned with his army to France. Thus was the sceptre added to the keys, and the popes enriched with the spoils of the Lombard kings and the Roman exchequers. From this time the popes ceased to notice the years of the emperors in their publick instruments. Soon after this Astulphus, who ill brooked the transfer of what he had conquered, to the bishop of Rome, was killed in hunting. While the nobles were preparing for a new election, Desiderius, duke of Tuscany, and master of the horse to the late king, caused himself to be proclaimed, and after obtaining the favour of the pope against a purposed competitor, got firm possession of the throne. Pope Stephen soon after dying, was succeeded by his brother Paul; who also died in the third year of the reign of Desiderius. Between his successor Stephen the fourth and Desiderius great jealousy arose; when to preclude the pope from gaining support, Desiderius offered his two daughters in marriage to Charles and Carloman, who on the death of their father Pepin had divided his dominions between them. The alliance thus formed was yet but of brief duration; since Charles quickly divorced his wife on pretence of barrenness, and Carloman dying about the same time, his widow and the two sons she had by him, fled to her father in Italy. In the mean time died pope Stephen, and Adrian the 1st succeeded to the pontificate: he immediately concluded a peace with Desiderius, yet could not be prevailed on by this last to anoint the sons of Carloman, which he had much at heart, in hope of raising disturbances in France, and creating a difference between the pope and Charles. Not succeeding by entreaties, the king of the Lombards had recourse to violence, and after much dispute which should yield, the pope sent to implore the assistance of Charlemagne; who, glad of the opportunity of revenging himself on Desiderius for keeping his two nephews, made such preparations as indicated an intention of conquering the kingdom of the Lombards. To obviate this design Desiderius raised a large army, and advanced to meet his enemy: whether a battle actually ensued is not ascertained; yet, if it did, it was to the disadvantage of Desiderius, who shut himself up in Pavia, to which city Charlemagne laid close siege. But finding the place

A. D. 756.

A. D. 756.

A. D. 757.

A. D. 772.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 771.

obstinately defended, he after some months left the conduct of the operations against it to his uncle Bernard, and with a part of the army himself invested, and after a very brave defence, took Verona : in which he found Berta and her two sons, whom he sent into France ; but what was afterwards the lot of the two princes remains unknown. Charlemagne having reduced all the other cities on the same side of the Po, returned before Pavia ; but this place still holding out, again relinquishing the siege to Bernard, he himself repaired to Rome, where he was received with great honour, though with no inconsiderable degree of haughtiness, by the pope, who appeared on a throne placed on the steps of the Vatican Church, each of which steps the king kissed, as he ascended them. Here, at the request of Stephen, he confirmed his father's gift to the Church ; and having in a stay of eight days at Rome satisfied his own curiosity, and the desires of the pope, returned to Pavia, and so closely pushed the siege, that a violent plague beginning to rage within the walls, Desiderius was at length obliged to surrender the place, himself, and his wife and children ; and these latter Charles sent to France, and they never more were heard of. Thus ended the kingdom of the Lombards in Italy, having lasted two hundred and six years. The city of Pavia thus reduced, all the rest submitted to Charles, on which he caused himself to be crowned king of Lombardy, with an iron crown, by the archbishop of Milan. The coronation over, Charles went again to Rome, where he was received with the greatest marks of respect and esteem, and had ceded to him the right of instituting all the prelates of Italy, who were not to be consecrated until instituted by him, and of appointing even the bishop of Rome. He was, too, declared protector of the apostolick see : but the right of appointing the bishop of Rome, he after some time remitted to the clergy and people. Charles, on his return to Pavia, declared his intention of continuing the same form of government as the Lombard princes. Nor did he disturb the emperours in their possession of the dukedom of Naples, and the other places which they held in Italy. He allowed to the dukes of Friuli, Spoleto and Benevento, the same authority they enjoyed under the Lombard kings, requiring them only to acknowledge him for their sovereign lord. The same he required

with regard to the territories which he had granted to the pope. Charles having settled the affairs of Italy,* and left a strong garrison in Pavia, returned to France : but he was scarcely gone, when the Lombard dukes determined to throw off his yoke ; and Rodgand of Friuli seizing the opportunity of his being engaged in a war with the Saxons, caused himself to be acknowledged sovereign in his dukedom. This rebellion brought Charles in the midst of winter into Italy, where he defeated, took prisoner, and publicly beheaded Rodgand ; adding his dukedom to his own kingdom. Being informed of these events, Hildebrand, duke of Spoleto, who had likewise proceeded to revolt, submitted of his own accord, and had his submission accepted. But Arechis, duke of Benevento, waited until Charles, having appointed his eldest son Pepin king of Italy, returned into France, and was engaged in other wars : then he not only revolted, but assumed the title of prince, caused himself to be solemnly crowned, and coined money with his own image. Charles perceiving that his son Pepin was unable to reduce the Beneventan Lombards, returned with a powerfull army into Italy : but Arechis then sued for peace, which was granted him on condition that he should pay to Pepin an annual tribute, deliver up to him his treasure, and his son and daughter as hostages. Charles then returned to France, and the principality of Benevento was holden with the title of prince by Arechis and his successor, who greatly enlarged it. In the year seven hundred and eighty-eight the Hunns, by the solicitation of the duke of Bavaria, who was an ally of Arechis, invaded the dukedom of Friuli, but were repulsed by Pepin with great loss. While Pepin was thus engaged,

A. D. 781.

* In his arrangement Charles appointed an oath of allegiance to himself and his sons, to be taken annually by all the dukes : neither did he ever transfer the dukedoms from one family to another, except a duke infringed this oath, or died without male issue. This translation to another was termed the investiture of him ; and hence fiefs came to be granted only by investiture to other feudatories, the model of whose services and tenures was afterwards perfected by the princes of Germany. The borders of the kingdoms and towns Charles committed to the care of counts, who were vested with great authority : these borders being termed *marchæ* and *marches*, the superintendants of them were styled counts of the *marches*, whence the title of *marquis* originated.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

he was informed that the Greeks intended to invade Italy in the person of Adalgis, the son of Arechis; and the intention was soon executed: but the Grecian army was defeated, Adalgis taken, and crucified to death. Grimoald, prince of Benevento, who performed military service for Charles, revolted four years afterwards; but was reduced by Pepin, and his brother Lewis. After two years more died Adrian, and in his room was chosen Leo. The Hunns now scourged Italy by frequent incursions, Charlemagne created a Frenchman, named Henry, duke of Friuli; who raising an army, marched into Pannonia, and, after several victories, took the royal palace, and sent the wealth he there found to Charlemagne. Pepin the same year invaded Hungary, and in the beginning of the next returned to Italy. The following year great disturbances were excited in Rome by the opponents of Leo, who personally attacked and thrust him into a monastery; whence he was delivered by the duke of Spoleto; from whose territories he was removed into Germany, and thence sent back to Rome by Charles, with an escort of nobles and bishops. That monarch himself, doubtfull whither the disturbances in Rome might extend, in the autumn of the following year marched into Italy; where the charges against the pope having been examined, and he declared innocent of them, that pontiff agreed with the senators to express their gratitude to Charles, by reviving in his favour the title of the emperor of the Romans; and consequently on Christmas day, as he was kneeling at the altar in the Church of the Vatican, the pope cast over his shoulders a rich cloak, and putting a crown on his head, proclaimed him "Augustus crowned by God, the great and most pious emperor of the Romans:" and with this signal event closed the eighth century in Italy.

Transactions
in France
during the
8th century.
A. D. 612.
Dagobert 2d.

The expiration of the seventh century led to the suspension of the history of France in the reign of Childebert the second. This prince dying after a reign of seventeen years, his son Dagobert the second succeeded him, and Grimoalde the second, son of Pepin, was declared mayor of the palace. But Pepin himself being seized with a dangerous illness, the enemies of his family, expecting his death, had his son Grimoalde, whose conduct by no means merited such an end, assassinated, while at prayers in a church. Pepin recovering, not

only took vengeance on the conspirators, but appointed Grimoalde's only son Theudoalde, though but six years old, mayor of the palace; and not long after died. His widow, then, ventured to assume the direction of affairs; but the same faction that had slain Grimoalde, took up arms against her in the name of Dagobert, and forced her to retire to Cologne, while in the mean time Theudoalde died; and quickly after Dagobert, the king himself, leaving only one son, A. D. 716. **Thierri**, and him at the breast. The nobility of Neustria, who had chosen Rainfroi for mayor of the palace, set aside this child as unequal to the government, and brought out of a convent Daniel, the son of Childeric, and placed him on the throne under the name of Chilperic. **Chilperic**. He led his army against the Austrasians, who supported Plectrude and her son-in-law Charles Martel, whom they had received as duke; but after some operations this last, who inherited the virtues of his father Pepin, got Chilperic and his treasures into his power; and Clotaire, whom Charles had proclaimed king of Austrasia, dying, he got him acknowledged sovereign of all the dominions of the Franks. After which Charles, partly by arms, partly by policy, reduced all his opponents, and ruled as mayor of the palace in the name of Chilperic, who closed a short and an unhappy reign by death. Chilperic leaving no issue, Thierri of Chelles. **Thierri of Chelles**, a child of not more than seven years of age, was proclaimed king, and is usually spoken of as Thierri the third, though he would more properly be styled the fourth. Under his name Charles administered with signal ability the affairs of the Franks, was always in arms, the cost of which he forced the vanquished to pay. Eudes, duke of Aquitaine, seems to have been his greatest opponent, yet was at length obliged to apply for his assistance against the Moors; and when these broke from Spain like a torrent into his dominions, Charles with a powerfull army of French and Germans met, and, with the co-operation of Eudes, put them to flight. Farther attempts of the Moors he opposed, and gained another great victory over them in Languedoc. The duchy of Aquitaine he afterwards granted to Hunald, the son of Eudes, on the condition of being his vassal, without mention of Thierri, who dying about that time no successor was named. Charles afterwards acted as mediatour between the Lom-

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 741.

Childeric.

A. D. 746.

bards and pope Gregory the third, who choosing him for his protector, offered to shake off his dependence on the Greek empire, and proclaim Charles consul of Rome. But while this was in agitation, death removed to a different scene the three persons principally concerned in it, the emperor Leo, Charles Martel, and the pope. A short time previous to his decease, Charles had divided the French territory as his own, among his sons. To Carloman the eldest he assigned Austrasia; to his second son Pepin, surnamed the Short, Neustria and Burgundy; and to his third Gripon, or Griffon, who was by a second wife that survived her husband, only some lands in the heart of France. Displeased at this, he made an effort to obtain more by force; but being vanquished by his brothers, he was sent to a castle in the forest of Arden, and his mother into a convent. The two elder brothers acted with the greatest unanimity: but while Carloman ruled over Austrasia as his hereditary sovereignty, Pepin deemed it expedient to proclaim Childeric, the son of Thierry of Chelles, king. Still his sister, named Hiltrude, being drawn to the party of her secluded mother-in-law, found means, through Odilon duke of Bavaria, her own husband, to raise a confederacy of this duke and those of the Allemans, Saxons, and that of Aquitaine, against her two brothers; all the associates in which were by Carloman and Pepin reduced to submission; and when in the course of time they had by several expeditions reduced some other German nations in revolt, Carloman, who in addition to his courage and abilities possessed strictness of morals, sweetness of temper, and sincere piety, quitted the world, and passed the remainder of his days in the tranquillity of monastick retirement, without, however, submitting to the austerities of superstition. To console himself for the loss of Carloman, Pepin took his half-brother Griffon out of confinement, and gave him several counties and a considerable revenue. But this ambitious and ungratefull prince began intrigues to succeed his brother Carloman, and privately withdrawing to Theodoric, duke of the Saxons, who had already twice received pardon for his revolts, was by him readily received: a war ensued, Theodoric was defeated, taken prisoner, and never more heard of. Griffon was received by his half-sister, now a widow, and repaid her hospitality by seizing

her and her infant son Tassilon, and causing himself to be proclaimed duke of Bavaria. This nefarious act of villainy, however, drew on him the arms of Pepin, who took him prisoner, and restored his nephew and sister to their authority. Yet Griffon he treated with great lenity, advising him only to make no more trials of his patience, and giving him an handsome territory with the title of duke. Pepin, having firmly established the French power, resolved to do away the phantom of sovereignty exhibited by Childeric; and accordingly, in the annual assembly of the great men, a resolution was proposed and unanimously passed, for removing Childeric and placing Pepin on the throne; nor was the execution of this found more difficult than the resolution. Griffon having left his brother and fled to the duke of Aquitaine to raise fresh troubles, the intelligence of his death, which arrived after another revolt of the Saxons had been reduced, was not unwelcome to Pepin. After the Bretons had made some incursions into his territories, Pepin forced their count to renew his homage; and such became his reputation from this success, that a Gothic nobleman, who had seized several towns in the part of Gaul holden by that people, became voluntarily his vassal: this opened to Pepin a passage to Narbonne, which city, after a three years siege, he took. The transactions with pope Stephen the third which next followed, have been recounted in the history of Italy, though of one particular, that of Pepin being by that pontiff absolved for the breach of his oath to Childeric, mention was not there made. After his last return from Italy, Pepin held an assembly of the states at Compiègne for the regulation of publick affairs, in which Tassilon his nephew, duke of Bavaria, did homage to him; and the same was done by the king of the Sclavonians, who claimed his protection. Two years after which the Saxons made a general revolt, but were reduced to submit even to an addition to their tribute. This was followed by a war with the duke of Aquitaine, which, after the duke of Bavaria had renounced his homage to Pepin, by which he also brought his arms upon him, ended in the total reduction of Aquitaine, the death of Vaifar its duke, and the re-annexation of the province to the crown of France: very soon after which the conquerour himself was seized with his last illness, and died in the seventeenth year of his reign.

A. D. 750.
Pepin.

A. D. 768.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Charles and
Carloman.

Pepin's two sons, Charles and Carloman, jointly succeeded their father by his direction : the former a man of eminent abilities ; the latter of suspicious, peevish, and contentious disposition ; but neither sufficiently introduced to business by their father. This division of the sovereignty afforded encouragement to the projects of the neighbouring princes ; but the first attack came from a quarter the least expected. Hunalde or Hunaud, the father of Vaifar, duke of Aquitaine, quitted the monastery to which he had retired more than twenty years, entered that dukedom, the government of which he had resigned on account of his being universally hated, and was there received with marks of general reverence and affection ; but on his defeat by Charles, who quickly advanced against him, was as lightly abandoned in his distress, as he had been before followed by the people. The character which Charles's success in this expedition gained him, induced Dîdier, king of the Lombards, to propose to him a cross marriage, and though the pope strongly opposed this connection, the queen dowager by her influence brought it about. Carloman being prevented by death from pursuing his hostile designs against his brother, and his widow retiring with her two sons into the dominions of the Lombards, Charles, with the consent of the prelates and peers, took possession of the thus abdicated dominions. His attention was next called to the Saxons, who consisting of many tribes, each commanded by its own duke, possessed at this time a great extent of territory, extending from Bohemia to the German Ocean, East and West, and from the Sea to Germanick France on the Lower Rhine, and the Issel before Mentz from North to South. This nation refusing to pay the usual tribute, gave occasion to the commencement of a war, which formed the principal business of Charles's reign, and lasted, with intervals, three-and-thirty years, in which Charles repeatedly defeating that restless people, endeavoured to soothe their ferocity by having them instructed in the doctrines of Christianity, and two of their great leaders, Witikind and Albion, were at length baptized ; after which they kept their people in tranquillity, and assisted the progress of the Gospel with great fidelity and zeal for several years. Of the transactions of Charles in Italy, which employed another large portion of his reign, an account has already been given, so that it remains only

to speak of the other successes and achievements of this great monarch, whose reign forms so remarkable a period in the history of Europe. In seven hundred and seventy-eight, Ibinala, lord of Saragossa, requested the protection of the French monarch for himself and many other Moorish lords desirous of becoming his vassals. Charles, wishing to extend his dominions on that side, granted the request; and in consequence of it, he sent one army into Roussillon, while he led another into Navarre. Having had such success as satisfied him, he was on his return attacked by the Gascons, by whom a great impression was made on his troops, and many officers slain, among whom was the celebrated Roland, who commanded on the frontier of Bretagne: and this was the defeat of Roncesvalles, so famous in romance. The duke of Bavaria having by his frequent conspiracies forfeited all claim to his clemency, Charles at length condemned him and his two sons to pass their days in a convent, and annexed Bavaria to his own dominions. Having received a complaint from the inhabitants of the present Mecklenburgh, that they were harassed by some Sclavonian tribes seated on the shore of the Baltick, by sending the whole force of the Saxons into their country he so terrified the barbarians, that they submitted to his commands, and gave hostages for their obedience; so that the dominions of Charlemagne now extended to the Baltick. After this he punished the Hunns for their incursions by penetrating into their country as far as Raab on the Danube. But while on this expedition he received the unpleasant intelligence of a conspiracy to put him to death, headed by his eldest son Pepin; this he defeated by seizing the conspirators, and Pepin was sent to end his days in a convent. No sooner was this danger avoided, than the re-appearance of the Hunns, a revolt of the Saxons, and irruptions of the Moors created Charles new troubles, which he met with admirable fortitude and ability. While he was waiting to see which way it would be best to turn his arms, he employed the troops he had assembled in cutting a canal to join the Danube and the Rhine; but this well-conceived project was not completed, through want of those machines which the invention of later ages has supplied. Having made his son Lewis king of Aquitaine, as he had the other Pepin king of Lom-

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

bardy, that prince, by the assistance of the natives, recovered the islands of Majorca and Minorca, which were added to his dominions. The depredations of the Normans, that is, the inhabitants of the North, (for some tribes of Saxons, as well as the inhabitants of Denmark, and perhaps some other nations, were included under that name) induced Charles to provide effectually for the security of his coasts : after which he repaired to Italy, and there closed the century, as has been stated in the history of that country. This prince, in the general assemblies of the prelates and nobles which he held, made many excellent laws for the government of his dominions, and caused the enactment of many canons for the regulation of the Church : he introduced the Italian mode of chanting into France. In every country he conquered, he immediately laid down a plan for its government, by which he secured the conquest. Particular was his attention to whatever regarded religion ; and he was both respectful and very munificent to the clergy : while he cultivated literature himself, and had a tincture of most sciences, he established foundations for the encouragement and support of it. He was peculiarly attentive to the ease and advantage of the common people ; which led him to repair roads, build bridges, make rivers navigable, and encourage agriculture and commerce.

Occurrences
in Spain.

On the decease of Egiza, king of the Visigoths, Witiza his son succeeded him. Extraordinary acts of clemency and munificence distinguished the commencement of this king's reign, and gained him the affection of his subjects. But applause, flattery, and prosperity, joined to a native propensity to pleasure, seduced him to yield by degrees to sensuality, and he at length totally abandoned himself to it ; to the breach of his own marriage vow he added adultery against other men, and by his profligacy in a few years so alienated the hearts of his people, that a design was formed of taking arms against him, the discovery of which made him add cruelty to his debauchery. The evil example of the prince had banefull effects on the people, who becoming generally luxurious, indolent, and vicious, prepared themselves for the ruin which soon overwhelmed them. Muza, the general of the Khalif Walid, having in vain besieged Ceuta, bravely defended by count Julian, determined next to try his fortune by sea,

but here he was defeated by Witiza's commander Theodomir. Earnest to revenge these disgraces, when a civil war had, through the distraction which Witiza's ill conduct had introduced into his affairs, broken out in Spain, and Roderick, the son of Theodofred, had begun a contest for the crown, Muza detached a small body of Moors under Tarif Abuzara, who made a descent on the promontory Gibel Tarick, since softened into Gibraltar, and known to the Greeks by the name of Calpe, and there erected a fortress. After this, Witiza's death put Roderick in possession of the kingdom of Spain; to deprive him of which, Evan and Sisebut, the sons of Witiza, began to propose to the Saracens to bring an army into Spain, to which measure they were already inclined through the intrigues of count Julian, provoked by flagrant injustice received at home. Accompanied by this count a Saracen commander, named Tarick Abdalahi, landed with upwards of seven thousand men near Gibraltar. These being afterwards reinforced by twelve thousand, chiefly Moors, by way of striking terror into the inhabitants, committed on them most inhuman cruelties. Roderick and the sons of Witiza now laid aside their disputes, and united to oppose their common enemies: apprized of which the commander of the Moors sent for a further reinforcement, after the arrival of which the two armies coming to an engagement, the Goths were totally defeated and entirely dispersed, and by this battle was the Gothic monarchy in Spain entirely subverted. King Roderick made his escape, and died in obscurity: but whether of his wounds, of fatigue, or of what, is not ascertained. The Moors after this, discerning the little ability the Goths had to resist, determined on the conquest of the whole country; and Muza himself coming over with a vast multitude of troops, which the report of the riches of Spain drew to his standard, divided them into three armies, which proceeded to reduce different portions of the country, giving, or at least promising good terms to every place that submitted, and plundering those that resisted. Theodomir, who had commanded the Gothick fleet, not only obtained fair conditions by his brave resistance, but was entrusted, as before, with the government of the country which he had defended. The inhabitants of Arragon, Catalonia, and Navarre, chose for the most

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

part to retire into France; and the poor remainder of the Goths were shut up in the mountains of Asturias, Burgos, and Biscay, whence they could not easily be forced. Muza being ordered to attend the Khalif at Damascus, the government of Spain devolved on his son Abdalaziz; and the next Khalif, Solyman, confirmed his authority. This he seems to have used in general in a manner very beneficial to those over whom he ruled; yet the principal officers of the Moors conspired to assassinate him: when they declared Ayud, an old general, governour, until the Khalif's pleasure could be known; and in the mean time they exercised great oppression, and acquired vast riches. Ayud being superseded by Alaha, this last fixed the seat of his government at Cordova: he there called the officers to a strict account for their peculation, enforced restitution where it could be had, and where it could not, had the offenders publickly punished. After this, being commanded by the Khalif, Omar the second, to make himself master of all that the Goths possessed in Gaul, he in a few weeks reduced the whole province. But a portion of those Spaniards who had retired into the mountainous districts, elected for their sovereign a man eminent for his courage and abilities, as well as his birth, denominated by some writers in the more modern style, Don Pelayo, and by others, having his name Latinized, Pelagius. With such prudence did this leader prepare to receive a very large army of Moors sent against him, as to totally defeat, and almost entirely destroy them; and so far were they from being able to dislodge him from that strong country, that he repaired the old, and built new towns in it: thus forming an asylum for all those Christians who wished and were able to withdraw themselves from the oppression of the Moors. Here Pelayo reigned about nineteen years, and on his death was succeeded by his son Favila, who, after a reign of two years, was slain by a bear in hunting. In the mean time the Mahometans made the irruption already mentioned into Aquitaine, where they received that severe defeat from Charles Martel: and somewhat after the middle of the century the state of the Saracens was such, that one of the blood royal of the Omniades, called Abderrahman and Almanzor, founded in Spain a kingdom independent of the Khalifs. At Cordova he fixed his residence, and

made it a seat of the arts : by a deep policy, without persecuting, he so discouraged the Christians, while he gave all honours and offices only to the Mahometans, and promoted intermarriages between these and the former, that but few Christians remained in his dominions. As Almanzor excelled the princes of Europe in wisdom, so the Arabs surpassed them in science, and enjoyed a considerable portion of learning and politeness, while the rest of Europe was sunk in ignorance and barbarism. The dissensions among the Moors previous to Almanzor's establishing his kingdom, yielded opportunity to Alonzo, who succeeded his brother-in-law Favila, to extend his dominions, which had their commencement in Asturias, over the best part of Galicia, and into Leon and Castile ; and the kingdom itself was at length called that of Leon and Oviedo. He was succeeded by his son Froila ; in the beginning of whose reign Garcias Ximenes, descended from the ancient Spaniards, founded the kingdom of Navarre. Froila was attacked by Abderrahman, but gained over him a complete victory : this misfortune to the Mahometan occasioned the revolt of many princes of the Moors, and hence a war of several years was carried on by him for the reduction of them ; while in the Spanish kingdom the tyrannical conduct of Froila produced his assassination by his own subjects. Aurelio, a cozen of the murdered king, succeeded him ; the only remarkable event of whose reign was a rebellion of the numerous Moorish slaves which had been taken, which was quickly subdued. He was, as he proposed, succeeded by Silo, the richest and most powerfull of the Gothic nobility : against him the Galicians took up arms ; but he reduced them, and returned to Pravia, which he had made the royal residence, in triumph. Having reigned nine years, he died without issue : on his decease, his queen had influence sufficient to get a nephew of her own, Alonso the son of king Froila, declared king. But, through the aversion that still remained for his father, his uncle Mauregato soon supplanted him ; and, while he lived in retirement in Biscay, reigned by the assistance of the Moors in tranquillity for near six years. When by his death the throne became vacant, the nobility placed on it Bermudo, the brother of their former king, Aurelio ; who

A. D. 758.

A. D. 768.

A. D. 774.

A. D. 783.

A. D. 788

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 791.

was no sooner seated on it, than he called Alonso from his retirement, brought him into his councils, and when he perceived the people's distaste to him gradually subside, entrusted him with the command of his troops. In this office Alonso so signalized himself in an engagement with the Moors, that the king thought he might declare his resolution of abdicating the throne in his favour; and Alonso, who from the purity of his life was surnamed El Casto, was declared king by election on the voluntary abdication of his predecessor. The new sovereign removed his court to Oviedo, and employed himself with all his power in faithfully discharging the great duties of his station. In the third year of his reign being attacked by the Moors, he defeated them with so much loss, that they troubled him not for several years. But they being engaged in a civil war on the death of their king Issem, who seems to have succeeded Abderrahman at Cordova, Alonso took the opportunity of invading their territories, and made himself master of the city of Lisbon; and the same year he sent an embassy with rich presents to Charlemagne, who promised him his friendship. Lewis king of Aquitaine having laid siege to Barcelona, a powerfull army of Moors, sent by Alhacan the son of Issem to its relief, being disappointed in that object, fell suddenly on the dominions of Alonso; but that prince obtained over them a complete victory. But this triumph was succeeded by the malcontents in his own army breaking out into open revolt, deposing him, and carrying him prisoner to a monastery: and with this incident must the history of Spain be for the present closed, as it took not place until the commencement of the ninth century.

A. D. 801.

Transactions
in Britain
during the
8th century.
Kingdom of
Northumber-
land.

A. D. 716.

A. D. 718.

Resuming the history of Britain, Alfred, king of Northumberland, was succeeded by his son Osred, but eight years old, and under the guardianship of a lord, named Brithric. Against this child, Edulph, a lord of the country, set up; but, after a very short struggle, was taken and beheaded. The conduct of Osred, when he grew up, was very profligate; which, besides other bad effects, so far deprived him of the attachment of his subjects, that Cenred and Osric were encouraged to form a party against him, and give him battle; when he was slain, in the eleventh year of his reign. Cenred, the leader of the revolt, succeeded him; and dying in the second year of his reign, his

throne was filled by Osric, who assisted him in obtaining the crown. His reign continued eleven years with no remarkable event; and he left his crown to his cozen Ceolulph: this prince turning monk, Edbert ascended the abdicated throne. This monarch suffered from an invasion of the Picts on one side, and from that of the king of Mercia on the other; and having reigned twenty years, retired into a monastery, and was succeeded by his son Osulf: who was assassinated in the first year of his reign, and Mollon Adelwald, though not of the royal blood, was raised to the throne. Some of the nobles observing that this man had raised himself to the throne by a party, thought that they might do the same. Oswy, one of these, died while making the attempt; but Alered, an illegitimate descendant from Ida, succeeded in entrapping Mollon, and putting him to death; after which he was crowned in his stead. Hence commenced a course of dethronements and usurpations: Alered was expelled, and Ethelred, son of Mollon, placed on the throne; then Ethelred was obliged to flee, and Alfwald, the son of Osulph, was made sovereign; who, though a just and temperate prince, was assassinated: in his room was elected Osred the second, son of Alered; who was deposed, and Ethelred restored. During his renewed reign the Danes made a descent on Northumberland: encouraged by the booty then taken, they repeated their visit the next year; but were, by Ethelred and his ally the king of Mercia, driven to their ships. After this, a civil war breaking out, Ethelred was assassinated: but Osbald, one of the same party, was placed on the throne, and dethroned in twenty-seven days, and Ardulph chosen in his room: but after reigning in continual troubles, he was obliged to repair to Charlemagne for refuge. As two more monarchs only reigned in Northumberland, it is not worth while to leave them unmentioned here, though their reigns extended into the next century. Alfwald the second succeeded Ardulph, and dying in about two years, left his crown to Andred, in whose reign Northumberland submitted to Egbert, king of Wessex, who put an end to the heptarchy.

Cenrid, who had succeeded his uncle Ethelred in the kingdom of Mercia, after reigning four years, turned monk, when his throne was filled by Ceolred, the son of Ethelred, who was engaged in a bloody war with Ina, king of the West Saxons: on his death Ethelbald

CHAPTER

II.

NEW STATE

OF THE

BRITISH

EMPIRE.

A. D. 730

A. D. 731

A. D. 738

A. D. 739

A. D. 761

A. D. 774

A. D. 779

A. D. 782

A. D. 796

A. D. 808

A. D. 810

A. D. 811

A. D. 812

A. D. 813

A. D. 814

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 757.

mounted the throne. This prince was elected sovereign of the Anglo-Saxons, and carried his prerogatives so high, as to give much trouble to the other kings ; which involved him in a war with those of Wessex and Northumberland, in which his army was routed. Four years after this, Ethelbald was slain in a mutiny excited by a lord, named Beornred, whom the soldiers proclaimed king : but ere he had time to establish himself, the nobility, displeased at his usurpation, placed a nephew of the late king, named Offa, on the throne, who obtained a complete victory over his rival : he afterwards became monarch of the Anglo-Saxons, and was, through his ambition, engaged in perpetual wars with the other kings. He most basely murdered Ethelbert, king of the East Angles, who had come to his court to ask his daughter in marriage, and then seizing his kingdom united it with Mercia. He afterwards endeavoured by a journey to Rome to obtain absolution from the pope for this murder ; and this was granted on condition of his being liberal to the churches and monasteries.* Ere he left Rome he obtained the canonization of the first British martyr, St. Alban, whose relicks were said to be found at Verulam, and from the time of Offa's building a fine church and monastery at that place it was called St. Albans. Offa published a body of laws, entitled the laws of the Mercians, the greatest part of which Alfred adopted : Offa died after a reign of thirty-nine years, and was succeeded both in the kingdom of Mercia, and in the sovereignty of the Anglo-Saxons, by his son Egfrid, whom he had associated in his throne ten years before. Egfrid surviving his father but four or five months, was succeeded in both his dignities by Cenulph, who passed a triumphant reign, which extended into the next century.

A. D. 796.

Kingdom of
East Anglia.
A. D. 749.

In the kingdom of East Anglia, on the decease of Alfwald, Beorna

* Among Offa's liberalities was the extension of what was afterwards called Peter's-pence through Mercia and East Anglia. Ina, king of the West Saxons, having founded at Rome a college for the education of English youth, to support it ordered a penny to be annually collected of every family in his dominions. This was termed *Rome-scot*, and, because it was paid at Rome on a holy-day, called St. Peter's *ad vincula*, it was named *Peter-pence*. In process of time the popes pretending it was a tribute paid by the English to St. Peter and his successors, converted it to their own use, until it was entirely abolished by Henry 8.

and Ethelbert divided the sovereignty between them ; and on the death of the latter the former reigned alone, and was succeeded by Ethelred ; who left the crown to Ethelbert, whom Offa king of Mercia murdered, that he might seize his kingdom ; which thenceforth made one with Mercia.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 790.
A. D. 792.

To Sighard and Senofrid, who at the close of the seventh century filled the throne of Essex, succeeded Offa the son of Siger, who went with Cenrid king of Mercia to receive the tonsure at the hands of the pope : his successor, Seolred, is said to have reigned thirty-eight years, and then to have been slain, but how is not known. The last king of Essex whose name occurs, is Swithred : but the history of this kingdom is more imperfect than any other of the heptarchy.

Kingdom of
Essex.
A. D. 705.

A. D. 707.

A. D. 746.

Edbert, who jointly with his brother Ethelbert succeeded their father Widred in the throne of Kent, dying, Ethelbert reigned several years alone, and at his death left his crown to his brother Aldric. In this prince, who with difficulty supported himself against the attacks of his ambitious neighbours, ended the race of Hengist : and after his death Edbert, surnamed Pren, was placed on the throne, whom Cenulph, king of Mercia, took prisoner and deprived of his eyes, setting in his place Cundred, who held the throne of him by a tribute ; and in the reign of whose son Baldred, the dissolution of the heptarchy began with the conquest of Kent by Egbert, king of Wessex.

Kingdom of
Kent.
A. D. 748.
A. D. 760.

A. D. 794.

A. D. 798.

When Authun, who by the death of Berthun was left alone on the throne of Sussex, died, the king of Wessex would not permit the vacant throne to be filled ; and though the South Saxons made repeated attempts to recover their liberty, they were not permanently successful in any, and at length seem to have given all further contest over, content to be considered as a province of Wessex.

Kingdom of
Sussex.

The history of this last kingdom was suspended in the reign of Ina, who besides carrying his arms successfully into Kent and Sussex, conquered part of Cornwall. He published a body of laws, which served as a foundation for those of Alfred ; but gained the high encomiums of the monkish writers, by his munificence to the monasteries, and the partiality he manifested for the monastick life. At Rome he built and endowed a college for the reception and instruc-

Kingdom of
Wessex.

CHAPTER
II.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 727.

A. D. 740.

A. D. 754.

A. D. 784.

A. D. 799.

State of
Germany
during the
eighth cen-
tury.

tion of such English ecclesiasticks as should come to study at Rome, and at length turned monk himself: he was succeeded by Adelard, who was so by Cudred, his brother or cozen. This prince obtained a signal victory over the Cornish men, and got the better in a civil war; and on his decease left his crown to his nephew Sigebert. This monarch quickly drew on himself the hatred and contempt of his subjects; when being by them driven from the throne, he was afterwards slain by a swine-herd. In his room Cenulph, the son of Adelard, was placed on the throne; and after reigning thirty years was assassinated by Cunebard, the brother of Sigebert, who fell at the same time by the hands of the king's attendants. Brithric, the son of Cenulph, succeeded his father: he banished a prince of the royal family, named Egbert, through jealousy of his great qualities. The banished prince at length retired to the court of Charlemagne, where he so improved his abilities as to be equal to the task of reducing the seven Anglo-Saxon kingdoms to one monarchy. During the reign of Brithric the Danes made their first descent in Wessex: Brithric ended his life by poison given him by his wife; provoked at which nefarious act, the West Saxons made a law that the title or honours of a queen should no longer be given to their kings' wives; nay, that the king who did it should forfeit his crown. This was now offered to Egbert, who left Charlemagne at Rome to repair to England, and take possession of it, which he did in the year eight hundred.

As to what passed in Germany during the eighth century, all worthy of notice has been mentioned in the history of France, to which crown the Saxons were tributary: for on the decline of the Roman empire, many of those nations who had bravely defended their independence against the Romans, left their native country and established themselves in others; so that Germany was at this period principally occupied by the Saxons: our review, therefore, may now return to the empire of Constantinople.

CHAPTER III.

Transactions in Europe during the ninth Century.

NICEPHORUS being raised to the throne instead of the deposed Irene, in the following year concluded a treaty with Charlemagne, by which this monarch was acknowledged emperor of the West, and all Italy to the rivers Vulturnus and Aufidus was ceded to him. The cruel, suspicious, and covetous temper of Nicephorus, induced Bardanes, governor of one of the Eastern provinces, to assume the title of emperor; but being soon forsaken by the most distinguished of his adherents, he made his submission, and retired to a monastery, from whence the emperor having enticed him, had his eyes plucked out. To prevent other attempts, Nicephorus took his son Saturacius for his partner in the empire. The Saracens having broken into the Eastern provinces, the emperor marched to oppose them, but was utterly defeated, and afterwards compelled to conclude with them a most disgraceful treaty, subjecting himself to a tribute, and ransoming the head of both himself and his son. A part of this treaty, however, he immediately infringed, which brought on him again the arms of the Saracens, by which his subjects suffered most cruelly. The emperor marrying his son Saturacius to a relation of the late empress Irene, who had been contracted to another, this injustice excited a conspiracy, which was detected, and gave Nicephorus a plea for exercising his cruelty on many of great distinction. The imposition of a new tribute for the repair of Sardica in Moesia, which the Bulgarians had surprized, was the cause

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in the Eastern
empire.
A. D. 802.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 811.

of a tumult at Constantinople, which ended in a great slaughter of the people by the imperial guards. Nicephorus returned the invasion of the Bulgarians with unsparing ravage of their country, and was so inexorable to all the submissive offers made by their king, that this last in despair attacked his camp, and cut off the emperor and nearly all his army: and thus ended the life of a man, who is said to have exceeded all his predecessors in avarice, cruelty, lewdness, and all manner of debaucheries. Saturacius being universally hated, the senate caused Michael, who had married his sister, to be proclaimed emperor, when Saturacius retired with his wife to a monastery.

A. D. 813.

The new emperor caused his wife Procopia likewise to be crowned with his son Theophylact, whom he took for his partner in the empire. The Saracens having broken into the empire, were by Leo, the governor of the Eastern provinces, defeated and expelled. But against the Bulgarians, Michael himself met with contrary success; which so affected him, that, it is said, he resigned the empire in favour of Leo, and retired to a monastery with his wife and children; though another account states, that Leo revolted and obliged him to abdicate; with which the behaviour of the former better corresponds, since he separated Michael and his wife, and caused their son to be cruelly maimed. The Bulgarians having entered Thrace, received from Leo so severe a defeat, that for some years after they made no inroads into the empire. Thus freed from external attack, the emperor applied himself to the suppression of idolatry: but while intent on this, Michael, surnamed the Stammerer, whom he had most highly promoted, conspired against him; yet being detected was condemned to be burnt alive; when his accomplices, through

A. D. 820.

fear of discovery, assassinated the emperor in his chapel. The conspirators confined the empress Theodosia in a monastery, and banished her four sons. In the mean time Michael being released, was crowned emperor. In the second year of this new reign a civil war broke out in the East, excited by one Thomas, of whose origin the accounts most widely differ: but he was, it appears, of extraordinary strength and courage, and acceptable to the soldiery through his affability. Being well received by the inhabitants of the East, who hated Michael, he soon raised a numerous army, made himself

master of Asia and Syria, and assumed the imperial vestments. The troops and fleet of Michael he defeated, and advanced to Constantinople, but in the end had his army routed, and his fleet driven ashore. From this time his affairs grew worse and worse; until being deserted by many of his own followers, and defeated by an army of Bulgarians, and again by the imperial forces, he was at last taken, and put to a cruel death; and, after some time, the rebellion he had raised was extinguished. In the mean time the Saracens of Spain made themselves masters of the island of Crete, and retained it in opposition to Michael's attempts to recover it; building in it the city of Chandax or Candia, whence the island obtained a new name. After this, the Saracens of Africa got possession of Sicily and Calabria, with some contiguous provinces in Italy: soon after which the emperor died. To him succeeded his son Theophylus; who with strict justice in the beginning of his reign punished the murderers of Leo, and manifested the same equity in other particulars of his administration. Having selected an Armenian of high character, named Alexius Moseles, for his son-in-law, he afterwards created him Cæsar: but the uncommon success which this favourite had against the Saracens in Italy, so excited the jealousy of his rivals at court, that he begged the emperor's permission to retire; which, after repeated applications, the death of his wife, and Theophylus having a son born, he obtained. Besides Alexius, this emperor had two other eminent commanders, Manuel and Theophobus, by whose assistance great achievements were performed in his war with the Saracens; whose success at last, however, in taking Amorium the capital of Cilicia, and birth-place of Theophylus, threw him into a deep melancholy, which, added to a disorder brought on by drinking only snow water, produced his death. Theophylus was succeeded by his son Michael, only six years old, on which account the government was administered by his mother Theodora; who re-established the worship of images, banishing those who opposed it. But when the emperor arrived at the age of twenty, Bardas, brother to Theodora, urged him to take the government into his own hands, and driving from the court Manuel, one of the tutors whom the late emperor had appointed for his son, and by false accusations causing Theoctistus, the other, to be put to

A. D. 829.

A. D. 842.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 867.

death; the empress, perceiving a design against herself, retired of her own accord: when Michael, freed from restraint, abandoned himself not only to the most shamefull debaucheries, but to all manner of wickedness, taking Nero for his pattern, whom he closely imitated. Having undertaken an expedition against the Saracens, he suffered a great defeat, and with difficulty escaped himself. Two years after, the Saracens entered his dominions, and routed his army, commanded by himself: this loss his brother Petronas soon repaired, by cutting off the Khalif and his whole army near Ephesus. Michael having raised his uncle Bardas to the dignity of Cæsar, he at his persuasion undertook an expedition against Crete, from whence the Saracens were perpetually infesting the coasts of the empire; and during this, being persuaded by Basilus, the great chamberlain, of the evil intentions of his uncle, he privately ordered him to be put to death. Michael, utterly averse to application, now devolved all his business on Basilus, and soon after declared him his partner in the empire. The new emperour exerted himself to redress the abuses which had crept into the state, and to reclaim his benefactor from his vicious courses; but the profligate prince, offended at his endeavours, determined to destroy him; of which Basilus being apprized, was in his own defence before-hand with him, and murdered him in his bed-chamber. Basilus, now monarch, though he governed with great justice and moderation, had a conspiracy formed against him by two patricians, who were happily detected, and disabled from repeating their attempts. To prevent a recurrence of such, he raised his eldest son Constantine to the imperial dignity, and a year after, he created Leo and Alexander, his second and third sons, Cæsars. After having thus settled his domestick affairs, he turned his arms against the Manichees, who in the late reign had fled in a large body to the Saracens, and against these their friends: and great was his success against them, recovering from them several places, besides Cæsarea, the metropolis of Cappadocia. He took a multitude of prisoners; and, by the number which he put to the sword, struck such terrour into the Saracens, that several of their governours joined him against their own nation; the victorious progress of which now no longer continued. The African Saracens and those of Crete,

were likewise defeated with great slaughter : those of Carthage, however, took and destroyed Syracuse. Constantine, his eldest son, dying, he raised to the imperial dignity his second, Leo : but a treacherous monk, whom this prince wished to remove from the court, contrived to bring him under the suspicion of Basilius, and he was for some time confined ; but at length, by the intercession of his friends, received again into the favour of his father : soon after which reconciliation Basilius died, leaving behind him the character of one of the best emperours that had filled the throne. Leo now remained sole emperour, who from his knowledge and love of learning acquired, and that justly, the surname of Philosopher. He punished the monk who falsely accused him to his father, and banished Photius, the patriarch of Constantinople, who favoured him. In the eighth year of his reign a war broke out with the Bulgarians ; provoked at whose cruelties on their success, Leo engaged the Ungri or Hungarians to invade their country, while he did the same in another part. Utterly defeated by the former, the Bulgarian monarch sued to Leo for peace, and obtained honourable terms ; but faithlessly broke the treaty : when success changed sides, and the emperour was obliged to accept of what terms he could obtain. During these wars several conspiracies were formed against Leo at home, which, however, were detected, and the guilty exiled ; the emperour being averse to the shedding of blood. Being now arrived in the detail of the occurrences of this reign, at the end of the ninth century, the history of Italy should next be resumed : but the greater part of that country forming at this period only a portion of the empire of Charlemagne, with whose coronation as emperour of the West the story of it was last suspended, it will conduce to both conciseness and perspicuity to review the transactions of the whole of that empire together.

A. D. 864.

The empire, then, which Charles had established, comprehended all France, all Germany, part of Hungary, part of Spain, the Low Countries, and the continent of Italy as far as Benevento ; for Calabria, Sicily, the coast of Naples, Dalmatia, and Venice, continued by his treaty with Nicephorus under the emperours of Constantinople. Charles's fame having reached the celebrated Khalif Haroun-al-Raschid, a correspondence was established between them ; and the

Transactions
in the West-
ern empire
during the
9th century.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Arabian monarch ceded to him the holy places in Jerusalem. Of the measures taken by Charles to defend his coasts from the depredations of the nations of the North, mention has already been made. The attacks of this people now assumed a more formidable appearance, and the Normans (by which general name on the continent, as by that of Danes in Britain, were designated all the freebooters that came from the ancient Scandinavia, comprehending the present kingdoms of Denmark, Sweden, and Norway, into which region also had retreated from the arms of Charlemagne the most resolute of the Saxons) made a regular descent in Friesland under their king Godfrey; but when Charles was preparing to bring them to an engagement, the battle was prevented by the assassination of the Norman king by one of his own guards: on which his troops re-embarked, and a peace was afterwards concluded with his son. The domestick misfortunes of Charles sadly counterbalanced the satisfaction derived from this relief: he lost his favourite daughter, and his sons Pepin and Charles. Soon after the death of the last, he associated his son Lewis with him in the empire; at whose coronation he placed the imperial crown on the altar, and directed the prince to set it on his own head. Charlemagne died in the seventy-first year of his age, and the forty-seventh of his reign. Lewis, called the Debonair, on account of the gentleness of his manners, proved by no means equal to support the weight of so great an empire, and he almost began his sole reign with the fatal mistake of parcelling out his dominions among his children. Lothaire, his eldest son, he associated with himself in the empire; he made Pepin king of Aquitaine; Lewis king of Bavaria; and sent them to the government of their respective kingdoms. Bernard, who had succeeded his father Pepin, the son of Charlemagne, in the kingdom of Italy, thought his own right to the empire (his father having been the elder brother of Lewis) superior to that of Lothaire; and being flattered in this opinion by the archbishops of Milan and Cremona, he began hostilities against his uncle, but being soon abandoned by his troops was made prisoner, and died in consequence, it should seem, of his eyes being put out: when, to prevent other troubles, Lewis ordered the three natural sons of Charlemagne to be shaved and shut

A. D. 813.

A. D. 814.

up in a convent. The emperor's remorse at these severities, being fomented by the monks, induced him to impeach himself in an assembly of the states, and to beg the bishops to enjoin him a publick penance: this proved a signal for usurpation to the clergy; the popes no longer waited for the imperial confirmation of their election; the bishops exalted themselves above the throne; and the whole fraternity of the Church claimed an exemption from civil jurisdiction: even the monks, who pretended to have renounced the world, seemed to aspire at the government of it. Lewis having by the advice of his ministers married a second wife, named Judith, had by her a son, afterwards known by the name of Charles the Bald. This son the empress urged Lewis to place, by a new division of the empire, on an equality with the rest of his sons; his compliance with which led to a rebellion of the three elder brothers against their father. In this civil war the emperor was abandoned by his troops, and made prisoner with his wife and son Charles: the empress was shut up in a cloister; but the deposition of the emperor was prevented by the compassion of the nobility, and the intrigues of a monk; who sowing dissensions among the brothers, Lewis was restored to his dignity, and apparently reconciled to his family. But this tranquillity lasted not long: the empress was recalled, and again made a bad use of her influence; the three brothers again took to arms, and the pope, Gregory the fourth, glad of an opportunity of asserting the supremacy and independence of the holy see, went to the army of Lothaire, under the plea of accommodating matters. The presence of the pontiff was then sufficient to decide the fate of Lewis. After a deceitfull negociation, he found himself abandoned by his army, and at the mercy of his sons; was deposed in a general assembly on the spot, and Lothaire proclaimed in his stead. Lewis was, by the bishops of Lothaire's faction, to prevent his return to the throne, sentenced to do penance for life; and being much intimidated submitted, in the presence of his son Lothaire, to read a confession drawn up for him, divest himself of his royal robes, and put on the penitential cloth, having a cell assigned him. However, the deposed monarch found pity, and Lothaire hatred: his two brothers united against him; Lewis was restored, and Lothaire obliged publickly to

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 840.

beg for mercy at his father's feet ; when he was permitted to retain the kingdom of Italy. The restless ambition of the empress, after this, occasioned fresh disturbances ; but when the emperour was marching against his son Lewis, king of Bavaria, he was suddenly seized with an illness, which brought him to his grave in the twenty-eighth year of his reign. The decease of Lewis only opened the way to sanguinary contests between his sons : Lothaire considered himself as emperour, and determined not to rest satisfied only with the title, hoping easily to reduce his brother Lewis of Bavaria, and Charles, a lad of only seventeen. These, united by common interest, gave him battle near Fontenay in Burgundy, where an hundred thousand men are said to have fallen. Lothaire and his nephew Pepin, the son of his deceased brother of the same name, were totally defeated ; and the former fled towards Italy, and the latter to Aquitaine. The conquerours called an assembly of bishops, in which Lothaire was declared to have forfeited his kingdom, and it was divided between the victorious brothers. Whether by again rendering himself formidable, or by entreaty, Lothaire obtained a new division of the empire ; by which he was left in possession of the kingdom of Italy, and the imperial dignity, and to him were allotted the countries situate between the Rhone and the Alps, the Meuse and the Rhine ; all beyond the Rhine were ceded to Lewis, who took the title of king of Germany ; and Charles had the rest, with the title of king of France. The extinction of the civil war removed but one of the evils which afflicted the empire of Charlemagne : the turbulence of the nobles, and the discontents of the clergy, and the ambition of both occasioned new troubles. To diminish these, the three brothers entered into an association, by which the enemies of one were to be deemed those of all ; and in an assembly holden at Mersen, they settled certain constitutions relative to the succession and other publick matters. Lothaire now appointed his son Lewis king of Italy, who was afterwards crowned by the pope, whose foot he condescended to kiss. Some years after this, Lewis having repaired to his father, who associated him in the empire, the Saracens made an irruption into Apulia, when Lewis returning, defeated them in several engagements. Complaints being made, that the ancient

A. D. 855.

discipline of the Church was greatly relaxed, Lewis, in obedience to his father's orders, assembled a council at Tesino, by which an enquiry being instituted into the lives of the bishops and other clergy, a most unfavourable report was made of the conduct of both them and their flocks. Some months after this died pope Leo the fourth, and was succeeded by Benedict the third: the emperor Lothaire, too, died in the same year, having previously assumed the monkish habit, and made a division of his dominions among his three sons. Lewis had Italy, with the title of emperor; Lothaire the provinces between the Rhone, the Saone, the Meuse, the Scheldt, and the Rhine, called from his own name the kingdom of Lotharingia, and by corruption Lorrain; Charles had declared his infant son king of Aquitaine. These subdivisions of the empire were the source of reiterated wars among themselves; while the Normans spread devastation in France itself from Rouen to Paris: young Pepin joined the invaders. Nomenoë, duke of Bretagne, took the title of king, which Charles was obliged to confirm to his son Herispec, by whom he had been totally defeated. Some factious nobles now invited Lewis the German to usurp his brother's kingdom, which he did, and was publicly crowned: but after being persuaded by some secret adherents of Charles to send back his army and dissipate his treasure, the latter recovered his throne as easily as he lost it: and Lewis about this time became engaged in a war with the pagan nations beyond the Elbe, the Sclavi and others, inhabiting the present countries of Pomerania, Mecklenburgh, &c. While France was rent by the above-mentioned disturbances, the Normans not only pillaged the coasts, but seated themselves on the Seine and the Somme. About this time the emperor Lewis erected Holland into a county, in favour of a son of the earl of Frise. Nicholas the first, now pope, made no small strides in extending the authority of the see of Rome, and realizing their claims as universal bishops: he asserted his dominion over the French clergy, by re-establishing Rothade of Soissons, deposed by a provincial council, and he received appeals from all ecclesiasticks dissatisfied with their bishops. He gave, in the following terms, orders for the succession to the kingdom of Provence: "Let no one hinder the emperor from governing the kingdoms

which he holds in virtue of a succession confirmed by the holy see, and by the crown which the sovereign pontiff has set upon his head." Nicholas died in eight hundred and sixty-seven; but his successor, Adrian the second, deviated so little from his principles, that he deemed it great condescension to permit Lothaire, king of Lorraine, to come to Rome to justify himself, and do penance for having divorced his wife and taken another. This king died on his return, and Charles the Bald seized his dominions, though he was at length obliged to share them with his brother Lewis the German. The remonstrances the pope made on this occasion were freely answered by the famous Hincmar, bishop of Rheims, who admonished him of the respect which the ancient pontiffs always paid to princes. When the pope found all his menaces ineffectual, he changed his tone, and endeavoured to win Charles, by flattering him with the promise of the empire after the death of Lewis the second, then in a languishing condition; and on his dying without male heirs, though Lewis the German claimed the imperial dignity as the elder brother of Charles, the then pope John the eighth, who had succeeded Adrian, preferred the claim of Charles; who crossed the Alps at the head of an army, and received the imperial crown as a present from the pope, and in an assembly of the Italian nobles and prelates at Pavia he was acknowledged in the following impious terms: "Since the Divine favour, through the merits of the holy Apostles, and of their vicar pope John, has raised you to the empire, according to the judgment of the Holy Ghost, we elect you unanimously for our protector and lord." While Charles was in Italy, Lewis king of Germany invaded France; but on hearing that Charles was returning with his army, retired into his own dominions; where he soon after died. His dominions were divided among his three sons: Carloman became king of Bavaria, with other large territories added to it; Lewis king of Germany, having Saxony, Franconia, and other provinces; all the country between the Maine and the Alps fell to Charles the Gross, who has been called king of Almain. The emperor conceiving that the brethren would not agree, attempted to seize part of Lorraine; but Lewis king of Germany met and defeated him with great slaughter of his troops; while the news of the Normans having sailed

up the Seine, recalled him to the defence of his own dominions. The pope being distressed by an attack of the Saracens solicited the emperor to march into Italy to his assistance; but scarce was he arrived there, when he received advice of his nephew Carloman advancing to seize the imperial crown and the kingdom of Italy, in virtue of his father's will. Charles retreated precipitately, and on his retreat died of poison administered to him by a Jewish physician: A. D. 877. ere his decease, he appointed his only son his successor; who is marked by the title of Lewis the Stammerer, and whose reign was remarkable only for the pope's then retiring into France, and holding at Troyes a council, where many canons were made in support of episcopal power, and one more particularly observable, for its forbidding all persons, of what dignity soever, to sit in the presence of a bishop without his permission; for a treaty concluded with Lewis king of Germany, and for a rebellion begun by the marquis of Languedoc, in marching to suppress which, the king was seized with an illness, which quickly put an end to his life. He left two sons by A. D. 879. his first consort, and his second queen Adelaide was, some time after his decease, delivered of a son, who was named Charles. After an interregnum occupied with intrigues among the great men, it was determined, that both the sons of the deceased king, Lewis and Carloman, should be crowned. This resolution was brought about by duke Boson, whose daughter Carloman had married; and he afterwards prevailed to have a new kingdom erected, called the kingdom of Arles or Provence, comprehending the best part of the South East of France, and the crown of it bestowed on himself. The two kings, stript of no small part of their rights, passed a short reign not inactive, in endeavouring to recover something that had been taken from them, and to defend the remainder; but Lewis was seized with his last illness, as he was advancing to assist the duke of Bretagne against the Normans; and Carloman, who on his death was saluted by the French nobility as their sovereign, was two years afterwards accidentally slain, as he was hunting. Instead of now giving the crown to his brother Charles, they elected Charles the Fat, son of Lewis the German, and who was already emperor and successor to his two brothers. This prince re-united under his sway all the

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

empire of Charlemagne, except the kingdom of Arles: but his incapacity for a command so extensive soon manifested itself. Having ceded Friezland to the Normans, and promised them a tribute, he gave Henry duke of Saxony authority to negociate with them as he pleased; and he had their king Godfrey murdered at a conference to which he had invited him. Enraged at this, they entered France, and advancing as far as Paris laid siege to it, and at length were induced to move from before it only by the promise of a sum of money, which the emperour being unable to raise immediately, he permitted them to ravage Burgundy. Having entirely disgraced himself by so ignominious a treaty, the emperour sunk in body and in mind; and at length was deposed in a diet of the empire. In the imperial dignity he was succeeded by Arnold, a natural son of Carloman king of Bavaria, by whom the deposed monarch was poorly supported until his death, which happened a few months afterwards. Italy submitted alternately to Berengarius, duke of Friuli, and to Guy, duke of Spoleto, both by their mothers of the family of Charlemagne, and whose contests were long and sanguinary. Count Eudes, whose valour had saved Paris from the Normans, was elected king of France, which crown he agreed to hold in trust for Charles the Simple, yet a minor: yet to content a faction, Eudes ceded to the minor the greater part of the kingdom. Count Rodolph, or Ralph, established the kingdom of Burgundy Transjuran, which comprehended nearly the present Switzerland and Franche Comté, and a council confirmed to Lewis, the son of Boson, the kingdom of Arles. Eudes died without being able to remedy the disorders of the state; and Charles the Simple, now acknowledged king of France in his own right, increased by his weakness the prevailing evils: and thus in the Western empire closed the ninth century.

Transactions
in Spain
during the
9th century.

The ninth century opened in Spain with a complete defeat of the Moors by Alonso; which was strangely followed by a rebellion of some of his own subjects, and his temporary deposition: for by a general insurrection of the people he was quickly restored to the possession of his power, which he employed in improving and strengthening his dominions, while the Moors were engaged in a war with the king of Aquitaine, who had taken Barcelona from them. But when this war

ceased, two armies of Moors successively entered the dominions of Alonso, both of which he defeated, and thus obtained a truce. Yet on the part of the Moors this was made only to entrap him; since the next year they made another irruption, still with so little success, that Alhacan, king of Cordova, afterwards remained quiet for several years. At length he sent two considerable armies to attempt the recovery of some of the country which had been taken from him; but these both receiving a signal defeat on the same day, Alonso was, by the retreat of his enemies, left at liberty to proceed in his care of the internal concerns of his kingdom. On the death of Alhacan, king of Cordova, and the succession of his son Abderrahman the second, a civil war breaking out among the Moors, Mahamut, a very valiant and experienced officer, threw himself under the protection of Alonso, who appointed him, and the troops he brought with him, to defend the frontiers of Portugal. After faithfully discharging this trust for seven years, Mahamut revolted to Abderrahman: but being quickly slain, and his army defeated, with the loss of fifty thousand men, by Alonso and his cozen prince Ramiro; the castle of which he had taken possession, and stored with spoils of very great value, fell into the hands of the king, who in some other engagements effectually broke the spirit of the Moors. Alonso now finding the infirmities of age come upon him, recommended to the states Don Ramiro for his successor, and on his election resigned to him the administration; surviving this retreat from business about thirteen years. At the time of Alonso's decease, the absence of Ramiro from his capital, encouraged count Nepotian, an artfull and ambitious nobleman, to persuade several persons of high distinction to give him the title of king. But though he got together a great number of troops to support him, no sooner did he approach the army of Ramiro, than they began to desert; and two of those who had been his warmest followers delivered him up to the king, by whom he was deprived of his eyes, and put into a monastery for life. Ramiro had to begin his reign with clearing the roads of robbers, and the villages of sorcerers: after which the Normans making a descent at Corunna, he defeated them with so prodigious a slaughter, besides their loss in prisoners and the best part of their fleet, that they ventured not to make a second

A. D. 842.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

descent on his territories. A conspiracy and consequent revolt, which next broke out, were as quickly reduced. On advice of these troubles, however, Abderrahman king of Cordova invaded the dominions of Ramiro, but was defeated with a vast loss, of men. The king's son, Ordogno, by distinguishing himself in this battle gave his father an opportunity of recommending him to the favour of the nobility, and they elected that prince for his coadjutor and successor. Not long after, Abderrahman made an irruption, but which only gave occasion to the most signal victory of Ramiro's whole reign. This illustrious monarch died after having reigned seven years complete. On Ordogno's now continuing the administration of affairs in his own name, some disturbances arose, which he soon quieted; cutting off two great bodies of Moors, who attempted to make a diversion in favour of the malcontents. A new civil war breaking out in the kingdom of Cordova, he sent troops to assist one party, and though eight thousand of these were slain, he continued his support; and while the Moors were thus kept in employment, he fortified the chief cities in his own dominions: but afterwards, inconsistently with this policy, he attacked the principal Moorish rebel, and slew ten thousand of his men and himself. From giving further support to the rebellious Moors, Ordogno was prevented by the appearance of the Normans on his coasts, who were, however, defeated and repelled. The king of Cordova, in revenge for the assistance sent to the revolted inhabitants of Toledo, invaded the dominions of Ordogno, but was obliged to retreat with great loss; and the last in return took Salamanca and Coria. Alonso, the son of Ordogno, having greatly signalized himself in these wars, the king proposed the association of him in the kingdom, which was accepted. After this, the king had still further success against the Moors; and, there is some reason to believe, not only extended his dominions by land, but, what none of his predecessors attempted, raised a naval power: thus covered with glory, Ordogno died of the gout. Alonso, though only eighteen, was readily received by the nobility as their sovereign; yet the commander of the army in Gallicia drove him from Oviedo, but was there assassinated, as soon nearly as he had usurped the throne; and Alonso on his return was received with

A. D. 850.

A. D. 862.

general acclamations. Having after this quelled two revolts in Alava, he was attacked by Mahamut, king of Cordova, over whose troops he gained two signal victories. The same year he married a celebrated female, named Ximene, descended from the illustrious house of Navarre; and in consequence of that marriage entered into a league offensive and defensive against the Moors, and conquered several places from them; and then he listened to the ambassadors of the king of Cordova, and granted him a truce: after which, by repairing and rebuilding and fortifying different places, he secured the interior of his territory from hostile ravages. When the truce expired, the king of Cordova renewed hostilities, but with as little success as ever; and at length was compelled to beg another truce for three years. When this expired, Alonso again entered the territories of Mahamut, and defeated with great slaughter the Moorish army; and while he was thus employed, his capital was fortified, and a palace built for him in it. But the next year, at the request of the king of Cordova, another truce, equally honourable and advantageous to Alonso, was concluded for six years. This prince, now in years, would willingly have employed the remainder of his reign in works of peace; but his attempts to ameliorate the condition of the common people, gave such umbrage to some of the nobility, that the rest of his days were disturbed with seditions, little merited by either what he had done, or what he wished to do for the common good. Having mentioned above, that this monarch married a princess of Navarre, it is proper, ere further progress is made in the history of Spain, to inform the reader, that about forty years after the commencement of the kingdom of Oviedo, a large company of gentlemen who dwelt in the Pyrenees, encouraged by the example of the inhabitants of Asturias, combined to throw off the yoke of the Moors, and elected a person of high distinction, supposed to be descended from the ancient Spaniards, and named Garcia Ximenes, for their chief. On the death of this prince, his son Garcia Inigas succeeded him, and enlarged his territories: Garcia Inigas at his decease left his dominions to Fortune Garcia, his son, highly celebrated, like his father, for his valour and virtues. A son of his, Sancho Garcia, conquered the country now known by the name of Navarre, and fixed

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

his residence at Pampeluna. In his son, Ximenes Garcia, the royal family becoming extinct, an interregnum ensued; during which was made the code of laws, entitled the laws of Sobrarva, whence all the privileges and immunities of the people of Aragon are derived. Navarre after this was sometimes in possession of the French, being conquered by Charlemagne, sometimes in that of the Moors; until a count Aznar, who had been in the service of Lewis the Debonair, revolting from his son Pepin, king of Aquitaine, and retiring with what Gascons would follow him into the least accessible mountains on the frontiers of Spain, was succeeded by his brother, count Sancho, in his small estates; who extended them in such a manner as to join part of Aragon and Navarre to Sobrarva: he left his principality to his son Garcia. Many little chiefs of the Gascons, displeased with Charles the Bald, put themselves under his protection, which rendered him much more formidable than his predecessors. But after having greatly improved his principality by erecting fortresses, and enlarging the towns, he was slain in a battle between Ordogno, king of Oviedo, and Muza, the revolted governour of Saragossa, fighting on the side of the latter, whose daughter he had married. To him succeeded his son, Garcia Iniguez, or Ximenes; and, either at his accession, or within three years after, assumed the title of king; and was, properly speaking, the first king of Navarre. This prince reigned twenty-three years with great and deserved reputation, as they were employed not only in enlarging his territories, but in making his people happy. On his decease he was succeeded by his eldest son, Fortune Garcia: he governed, both wisely and worthily, to beyond the close of the ninth century. To return, then, to the kings of Oviedo. The disturbances already mentioned lasted to near the end of the century; and when tranquillity was restored, in the very last year of it Alonso held, with the consent of the pope, it is observed, a general council of his clergy, as well as a great assembly of the states at Oviedo.

A. D. 880.

A. D. 900.

Transactions
in Britain
during the
9th century.

Having already brought down the specifick history of each kingdom of the heptarchy to the period of its dissolution, it now comes in order to give the history of that successfull prince who united them all under his dominion. This was Egbert, king of Wessex, whose

great knowledge of politicks, acquired during his residence in the court of Charlemagne, gave him a decided superiority over the cotemporary kings: this he perceived as soon as he was seated on the throne, and resolved to make use of the advantage. The first seven years he employed in settling the affairs of his own kingdom, which he did in such manner as to gain the love and esteem of his subjects. His first expedition was against the Britons in Cornwall, the whole of which province he reduced to his obedience in one campaign: the next, he attacked the Welsh, on the plea of their having intended to assist their brethren in Cornwall, and reduced Venedocia, one of the three kingdoms into which Wales was then divided. At length, on the death of Cenulph, king of Mercia, Egbert was invested with the sovereignty of the Anglo-Saxons. Circumstances, now, favoured his ambitious project of subduing the other four kingdoms; for to five were all that did form the heptarchy now reduced. After defeating the king of Mercia, who, suspecting his designs, attacked him first, he, by his son Ethelwulph, subdued the kingdom of Kent; after which he made himself master of that of Essex. East Anglia was at this time subject to Mercia; Egbert, therefore, secretly encouraged the inhabitants to vindicate their independence; and they, not penetrating into the cause of the advice, resorted to arms, but, after some success, were in danger of being overpowered, when Egbert joined in the war, and compelled the king of Mercia to pay him both homage and tribute. The East Angles, too, were glad to be received under his protection, on nearly the same terms. Northumberland, now, alone remained free from the dominion of Egbert; but distracted by parties, and harassed by the Scots, it was unable to make any resistance to him; and therefore on his marching against them, they and their king submitted on the same terms that were granted to the Mercians and East Angles. Thus were the seven kingdoms of the Anglo-Saxons reduced under the dominion of the king of Wessex. Whilst Egbert was enjoying the fruits of his victories, the Danes, of whom some account has already been given, and more particulars will hereafter be added, and who had before made two descents on England, arrived with thirty-five vessels at Charmouth in Dorsetshire, and on Egbert's marching against them defeated him,

but satisfied with plundering that part of the country, returned to their ships. But, two years after, another band landed in Cornwall, and being joined by some of the Britons came to an engagement with Egbert, in which that monarch gained a signal victory over them. With this ended the remarkable particulars of Egbert's reign, who died after having worn the crown of Wessex thirty-seven years: his only son Ethelwulph inherited the crown. The Danes by repeated invasions, in which both the king and his generals were defeated, and the country, particularly Kent and Middlesex, suffered much, induced Ethelwulph to diminish the cares of his government by resigning to Athelstan, his natural son, the kingdoms of Kent, Essex, and Sussex, with the title of king of Kent. A little prior to this step, Kenneth the second, king of Scotland, entirely extirpated the Picts. Roderic the Great, then king of Wales, attacked Mercia; but on Ethelwulph advancing to the assistance of his vassal, its king, the Welsh prince asked and obtained peace. This Roderick distributed his dominions among his three sons, by which means Wales was divided into the three kingdoms of Venedotia, Demetia, and Powis. The Danes now visited England once a year, for the sake of plunder; but a signal victory being gained over them in the year eight hundred and forty-five, the English remained unmolested in the South for some years: yet into Northumberland, where the divisions rendered them always acceptable to the weakest party, they made frequent incursions. At length, however, they landed on the coast of Wessex, and though then entirely routed, and afterwards beat by Athelstan, they the next spring came up the Thames with two or three hundred vessels, and landed near London, and plundered both that city and Canterbury; but at last, engaging the two kings at Okely in Surrey, they were defeated, and almost all put to the sword: Athelstan seems not long to have survived this victory. Ethelwulph's religious disposition induced him to grant to the Church the tithes of all his dominions, and to send his youngest son Alfred, then about five years old, to Rome: neither was he satisfied without visiting that city himself, where Leo the fourth gave him an honourable reception: on his way home, he in France married Judith, a daughter of Charles the Bald, only twelve years old. In the mean time a con-

spiracy was forming against him in England; the final event of which was, that Ethelwulph was obliged to resign the ancient kingdom of Wessex to his eldest son Ethelbald, and content himself with that of Kent, comprising also Essex and Sussex. This partition of his dominions Ethelwulph survived but two years; when by his will he devised his dominions to Ethelbert his second son, then to Ethelred his third, and lastly to Alfred his youngest. Ethelbald's reign in Wessex was not signalized by any thing but his vicious indulgences; nor did he survive his father more than two years and an half: when Ethelbert again united the two kingdoms. Immediately after Ethelbert's coronation, the Danes made a descent, and penetrating as far as Winchester, the metropolis of Wessex, reduced it to ashes; but were prevented from proceeding farther, and driven back to their ships. Another time they came in autumn, and wintered in the Isle of Thanet, and when they had received a sum of money, on condition of departing, rushed into Kent and ravaged the country; but finding the king was raising an army, they hastily embarked with their plunder. After a reign of six years Ethelbert died, and was, in compliance with the will of Ethelwulph, succeeded by his brother Ethelred, though he left two sons of his own. Ethelred's reign was spent in one continued conflict with the Danes, and though he on all occasions gave signal proofs of courage and conduct, he was not always successfull. The authority of the successors of Egbert over the tributary kingdoms was now much lessened, and that of Northumberland had become quite independent; when, from the misconduct of Osbert its monarch, it was soon divided, as formerly, into two kingdoms. But earl Bruern, who to revenge himself on Osbert had caused this, proceeded to advise Ivar, king of Denmark, to take advantage of the distracted state of Northumberland: the Dane readily complied, and having defeated and slain both the Northumbrian kings, he took possession of their country, and had afterwards the same success in East Anglia; and lastly, attacking Wessex, Ethelred fell in defending it. After his decease, his brother Alfred was placed on the throne: scarcely was he settled in it, when he was obliged to face the Danes, and received a defeat; yet such were his exertions in recruiting his forces, that the Danes sued for peace,

A. D. 857.

A. D. 860.

A. D. 866.

A. D. 872.

and left his dominions, on condition that he should molest them in no other part of England. They then retired to London, which they had taken during the war: after committing two most nefarious breaches of faith with Buthred, king of Mercia, they obliged him to abandon his dominions, of the whole of which they took possession. Though the Danes were now masters of the rest of England, they looked with an evil eye on the kingdom of Wessex; but the resistance they had there met with, induced them to make an alliance with Alfred for the present, when they applied themselves to the cultivation of their lands, as now being their own, and peace and tranquillity appeared to be about to return to the long and miserably ravaged country. But another band of Danes, under a leader named Halfden, made their appearance, whose repeated breach of covenant convincing Alfred that more effectual measures were necessary to the preservation of his dominions, he convoked a general assembly, and made to his people one of those fair appeals to which the English have seldom been insensible. An army was levied, and the enemy encountered seven times in one campaign: yet was Alfred constrained once more to treat with the Danes, who observed this last treaty better than they had done those before. Still another body of their countrymen arrived, but finding Alfred ready to receive them, Rollo their leader turned his course towards France. Alfred having now some leisure to reflect on future modes of defence, determined to equip a fleet, and quickly found the advantage of possessing one. His fleet chasing six or seven Danish vessels captured one, and threw the whole crew overboard: again attacking an hundred and twenty Danish vessels, it sunk the greater part of them. These successes encouraging Alfred to attack the Danes in the West, he recovered Exeter out of their hands, and expelled them entirely from Wessex: they then retired into Mercia, and there mixing with their countrymen, they unanimously deposed Ceolulph, the king, and dividing the land among themselves, put an end to the kingdom of Mercia. Halfden, above mentioned, took the same steps in Northumberland: still the three kingdoms of the heptarchy, which the Danes possessed, sufficed not for settlements for the numbers who continued to arrive; they therefore united in an attack on the dominions of Alfred, and

rapidly marching to Chippenham,* then one of the finest and strongest cities of the kingdom, took it in a few days; the terror excited by which, rendered the West Saxons incapable of further resistance: so that some fled into Wales, others beyond sea; while others went over to the Danes, and swore allegiance to them. Alfred being thus abandoned, dismissed the few domesticks who had not yet deserted him, and took refuge in a neat-herd's cottage, where he lay concealed until he was informed that the Danes had received an extraordinary and severe defeat from the earl of Devon, and an handful of men. He then acquainted his friends with the place of his retreat, directed them to draw together small bodies of troops in various places ready to unite on a sudden; and that he might certainly know the situation of the enemy, he entered the Danish camp under the disguise of an harper, and having observed the security in which they lay, returned to his friends, and appointed a general rendezvous for his troops; where putting himself at their head he attacked the Danes, and put nearly all their army to the sword; and the few that escaped to a castle were soon forced to capitulate. Alfred agreed to cede the lands of East Anglia to those who were willing to become Christians; but the rest were to quit the island immediately, never to return, and to give hostages for the performance of the treaty. To these conditions Guthurm, who then commanded the Danes, agreed, and with thirty of his chief officers came to Alfred, having embarked all those that refused to be baptized. The conquerour invested Guthurm with the title of king of East Anglia, and all the Danes in England swore allegiance to Alfred. But, unexpectedly, the most considerable of them, being unable to prevail with Guthurm to break the treaty, led by one Hastings put to sea, and ravaged the Flemish coast. Soon afterwards, another band as numerous sailed to join them; and having together committed the most cruel ravages in Flanders and Picardy, one of them returned to

* In Wiltshire, by the Saxons called 'Cyppanham,' now famous only for its market, whence it had its name; for 'cyppan' signifies to traffick, and 'cypman,' a merchant; and we still retain 'cheapen' and 'chapman.' Of the same original is Cheapside, London.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

England ; but, by Alfred's vigilance, were compelled to rejoin their companions. Alfred had now opportunity to turn his attention to strengthening the defences of his kingdom ; he equipped a considerable fleet, took the city of London out of the hands of the Danes, and fortified every part of his dominions. Such was the effect of these precautions, that Alfred had the satisfaction of experiencing a calm for twelve years ; at the end of which the Danes, who, under the conduct of Hastings, had been all that time ravaging France and the Low Countries, landed in two separate bodies in England, and, in spite of all which Alfred's activity and courage could do in defence of it, inflicted on the country miseries hardly to be described ; and deplorable was the state of it ere their roving bands retired ; which, it has been supposed, they at last did, through fear of the plague that then raged in England. After Alfred was thus freed from his enemies, he passed the rest of his days in profound tranquillity ; all the Danes settled in England acknowledging his authority, and even the Welsh becoming his tributaries. This season of peace the excellent monarch employed in the purposes to which it was adapted : he framed a body of laws ; he instituted trial by juries ; he appointed the limits of shires, hundreds, and tythings : the inhabitants were responsible for the behaviour of their families, and of all the strangers that appeared among them. He regulated, too, the militia of the country, so as to be ever ready to act in case of invasion ; while he kept a body of troops on foot in each county, under the command of the earl of it : he encouraged trade and commerce, and, it is said, even opened a communication with India. Neither was his attention less to the progress of learning ; for he founded three or four colleges. He appointed three councils for the discussion of state affairs ; a cabinet, and a privy council, besides the Wittenagemot annually holden. This monarch, whose private life was no less eminent than his publick, being one of the first scholars of his age, most munificent in his alms-giving, and exemplary in his devotions, died in the twenty-ninth year of his reign, and fifty-second of his age. And with his decease closes the tale of Britain during the ninth century.

A. D. 900.

Description
of Sweden,
with its

Some brief notices of the northern states of Sweden, Denmark, and Norway, begin to present themselves in this century. Of the origin

of the name of the first of these, the various accounts given are so little satisfactory, as not to justify detaining the reader with them : but that part of ancient Scandinavia which is known by it, is bounded by the Baltic, the Sound, and the Categate on the South ; by Norwegian Lapland on the North ; on the East it has Russia ; and on the West the almost impervious mountains of Norway. It extends from fifty-five degrees twenty-two minutes, to sixty-nine degrees thirty-one minutes North latitude, and from the eleventh to the thirty-second degree of East longitude from London. The climate of this country is healthfull ; for though the winters are extremely cold, the air is clear and salubrious. The coast is encompassed with very numerous islands ; and the country abounds with fresh-water lakes, and has likewise many considerable rivers. The province of Gothland produces a considerable quantity of wheat, rye, barley, oats, and peas : yet, to make up a supply for the inhabitants, several thousand quarters of grain are annually imported into the kingdom. The greater part of this is covered with woods ; the trees of which are mostly of the resinous kinds peculiar to cold climates, as pines, fir, juniper, though there is also beech, and some oak. There is one very considerable silver mine, and several of copper ; and those of iron are in great abundance. A variety of manufactures have been introduced into Sweden ; but from the little inclination to it which the natives possess, their commerce, it is said, is chiefly conducted by foreigners. Historians agree, that Sweden, like the rest of ancient Scandinavia, was first governed by judges, elected for a certain time by the people ; until Eric was raised to the monarchical dignity, who governed with applause, and augmented his dominions by planting colonies. After the death of Eric, whose reign the Swedish writers place in a period too remote to be credible, the inhabitants of Sweden were divided into factions, and harassed with civil wars for four hundred years. After which, though the names of some are mentioned before him, the first prince of whom any kind of history is given is Othen or Odin, said to have passed from Asia into Scandinavia, where he was raised to the throne. He is stated to have formed several wholesome laws, and carried the glory of Sweden to a great height ; yet in the time of his successor Niord, that kingdom

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

history, to the
end of the
9th century.

CHAPTER
III.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

is said to have been conquered by the sovereign of Moscovy ; but, after one descent, restored to Niord by a revolt of the subjects of it. To him succeeded his brother Frotho. The next undisputed successor of whom was Sigtrug ; whose dominions Gram, king of Denmark, conquered, and united to his own. But this conquerour, elated with his success, became so insolent and oppressive, that his new subjects rebelled, and he was either driven from the kingdom, or slain in battle by Suibdager, who succeeded to the crown. This prince, who was king of Norway, now united the three northern crowns ; and after him came a succession of princes, occupied in perpetual struggles with their neighbours ; some victorious, holding, as he did, the three Northern crowns, and even extending their conquests eastwards to the Russians and Livonians ; others vanquished by the Danes, until Regner, king of Denmark, having slain in single combat Charles, king of Sweden, placed his son Biorno on the throne ; who was the first Christian king of Sweden, and is said to have become so in the year eight hundred and thirty-one. The names of the intermediate sovereigns were as follows : Asmund, Uffo, Hunding, Regner, Holward, Hother, Roderic, Attilus, Hogmor and Hogrin, joint sovereigns, Alaric, Eric the second, Halden, Siward, Eric the third, Halden the second, Unguin, Regnald, Asmund the second, or Hamund, Hacquin, Egil Auniff, Gothar, Adel, Ostan, Inguar, Asmund the third, Siward the second, Hirat, Ingel. Biorno, however, held not the crown of Sweden to the end of his days ; but was expelled by the Swedes, tired of the Danish yoke. A third king, of the name of Asmund, was raised to the throne ; but afterwards, by a revolt of the people, driven from it, when Olaus, a son of Ingel, above mentioned, who had supported himself by husbandry, and from the number of trees which he had hewn was called Trætelga, or the Tree-cutter, was made king, and became a zealous Christian, which so enraged his pagan subjects, that because he refused to offer a sacrifice to their gods, they sacrificed him. The reign of his son Ingo seems to have occupied all the rest of the ninth century.

Description
of Denmark,
and its his-
tory, to the

Denmark, formerly denominated Cimbrica Chersonesus, is said to have received its present name from the founder of its monarchy Dan, the son of Humble. Denmark, including Holstein, is bounded

on the North by the Categate, by the Baltic on the East, the river Elbe on the South, and the North Sea on the West; extending from fifty-four degrees forty minutes, to fifty-eight degrees twenty minutes North latitude. Norway, which, until lately wrested from it, has for many centuries formed a part of the Danish dominions, and consequently in its history is almost entirely connected with it, extends from fifty-nine to seventy-one degrees North latitude; being bounded by the Ocean on the North and West, by Sweden on the East, and the Categate on the South. The island of Zealand, in which stands the metropolis of Denmark, Copenhagen, is about sixty leagues in circumference, not of extraordinary fertility, yet producing rye, its only grain, sufficient for the inhabitants. Though the face of the country is diversified with hills, woods, and lakes, there is not in it one river, and only a very few brooks sufficient to turn a mill. The only timber found in any quantity on this island is beech: here are only two seasons, winter and summer. But though the produce of this island be but little, other parts of the Danish dominions are fertile: the province of Jutland abounds in cattle, and is not deficient in corn: the duchy of Sleswick abounds in both: Holstein, too, is a pleasant, fruitfull country: so that, on the whole, the Danish dominions afford most of the conveniences of life, though they furnish but few articles of luxury or commerce. Nearly all historians agree that Dan, the son of Humble, who governed Zealand for his ancient father, was the first monarch of Denmark: it was for driving the Saxons out of Jutland, that he was chosen king of that country, so that on the death of his father he was left monarch of Jutland, Zealand, Langland, and Mona; so early, it is stated, as more than a thousand years before the commencement of our æra. The succession of kings from Dan presents a scene, mixed, however, with more extraordinary anecdotes, (but of the detail of which the nature of the present Work admits not) similar to that exhibited by the early history of Sweden, with several circumstances common to both countries. The monarchs that occupied the time to the commencement of the ninth century were Humble, the son of Dan, Lothar, Skioldo, Gram, Suibdager, Guthorm, Hadding, Frotho the first, Haldane, Roe and Helgo, Rolfo, Hother, Rorick, Viglet, Guiltach, Vermund, Olaus, Dan the second,

Hugleth, Frotho the second, Dan the third, Fridleff, Frotho the third, Hiarn, Fridleff the second, Frotho the fourth, Ingell, Olaus the second, Frotho the fifth, and Harold, Haldane the second, and Harold the second, Unguin, or Haguin, Siwald, Sigar, Siwald the second, Haldane the third, Harold the third, Olo or Olaus the third, Omund, Siward, Bathul, Jarmerci, Broder, Siwald the third, the same and Snio, Biorno, Gorman, Gotrick, Olaus the third, Hemming, Siward and Ringo. The consequence of Denmark being divided between these two kings was incessant jealousy and perpetual wars, in which at last they both fell in the same engagement, when Regner, the son of the former, was placed on the throne, who proved an able and a most valiant monarch, signalizing himself not only against his neighbours, but against powers more remote. He subdued Saxony, defeated the emperor Lotharius, and conquered Britain; where, however, he was at last overpowered, and basely put to a painful and disgraceful death. To the vacant throne of Denmark was raised Ivar, the son of the murdered monarch, who took ample vengeance for the cruel death of his father on the English king Hella. Ivar reigned but five years, but during them acquired the reputation of a warlike and great prince. To him succeeded his brother Siward, whose crown was inherited by his infant son Eric: but this young prince was deposed by another Eric, who, by means of a faction, assumed the title of king. He reduced, even by the fame of his preparations, both Saxony and England beginning to revolt; after which he embraced Christianity; and then it spread rapidly among his subjects. A civil war, however, being at length excited in favour of the rightful heir, the usurper was slain in it, and young Eric again ascended the throne: on which he, too, after first persecuting the Christians, embraced their doctrine; and, by the persuasion of Ansgarius, bishop of Bremen, appointed persons properly qualified to teach it in every part of the kingdom. Eric on his decease left an only son, named Canute, on account of whose minority the states of the kingdom chose a nobleman of great wisdom and valour, named Ennignup, to have for life the regal authority and title, with reversion to Canute, or his children. But Olaus, king of Sweden, as soon almost as Ennignup had taken possession of his new dignity, seized

the crown, kept it, and transmitted it to his son Siward, who some years afterwards was slain in an insurrection of the Danes; and Canute, now of age, ascended the throne of his fathers. The chief circumstance of note in his reign is, that Norway, under the conduct of Harold, surnamed Yellow-hair, entirely shook off the Danish yoke. Canute was succeeded by his son Frotho the sixth: England having revolted during his predecessor's reign, he reduced it to submission; and proved on the whole an excellent prince. Having married Emma, daughter of the king of England, he left by her a son, named Gormo, who succeeded him: this prince, who was born and educated in England, after a short reign of four years left the crown to his son, Harold the fifth; who imitated the peacefull conduct of his father, and transmitted the crown to his son, Gormo the third, without additional lustre or stain. The history of Denmark, being now brought down to the end of the ninth century, must here be suspended.

Norway is said to have been peopled by Fins and Laplanders, and until the ninth century divided into twenty or more petty monarchies, being, as may be supposed, in a more savage state than Denmark or Sweden; from the ancient royal family of which last, their monarchs, when the country was reduced to one monarchy, seem to have sprung. The sovereignty, which was originally founded in the South East part, around the site of the modern city of Christiana, was extended by degrees; but it was not till after the end of this century that Harold Harfagre became master of all Norway.

State of
Norway
during the
ninth cen-
tury.

CHAPTER IV.

Transactions in Europe during the tenth Century.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

THIS century opened at Constantinople with the emperor Leo's taking as his second wife a most beautiful woman, whom he had before entertained as a concubine; on whose death he married another, and on her decease a fourth; the ecclesiastical censure passed on him for which, gave rise to some disturbances. Some time previous to his fourth marriage, an attempt was made to assassinate the emperor: the assassin was taken and executed; but even torture could not make him discover any accomplices. The Saracens having in the following year, besides making other conquests, taken the island of Lemnos, Leo, unable to oppose them at sea, sent into the East a powerful army to attack them by land, which gained several victories; they next year renewed their attacks, and were again defeated: but in the last year of Leo's reign they totally routed the imperial fleet. This emperor died after a reign of twenty-five years, leaving only one son, named Constantine, and him but five years old: the empire he, therefore, bequeathed to his own brother Alexander, intreating him to leave it at his death to Constantine, whom he recommended to his care. Leo published a compilation of laws in sixty books, which he called his *Basilicæ*, collected from the code, edicts, and novellæ of Justinian, and the constitutions of succeeding emperours. This work was revised and corrected by his son Constantine; and, so corrected, continued to be the foundation of the Greek jurisprudence to the end of the empire. The new

emperour, Alexander, reigned long enough to prove himself utterly unworthy of his station by his infamous debaucheries, which, happily for his subjects, brought on his death at the end of thirteen months: he declared his nephew Constantine his successor: but having appointed for his guardians individuals who were both despised and detested, this encouraged Constantine Ducas, the son of Leo's general of the last name, to make an attempt on the crown, in which he was slain. The king of the Bulgarians during these troubles ravaged Thrace, and attacked Constantinople; being repulsed before which, he made overtures of peace, which were readily accepted. The regents now disagreeing, the dowager empress, Zoe, was recalled at the earnest request of the people, as well as that of her son; and soon getting into her hands all the power, removed the favourites of the emperour Alexander, and put others better qualified round the young monarch. But short was the duration of her power; for the Bulgarians having renewed the war, and given the imperial troops a most destructive defeat, the commander of the last, named Leo, returning to court, began intrigues against the admiral, Romanus, who as well as himself had conceived a design on the empire; but the faction of the last prevailing, Leo was punished as a traitor, while Romanus caused himself to be proclaimed emperour. The next year he had two of his sons crowned, and so high arose his insolence, that he ordered himself to be named before Constantine in all publick edicts. The dignity he had thus usurped, Romanus held for twenty-four years, during which, after his troops being defeated by the Bulgarians, he concluded a marriage between their king Peter and a grand-daughter of his own; entirely destroyed a fleet of the Saracens, and defeated them by land; and the Rossi, who inhabited the European Sarmatia, and were known to the ancients by the names of Roxolani and Bastarnæ, with a numerous fleet they had fitted out, committed dreadful ravages on the coasts of the empire; but were at length nearly all cut off by the Roman forces. At this time some individuals in high credit with Romanus, being gained by Constantine, excited Stephen, the usurper's youngest son, to seize and confine his father in a monastery. Stephen then caused himself to be proclaimed emperour, which occasioning a difference between

A. D. 948.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

him and his elder brother, gave Constantine an opportunity of seizing and sending both into banishment ; in which they died. Constantine, thus restored to his former authority, caused his son Romanus to be crowned. The Saracens breaking into the empire with a large army, were repeatedly defeated, and suffered much by the emperor's generals ; while their countrymen in Crete utterly defeated the force sent against them. Some time after which Romanus, the emperor's son, suborned one of the attendants at his table to poison his father, who by accident took only enough of the potion to endanger, not destroy his life. Ere the end of the year, however, he was seized with his last illness, and died after having reigned fifty-three years : Romanus, succeeding his father, reigned alone somewhat more than three years, during which, though possessed of eminent abilities, he committed the government to a favourite, named Joseph, and resigned himself entirely to debauchery. Yet one of his generals, Nicephorus Phocas, recovered the island of Crete from the Saracens ; and his brother Leo obtained over them in the East a most important victory ; to which the former afterwards added another on the borders of Syria. Romanus left two sons, Basilius and Constantine ; but being very young, their mother Theophano took on her the administration. But Joseph still retaining great influence, his jealousy of Nicephorus, to whom the empress shewed great honour, incited him to such measures as made that commander usurp the sovereignty ; when he banished Joseph, and married the dowager empress. Nicephorus, though, by the inexperience of the commander to whom he entrusted it, he lost an army in Sicily by the Saracens, was in various places successful against them, and particularly in the recovery of Antioch to the empire. But the emperor, from superstition and groundless suspicion, treating both Burtzas, who surprized Antioch, and John Zimisces, another eminent commander, with ingratitude, they conspired with the empress Theophano, and murdered the emperor in his bed-chamber, in the seventh year of his reign. Nicephorus, thus assassinated, Zimisces was proclaimed emperor ; and, to secure himself on the throne, banished not only all the friends of the deceased, but the empress Theophano herself : yet he took her two sons, Basilius and Constantine, for his colleagues. The Saracens now

attempted to retake Antioch, but were defeated before it : the Rossi having expelled the Bulgarians and seized their country, ravaged Thrace, and laid siege to Adrianople ; but were totally defeated by the emperor's wife's brother, Bardas Sclerus. This success did not prevent a rebellion for the purpose of raising to the throne a nephew of the late emperor, named Bardas Phocas ; but this was without much difficulty suppressed : when Zimisces, with great solemnity, married Theodora, the sister or daughter of Romanus. After this, the emperor proceeded to obviate the hostile intentions of the Rossi, and after a series of military operations, in which he displayed very eminent courage and conduct, a treaty was concluded, by which the Rossi agreed to evacuate Bulgaria ; but on their return home were mostly cut off by a savage nation, through whose territories they passed. The emperor having caused all the towns on the Danube to be fortified, returned to Constantinople : from thence going into Asia, he there recovered several cities ; but observing the great acquisitions of Basilus the eunuch, who was his prime minister, and letting drop some expressions which that minister interpreted into a menace, he had poison ministered to him, by which this excellent sovereign was taken off after a reign of six years and an half. Basilus and Constantine now succeeded to the empire ; but the eldest of these being only nineteen years old, Basilus the eunuch assumed the administration of affairs ; recalling from exile Theophano, the mother of the princes. Being jealous of the influence of Bardas Sclerus, he removed him from the chief command of the forces, which led Sclerus to revolt, and assume the purple : this produced a civil war, which at length ended by the retreat of Sclerus to Babylon. The emperor Basilus having now taken the administration of affairs into his own hands, without consulting any of his generals, marched into Bulgaria. Bardas Phocas, who had vanquished Sclerus, offended at not being consulted, with the participation of his officers assumed the imperial title ; and Sclerus being at the same time released by the sultan of Babylon, joined Phocas, by whom he was soon after seized and thrown into prison. But the traitor enjoyed not long his treachery ; dying, it was supposed, by poison, as he was about to join battle with the imperial army. His forces were routed, and most of their leaders

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

taken and punished: yet those who escaped released Sclerus, and under him continued hostilities, until he was persuaded to submit, and return to Constantinople, where he was received and provided for by the emperor. After the conclusion of this war, Basilius visited his Eastern provinces; on his return from which, hearing that the Bulgarians had made an irruption into his dominions, he sent Nicephorus Uranus, commander of his forces, against them, who surprized and completely routed them; the king and his son with difficulty escaped into Bulgaria: and thus ended the tenth century in the empire of Constantinople.

Transactions
in Italy
during the
10th century.

The empire of the West continued during but a small part of the tenth century in the family of Charlemagne: it can, therefore, no longer be considered as a whole; but the history of the several portions of it must, as before, be separately recounted. To begin, therefore, with Italy: Arnolphus, king of Germany, who had received the imperial crown at the hand of Formosus, bishop of Rome, dying in the end of the year nine hundred, Lewis, king of Arles, was crowned king of Italy at Pavia, and the next year going to Rome received the imperial crown from the hands of pope Benedict the fourth. But Berengarius, duke of Friuli, and by his mother great-grandson of Charlemagne, who after the death of Charles the third had been crowned king of Italy, but driven out by the duke of Spoleto, though obliged at first to retire before Lewis, afterwards returned to Verona, surprized him, and had his eyes put out: Berengarius then took possession of the throne of Italy, on which he sat for twenty years. In the beginning of his reign the Hunns committed great ravages in Italy, and he was obliged to purchase their departure: in the second year of it died pope Benedict, and was succeeded by Leo the fifth, a man of abandoned character, but patronised by the faction of Theodora, either wife or concubine of Adelbert, duke of Tuscany, who had prostituted herself and her two daughters to several of the popes. Leo in forty days time was seized by Christopher, who compelled him to abdicate, and caused himself to be declared pope: but Sergius, an old aspirer at that dignity, seizing on Christopher, with the connivance of the count of Tuscany, then in possession of the castle of St. Angelo,

A. D. 906.

A. D. 907.

A. D. 910.

A. D. 912.

forced him to become a monk, and declared himself his successor. The transactions in Italy during the rest of the reign of Berengarius are obscurely delivered: the Hungarians and Saracens infested the country with irruptions. Sergius on his death was succeeded in the papacy by Anastasius the fourth, and he by Lando; on whose decease, without any election, John the tenth was, at the solicitation of Theodora, with whom he had an intrigue, thrust into the pontifical chair. This pope formed a coalition, by which the Saracens were nearly extirpated from Italy; and after that event he crowned Berengarius emperor. Intrigues were soon set on foot against the last, and at length a grand conspiracy was formed to call into Italy Rodolphus, king of Burgundy; who entering that country, was by Lambert, archbishop of Milan, crowned king of it, and then defeated the emperor in an engagement, and obliged him to flee to Verona; where he was the next year most basely assassinated in the church. On the news of his death, and of an irruption which the Hungarians immediately made into Italy, Rodolphus repaired thither; but by the absurdity of his conduct so perfectly alienated his friends from him, that the archbishop of Milan offered the crown of Italy to Hugh, count of Arles, grandson by a daughter to Lotharius, king of Lorraine; who, accepting the invitation, came by sea into Italy, and was crowned at Pavia. To strengthen himself in his new kingdom, Hugh entered into several foreign alliances,* nor did he neglect to form one with the doge of Venice, which republic had now risen into consequence. Vido, marquis of Tuscany, excited by his wife Marozia, daughter of the infamous Theodora, seized the person of the pope, and threw him into prison, where he was suffocated. Shortly after, Vido himself dying, Marozia offered herself in marriage to Hugh, who, by accepting the offer, became master of the city of Rome. But having by a gross insult offended Alberic, the son of Marozia, he so inflamed the citizens against him, that they expelled

A. D. 928.

* Among others he formed one with Romanus, the Greek emperor; and among the presents he sent to that sovereign were two large mastiffs, who, deceived by the imperial vestments, mistook his majesty for a wild beast, fell on him, and were with difficulty restrained from tearing him to pieces.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 929.

A. D. 931.

him, and resumed for a short time some appearance of liberty, appointing Alberic consul, and naming a prefect of the city and tribunes of the people, whom they called decarchons; paying no regard to the pope Leo the sixth, who had succeeded John the tenth, and was himself succeeded by Stephen the eighth; on whose decease in somewhat more than two years, Alberic appointed John the eleventh, another son of Marozia by pope Sergius. Hugh's cruel conduct to his half-brother Lambert so alienated the minds of the Italians from him, that they again offered their crown to Rodolphus; but he refusing to accept it, they next applied to Arnolphus, or Arnold, duke of Bavaria: who accordingly entered Italy, but was met and defeated by Hugh; after which victory the latter associated his son Lotharius in his kingdom: he then reduced many cities of the Roman territory, though Rome itself he could not. Yet his resentment against the inhabitants subsiding, he concluded a peace with Alberic, and gave him his daughter in marriage. When pope Leo the seventh, who had succeeded John the eleventh, died, Stephen the ninth, a German, was put into the pontifical chair: soon after whose promotion a futile conspiracy was formed against Hugh; but one of the leaders, Berengarius, son of Adelbert marquis of Ivica, retiring into Germany, returned a few years after, and being favourably received by many, and particularly by the archbishop of Milan, in that city acted as king: when Hugh, finding himself deserted, at length entered into an accommodation, by which he and his son Lotharius retained the title of king, but Berengarius had possession of the regal authority. This he employed in a most arbitrary manner, until Hugh, disgusted with his own situation, retired into Burgundy, and became a monk, and quickly afterwards died; when his son Lotharius was poisoned by the unprincipled Berengarius, who then caused himself to be crowned at Verona, and associated with him in his government his own son Adelbert. Finding after this, that he could not get the city of Pavia out of the hands of Adelaide, the widow of Lotharius, by fair means, he took it by force: but Adelaide herself escaping from his hands, offered herself in marriage to Otho, king of Germany, with her claim on the kingdom of Italy as her dower. Otho accepting the offer, marched into Italy, married Adelaide, reduced Pavia, and by

his son Conrad duke of Lorrain, on returning himself into Germany, compelled Berengarius to throw himself on his generosity, when he restored to him all his kingdom, except the marquisates of Verona and Friuli. This kindness Berengarius returned by taking the first opportunity of renewing hostilities; when he harassed Italy in a deplorable manner, until Otho again returned, on the offer of the imperial crown from pope John the twelfth: for Marinus the second having succeeded Stephen the ninth, and Agapetus the second Marinus, Octavianus, the son of Alberic, who, though in some holy orders, had succeeded his father in the government of Rome, on the decease of Agapetus, procured himself, then but eighteen years of age, to be elected pope, and took the name of John the twelfth. On his offer, then, Otho marched into Italy, and the bishops and nobles of Lombardy having assembled at Milan, and deposed Berengarius and his son Adelbert, he was crowned king of Italy with the iron crown; and after the following Christmas proceeded to Rome, and, having kissed the pope's feet, was crowned emperor. From the possession which Otho thus got of Italy it was for more than three hundred years considered as a part of the German empire: but the pope, unwilling to submit to the authority which the emperor now claimed, connected himself so with Adelbert as to bring Otho again to Rome, where he summoned a council of bishops, in which John was deposed, on charges of filling the palace with lewd women; of having an intrigue with a concubine of his father's; of ordaining a bishop in a stable; of making a child of ten years of age bishop of Tuder; and of drinking the devil's health. Leo, the chief secretary, though a layman, was elected to succeed him, and took the name of Leo the eighth: in gratitude to the emperor this new pontiff granted a bull, by which the right of appointing the popes was given to Otho and his successors. John now contrived to seduce the Romans to a revolt, but it was soon quelled: after which, Otho leaving Rome, John returned; and his party again prevailing, another council deposed Leo, and John began to rage with cruelty against his opponents; when, being surprised in bed with a Roman lady, he received a blow on the head, which in a few days proved mortal: on which Otho restored Leo. But he soon dying, with the

A. D. 943.

A. D. 946.

A. D. 955.

A. D. 964.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

- permission of Otho, the bishop of Nani was by the Romans chosen pope, and took the name of John the thirteenth : after which, the Romans revolting again, Otho, tired with their seditions, banished their consuls, and ordered their tribunes to be hanged ; a salutary measure, which would have prevented much mischief, had it been done now and then in the times of the republick. He then thought proper to have his son Otho crowned emperor, though only thirteen years of age : this gave offence to the Greek emperor Nicephorus who treating the ambassadors of Otho with indignity, and afterward practising perfidy against him, hostilities ensued, to the mutual loss of the monarchs, but were stopped by the death of Nicephorus ; from whose successor, John Zimisces, Otho obtained the princess Theophania, daughter-in-law of Nicephorus, in marriage for his son Otho.
- A. D. 973. The emperor now returning to Germany, in two years more died of an apoplexy : Otho, the second son of the late emperor, succeeding, great disturbances broke out in Italy, encouraged by which the emperors of the East, Basil and Constantine, invaded that country. To oppose these enemies Otho repaired to Italy, and after carrying on the war against them with various success for two years, he died of a dysentery. During the convulsions at Rome the pope had been murdered, and Franco, a deacon, placed on the papal throne, who took the name of Boniface the seventh ; but he being driven out, his place was filled by Benedict the seventh, approved of by Otho : but on the decease of this emperor, Boniface, above mentioned, returned from Constantinople, whither he had fled, and gaining a strong party, imprisoned the pope, and suffered him to be starved to death ; but he enjoyed his own restoration but four months, dying suddenly at the end of that time ; when he was succeeded by John the fifteenth.
- A. D. 984. Otho the third, who succeeded his father, found the Italians no less turbulent than his predecessors had ; he therefore came to Italy, and by force reduced the obstinate ; and was at Milan crowned king of Lombardy. Another vacancy now being made in the papal chair,
- A. D. 996. the emperor filled it with a relation of his own, who took the name of Gregory the fifth : then proceeding to Rome, he was crowned emperor. On his returning for Germany, Crescentius, who had for some time been the leader in the disturbances at Rome, though but

lately pardoned by the emperor, renewed his rebellious practices; but the emperor returning, reduced and ordered him to be put to death: after which, he made a decree, readily confirmed by the pope, that in future the emperor should be elected by the Germans only. Pope Gregory dying in the beginning of the next year, Gerbert, who had been preceptor to the emperor, was elected, and assumed the name of Sylvester the second. The emperor returning to Germany, was quickly recalled by an irruption of the Saracens, which he as quickly repelled; and then proceeding to Rome, produced a temporary tranquillity there by putting to death two who had been most guilty in the last seditions: and thus ended the tenth century in Italy.

A. D. 999.

Transactions
in France
during the
10th century.

It was in the reign of Charles, on whom was bestowed the depreciating title of the Simple, that the nobility of France, demanding confirmation to themselves and their heirs, of the governments of which they had acquired possession, generally obtained it on the easy terms of doing homage; hence sprang a number of little insupportable tyrannies, instead of one well-regulated monarchy: the Normans, too, for five or six years desolated the finest provinces in France. With the renowned Rollo Charles concluded a truce, as preparatory to a permanent treaty, and was afterwards persuaded by some of his principal lords to infringe it; which breach of faith caused such further depredations, that Charles submitted to marry one of his daughters, and give him, specifically as her dower, the province of Bretagne, in addition to what had been intended to be assigned him by the former treaty. Rollo, however, was to become a Christian, and do homage for his lands: in the former of these steps his example was followed by his principal officers; and the duchy of Normandy, so called from its new inhabitants, was by Rollo reduced into a well-regulated state, after the model of the French government. In the same year that the duchy of Normandy was erected, Lewis, king of the Germans, Romans, and Lorrain, dying, the inhabitants of this last country called Charles, as the next prince of the Carlovingian race, to their throne; and in some measure indemnified him for the cession made to Rollo. Charles, conscious of his own inability, and justly mistrusting his nobility, took into his

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

confidence a gentleman, recommended to that distinction more by his fidelity and penetration than by his birth, whose name was Haganon. The partiality shewn to this favourite proving offensive to the nobility, Robert, duke of France, and brother of the late king Eudes, took advantage of the circumstance to foment their discontent, until at length their differences rose to that height, that they rebelled against Charles, and crowned Robert king of France. The former, however, having surprized the army of the latter, with his own hand slew the usurper; yet was defeated in the action, when the confederate nobility chose Rodolph, duke of Burgundy; and in a short time, the lords who had till then adhered to Charles, deserted from him to this new sovereign. The first steps which the dethroned monarch took in this situation of affairs, did not manifest that weakness of which he has been accused; but he was afterwards deceived by Herbert, count of Vermandois, treacherously made prisoner, and thrown into confinement, on which his queen, sister to the king of England, took refuge with her son Lewis at the court of her brother. The treacherous Herbert made use of his prisoner to compel Rodolph to comply with his own demands; and after having released him on obtaining his requests, again confined him, and at last surrendered him into the hands of Rodolph, who, treating him with respect, settled on him a competent maintenance: shortly after which, Charles died in the fifty-first year of his age. Rodolph, now, vigorously exerted his authority; he forced the roving Normans to either quit the kingdom or settle in it; made several lords, who had assumed independence, pay him homage; and repelled an invasion of the Hungarians. But the restless count of Vermandois formed a confederacy against him; yet after a struggle of some years, in which the troops of Rodolph acted under Hugo, duke of France, he was reduced to do homage to the king: soon after the final settlement between them, Rodolph died in the fourteenth year of his reign. After an interregnum of five months, by the interposition of William, duke of Normandy, who had in that duchy succeeded his father Robert, which name Rollo had taken at his baptism, Lewis, the son of Charles the Simple, was recalled from England to the throne of his ancestors. The ambition of the great lords, who wished

A. D. 929.

A. D. 936.

to preserve their own power at the expence of the royal authority, soon raised another civil war, which, after a few years, was closed by a peace, concluded under the mediation of William, duke of Normandy. After this, Lewis endeavoured, on the assassination of the last named duke, to get possession of Normandy, and for that purpose made himself master of the person of the young duke, then a child ; but Osman, his governour, thinking the life of his pupil in danger, privately conveyed him out of the reach of Lewis, who in an action with the conjoined forces of the Normans and Aigrol, king of Denmark, who gave them his assistance, was defeated, and taken prisoner ; and released by a new treaty with the Normans, under which he was delivered into the hands of Hugo, duke of France. This he found to be only a change of prisons ; nor did he obtain release until he had granted to Hugo the city and county of Laon. This conduct in Hugo naturally excited the resentment of the king, and he accordingly entered into alliance with the kings of Germany and Burgundy against Hugo, who, though he at first made a powerful resistance, was at length excommunicated at a council holden in France by the pope's legate ; and after hostilities had been twice renewed, saw it prudent, as well as the king, to come to a lasting peace. The ratification of this left Lewis at liberty to take proper steps for the maintenance of his authority over his own subjects, as well as for repressing the Hungarians, who had committed dreadful devastations in his dominions, and penetrated as far as the present Picardy. But while thus employed, having by chance started a wolf, he fell from his horse in the pursuit, and died of his bruises in the nineteenth year of his reign, and thirty-third of his life. On the news of this accident, Hugo promised the queen dowager to set the crown on the head of her eldest son, then in the fourteenth year of his age ; and he accordingly took care to have Lothaire, for that was his name, solemnly crowned at Rheims. For this service the young king created him duke of Aquitaine, of which he did not obtain possession until the following year, and in the next to that he died, having risen to much greater power than the king possessed ; who, indeed, was both in that and riches inferior to several of his vassals. Hugo recommended his eldest son in particular, named Hugh Capet,

A. D. 954.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to the care of Richard, duke of Normandy; the other three were under the tutelage of their mother. By the influence of her brother Bruno, archbishop of Cologne, in whose favour the title of archduke was devised, and bestowed on him by the emperor his brother, the two eldest children of Hugo, as soon as they came to a proper age did homage to Lothaire for their lands, with which the king was pleased, that he bestowed on the eldest, Hugh, the title of duke of the Franks, and on Henry, the younger, that of duke of Burgundy. Lothaire was persuaded by some evil counsellors to follow his father's example, in attempting by treachery to get the duchy of Normandy into his hands; but this iniquitous effort only brought on him a war for assistance in which the duke sent to the king of Denmark, and thus brought still more Normans into France; who, on the conclusion of a peace, would not retire until they had received a considerable sum. His wish to seize part of the territories of the count of Flanders, implicated Lewis in another war, in which he was supported by the dukes of France and Burgundy: yet, through the interposition of the duke of Normandy, a peace was brought about; and the lands which the count had lost were restored to him. Lothaire, by a crafty use of the royal prerogatives still remaining, found means to diminish the power of the nobility, and augment his own authority; and when in the course of time there appeared an opportunity of practising the same kind of policy in respect to Lorrain, he made use of it, but was disappointed by the more refined policy of the emperor, Otho the second: enraged at which, he commenced hostilities; yet lost by a treaty all the advantage he had gained by arms. But on the death of Otho, under the plea of defending the interests of his son, Otho the third, he made a fresh irruption into Lorrain; and by the prudence and spirit (which seem ever to have been in the eyes of that nation more prized than integrity) which he manifested in the latter part of his reign, he in great measure regained his credit with the French lords, who acquiesced in his associating his son Lewis with him in the government: but now death cut off all his promising prospects in the thirty-second year of his reign. His son, Lewis the fifth, was at his father's decease, in the nineteenth year of his age, and was by

A. D. 987.

A. D. 997.

him recommended to the care of Hugh Capet: yet his own turbulent temper seems to have made his short reign a scene of trouble; and when he had reigned only a year and two months, he was poisoned by his own wife: he was the last of the male line of Charlemagne who sat on the French throne. Lewis had been dead not more than a fortnight, when Hugh Capet, who already possessed more power than the king had done, caused himself to be proclaimed, and was without opposition solemnly crowned at Rheims. Charles, duke of Lorraine, to whom as uncle to the late king the succession of right belonged, prepared, but slowly, to vindicate his claim by arms: in the mean time, Hugh Capet having subdued the duke of Guienne, who refused to acknowledge him, got an assembly of nobles to consent to his association of his son Robert in the government. After this, he besieged Charles in the city of Laon, of which the latter had made himself master, as well as of the persons of the queen dowager Emma, and a bishop whom he had represented as her gallant; and though the king did not then succeed in taking the city, he afterwards by a course of intrigue got possession of both that, and the duke of Lorraine himself, who was detained in confinement as long as he lived; but his son enjoyed his duchy. By the submission of those French who had adhered to Charles, Hugh now found himself firmly fixed on the throne, and he adapted his government to the situation of his affairs; requiring nothing more of the great lords than homage. Paris became the capital of the monarchy, in consequence of his residence in it; and by his prudence and circumspection he had the singular honour of establishing a new family without any remarkable violence or bloodshed. After having reigned seven years, and in the fifty-seventh of his age he died, leaving his dominions in perfect tranquillity to his son. This king steadily pursued his father's maxims, but received great trouble from the pope's assuming to declare his marriage with a distant relation of his father's invalid. In a council holden at Rome, the presumptuous pontiff commanded the king, under pain of excommunication, to leave his wife; and the monarch not submitting, the excommunication was incurred, and he was abandoned (such was the influence of the bishop of Rome) not only by the prelates and nobility, but by

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Transactions
in Spain
during the
10th century.

all his menial servants, except two ; and an interdict being spread through the kingdom, was at length compelled, by the superior power of the pope, to part with his queen, Bertha : but, being without heirs, he afterwards married Constance, the daughter of the count of Arles ; which occurrence brings the history of France to the end of the tenth century.

At the close of the ninth century Don Alonso was on the throne of Oviêdo : his perseverance in strengthening his frontiers against the Moors, induced Abdalla, king of Cordova, to send to Africa for succours ; having obtained which a battle ensued, in which the Mahometans were defeated by Alonso with very great loss. Three years after this, Don Garcias, Alonso's son, formed the impious design of deposing his father ; in which he was detected, and thrown by his father into confinement : the unrighteous partiality of his mother and of his wife's father, led them to importune the king for his release, which he refused ; until finding that, by the junction of his son Don Ordogno, a civil war was likely to ensue, he in an assembly of the states resigned his crown to Don Garcias, and the province of Galicia to Ordogno. The new sovereign quickly raised his character with his subjects, by a complete victory over the Moors, in which his troops gained great riches. The next year, by the advice of Alonso, he attacked the Moors with a numerous army, of which the old king had the command ; who, having finished a glorious campaign, ended his life in the city of Zamora two years after his abdication. Some months before Alonso, died Abdallah, king of Cordova, and was succeeded by Abderrahman the third, the son of king Mohammed. Don Garcias, after manifesting some sinister views on his brother's territories, which he was prevented from realizing, was joined by him in a campaign against the Moors, which was attended with success ; and soon after the close of it, Don Garcias died, but little lamented by his subjects, who preferred the open character of his brother to his stern disposition. No hesitation was shewn in seating Ordogno on the throne ; who signalized the first year of his reign by a victory over the Moors, and the capture of Talavera della Reyna. The following year he pursued his success, and two years after gained a still more important victory

A. D. 912.

A. D. 913.

over the united forces of the Moors ; with whose spoils embellishing the city of Leon, he chose it for the capital of his dominions ; whence he and his successors took the title of kings of Leon. The war continuing not so much in favour of Ordogno, he agreed to a truce with the king of Cordova, who then attacked the territories of Don Sanchez, king of Navarre, to whose assistance Ordogno marched, but returned worsted : yet the Moors, instead of pursuing their success in Spain, made an useless irruption into France, which gave Ordogno time to recover his spirits, and make some successful incursions into Cordova. The king of Navarre and his son Don Garcias, having again requested the assistance of Ordogno, he accordingly marched into their dominions, and assisted them effectually ; and then marrying the daughter of Don Garcias, returned with her into his own dominions, and there died, leaving two sons, named Alonso and Ramiro, by his first queen. These being too young to carry on the government, Froila, the brother of Ordogno, was by the bishops and great lords received as his successor ; but lived only long enough to acquire the character of a fierce and cruel prince, being stricken with a leprosy, under which he sunk, ere he had reigned more than a year and a month. Don Alonso or Alphonso, the eldest son of Ordogno, succeeded his uncle ; but finding himself unequal to the situation after a few years trial, he very wisely resigned the crown in favour of his brother Ramiro, a prince of great spirit and capacity. Yet by some self-interested counsellors he was soon persuaded to attempt the resumption of his authority, when after some struggle he was compelled to throw himself on his brother's mercy. At the same time three sons of Froila made a futile attempt at the crown, which ended in the loss of their liberty and their eyes. Ramiro, now in peaceable possession of his dominions, attacked the Moors, took Madrid by assault, insulted Toledo, and returned with a multitude of captives and great spoil ; when he found his brother Alphonso the fourth dead. Abderrahman, incensed at the incursion made into his dominions, collected a formidable force, of which the count of Castile gave Ramiro notice ; who, when the season admitted, advanced to encounter, and defeated his enemies with prodigious slaughter. The next year the king compelled the Moors in Aragon

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to become tributary to him : ere he returned from this expedition, he married Theresa, sister to Garcia, king of Navarre. But Aben Ahaya, governour of the Moors of Aragon, revolting to Abderrahman, and that sovereign having marched into the territories of Leon with a very large army, Ramiro met and defeated him ; the Moors losing eighty thousand men. This, too, was quickly followed by another victory equally complete : after which, he concluded a truce with the Moors for seven years, during which he repaired the fortifications of most of the great towns in his dominions, as well as founded several monasteries. Immediately on the expiration of the truce, Ramiro entered the dominions of the Moors, where he defeated a numerous army, and returned home with seven thousand prisoners and a vast booty : soon after which he was taken ill, and expired after he had reigned nineteen years ; leaving by his first wife one son, Ordogno, and one daughter, Elvira, and by his second a son, named Sanchez. The eldest of these, Ordogno the third, succeeded his father ; but the younger thought proper to claim a share of his dominions ; and being in this unreasonable request supported by his uncle the king of Navarre, and even by count Ferdinand Gonçalez, the father of Ordogno's wife, raised a great army ; but by the judicious preparations for defence made by the king, was obliged to desist from his attempt. Ordogno unjustly vented his indignation against count Ferdinand on his daughter, whom he repudiated, and married the daughter of a Galician nobleman. After this, he made an irruption into the territories of the Moors, and took and demolished Lisbon ; count Ferdinand at the same time with the forces of Castile invaded the kingdom of Cordova ; and soon afterwards, with the assistance of supplies from Ordogno, gained a glorious victory over the common enemy. But while thus successfull, this monarch was cut off by death in the sixth year of his reign. On the news of his brother's decease, Don Sanchez became a successfull candidate for the crown ; but being a prince of little parts and less activity, he was, by the intrigues of count Ferdinand, in a short time driven from the throne : when the count substituted in his place a son of Alphonso the fourth, obliging him to marry his daughter, whom Ordogno the third had repudiated. The new sovereign soon

A. D. 950.

A. D. 955.

acquired by his conduct the surname of *Wicked* : while Sanchez being advised, on account of a dropsical disorder, to consult the Moorish physicians, went to Cordova, and meeting with a generous reception from Abderrahman, was there cured of his dropsy. Scarcely was he recovered, ere he received intimation that Ordogno was so disliked, that would he himself advance even with a small force he would meet with no resistance. Supported by his generous host, and his own uncle the king of Navarre, he easily drove the usurper from Leon ; who fleeing from one place to another, quickly perished in a miserable manner : while the king of Navarre, having defeated and taken prisoner count Ferdinand, carried him into his own dominions. Sanchez now prudently married the daughter of one of the most eminent of his own nobility ; and after a descent of the Normans in Galicia, tranquillity was restored to his kingdom. About this time, Abderrahman dying, was succeeded on the throne of Cordova by his son Alhacan, with whom Sanchez renewed the treaty of peace. Count Gonçalez being entrusted with the government of the frontiers, basely betrayed his trust, and revolted ; but on Sanchez marching against him, begged for pardon ; and that being granted him, in return poisoned the king. As soon as the nobility were informed of his death they declared his son, Ramiro the third, king, though but five years old ; appointing his mother and aunt regents. The Normans making another descent, were in the end defeated by Don Gonçalez Sanchez, and their fleet burnt. When Ramiro had entered his seventeenth year he married, and soon after assumed the reins of government ; but suffering himself to be governed by his wife's relations, the nobility were so displeased, that they declared Bermudo, the son of Ordogno the third, king ; and ere the contest with him was decided, Ramiro died in the fifteenth year of his reign. On the decease of his rival, Bermudo the second was universally acknowledged. This prince, finding the morals of his people greatly depraved, attempted to begin a reformation by that of the clergy : but while thus employed, he was harassed by perpetual attacks from the Moors, whom, from the effect of the late civil war, he was in no condition to resist ; and to whom numbers of his profligate subjects, averse to amendment, daily fled. Mohammed Almanzor, prime

A. D. 982.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 999.

minister to Hissem, king of Cordova, took and destroyed the city of Leon, entered the Asturias, made himself master of several places in Portugal, and ravaged Galicia: but when he had recruited his forces from every part with the avowed intention of completing the ruin of that country, Bermudo having entered into an alliance for common defence with the king of Navarre and the Castilians, who had become independent of Leon, the united forces of these three countries gave so severe a defeat to the Mahometans, that Mohammed, their commander, retired to Medina Celi, and starved himself to death. In the next year Don Bermudo died: on his death the nobility elected his son Alphonso, though a child, to succeed him; appointing his mother Elvira regent, and Melendo Gonçalez, with whom the king had entrusted him, to take care of his person. Abdalmelech, who succeeded his father Mohammed as prime minister to the king of Cordova, taking the field to ravage the kingdom of Leon, Garcias, count of Castile, at the request of the queen dowager, and with the assistance of some of her troops, attacked and defeated him: by the statement of which transaction the history of Spain is brought down to the close of the tenth century.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
10th century.

Scarcely was Edward, the son of Alfred, seated on the throne, than Ethelwald, son of Ethelbert, Alfred's elder brother, laid claim to it, and found himself supported in it by the Danes settled in England. But the vigour with which Edward entered not only on his defence, but into offensive measures against his enemies, compelled the Danes to banish from among them the prince whose cause they had espoused; while the hostility they had manifested, cost them several strong holds in Mercia. Ethelwald, however, having procured the assistance of some Normans, renewed his attempt, and was supported by the Danes: yet Edward proved victorious; Ethelwald was slain in battle; and the Danes at length submitted to acknowledge the sovereignty of Edward, and the Normans to retire. The war being renewed in three years, the king drove the Danes entirely out of Mercia: and Elfleda, his sister, married to the earl of Mercia, after her husband's death assuming the government of his earldom, after several victories obliged the Welsh to become tributary to her. The renewed war with the Danes lasted twelve years, and by it they

were at length obliged once more to submit to Edward as their sovereign. As soon as the Danes were subdued, Edward turned his arms against the Welsh, and reduced their king, Rees ap Madoc, to sue for peace, and promise tribute. When this victorious monarch had reigned twenty-four years, he died at Faringdon in Berkshire : through want of a legitimate heir of age, Athelstan, a natural son of Edward's by Egwina, was placed upon the throne with the consent of the clergy and nobility. Having put an end to a conspiracy to deprive him of the crown, and quelled the Danes who had commenced an insurrection, on the death of Sithric, king of Northumberland, he took possession of his dominions : after which he had a course of success against the Welsh, the Scotch, and revolted Danes. He died in the sixteenth year of his reign ; having lived equally feared by his neighbours, beloved by his subjects, and respected by the greatest princes of Europe. Under his patronage a translation of the Holy Scriptures was made into the Saxon tongue. . On the decease of Athelstan without issue, Edmund, the eldest of the legitimate sons of Edward the elder, was unanimously placed on the throne. The Danes revolting, he was at first compelled, not by ill success, but by the fears of his nobility, to make considerable concessions to them ; but afterwards taking advantage of their internal dissensions, he reduced them to their former state of subjection ; and established his own reputation. It was this monarch who, finding mulcts not avail to put a stop to robbery, first appointed for it the punishment of death : he was stabbed by a robber, whom he seized at a festival, and died in the twenty-fifth year of his reign. On account of the youth of Edmund's two sons, Edred, his brother, succeeded him. This prince had an early opportunity of manifesting his military abilities, in preventing, by the rapidity of his operations, a revolt of the Danes, and compelling their ally, the king of Scotland, to submit to the due homage. But the Danes revolted another and a third time ; when Edred, finding that they could be restrained only by force, reduced Northumberland into a province, making earl Osulf, an Englishman, the first governour. Edred henceforth lived in peace, but suffered the well-known Dunstan, abbot of Glastonbury, to gain too great an influence over him, which he employed in

A. D. 925.

A. D. 941.

A. D. 948.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 955.

A. D. 959.

favour of the monks. Edred reigned but ten years ; and, though he left two sons, to them was preferred Edwy, the son of his elder brother Edmund. Edwy was no sooner on the throne, than Dunstan was attacked through the monks, who were turned out of the benefices of which they had got possession ; and at length, after much clamour of persecution made by them, Dunstan himself retired into Flanders. Enraged at their leader being thus expelled, the monks contrived to excite such discontents, as broke out into an insurrection, of which Edgar, the king's brother, became the leader ; and which so prevailed, that Edwy was at length reduced to the kingdom of Wessex only ; and Edgar was by the insurgents chosen their sovereign, with the title of king of Mercia. But England continued not long thus divided ; since Edwy, sinking under his adversity, died, when he had reigned four years and some months ; on which his brother Edgar, who before was but an usurper, became lawfull monarch of all England. The reign of this prince, who was sixteen years old when he came to the crown, is principally remarkable for the continued peace of it. This the young king partly procured by quieting that turbulent and intriguing body, the monks, by immediately recalling Dunstan, and appointing him bishop of Worcester ; and to keep his neighbours in awe, he kept on foot an army in the northern counties, and had in readiness a very large fleet. Such was the effect of the formidable attitude which Edgar thus assumed, that, without drawing his sword, he obliged the kings of Wales, Ireland, and the Isle of Man, to swear allegiance to him. In his internal administration he corrected the oppressive conduct of the magistrates, and removed another evil of no small magnitude, by changing the tribute of the Welsh into three hundred wolves' heads, and offering a pardon to criminals, on condition of their bringing a certain number of tongues of the same destructive beasts. But a still greater, though not a more beneficial, change was wrought in the kingdom, by the countenance this prince gave to the monks. He made their great patron, Dunstan abbot of Glastonbury, archbishop of Canterbury, and sending him to Rome, that he might receive his pall at the hands of the pope, he returned papal legate. He admitted the monks, inconsistently with their original institution, to ecclesiastical

benefices; advancing as a plea for it, what was too true, the impious negligence and most profligate lives of the secular clergy. In return for this kindness of the king, the monks failed not to flatter him with the character of a saint, though his bed was polluted with concubinage, and his hands stained with blood: he died in the thirty-second year of his age. To him, through the management of Dunstan, his son Edward succeeded; under whom several, improperly denominated pious, frauds were practised in support of the monks, and who, without any particular achievement, fell by assassination, procured by his mother-in-law Elfrida, after reigning four years. After the murder of Edward, Ethelred, the other son of Edgar, surnamed the Peaceable, then only twelve years old, was placed on the throne: scarcely was he seated on it, when the Danes made a descent on the coast of Hampshire; similar invasions followed in other places. The minority of the king not opposing a proper defence to these invaders or their countrymen, who readily assisted them, the whole kingdom afforded, for ten years, a scene of murder, conflagration, and devastation. The royal countenance being no longer extended to them, the credit of the monks sunk very low in this reign, and Dunstan himself died in no small part of vexation. After two years cessation the Danes renewed their attacks, and Ethelred was weakly advised to purchase their forbearance; by which a premium was holden out to others. At length Sweyn, king of Denmark, and Olaus, of Norway, allured by the success of their subjects, entered the Thames with a numerous fleet, and debarked near London; but not being able to take that city, they plundered Kent, Sussex, and Hampshire. Ethelred, whose courage and conduct were nearly equal, submitted again to purchase their retreat: soon after which the king of Norway paid Ethelred a visit, who persuaded him to be baptized. On his departure, Olaus swore never more to infest England, and he kept his oath; but Sweyn left at Southampton a fleet, to enforce the payment of the money promised; the admiral of which, finding his demands not complied with, landed his forces, and so miserably ravaged several counties, that had the devastations continued, England would have been irretrievably ruined: but the Danes were happily called away to the assistance of the duke of

A. D. 975.

A. D. 979.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
10th century.

Normandy ; when, with a degree of exertion which seems not to have been very usual with him, Ethelred ravaged Cumberland ; but wherefore is unknown : and thus closed the tenth century in Britain.

The history of Sweden was suspended in the reign of Eric Segher-sell, who expelled Swen from Denmark, and held that kingdom until his own decease. He was succeeded by his son Eric Stenchil Milde or Happy-born ; who not only embraced but zealously promoted Christianity : but while he proceeded in demolishing the works of his idolatrous subjects, he was by them slain in an insurrection. This murder of his father did not deter Olaus Scotkonung from publicly professing the Gospel : by the counter intrigues of the monarchs of Norway and Denmark, Olaus was at length involved in war with the former, over whom he gained a naval victory ; when, to avoid captivity, the king of Norway, Olaus Truggeson, threw himself into the sea : after which the king of Sweden easily subdued Norway ; half of which he afterwards gave to Swen, king of Denmark, as a portion with his mother-in-law, whom that monarch had demanded in marriage. Yet the country quickly reverted to its lawfull heirs ; for Oluf, the son of Harold Grandshe, who had been excluded from his right by Truggeson, and now claimed the crown, so vigorously supported his pretence, that at length it was quietly resigned to him. His severity, however, against his subjects who would not embrace Christianity, was the cause of his being driven from it ; when, by the assistance of the king of Sweden, he was restored ; yet fell at last in a battle against his own subjects. On his death Olaus annexed unalienably Gothland to the crown of Sweden. This monarch was succeeded by his son Asmund Kolbrenner, of whose achievements nothing worth repetition is recorded, but that he was a strenuous advocate for Christianity, and an inforcer of the laws. He is said to have lived several years beyond the close of this century, and to have at last fallen in battle with Canute the rich, king of Denmark and England.

Transactions
in Denmark
during the
10th century.

Gormo the third was a weak prince, and a bitter persecutor of the Christians ; but he had twin sons of great military abilities, who subdued the Vandals ; and carrying their arms into England, compelled the king of that country, though their maternal uncle, to sign an

instrument, by which he conveyed the crown to them at his death : thence they passed into Ireland, where Canute was slain at the siege of Dublin, which city his brother afterwards took ; and having settled affairs in that country, returned to Denmark. Gormo in the mean time attacking the Saxons, received that repulse from the emperor Henry the Fowler, which has been already mentioned : and the news of the loss of his son Canute affected him so deeply as to cause his death. His son Harold immediately succeeded him, and was as quickly engaged in war with Haquin, king of Norway, for the crown of England. This last monarch, however, was slain on his own coast, and Harold, a Norwegian prince, set on his throne ; who, in return for the aid of the Dane, paid him tribute and homage : and thus Norway became once more a province of Denmark. Harold after this, having settled the affairs of England, and repressed the piracies of the Vandals, engaged in the support of Stubiern, king of Sweden, against Eric, who had driven him from his dominions. With the forces raised for this purpose, he took from the Germans the city of Sleswick, which brought on him the arms of the emperor Otho the first ; with whom, after some military operations, he came to a personal conference, and was converted to Christianity. During this congress, Stubiern was defeated by Eric, who seized Halland and Bleking, two provinces of Schonen, belonging to Harold. Harold, king of Norway, now dying, his son and successor Haquin withheld the homage paid by his father : Harold of Denmark being employed himself against Eric whom he defeated, and obliged to submit to the terms he proposed, sent a fleet and army to act against Norway, but that army was by Haquin defeated. Nor was this misfortune unaccompanied with still greater ; for his son Swen rising in rebellion against him, after a sanguinary contest, maintained by Harold with great valour, through the general treachery of his subjects, he was reduced to agree to negotiations with his rebellious heir, during which he was himself assassinated by a common soldier, and his son in course was seated on the throne, for which he had manifested so much impatience. The perfect establishment of Christianity in Denmark is dated from the reign of Swen, though at the commencement of it he permitted the idol temples to be restored,

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

and persecuted the clergy. But the misfortunes which overtook had a beneficial effect on him ; for having been taken prisoner by some of his own subjects, whom he attacked for having been faithful to his father, and not released but on the payment of a great ransom ; been driven from his kingdom by Eric of Sweden, and finding refuge in Scotland only, he learned to ascribe his calamities to the Divine judgments, returned with fervour to the profession of Christianity, and was, through the means of the king of Scotland, restored to his throne. On this, in a diet of the states, he publicly acknowledged his sufferings to have been inflicted for his apostacy ; and exhorted his subjects to lay aside the heathen worship. From them this proposal met with no favourable reception ; but a German divine, of great piety and eloquence, named Poppo, arriving, effected, by dint of example and persuasion, what the royal authority could not. Olaus, who had succeeded his brother Haquin as king of Norway, fearing Swen might renew his claim on that country, determined to anticipate him by fortifying himself by a league with Sweden : but Swen counteracted him by marrying the queen mother of Sweden, and entering into a defensive treaty with Eric : Olaus, however, commenced hostilities, was defeated at sea, and drowned himself ; when Norway, or part of it, was again annexed to the crown of Denmark. Swen then turned his arms against Ethelred the second of England, overran great part of the kingdom, and obliged Ethelred to acknowledge by a treaty his sovereignty : and in this island Swen breathed his last ; and this, by what appears to be the best chronology of the time, brings the history of Denmark to the close of the tenth century : let us now pass to the contiguous country of Germany.

Transactions
in Germany
during the
10th century.

It has been stated in the history of France, that Lewis, the son of Charlemagne, divided the Western empire among his sons : the troubles consequent on this division were terminated by an accommodation at Verdun, when Germany was assigned to Lewis as an independent kingdom. After the decease of this monarch and two of his sons, the surviving third, Charles the Fat, reigned as emperor over Germany, France, and Italy : but so weak was his government, that the Germans deposed him, and raised Arnulph, the natural son of his

elder brother Carloman, to the throne of Germany. This prince defeated the Normans, and subdued the Bohemians; and was succeeded by his son Lewis, the Infant, by whose death the Carlovingian line became extinct in Germany. But ere the separate history of this country is further proceeded in, something ought to be said of the region itself: Germany, then, may for its modern history be considered as bounded on the North by the Baltic Sea, Denmark, and the German Ocean; on the South by Italy and the country of the Swiss; on the East by Prussia, Hungary, and Poland; and on the West by the Low Countries, Lorraine, and Franche Comté. It lies between forty-five degrees four minutes, and fifty-four degrees forty minutes North latitude; and in longitude between twenty-three degrees thirty minutes, and thirty-six degrees fifty-two minutes East; extending from North to South seven hundred and twenty miles, and six hundred and fifty-five from East to West. Germany, though in some parts barren, and encumbered with mountains and morasses, is in general fertile and well cultivated, abounding with wood and water, enjoying a salutary air, affording all the necessities, and conveniencies, and even elegancies of life. The principal rivers of it are the Danube, the Rhine, the Mayne, the Elbe, the Oder, and the Weser. The Danube or Danau rises in Suabia, and running Eastward through Germany, Hungary, and Turkey, after receiving above an hundred and twenty streams in its course, discharges itself by several mouths into the Black Sea. The Rhine issues from two springs in the country of the Grisons, becomes navigable at the town of Coire, and passing through the Lake of Constance, continues its course through Germany to the United Provinces, where dividing itself into two branches, one of them, called the Waal, joins the Maese; the other, which formerly discharged itself into the North Sea, is now become a stagnant water, and ends near the city of Leyden. The Mayne has a double source; the one in the margraviate of Bayreuth, the other in Franconia, and runs into the Rhine. The Elbe rises in Bohemia, and running through the circles of Upper and Lower Saxony, divides itself into several branches in the vicinity of Hamburg, and forms a number of islands, and afterwards flows into the German Ocean. The Oder rising in Moravia

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

traverses Silesia, and passing through Brandenburg enters Pomerania, pours itself into the great Hof, and out of that into the Baltic. The Weser is formed by the Werra and Fulda; the first rising in Fulda, the other in Franconia, and disembogues itself into the German Ocean. The formerly barbarous and grossly ignorant inhabitants of Germany have been greatly polished by their assiduous application to the arts and sciences: yet their improvement has been ascribed more to indefatigable toil, than to native genius. They are represented as laborious, simple, faithfull, and valiant, slow in council, and firm in the doctrine they profess. They are ingenious mechanicks; extremely fond of hunting, and very credulous. To return now to the history of the nation thus briefly characterized: on the death of Lewis, above mentioned, the son of Arnulph, the nobility of Germany made an offer of the imperial crown to Otho, duke of Saxony; who declining it, on account of his age, recommended, with peculiar generosity, Conrad, duke of Franconia and Hesse (though hostile to himself), knowing him to be a prince of merit and capacity; and he was accordingly elected. When in possession of the imperial crown he found he had to conciliate some of the nobility of Lorraine, who wished to put that and other territories into the hands of Charles the Simple. But while employed in this, he was informed of the revolt of Henry, duke of Saxony, which he however prevented from being referred to the decision of arms: still two of the nobles, allied with Henry, came to hostilities with Conrad, Erchanger, administrator of the treasury, and Berthold, count Walric, but were brought to punishment, and executed for treason. The rebellion of Arnold, duke of Bavaria, had no better success, he being defeated and mortally wounded. The army of Geselbert, duke of Lorraine, and Burchard, duke of Suabia, who likewise tried their fortune against the emperour, was cut to pieces, and the sons of the former taken prisoners and beheaded. But the Hungarians by their desolating irruptions obliged Conrad to purchase a most disgracefull peace. After a reign of about seven years, the emperour perceiving his end approach, recommended to the princes and states for his successor, Henry, duke of Saxony, the son of Otho, by whom he himself had been recommended: and the year

after his decease, the states of Germany elected Henry, who was surnamed the Fowler. This prince declined the pope's offer of declaring him emperor of the Romans, but so succeeded in his efforts to procure a reconciliation among the great men of Germany, that tranquillity was diffused throughout the empire, and the affection of his subjects so secured to him, that the Hungarians renewing their invasions were repelled with the loss of eighty thousand men : after which Henry defeated and exterminated the Vandals ; and overcame the Danes, and subdued the Dalmatians, Bohemians, and Abotrites. Having, too, repulsed Charles the Simple from the Rhine, a treaty called Pactum Bonnense was concluded between the two princes. An assembly of French and German bishops holden soon after this at Coblentz, made the absurd decree, prohibiting marriage within the sixth degree of consanguinity. The transactions of Henry, in respect to France and Lorraine, have been touched on in the history of the former country ; and when the affairs of the last were settled by the re-establishment of Geselbert in that duchy, and his marriage to Henry's daughter, the emperor applied himself to the regulation of the police of his dominions, and to establishing proper defences on his frontiers. He manifested earnest zeal for the promotion of Christianity, and reformed some of the abuses prevalent among the clergy. The Slaves, who dwelt in Pomerania, having ravaged the province of Lunenburg, were met by his troops and utterly overthrown : and when the truce with the Hungarians was expired, he roused the spirit of the Germans to oppose the attacks of that people ; so that when, joining the Slaves, their united armies entered Germany, they were defeated at every point with dreadful carnage. After having thus subdued his enemies, and given peace to his subjects, on receiving an invitation from the pope and the citizens of Rome, to come thither and receive the imperial crown, he began his march for Italy ; but on his way was seized with an apoplexy, when, conceiving himself near death, he assembled the princes of the empire, who complied with his wish in naming his son Otho for his successor : soon after which he died in the seventeenth year of his reign ; leaving two sons besides Otho, Henry and Bruno. After the decease of Henry, Otho was formally elected emperor at Aix-la-

A. D. 936.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Chapelle, and solemnly crowned : he began his administration most uprightly, and passed some little time in tranquillity ; but this was disturbed by an irruption of the Hungarians, who with the most blood-thirsty cruelty ravaged Upper and Lower Saxony. After this, an army which Otho sent into Bohemia to punish Boleslaus, who had murdered his own brother Winceslaus the duke, was there cut to pieces ; chagrined at which, Otho pursued the war for fourteen years, until he compelled Boleslaus to submit and own him for his sovereign. Another war at the same time claimed the attention of the emperor : the sons of Arnold, duke of Bavaria, on his decease refused to acknowledge themselves feudatories of the empire : this brought on hostilities, which ended, however, in the exile of one and the submission of the others. Germany was further disturbed by hostilities between the dukes of Franconia and Brunswick ; which ended in a confederacy with the duke of Austrasia and Henry, brother of the emperor, for the deposition of the last in favour of that brother. This league prospered not ; Henry was obliged to retire into France : but his brother was afterwards reconciled to him, and gave him the duchy of Lorraine. The emperor having conferred the dignity of count palatine on Herman, the third son of Arnold, duke of Bavaria, to annex to this honour some solid advantage, he attached to it lands and castles on the Rhine ; whence Herman acquired the title of count palatine of the Rhine ; and in process of time the territories of that count, by additions in various ways, became very considerable. The emperor having, at the request of the malcontents of France, marched into that country, his ungrateful brother Henry formed another powerful conspiracy, under which the emperor was to have been assassinated. That prince completely defeated their designs ; and when his brother implored his pardon, immediately granted it. When Bertholf, duke of Bavaria, died, Otho, at his mother's solicitation, gave that duchy to his brother Henry, who from that time behaved with loyalty. After being engaged in France, but on the side of the king, Otho, provoked by the Danes having murdered the Saxon colony settled at Sleswic, marched into Jutland, where, after an engagement with Harold, king of Denmark, the campaign ended in a treaty, by which Otho was to

keep a garrison in Sleswick, and the Christian religion was to be preached in the dominions of Harold. Boleslaus, king of Bohemia, still engaging in enterprizes against Germany, Otho compelled him to hold his dominions as fiefs of the empire. While thus successfull, the emperour was called into Italy, as stated in the history of that country : after his return into Germany, his son Ludolphus engaged in a rebellion against him : but his party was quickly dispersed ; and the prince himself, on manifesting signs of deep contrition, was pardoned, and, for his sake, his followers forgiven. No sooner was this rebellion quelled, than an irruption of Hungarians took place in Bavaria, when Otho defeated the invaders with slaughter scarcely credible. The Slaves were the next who provoked and felt the weight of his arm : but while he was engaged in war with them, he received an embassy of congratulation on his victories, from the king of Cordova, and another from Helen, queen of the Russians, who requested, too, missionaries to instruct her subjects in Christianity. Renewed representations from Italy induced the emperour to send an army into that country, commanded by his son Ludolphus ; the ingratitude of the Italians to whom, after having in a great measure delivered their country from oppression, so overwhelmed him with mortification, that he sunk under it into his grave. This occasioned additional applications from the Italians, and pleased with the thoughts of being consecrated king of Lombardy, and receiving from the hands of the pope the imperial crown, Otho, after having his son of the same name, though only seven years old, crowned with the consent of a diet, set out for Italy, and was at Rome crowned emperour of the Romans, receiving an oath of allegiance from the senate and people. But the transactions there, and his difference with the Eastern emperour Nicephorus, and the marriage of his son to Theophania, have been already stated ; of this emperour, therefore, there is only to be added, that after returning to Germany he enjoyed peace for two years, and then died in Saxony of an apoplexy, after a reign of thirty years, in which he justly acquired the name of Great. Otho the second, who afterwards obtained the epithet of Sanguinary, found some opposition to his succession from his own cozen, the duke of Bavaria, who caused himself to be proclaimed emperour ; a title

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 983.

which he was soon compelled to relinquish, together with his duchy, while his adherents were all obliged to submit to the terms Otho required. The contest of this last with Lothaire, king of France, has already been related, as well as his transactions in Italy. The Slavonians having invaded Saxony, he sent directions for the Saxons and Thuringians to oppose them, who forced them to retreat with the loss of thirty-seven thousand men: soon after which Otho died at Rome, in consequence of a wound received in a battle with the Greeks from a poisoned javelin. Henry, duke of Bavaria, on the death of Otho claimed, as his nearest relation, the tutelage of his son, Otho the third, then not more than twelve years of age, and proceeded to seize his person. But the greatest part of the German princes espousing the cause of Otho, who had already given marks of a fine genius, delivered him out of the hands of Henry, and caused him to be proclaimed with the usual solemnity; and his title was acknowledged throughout all the empire except the city of Rome, which had revolted under Crescentius. Two years had scarcely revolved, ere the young emperour exercised his courage and capacity in subduing the rebellious Slaves. An invasion of the Danes taking place in Saxony, they were driven back with great loss; after which, Eric, king of Sweden, conquering Denmark, Otho sought his friendship, and a treaty was concluded between them. After the emperour had performed the last obsequies to his mother Theophania, who died on her return from Italy, another revolt of the Slaves called him into the North, where he humbled that restless tribe. On his return from this war he enacted some new laws, and established various regulations for the preservation of good order and publick peace; and in a diet assembled at Magdeburg obtained supplies of money and troops for the expedition into Italy, spoken of in the history of that country; when he was at Rome crowned emperour of the Romans. Finding, on his return from Italy, the Slaves in possession of Bernbourg, he expelled them with great slaughter: immediately after which, enraged at the news of Crescentius having been again elected consul in Rome, and having expelled pope Gregory the fifth, and made another, under the title of John the sixteenth, he returned to Rome, and, having taken the city, ordered

the anti-pope to have his eyes put out, and his nose cut off, and be himself thrown down from the castle of St. Angelo, and Crescentius to be put to an ignominious death. He then published a decree, that the Germans alone should have the right of electing a Roman emperor among their own countrymen exclusively, and the pope that only of proclaiming the election at Rome, and crowning the emperor, when he should think proper to go there : and this decree was confirmed by Gregory. On his return from Italy he repaired to Poland, which he erected into a kingdom at the request of duke Boleslaus, who did homage to him for it as a fief of the empire : and thus ended the tenth century as to Germany.

The country just mentioned, as at this time erected into a kingdom, now claims notice : Poland, then, in its largest extent is bounded by Pomerania, Brandenburg, Silesia, and Moravia, to the West ; towards the East, by part of Russia, and the Lesser Tartary ; on the North it has the Baltic, Russia, Livonia, and Samogitia ; and towards the South is skirted by Bessarabia, Moldavia, Transylvania, and Hungary : extending from forty-six degrees and an half North latitude to fifty-six and an half ; two hundred geographical miles in length, and forty in breadth. The only considerable mountains are the Carpathian, which in this territory form the craggy ridge which separates Poland from Hungary. The principal rivers are the Duna, the Memel, the Vistula, the Niester or Dniester. Poland, besides grain, which is the chief article of trade at Dantzick, affords other very valuable commodities ; the kingdom abounds in cattle, of whose hides great quantities are exported, raw and dressed ; in flax, hemp, timber, honey, wax, amber, salt, vitriol, iron, copper, lead, nitre, and coal. The most considerable city in all Poland is Dantzick, situate near the mouth of the Vistula ; the publick edifices are magnificent, the private buildings commodious ; the ships load and unload close by the walls. The Poles have been long celebrated for their courage, strength, and longevity : the nobility are affable, liberal, and hospitable ; polite to strangers, rigid to their dependents, punctilious, vain, and ostentatious in their apparel and equipages. They are early initiated in letters, but their progress in science seldom goes far : prodigality and debauchery are not reputed vices among this

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

martial nobility: the commonalty are said to be ignorant, unprincipled, miserable, and abject. Of the inhabitants of the ancient Sarmatia, and their origin, notice has already been taken; of the Polish tribe in particular, it has been supposed, that they are descendants of the Lazi, a people who lived in Colchis near the Euxine, whence they were called Polazi: the emigrants are said to have entered Posenania, and settled on the borders of the Warra, while their neighbours, the Zechi, did the same on the Elbe in the year five hundred and fifty. The first prince of this nation is said to have been named Lechus or Lecht; but the monarchical government seems quickly to have been changed for that of twelve vaivods. The people soon perceiving themselves worse situated under this than before, insisted on the restoration of the ducal government. This is said to have been done in the person of one of the vaivods, named Gracus or Cracus, who had signalized himself in a battle against the Franks, who had overrun Pannonia, and with whose spoil he built the city of Cracow. Three of his children reigned in succession after him; when his family being extinct, the government of vaivods was again resorted to, under which the country was almost destroyed by oppression and bloody wars, when again a duke was chosen, who bore the name of Lechus the third. Three generations of his descendants are stated to have holden the government, but the grossly fabulous account given of the last throws discredit over that of the whole line. This, however, being extinct, after much dispute an individual of the name of Piastus, eminent for his piety and benevolence, was, about the year eight hundred and thirty, raised to the supreme dignity, in which, after filling it with equal honour to himself and happiness to his people, he was succeeded by his son Ziemovitus; who proved a warlike and magnanimous prince, introducing military discipline among his subjects, and considerably extending his dominions. On his decease his son, Lechus the fifth, was chosen to succeed him, and proved an imitator of his father's virtues; and died after a reign of twenty-one years. Zienomislaus, his son, was next elected, and passed his reign with equal mildness and dignity: his son Mieczlaus succeeded him. He, to obtain (it should seem) the princess of Bohemia in marriage, professed himself a Christian; when he became

very zealous in the propagation of his new faith : he founded the archbishopricks of Gnesna, and Cracow. On the birth of his son Boleslaus he redoubled his zeal, founding new bishopricks and monasteries ; and, with devotion truly barbarian, ordered, that when any part of the Gospel was read, the hearers should half draw their swords, in testimony of their zeal to defend the truths of Christianity. This zealous monarch was succeeded by his son Boleslaus, already mentioned, whom Otho the third, having repaired to Poland on a pilgrimage to the tomb of a particular saint, invested with the ensigns of royalty, and his title was confirmed by the pope. On the receipt of this new dignity, Boleslaus added to the pomp of his retinue, and endeavoured by the splendour of the Polish court to excite in his people an opinion of their own importance, that they might with greater readiness embark in a war he purposed to make against Russia ; to the history of which country, that of Poland being now brought down to the end of the tenth century, the reader's attention must now be directed.

A. D. 999.

The empire of Russia extends in length from West to East from the fortieth to the two hundred and fourth degree of longitude, and from North to South it is fifteen, twenty, and in some places twenty-five degrees in breadth, lying partly in Europe, and partly in Asia. The general division of its European part is into Great, Little, and White Russia, properly constituting the ancient Russia ; to which have been added the duchies of Livonia and Esthonia, with the provinces of Ingria and Carelia, conquered from the Swedes. The chief rivers that water European Russia, are the Wolga, the Don, the Dwina, and the Dnieper. The Wolga rises in the forest of Wolconski, and after a course of near two thousand miles, falls into the Caspian Sea through several channels. The country bordering on it is generally fertile, spontaneously producing great variety of esculent herbs, particularly asparagus of an extraordinary size and goodness. The Don, the Tanais of the ancients, has its source near Tula, and falls through three channels into the sea of Azof near that city. The Dwina is formed by the junction of the Sukona and the Yug at Ustiaga, and being again divided into two channels near Archangel, falls into the White Sea. The Dnieper, formerly the

Commence-
ment of the
history of
Russia.

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Boristhènes, springs from a morass in the province of Wolconsk, and at length disembogues itself into the Black Sea between Oczachow and Kinburn. The lakes in Russia form features of the country too prominent to be passed without notice. There are in Europe three principal ones, the Peipus, Ladoga, and Onega : the first is in Livonia, and between forty and fifty miles in breadth ; it abounds with fish, and discharges its superfluous waters by the river Narva into the Gulf of Finland. The lake of Ladoga is nearly an hundred miles in length, and seventy in breadth. The lake Onega has a communication with this by means of the river Swer, and is one hundred and eighty wersts in length, and eighty in breadth. The Russian dominions in Asia form a considerable part of Great Tartary ; the principal rivers of which are the Yaik, formerly the Rhymnus, which rises in the Uralian mountains, and empties itself by two channels into the Caspian Sea ; the Jemba, which runs into the same lake ; the Gihun, the Oxus and Bactrus of the ancients, formerly discharged itself by two channels or mouths into the Caspian, which are now become dry, and the stream has been diverted by art into the lake of Aral : it has by some been supposed to be the Araxes of the ancients. The Sihun, which always emptied itself into the lake of Aral, was formerly called the Jaxartes and Siris ; which the Macedonians mistook for the Tanais. Into the Icy Sea discharges itself the river Oby, which issues from the Altin lake : it is in general between two and three hundred fathoms broad, though in some places much wider. The Jenisei or Jenisea is little inferior to the Oby, and like that ends in the Icy Sea. The Eastern part of Siberia is watered by the great river Lena, which discharges itself by five channels into the Icy Sea : into the Eastern Ocean run the Amur, the Uda, the Penschina, the Anadir. The principal lakes in this part of Russia are the lake of Aral ;* the length of which is said to be an hundred and fifty miles, and its breadth about seventy ; its water is very salt, and it is without any visible outlet. The Baikal

* It should appear that this lake, as well as the rivers Gihun and Sihun, are rather in Independent Tartary than in Russia : but I have copied the arrangement made by the Authors of the Universal History.

lake, environed by high mountains, is five hundred wersts from East to West, and from North to South but from twenty to thirty. In one part of it, it throws up an inflammable bitumen, which the people of the adjacent country burn in their lamps: it contains several islands, and the borders of it are frequented by black sables and civet cats. The Altin lake is nearly ninety miles long, and fifty broad. The climate of Russia must be as various as the latitudes of its parts, and with the same its products vary. The Russians profess the tenets of the Greek church, but their ignorance and superstition have greatly corrupted even that: they hold transubstantiation, but receive the Eucharist in both kinds: they use auricular confession, and think that they are by it cleansed from as many sins as they in particular confess: they hold tradition to be of equal authority with holy writ; and though they allow no carved images, they scruple not to bow down to the miserable paintings with which their churches are filled, or to apply to their saints not only as to intercessors, but as to immediate givers of salvation: but liberty of conscience is allowed throughout the empire. The ancient inhabitants of the several countries now united under the dominion of the czars of Russia were Scythians, Huns, Massegetes, Slavonians, Cimbrians, Getes, and Sarmatians. Those who held the northern parts not only of the proper Russia, but all Siberia to the borders of China, antecedently to the present possessors, are called Tshudi, and are in truth the Fins, Carelians, and Finnean Esthlanders. The Russians, properly so called, are colonists in their present country, and derive their origin from the Slavians or Slavonians, who first settled along the banks of the Wolga, and afterwards near the Danube, in the present Bulgaria and Hungary; but being driven thence by the Romans, they first removed to Dnieper, over-ran Poland, and, it is said, built the city of Kiow. They afterwards extended their colonies Northward, confined the Fins within narrower limits, and laid the foundation of the city of Novogrod. In the ninth century a number of Scandinavians emigrated, and crossing the Baltic, went to seek habitations in Russia: having subdued the Courlanders, Livonians, and Esthonians, they exacted tribute from the Novogrodians, settled kings over them, and traded as far as Kiow, and even

CHAPTER
IV.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to Greece. Russia, and particularly that part of it properly so called, was, in the age now spoken of, divided into a number of petty lordships: the chiefs were perpetually engaged in war with each other: the most pitiable devastations took place, and the utmost misery prevailed; when the Novogrodians applied to the Scandinavian colonists, and offered them the government of their country; and three princes of tried abilities and valour, named Ruric, Sineus, and Truwor, were sent to govern them. Each of these, who are supposed to have been brothers, took different parts of the territory, and, reigning amicably among themselves, made considerable additions to their respective portions; all of which at length devolved to Ruric; who is said to have died about the year eight hundred and seventy-eight, and to have left his dominions to his son Igor, a minor, and committed to the care of a relation, named Olech, who during the minority conquered several towns and countries, particularly to the South. Igor himself fell by the hands of a tribe on the banks of the Wolga, of whom he went to demand tribute: his widow, named Olga, revenged his death, and afterwards went to Constantinople, and was baptized, receiving the name of Helena. A considerable number of her subjects, influenced by her example, became converts to Christianity. To her succeeded her son Swetoslaw, who was a great warrior; and after enlarging his dominions by several acquisitions, was on his retreating from a defeat by the Greeks treacherously slain by a barbarous prince. He left three sons, who divided his inheritance among them; but the eldest soon attacking and slaying the second, the third served him after the same manner, and took possession of all his father's very extensive dominions. This triumphant murderer, by the terrour of his arms both at home and abroad, secured to his subjects a degree of peace which they had never before tasted. During this calm, it is said, Wolodimir demanded in marriage the daughter of the Greek emperor Basilius: his request was granted, on condition of his embracing Christianity, and himself and a large body of his subjects were baptized, and Michael Syra or Cyrus, sent from Constantinople by the patriarch Photius, was received as metropolitan of the whole country. The pagan idols were now removed; churches and monasteries erected; towns built; and the

A. D. 986.

A. D. 987.

arts began to flourish, and the Sclavonian letters were first introduced into Russia. Wolodimir's imprudence in dividing his dominions among his twelve sons, confined this fair scene to his own reign. As soon as he was dead, the contests of the brothers replunged the country into all the horrors of massacres and civil wars: yet as he did not die until the tenth century was ended, with him, who was called when living the Apostle and Solomon of the Russians, and is still honoured by them as a saint, must their history be for the present closed.

C H A P T E R V.

The History of Europe during the eleventh Century.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Transactions
in the Greek
empire during
the eleventh
century.

A. D. 1025.

THE Bulgarian war, in which the emperor Basilus was engaged at the close of the tenth century, was pursued with complete success on his part, though a brave resistance was supported by that people; nor was their entire reduction accomplished until the year one thousand and nineteen, the war having commenced in nine hundred and ninety-five. After this, during the emperor's absence on an expedition into Iberia, a revolt took place, which was quickly stopped by the policy of Basilus; but the execution or exile of many of the nobility on account of it, occasioned some commotions at Constantinople; which, however, were quelled by the apprehension and execution of the ringleaders. When the emperor was already in the seventieth year of his age, he prepared to attack the Saracens settled in Sicily for their continual ravages on the coasts of Naples and Calabria, which countries were still subject to the empire; but death seized him after he had reigned fifty years. By his decease Constantine, his brother, remained sole master of the empire, who, being a vicious and indolent prince, suffered his ministers, most of them as infamous as himself, to oppress his subjects without controul. Envy led them to remove and persecute the virtuous; and such were their proceedings, as to excite general discontent at home, and encourage hostile attacks from the neighbouring states. But, happily for his people, the despicable Constantine survived his brother but three years; and, when given over by his physicians, Romanus

Argyrus, a man of ancient family, and nearly related to the emperor, who had too many friends at court, was prevailed on to put away his wife, and marry Zoe, the emperor's second daughter, and then created Cæsar; three days after which Constantine died. Romanus the second began his reign with relieving the people from some of their taxes, with great munificence to the Church, and eminent charity in ransoming and sending home the captives taken in the late wars. He then embarked in an expedition against the Saracens, who infested by continual irruptions the territory of Antioch, but returned to Constantinople, having lost the greater part of his army. This miscarriage induced him to lay aside all thoughts of military achievements, when he turned his efforts to the replenishment of the imperial coffers; the severity of his exactions for which purpose gave rise to several conspiracies. A plague, famine, earthquakes, and a remarkable comet, then gave the mind of the emperor a new turn, and he applied wholly to works of piety. In the mean time the empress, a most incontinent woman, cast her eyes on an individual of gracefull person, named Michael; and that she might marry him, first caused poison to be administered to her husband, and that not destroying him quickly enough, she had him assassinated in a bath, when he had reigned five years and an half. The empress immediately married Michael, whose brother John, an eunuch, had been in great authority with the late emperor, and on whom Michael, who was received as emperor with very little opposition, devolved the care of the government, applying himself, as wounded in conscience, wholly to his devotions. In the third year of his reign a truce for thirty years was concluded with the Saracens of Egypt. The Bulgarians revolting two years after this, proclaimed one Deleanus their king, but were soon compelled to return to the yoke. The emperor returned in triumph after their reduction to Constantinople, and soon after, divesting himself of the purple, retreated into a monastery, and spent the remainder of his life in acts of piety and repentance, dying after he had reigned nearly eight years. On his death, Michael Calaphates, his sister's son, who had been created Cæsar, was proclaimed emperor. He on his accession banished his uncle, John the eunuch, and treated with unnatural severity his

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

other relations; and at length caused his great benefactress, the empress *Zoe*, to be confined in a monastery. This depth of ingratitude excited a general sedition; when the people sending for *Theodora*, the emperor *Constantine's* youngest daughter, who had been put into a monastery, saluted her empress with her sister *Zoe*; when *Michael* and his uncle *Constantine*, having been previously deprived of their eyes, were banished with all their adherents. Scarcely had *Zoe* reigned three months, ere, on being pressed to marry, she recalled from banishment *Constantine*, surnamed *Monomachus*, a man of noble extraction, and comely aspect, and having married him, caused him to be crowned. Having received an ill turn from *John* the eunuch, *Constantine* immediately banished him to the Isle of *Lesbos*, and his eyes being there pulled out, he soon died. *Maniaces*, whom *Zoe* had appointed commander-in-chief of the forces, having, on some ill treatment from one of the emperor's favourites, revolted, and assumed the purple, after defeating an imperial army, was slain by a person unknown. Another pretender to the empire appeared in *Leo Tornicius*, but he too was quickly subdued. Two years of tranquillity then intervening, a new enemy afterwards invaded the imperial territories: these were the *Turks*, who, quitting their ancient abode in the neighbourhood of *Caucasus*, had settled in *Armenia Major*: whither the sultan of *Persia*, finding himself unequal in war to the sultan of *Babylon*, sent to them for assistance; when *Tangrolipix*, a leading man among them, marched to him with three thousand men, and, after a course of operations, which will be noticed in another place, invaded the imperial province of *Media*; after some hostilities in which, and a fruitless attempt at a treaty of peace, the *Turks* ravaged *Iberia*, and continued infesting the borders of the empire until the death of the emperor, which occurred soon after that of the empress *Zoe*, *Theodora* being informed that *Monomachus* purposed, in defeat of her right, to appoint another successor, caused herself to be proclaimed ere he breathed his last. Her prudent choice of ministers, her impartial administration of justice, and great moderation in the use of power, gained both the affections of her subjects and the esteem of foreign nations; but in the second year of her reign a short illness put an end to her life. *Michael*

A. D. 1054.

A. D. 1056.

Stratoticus, a man in years, and unacquainted with state affairs, was by the intrigues of the eunuchs appointed and received as her successor; but a plot being soon formed to dethrone him, by some of his principal commanders, after he had reigned one year, he was compelled to retire to a monastery, and in his stead was placed on the throne Isaac Comnenus; whose firmness and character for courage preserved tranquillity for the short time he reigned. For in two years time he was seized with an illness, the fatal appearance of which induced him to resign the crown, and retire into a monastery: before which, however, he named for his successor Constantine Ducas, esteemed the best qualified in the empire for the station. Ducas after his coronation so administered affairs as to have been esteemed an excellent prince but for his insatiable avarice: to save the expense of garrisons he left the frontiers unguarded, whence the Turks extended their conquests in various parts, and the Uzians, a Scythian nation, laid waste Thrace and Macedon, penetrating even to Greece; but they were at length cut off by the Hungarians. A violent distemper in a few days manifested the vanity of this emperor's eagerness to heap up riches: ere his death he endeavoured to secure the empire to his three sons, Michael, Andronicus, and Constantine, appointing their mother, Eudocia, regent during their minority. No sooner did the Turks hear that the empire was governed by a woman, than they broke with fire and sword into Mesopotamia, Cilicia, and Cappadocia. Eudocia, distressed on the one hand at these ravages, and on the other alarmed at the discontents at home, resolved to marry (though her late husband had made her take an oath, that she would not) some person capable of resisting both her foreign and domestick enemies. Having by a stratagem obtained from the patriarch, with whom it was lodged, both the record of her oath, and absolution from the obligation of it, she married Romanus Diogenes, a descendant from the emperor Romanus Argyrus, of eminent faculties, and great military experience. No sooner was Romanus invested with the imperial power, than by his exertions he defeated the Turks, and regained several places from them: but in the third year of this war, betrayed by one of his generals, John Ducas, brother to the late emperor, he

A. D. 1057.

A. D. 1059.

A. D. 1067.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

was taken prisoner by Axan, the sultan of Bagdad, son of Tangro-lipix, who entertained him with great generosity ; and after concluding with him a perpetual peace, released him with the highest marks of honour. But during his captivity, the treacherous John Ducas drove Eudocia from the throne, and proclaimed her eldest son, Michael Ducas, emperour ; and taking Romanus prisoner on his return from the Turk, had him with great cruelty put to death : on this Michael Ducas was universally acknowledged, but indolently devolved all his power on his uncle John. Axan, the Turkish sultan, hearing of the unworthy end of his friend and ally, proceeded to revenge it, not only by plundering the territories of the empire, but by conquering them, and retaining what he conquered ; in consequence of which ensued a course of hostilities, much to the disadvantage of the empire ; which, too, was further weakened by civil wars, arising from the revolts of Rusilius, a native of Gaul ; but who was at length brought into the power of the emperour by Alexius Comnenus. The aversion which all ranks of his subjects had by this time conceived against the emperour on account of his avarice, encouraged two different commanders to assume the purple : Michael, despairing of being able to resist either of these, quietly resigned the empire, and retired into a monastery, where he took holy orders, and was soon raised to the see of Ephesus. On the resignation of Michael, the first of the competitors, Nicephorus Botoniates, who commanded the forces in Asia, entered Constantinople, and being crowned by the patriarch, immediately dispatched Alexius Comnenus against his rival Nicephorus Bryennius, whom he defeated and took prisoner ; and had the same success against Basilacius, another pretender to the empire. But Alexius himself and his brother, finding themselves in danger from the intrigues carrying on in the court, resolved, by the assistance of a strong party, to depose the emperour ; which they easily effected, he taking the religious habit, and Alexius being crowned by the patriarch. The preparations of Alexius to attack the Turks, produced overtures of lasting peace from Solyman, the successor of Cutlu-Moses, which, after several advantages gained by Alexius, were accepted, because he expected to be attacked by Robert, duke of Puglia and Calabria : who having with his brother

expelled the Saracens from Italy, had in the territories possessed by them established a new principality: for Michael Ducas, who had been driven from the imperial throne, escaping into Italy, prevailed on Robert, whose daughter had for some years been betrothed to his son, to attempt his restoration. With this view he passed with all his forces into Epirus, and advancing to Dyrrachium besieged it; and though his fleet was totally defeated by the Venetians, continued to press the siege, until the emperor arrived to attempt to relieve the place: when Robert completely overthrew his army, and then the town surrendered. While preparing a new army, Alexius entered into alliance with Henry, emperor of Germany, who marching into Italy was by Robert obliged to quit it: while his son Bohemond, whom he had left in Illyricum, defeated Alexius in two pitched battles; yet, by a mutiny of his troops, was obliged to retire to his father in Italy. Robert preparing to renew his attempt, the Venetians, at the request of Alexius, again came forward, and twice defeated the fleet of Robert, but at last lost by a surprise almost their whole navy: yet equipping a second fleet, gained a victory as complete: and when their enemy was repairing his fleet, he was seized with a fever, which put an end to his life in the island of Cephalenia; on which his son and successor Roger, recalled his troops, when all the places they had seized in Illyricum returned to the emperor. The Scythians by breaking into Thrace next called the emperor's attention; and after a two years contest, and great loss of men in it, Alexius put an end to this war by a decisive victory. In the mean time the Turks having made themselves masters of several places in Asia, and repeatedly fought with John Ducas, the brother to the empress, whom Alexius had sent against them, the sultan at length concluded a peace with the emperor, who had resolved to march against them in person. The Scythians being induced to invade the empire anew, were driven back with great loss; and repeating their attack the next year, received two such defeats as led them to conclude a peace on such terms as the emperor prescribed. After Alexius had returned to Constantinople, he was informed of the preparations made by the Western Christians to rescue the holy land from the hand of the Mahometans; at which

he was considerably alarmed, not being satisfied of the motives on which so many princes would leave their dominions, and engage in an undertaking so hazardous. However, when the shattered remains of the forces which had been entrusted to the conduct of Peter the Hermit reached Constantinople, Alexius received them with great marks of friendship, and supplied them with provisions, with which they passed the Streights into Asia. But when Godfrey of Bouillon arrived at Philippopolis, his alarm increased, though he refused to accede to his demand to release Hugh, brother to the king of France, whom chance had thrown into his hands. On this Godfrey openly began hostilities, laying waste the country, and marching directly to Constantinople; when Alexius found it necessary to release his prisoner; but not performing the promise which he at the same time made of supplying his army with provisions, Godfrey was so provoked, that he ravaged the country to the very gates of the metropolis. Alexius then proffered every satisfaction; and, after much mutual civility, and many conferences and debates, an agreement was made, that during the expedition Alexius should assist the crusaders with all his forces, supply them with arms, provisions, and other necessities, and treat them as his allies; and that the princes should restore to him all the cities and provinces which they should recover from the Turks and Saracens. The emperor received the other princes, who quickly arrived at the head of powerful armies, with great marks of regard. The operations of these mighty forces must be detailed in another part of this Work, and those particulars alone noticed here which properly belong to the history of the Greek empire. When the Christians, then, became masters of Antioch, as Alexius had under various pretences failed in giving them the assistance he was by the treaty bound to do, they conceived themselves released from their part of it, and they appointed Bohemond prince of that metropolis. In the mean time the attention of the emperor was engaged by Tangripermes, a Turkish pirate, who having seized on the cities of Smyrna and Ephesus, and the islands of Rhodes and Chios, cruelly infested the coasts of the empire. Against this freebooter, Alexius sent a considerable both naval and military force, which recovered the two cities, and defeated Tangripermes with

great slaughter ; a victory which was followed by the surrender of several maritime places of great importance. Elated with this success, Alexius required Bohemond to transfer the city of Antioch to him according to the terms of the treaty ; a demand which immediately produced hostilities on the part of the Frank. To these Alexius retaliated by an attack on the fleet of the Western princes, and the war continued until the next year, when the ill success of Bohemond before Dyrrachium, produced a peace equally honourable to both parties : but here must be suspended the history of the Greek empire ; and that of Italy during the eleventh century resumed.

The eleventh century opened in Italy with the recovery, by the emperor Otho the third, of all the places which the Saracens had seized in Campania. Some commotions in Rome then calling him thither, by putting to death two of the most guilty, he in some measure quelled the seditious. But some regulations which he made both in church and state, occasioned a new conspiracy, from which he narrowly escaped ; and that only to be poisoned by the widow of Crescentius, whom he had entertained as a concubine. His death was followed by one Ardoïn, marquis of Ivrea, procuring himself to be declared king of Italy ; though the archbishop of Milan in an assembly of prelates acknowledged for such Henry, duke of Bavaria, the new emperor of Germany. Ardoïn repulsed a small army which Henry sent against him : still several cities in Lombardy continued faithful to the emperor ; while others, as Pisa, Genoa, and Florence, seized the opportunity of laying the foundations of their future grandeur. In the mean time pope Sylvester was on his death succeeded by John Sico, a Roman, who living but five months, had for his successor John Fasan, also a Roman, who took the name of John the nineteenth. Henry, having quieted the troubles in Germany, penetrated into Italy in spite of the opposition Ardoïn could make, and was crowned at Pavia ; but quickly returning to Germany, Ardoïn again took the field, and ravaged the provinces which remained in obedience to the emperor. Three years after, John the nineteenth dying, Peter, bishop of Alva, was elected, and took the name of Sergius the fourth. He living not quite three years, a schism arose ; one faction choosing one Gregory, and another, John bishop

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Italy
during the
11th century.

A. D. 1002.

A. D. 1003.

A. D. 1003.

A. D. 1009.

A. D. 1012.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

of Porto, who took the name of Benedict the eighth. But this last being soon expelled by the faction of Gregory, applied for protection to the emperor; who again marched into Italy, and was at Rome crowned emperor by the pope; who, however, previously demanded of him a promise to observe fidelity to him and his successors in every thing. No sooner was Henry returned into Germany, than Ardoïn renewed his ravages; but seeing a powerfull opposition forming against him, and that he had lost the affections of the people, he retired into a monastery, and there ended his days. The Saracens, having made a descent on the coast of Tuscany, were mostly cut off by some forces which the pope sent against them. Soon after this, various disturbances arose in different parts of Italy; and they so increased, that Henry thought proper to march with a considerable army into that country, where he reduced the greater part of the cities of Apulia and Calabria, and then returned into Germany, where the next year he died. A few months before which died also pope Benedict, who was succeeded, through force of money and strength of faction, by a layman, who took the name of John the twentieth. Conrad, duke of Franconia, being elected emperor of Germany, Heribert, archbishop of Milan, endeavored to have him chosen king of Italy, but frustrated in that, went into Germany himself, and there declared him such, taking the oath of allegiance to him. This military ecclesiastick being afterward debilitated by some of the nobles of Milan, whom he had oppressed, invited Conrad to come into Italy: while the Italian nobles, who were averse to Conrad, offered the crown of Italy to the king of France, and the duke of Guienne, neither of whom deemed it worth while to come into Italy for it. But the emperor marching into that country was crowned according to the ancient usage; and the next year was at Rome crowned by the pope emperor of the West. While here, as usual among that most turbulent people, a tumult took place, and endeavours to expel the emperor were made by the populace; but these, after much bloodshed, were obliged to submit. After this the emperor left Rome, and at no great distance of time returned to Germany: but in a few years was induced to appear again at Rome, on a faction having expelled the pope. Yet he had not long left it

again for Germany, when the Italians resolved on a general revolt ; in consequence of which, Conrad, as soon as his affairs would permit him, passed the Alps, and took vengeance on many of the conspirators, but could not take Milan ; the archbishop of which, Heribert, was suspected of being one of them, and whose archbishoprick Conrad transferred to Ambrose a cardinal. But no sooner had the emperor again quitted Italy, than Heribert prepared for war ; yet Conrad dying in the following year, Henry his successor was reconciled to him. Soon after this the city of Milan was grievously afflicted by factions, while Rome itself was not less so : here, indeed, the counts of Tuscany had ruled with absolute authority for nearly two centuries, yet the opposite faction, being now supported by Ptolemy the consul, a man of great power, took arms and expelled pope Benedict, whose life gave universal scandal, substituting John bishop of Sabinum, who took the name of Sylvester the third. In three months, however, Benedict was by his faction restored, and excommunicated Sylvester ; yet finding himself despised and hated, he, for a sum of money, quickly resigned to John, arch-presbyter of Rome : but soon weary of a private life, he resumed the dignity at the same time claimed by the other two ; who, supported by their respective partisans, maintained themselves out of the revenues of the see : thus, while Benedict possessed the palace of the Lateran, Sylvester remained at St. Peter's, and the other at St. Mary Major ; all three being remarkable for their scandalous lives ; and by severally pretending to be the vicegerent of Christ, affording one instance of the admirable accuracy with which the spirit of prophecy has stigmatized the papal power with names of blasphemy.* Gratian, a Roman priest of piety and learning, prevailed with them all to renounce the pontificate for an annuity to be paid out of the patrimony of St. Peter ; for which service the Romans elected him pope, when he took the name of Gregory the sixth. The report of these disturbances at Rome at last brought the emperor Henry with an army into Italy, when he was crowned king of Italy at Milan ; held an assembly of bishops at Sutri, in which pope Gregory was deposed

* See the Revelation, c. xiii. 1, xvii. 3.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1048.

on a charge of simony; and the papal see being declared vacant, the bishop of Bamberg, proposed by the emperour, was consecrated, by the name of Clement the second; and on the same day crowned Henry emperour of the West; who at Capua confirmed to the Normans the conquests they had made in Apulia. So military was the disposition of this age, that the Pavians refusing to receive the bishop named by the emperour, the archbishop of Milan raised some forces, and fairly beat them into it. Soon after Henry had left Italy, pope Clement died, and Benedict again seized on the papacy, and held it until the arrival of Damasus the second, sent from Germany by Henry, who when at Rome had made a decree, referring the nomination of the popes solely to the emperour. On the decease of Damasus, who enjoyed his dignity but twenty-three days, the shameless Benedict again grasped at the see; but the Romans detesting him sent to beg another bishop of the emperour, who sent Bruno, bishop of Toul: but he on his journey being met by Hildebrand, abbot of Cluny, afterwards Gregory the seventh, was by him persuaded not to accept of the government of the church from a layman, and to lay aside the pontifical habit which he had assumed; and the same priest accompanied him to Rome, where being elected by the clergy and people, he took the name of Leo the ninth. Humphrey, a Norman, count of Apulia, desirous of extending his dominions, invaded those of the church, and plundered many churches and monasteries; while his brother Richard, count of Aversa, took possession of Capua; but the pope could only complain to Henry, and excommunicate the states of Capua and Benevento. These measures having no effect on the Normans, Leo went in person to the emperour, and in exchange for the jurisdiction of several abbies and churches in Germany, accepted from him the city of Benevento, with some German troops to repell the Normans: these being joined by great numbers of volunteers of profligate characters, his holiness led this army into Italy; but there, after rejecting the offer of submission made by the Normans, he received from them a complete defeat, and soon afterwards was taken prisoner by them; when, being treated with great respect, having already taken off their excommunication, he by a treaty confirmed to them their conquests

A. D. 1054.

in Calabria and Sicily; and then, returning to Rome, died. On the death of Leo, Benedict the ninth, supported by the counts of Tuscany, intruded into the papacy, until the arrival of the bishop of Eichstet, chosen by an assembly of bishops called by the emperor at Mentz, who took the name of Victor the second. In the next year Henry died; having a little before his death had the election of his son Henry, who had been declared king of the Romans when only three years old, confirmed in a diet of the empire; and soon after his decease the young Henry was in another diet at Cologne acknowledged: neither did he meet with any opposition in Italy. The next year died Victor the second: the cardinals immediately assembling, unanimously elected cardinal Frederick, who took the name of Stephen the ninth; and directly after his consecration sent Hildebrand to the dowager empress Agnes, who held the imperial authority as guardian for her son Henry the fourth, to consult with her concerning the reformation of the clergy, who were universally accused of simony. Of this the church of Milan, which had long separated itself from that of Rome, was remarkably guilty; and in it was countenanced by Vido the archbishop: this prelate, by a decree made in an assembly of his bishops, gave his clergy permission to marry. Pope Stephen held the pontificate but eight months; and on his death the Tusculan faction at Rome declared John, bishop of Velitri, pope, by the name of Benedict the tenth: but this intruder, whose ignorance was such that he could not read, was, on the election of Gerard, bishop of Florence, who took the name of Nicholas the second, easily deposed. When the new pope held a council of one hundred and thirteen bishops, besides other ecclesiasticks, in which it was decreed, that in future the pope should be elected by the cardinals only, reserving to the emperor all due honour and respect. The pope next settled his disputes with the Normans, Robert Guiscard and his brother Richard, under an agreement that they should restore whatever they had taken from the see, and be themselves absolved from all sentences of excommunication. Nicholas then gave the investiture of the principality of Capua to Richard, and that of the dukedoms of Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily to Robert, both swearing to be faithful feudatories to the holy see. The treaty

A. D. 1057.

A. D. 1059.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

with the Normans concluded, some of that nation, at the persuasion of Nicholas, invaded the territories of the counts of Tuscany, under pretence of their rebellion against their lord the pope, and obliged them to submit to him. In the mean time a legate being sent to Milan, the populace in a violent insurrection opposed his interference in their church, which was independent of that of Rome, but by the eloquence of the legate they were quickly brought to submission; and on examination he discovered, that there was scarcely one priest but had purchased his preferment, and lived with a concubine. The archbishop and clergy then sware to reform the abuses in their church; but on the legate's departure, the clergy reviling the archbishop for betraying the rights of his church, he again allowed them to keep concubines. The death of pope Nicholas, which took place two years after, occasioned great differences about his successor; one, who took the name of Alexander the second, being elected by the cardinals at Rome, and another being chosen by another assembly of bishops under the imperial authority, and who assumed the name of Honorius the second. A civil war between these pontiffs and their partizans ensued; but a change of administration at the imperial court gave the advantage to Alexander, and Honorius was deposed by a general council at Mantua. The factions at Milan continuing, involved in their disputes the emperor and the pope, the last of which had the insolence to cite the former to appear before his tribunal. Alexander dying soon after, this citation had no effect, and his successor Hildebrand, who took the name of Gregory, did not think it proper at first to irritate the emperor. After some protestations of unwillingness to retain the dignity on the part of Gregory, the emperor confirmed his election: but no sooner was he thus in full possession, than he manifested his intention to dispute with the emperor the right of conferring benefices, and forbade the bishops to use the title of pope. He sent a legate into Spain to reform abuses, though principally to claim all the conquests lately made from the Moors, under the pretence that the kingdom, before the invasion by them, was tributary to the Roman see: these symptoms of vigour in Gregory, induced the emperor to send him a conciliatory and even submissive letter. In the mean time this lordly

A. D. 1061.

A. D. 1073.

prelate having made a progress to receive the homage of the dukes of Capua and Benevento, while on it sent a letter to the governour of Sardinia, informing him, that the dominion of the island belonged to the see of Rome, but assuring him, that if he continued in his obedience he would suffer no one to molest him ; and ere he returned to Rome, he, by a letter to the bishop of Chalons, threatened to excommunicate the king of France, and absolve his subjects from their allegiance, if he did not desist from conferring his benefices for money. Gregory's presumption in sending some legates to hold a council in Germany, interrupted the good understanding between the emperour and him ; and in the mean time, at a council he himself held at the Lateran, it was decreed, that if any one should take the investiture of a church from a layman, both he who gave, and he who received it, should be excommunicated : it was also decreed, that all married priests should either dismiss their wives or be deposed.* Another council was holden the next year at Rome, which held the same high tone : for the pope menaced the king of France with excommunication, and suspended several bishops. The submission which Henry had hitherto paid to the pope was owing, it seems, to his being engaged in a war with the Saxons, but he determined no longer to be so submissive, and therefore he sent to the pope in behalf of the bishops who had been suspended ; yet obtained from him nothing but permission to assemble a council in Germany on the celibacy of the clergy ; in which the pope's legate on only proposing it as a question, was threatened with death. In the mean time Gregory seized the opportunity of an embassy from the king of Hungary, to claim that kingdom as a fief of the see of Rome, and accepted the offer of the king of Russia to receive investiture from him : soon after which he had nearly perished by a conspiracy in which he was taken prisoner, but by the resolute interference of the people released the next day. The insolence of

* As Hildebrand himself had been a monk, having been abbot of Cluny, this decree, passed under his sanction, forms a more remarkable instance of the completion of the prediction of St. Paul in 1 Tim. iv. 1—3, that such should forbid marriage.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Gregory now rising to that height as to cite the emperor to appear before a council at Rome, and answer the charges of communicating with excommunicated bishops, and conferring benefices on persons unknown to the pope, menacing him with immediate excommunication on neglect, their opposition to each was no longer disguised. Henry assembled a council at Worms and deposed Gregory: on which the pope in a council at Rome excommunicated the emperor, absolving all his subjects from their oaths of allegiance. In this assembly were drawn up various resolutions, under the title of *Dictatus Papæ*, all tending to establish the despotick authority then usurped by the pope.* The bishops of Lombardy, alarmed at the papal assumptions, followed the example of those of Germany, and deposed the pope: but the latter in the mean time changed their minds, and begged pardon and absolution from Gregory; and many of the nobles from private views being inclined to dethrone Henry, he was deserted by the greatest part of his subjects, when the pope by letter, exhorting them in case of Henry's continuing obstinate to elect a new sovereign, an assembly, composed almost wholly of malcontents, was holden, from part of which notice was sent to the emperor, that they were determined to leave the decision of the

* Though the arrogance of the Roman pontiffs in presuming arbitrarily to terminate the differences among independent sovereigns, with menaces of excommunication against those who did not submit to their sentence, had been so manifested before as to verify the words of the prophecy of Daniel, that "his mouth spake great things, and his look was more stout than his fellows;" (Dan. vii. 20.) yet before Gregory no one had dared to depose sovereigns. Of the resolutions above spoken of, the following will be a sufficient specimen: "That the Roman pontiff alone can be called universal: that he alone can depose bishops: that his legates have a right to preside over all bishops at a council: that princes are bound to kiss his feet: that he has a right to depose emperors: that no synod or council can be called general without his commission: that no book can be reckoned canonical without his authority: that his sentence can be annulled by none; but that he may annul the decrees of all: that the Roman church has never erred, nor ever will err: that he is not a Catholic who dissents from the Roman church: that subjects may be absolved from their allegiance to wicked princes." Here, then, let the reader seriously consider, whether, when these doctrines were received in the church, the saints were not given into the hands of the bishop of Rome; and whether in him did not concur the same powers that Julius Cæsar possessed, the pontifical and the dictatorial?

matter to the pope in a general diet : but unless he was absolved in twelve months, they would choose another emperour. Henry perceiving himself in danger of losing his crown, repaired to Italy, and submitted to appear before a castle where the pope was, with but few attendants, and being alone admitted within the outmost wall, stood there barefooted, in a very rigorous season, for three whole days, awaiting the sentence of the pope. On the fourth day the insolent prelate condescended to admit and converse with him ; he gave him, too, absolution, after exacting from him all the promises he chose, and among the rest, that he should continue always obedient to the Roman see. Ere Gregory left Canosa, the scene of these transactions, he received from Mathilda, the widow of Godfrey duke of Spoleto and Tuscany, a grant of all her possessions, which were very great, to the use of the church. The Italians were highly offended at the emperour for the meanness of his submission to a man, who had been excommunicated by the bishops of Italy in general for simony, murder, adultery, and other crimes ; but Henry publicly infringing his treaty with the pope, and making an effort to seize both him and his companion Mathilda, they were reconciled to him. But in Germany the nobles deposed him for not appearing at the diet, and elected in his room Rodolphus, duke of Suabia. This step brought the pope into no small difficulty ; as Henry's power in Italy made him fearfull of declaring against him, while his own faction in Germany was not to be abandoned ; and the nobles of this last country openly censured his wavering policy. Henry having returned to Germany, the Italians began to acknowledge the pope and claim an independence, which several of their cities afterwards maintained ; while Gregory spread his arrogant demands into Britain, Spain, and other countries. The next year at a council assembled at Rome he excommunicated cardinal Hugh and several bishops ; and Henry and Rodolphus agreeing to a suspension of arms, their dispute was referred to the legates in Germany. The following year another council was assembled at Rome, at which Berengarius, now eighty years of age, renounced the rational opinion of the Eucharist which he had for many years maintained, that the bread and wine, after consecration, continued the same, and were no more than,

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

external symbols of the body and blood of Christ. Soon after this council, Gregory menaced with excommunication the king of England, and actually excommunicated Boleslaus of Poland, absolving his subjects from their allegiance. Rodolphus having gained a victory over Henry, Gregory took courage to again excommunicate the latter, and declare his kingdom given to Rodolphus, granting absolution of their sins to all who should assist him: exasperated at this, Henry on his part called a council of bishops and nobles, by which Gregory was deposed, and the archbishop of Ravenna elected pope, under the title of Clement the third. At this crisis Gregory thought proper to be reconciled to the Normans, and grant the investiture of Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, to Robert: while the emperor Henry defeated his rival Rodolphus, who was mortally wounded in the action; yet in a council holden the next year at Rome, the emperor was again excommunicated with his new pope. In spite of these thunders, Henry advanced with an army into Italy, and forced the troops of Mathilda to retire; when the pope addressed a circular letter to the faithful, exhorting them to rise in defence of the persecuted church. After this, Henry advanced to Rome, and after various attacks and various futile negotiations, made himself master of all but the castle of St. Angelo; but ere he could gain that, was, by the approach of the Normans, compelled to retire; when Gregory was again set at liberty: but finding the people discontented, and the imperial army being still in the neighbourhood, he went from the city to Salerno, where he continued until his death: and in the mean time the Romans expelled Clement, and rejected both him and Gregory; who died at Salerno the following year. In his room, and at his suggestion previous to his decease, Desiderius, abbot of Cassino, was elected, and, after a protracted resistance, consecrated pope, and took the name of Victor the third: yet Rome continued to be disputed between him and his rival Clement; who, supported by the imperialists, ejected several bishops from their churches. In the mean time Victor, having raised an army to send against the Saracens in Africa, where it was very successful, and holden a council in which his rival was excommunicated, died, not without suspicion of poison: for his successor was chosen Otho,

A. D. 1086.

A. D. 1088.

bishop of Ostia, who took the name of Urban the third, and very shamelessly declared, that he would in all things follow the steps of Gregory the seventh : but on going to Rome he was, by the partizans of Clement, obliged to take refuge in an island in the Tyber, where he was for some months supported by some Roman matrons : after which, having prevailed with the Romans to expel his rival, he held a council at Rome, in which Henry and the anti-pope and all their adherents were excommunicated. Not long afterwards he prevailed on Mathilda, then in the forty-third year of her age, to marry Guelph, son of the duke of Bavaria, from whom are descended the present dukes of Brunswick and Lunenburg. The emperor now marched into Italy again, but entering the territories of Mathilda, there received a check from duke Guelph : and, on the other hand, Urban having continued some time absent from Rome, the imperial party recalled Clement, and made themselves masters of the castle of St. Angelo : the emperor, too, took the cities of Mantua and Ferrara. Neither did the renewed excommunication which Urban hurled at him, impede the course of his victories, nor did that pontiff dare to enter Rome for some time ; but at length got possession of part of the city. Henry having lost one of his sons in the siege of Carpineto, withdrew all his troops beyond the Po, and Mathilda recovered all she had lost on the opposite side of that river. Conrad, the emperor's eldest son, resenting some harsh treatment from his father, rebelled against him, and took part with Mathilda ; and his holiness, Urban, immediately absolved him from excommunication ; on which he was crowned king of Italy by the archbishop of Milan, received the allegiance of many cities of Lombardy, and formed an alliance with the Normans, by marrying the daughter of Roger, count of Sicily. This revolt of his son obliged Henry to retire to the Alps ; while Urban again took possession of Rome, his opponents retiring to the castle of St. Angelo. Next year he held a numerous council at Piacenza, where ambassadors from the Greek emperor arrived, intreating assistance against the Saracens. After the dissolution of the council, on the pope's entrance into Cremona the base Conrad acted as his groom, and took an oath of fidelity to the see of Rome : soon after this, Urban went into France, and held the celebrated

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

council of Clermont, in which was proposed the first crusade for the recovery of the holy land out of the hands of the infidels. The efforts made to excite the people to embark in the fanatical expedition to Palæstine, having the greatest success, Urban by letter informed the Greek emperor of their purpose; and in the mean time granted to Richard, count of Apulia, and his son who should succeed him, authority to act as his legates in Sicily. After Urban had holden one council at Bari, and another at Rome, and his opponent also one at the last place, the former hearing of the success of the crusaders in Asia sent a legate to the Christian army to restore the churches in those places which had been taken from the infidels. In the following year many crusaders giving in their names for the holy expedition, Urban employed them in recovering from his own adversaries the castle of St. Angelo; and having quieted the factions in Rome, died. The clergy and nobles of Rome assembling to choose a pope, immediately placed cardinal Rainier on the pontifical throne, under the name of Paschal the second; who acting vigorously against the anti-pope, obliged him to retire to Citta di Castello, where the following year he died: an event that brings the history of Italy to the close of the eleventh century.

A. D. 1099.

Transactions
in France
during the
11th century.

Henry, duke of Burgundy, uncle to Robert, king of France, dying without heirs, his territories fell to that monarch, who, after a war of some years with two claimants, Eudes, the late duke's natural son, and Otho William, count of Burgundy, who pretended to have been adopted by the late duke, did, by the assistance of the duke of Normandy, get possession of, and invest his own second son Henry with the duchy. Robert himself proved an excellent monarch, but was too submissive to his queen, a woman of extreme insolence and avarice, who, on one of his ministers opposing her designs, had him assassinated in his master's presence: at her persuasion he associated with him in the government his eldest son, though but sixteen. The king, being very zealous, caused some priests, who had fallen into an heresy resembling that of the Manichees, to be burnt alive, in the presence of himself and his queen: he afterwards declined the crown of the empire and the kingdom of Italy. When Hugh his eldest son was arrived at an age to be of assistance to him, he was cut off by

death, to the great grief of his father, but very little concern of his mother: on this loss the king associated his next son Henry in his throne. The queen, who wished her younger son Robert to have been preferred to his brother, was so irritated by this measure, and the acquiescence of the younger in it, that she persecuted both until they retired from court, and took up arms, not from ambition, but to obtain tranquillity; of which when their father was rendered sensible, he made a suitable settlement with them. The king, though he left the elections of bishops in general free, finding it necessary to have a prelate he could depend on at Langres, named a bishop, and the monks poisoned him; on which the king named another, and sent his son Henry to see him installed. While the prince was thus employed, the king breathed his last at Melun, A. D. 1031. having reigned three and thirty years. No sooner had Henry acceded to the sole government, than his vile mother excited a rebellion against him, and obliged him to flee to the duke of Normandy for assistance; through whose co-operation he humbled all his opponents. Having thus acquired peaceable possession of his dominions, and given his brother Robert the duchy of Burgundy, a war broke out for the kingdom of that name, between Eudes, count of Champagne, and the emperour, in which the former at last fell; leaving his estates to his two sons, Thibaud, count of Beausse, Touraine, and Beauvoise, and Stephen, count of Champagne, who refused to do homage to Henry, because he had not assisted their father against the emperour: these, in conjunction with Eudes, the king's other brother, took arms; all to their own loss. Eudes was sent prisoner for three years to Orleans: the count of Champagne lost great part of his land, and Thibaud Touraine. Galeran, count of Meulan, was attainted of felony, and his country united to the crown; which, being the first instance of its kind, shews that the constitution of France began now to be settled on a firmer basis. The duchy of Normandy having fallen into great confusion, on the absence of its duke in the holy land, Henry at first most ungratefully made advantage of this state of affairs; but afterwards took the part of the young duke, who had succeeded his father, so effectually, that to him he owed the possession of his dominions: still, growing jealous

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

of the increasing power of the duke, after privately supporting some malcontents, he invaded Normandy on their behalf, but there deservedly met with a check. The peace which followed this, being made without sincerity on either side, Henry took the first opportunity of once more invading Normandy, where the same ill success again attended him, which constrained him to make peace on the duke's terms: but this extinguished not the rancour between them, which, in fact, was transmitted to their successors. The king having, by a princess of Russia whom he had married, three sons, had Philip, the eldest of these, then but seven years old, crowned with great solemnity; declaring, at the same time, Baldwin earl of Flanders tutor and guardian to the young king: a precaution taken most opportunely; since Henry himself died within a twelvemonth; some thought by poison. In his time pope Leo the ninth held a council at Rheims, in which several canons were made against crimes, which were but too frequent: some bishops were also deposed; but so little with the king's approbation, that when Nicholas the second thought of making a similar visit, he would not permit it. Baldwin the fifth, earl of Flanders, to whom Henry had entrusted the guardianship of his son Philip, had all the qualities requisite for such a trust: he gave his pupil an education suitable to his rank, kept the nobility in awe by being always armed, preserved peace, and so conducted the government, that history scarcely records a minority more quiet, and none more happy than this. When Philip had attained the fifteenth year of his age, and had some able ministers about him, he lost his guardian. This king, though well educated, and not deficient in ability, was very self-interested; under the specious pleas of mediating, or of assisting the oppressed, but in reality with a view only to the increase of his own power, he interposed in all his neighbours' disputes. He interfered only to their detriment in the quarrels of the family of his late guardian: he took part with success against William duke of Normandy in favour of Hoel, duke of Bretagne. After a peace was concluded, he excited Robert, the eldest son of William, from his acquisition of England called the Conquerour, to raise disturbances in Normandy, and gave him the town of Gerberoi in Beauvoisins for this purpose. Hither

the Conquerour pursued his rebellious son, and was unhorsed by him in battle, without being known to him until he spake ; when Robert raised him up, threw himself at his feet, and replaced him on his horse ; which incident partly contributed to another peace, though not to a perfect reconciliation ; while Philip, who affected to be mediator between the parent and child, was equally an enemy to both. After some years, by a sarcasm of Philip's on William, another war was kindled, in which the latter died of a hurt he received in leaping a ditch. When the contests began between the sons of William, Philip professed himself the friend of Robert, but quickly forsook him for his brother William's money. After this, being grown weary of his wife, he fortunately discovered that she was related to him, though very distantly : when, he procured a divorce, and sent her to Montreuil ; where she died of ill treatment and a broken heart. Having then demanded in marriage the daughter of count Roger, brother to the duke of Calabria, he afterward refused to marry her : but he carried off the countess of Anjou from her husband, and procuring her to be divorced from him, got himself married to her. Pope Urban the second having had the matter investigated in a council at Autun, a sentence of excommunication was pronounced against the king, unless he parted with her ; and when it appeared that he would not, he was, in a council at Clermont, excommunicated. In this council the first crusade for the recovery of the holy land was proposed, and answered *unâ voce*, with the exclamation " God wills it." The king's brother Hugo, and his friend the duke of Normandy took the cross ; but Philip, though he humbled himself so far as to procure absolution from the pope, relapsed into his former scandalous mode of life with the duchess of Anjou, and was excommunicated a third time. Too many of the nobility followed his example, while they despised his authority ; making war on each other, and plundering his subjects. In the mean time Philip, though excommunicated anew, when the queen was dead renewed his instances at Rome, and by the influence of presents and prayers obtained absolution. Through the base conduct of Philip, the monarchy now would have been absolutely ruined, had not the king associated with himself in the government his son

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Lewis, a prince the very reverse of his father, and one of the best and worthiest that country ever produced. He acted with such zeal for the publick good as to bring things into tolerable order, and, at the same time, gain the general affection: but this alteration in affairs taking place only at the end of the eleventh century, here the history of France must be again suspended.

Transactions
in Spain
during the
11th century.

There have been few instances of a regency better conducted than that during the minority of Don Alphonso the fifth of Leon. As a proof of his gratitude to his governour, Don Melendo Gonçalez, he married his daughter, Donna Elvira; on which event the queen dowager retired with her two daughters into a monastery. From the time of his marriage the king governed without assistance; and so encouraged the rebuilding of the towns, and the repeopling of the country, as to prompt the nobility to follow his example, and procure himself the affection and esteem of his subjects. At length, with the assistance of the nobility, Leon was rebuilt, and Zamora repaired, and made one of the strongest places on the frontiers: after which he led an army against Viséo, but reconnoitring the place, was mortally wounded, and died in the thirty-fourth year of his life; leaving by his queen two children, Don Bermudo, and Donna Sancha. The former was without hesitation placed on the vacant throne. The disturbances among the Moors still continued the external tranquillity of the kingdom. While Don Sanchez, king of Navarre, who had the principal care of Don Garcias, count of Castile, represented to the court of Leon the advantages which would result to the common cause of the Christians in Spain by the marriage of his ward with the infanta Donna Sancha; a proposal which was immediately embraced; but the accomplishment of it prevented by the assassination of Don Garcias by three wretches, whom the king of Navarre afterwards took prisoners and burnt alive. This last monarch having now become very powerfull by the addition of many fair provinces to his hereditary kingdom, to which was now annexed the county of Castile, Don Bermudo applied to him for the daughter of count Sanchez of Castile: this request being readily granted, the marriage was solemnized with great splendour. Some malcontents in Galicia having broken out into open rebellion, Bermudo rapidly

A. D. 1027.

drove them from the country, and confiscating their estates, gave them to the church of St. James at Compostella. And about the same time he deposed and imprisoned the bishop of that see for his bad conduct and immoral life. Bermudo having rashly embarked in a war against the king of Navarre, on account of the city of Placentia, lost the city of Astorga, besides a tract of country ; but, when preparing for a decisive engagement, the prelates attending on both monarchs so effectually represented the pernicious consequences of their dispute, that a peace was concluded, on the conditions that Bermudo should cede the country which Sanchez had taken between the rivers Pisuerga and Cea, as the portion of his sister, Donna Saucha, and the king of Navarre should give Castile to his second son, Don Ferdinand, who, on espousing the infanta, should assume the title of king. The marriage was accordingly celebrated, and the conjunction of interests formed by it was highly acceptable to the people of the three kingdoms, thus protected from the Moors ; who were, too, at this time involved in quarrels among themselves, and divided into so many principalities as to be far less formidable to the Christians than before. The observation of the pernicious effects of this division, did not prevent the king of Navarre from dividing at his decease his dominions among all his sons, and making them all kings. Garcias had Navarre, Biscay, and the province of Rioja ; Ferdinand the kingdom of Castile ; Gonzales had the counties of Sobrawa and Ribargorça ; and Ramiro Aragon. Of the death of Sanchez, and this division of his kingdom, Bermudo quickly took advantage to recover the country which he had unwillingly ceded as his sister's portion. Ferdinand having obtained the assistance of his brother Garcias, a decisive battle took place between their united troops and those of the king of Leon, in which Bermudo himself was slain. In consequence of which, since the male line of Reccared the Catholick, by Don Pedro, duke of Cantabria, was now extinct, Ferdinand, as having married the sister of Bermudo, was crowned king of Leon and Oviedo. Thus was this monarchy united with that of Castile ; and though some temporary separations and repeated convulsions did afterwards happen, yet these states were at length so incorporated, as never since to have been disjoined. But ere their

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

common history can be proceeded in, for the sake of perspicuity, the tale of Castile from its recovery out of the hands of the Moors must be succinctly recounted. Old Castile at that time was surrounded by the kingdom of Leon, the Asturias, Biscay, the little province of Rioja, and the mountains of Segovia and Avila : it was extremely fertile and well stocked. Even while under the dominion of the Moors, several great lords, it is said, maintained themselves in certain districts ; and if this be true, from the castles which they held might the province have gained its name. These lords by degrees put themselves under the protection of the kings of Oviedo, by whose support they were enabled to extend their little territories, whence they assumed the title of counts, and were summoned in time of war to attend, as feudatories, the standard of those kings, and in peace were called to the assemblies of the states. The first of these counts mentioned, is Don Rodriguez, who flourished in the reign of Don Alonso the Chaste, and assisted him in his wars with the Moors. To what is said to have occurred in Castile, between his time and that of Don Ferdinand Gonzalez, the indubitable founder of the principality of Castile, little credit appears due. But this Ferdinand Gonzalez by his generosity, activity, courage, and conduct, acquired such a measure of power and reputation, that he married the infanta Donna Sancha of Navarre, and governed Castile as absolutely as if he had been the legal master of it ; yet preserved measures with the king of Leon, on whom he, as well as his predecessors, depended. Still he brought on himself the arms of that monarch, by whom he was some time detained in captivity, but at length, by the interposition, it should seem, of the king of Navarre, was reconciled to Ramiro the second, and the prince Ordogno was married to his daughter. What passed between him and that prince when on the throne, has been already mentioned ; as well as his intrigues against his successor Don Sanchez, and his support of Ordogno the Wicked. It was in the quarrel of this worthless prince that he broke with his brother-in-law Garcias, king of Navarre ; by whom being defeated and taken, Garcias was afterwards prevailed on by the king of Leon to release him from his homage, set at liberty, and send him home : four years after this, having involved himself in a war with the

Moors, he defeated them with great slaughter. Ere his death he deprived the count de la Vela of the country of Alava, and drove him to take refuge at the court of Cordova, where he and his family were the cause of much mischief to both Castile and Leon ; and on his decease he was succeeded in his territories, which he had greatly extended, by his son Garcias Fernandez. This prince, having passed the first seven years of his government in peace, was, at the instigation of the count de la Vela, attacked by the Moors ; whom, however, with the assistance of the king of Navarre, he defeated : but this irritated the enemy to further attacks, which were repeated for several years, and supported with great intrepidity, though with much loss, by Garcias ; until the formation of the league, already noticed, between the kings of Leon and Navarre, and the count of Castile ; when the Mahometans were twice defeated : the year after the last of which defeats, Garcias, king of Navarre, died, and was succeeded by Sanchez, surnamed the Great ; and the same year Garcia, count of Castile, permitted the sons of count de la Vela to return to their patrimony. The young king of Navarre married a grand-daughter of Don Garcia, count of Castile ; who soon after was obliged by arms to reduce to submission her rebellious father, Don Sanchez ; and then fell himself in battle against the Moors. To him succeeded his son Don Sanchez Garcias ; who began his administration with great success against the Moors ; and afterwards was applied to by one of the competitors for the throne of Cordova, whom he assisted with great success, and no trifling gain. And when the grandson of Abderhaman, and rightfull heir of the crown of Cordova, was in a condition to support his claim, Sanchez, on the cession of some places, then in possession of the Moors, effectually assisted him. Provoked by the repeated complaints made of the excesses of the sons of the count de Vela, Sanchez again banished them from Castile. The interval of peace, which he now had, this prince employed in such works for the improvement and defence of his territories, as proved him to be a wise and active prince. But when he had adjusted all his domestick concerns, he again turned his arms against the Moors, still embarrassed with civil wars, and enlarged and secured his dominions by conquests from them. While

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

thus engaged, he was seized with a distemper which proved fatal. He was succeeded by his son Garcias Sanchez, of whose assassination mention has already been made, as well as of Sanchez, king of Navarre, taking possession, in right of his wife, the sister of Garcias, of his territories, and his resigning them to his son Ferdinand, on the marriage of this last with the sister of Bermudo, king of Leon. The war, too, of Ferdinand with his brother-in-law, and Bermudo's fall in that war, by which Ferdinand became king of Leon, have been before noticed. The frequent revolutions in the kingdom of Cordova, having so weakened that monarchy of the Moors, as to reduce it to nearly a level with the rest, there arose almost as many sovereigns as there were cities in their dominions. Of these, the two most considerable were the kings of Seville and Toledo; and at this juncture the whole of Spain was divided into two unequal parts, by a line drawn from East to West, from the coast of Valentia to the mouth of the Duero; the country to the North of which was holden by the Christians, and that to the South possessed by the Moors. These were much superior in point of wealth and power, but weakened by luxury and sensual indulgence; while the Christians were more firmly connected among themselves; the kings of Leon, Navarre, Sobrawa, and Aragon, being all brothers, and the count of Barcelona nearly allied to them; and, dwelling in the mountainous regions, became an hardier race. Don Ferdinand, king of Leon and Castile, having subdued the prejudices and gained the affections of his new subjects, by prudent behaviour pursued through a course of years, proceeded to enlarge his dominions by conquests from the Moors in Portugal, and reducing the kings of Toledo and Saragossa to tribute and vassalage. A difference afterwards arising between him and his brother Don Garcia, king of Navarre, the obstinacy of the last brought it to the decision of arms, when he himself was slain in the only action fought. A gross piece of superstition afterwards gave rise to an attack of Ferdinand's on the king of Seville, whom likewise he reduced to vassalage. While employed in this war, his son Don Sancho received an application from his vassal the Moorish king of Saragossa for assistance against Ramiro, king of Aragon, who had invaded his dominions; and in consequence of it, he

marched with the famous Don Rodrigo, surnamed the Cid, for his lieutenant, and joining the Moors, defeated the king of Aragon, who in that battle received a mortal wound. Ferdinand having determined on the same weak step as his father, obtained the consent of the nobility to a division of his dominions among his three sons, and gave to his eldest, Sancho, the kingdom of Castile; that of Leon and Oviedo to Alonso; and that of Galicia and his conquests in Portugal to his youngest, Garcia: shortly after which, having repressed and revenged an irruption of the Moors, he died. After his decease, no sooner was his eldest son freed from a war with the kings of Aragon and Navarre, than he invaded the dominions of his brother, Alphonso king of Leon; but after one battle, in which the latter was defeated, matters were, by the interposition of their sisters, made up for a short time only: since, after somewhat more than a year, Sancho again gave the reins to his ambition, and drove his brother from his throne. The like injustice he perpetrated against his other brother, Garcia king of Galicia; and was proceeding in taking from his sisters the towns which his father had given them, when he was assassinated. After his death his brother Alphonso succeeded to the kingdoms of Leon and Castile; and imprisoning his brother Garcia on his return from Seville, where he had taken refuge, he got possession of Galicia also. Pope Gregory the seventh having sent cardinal Hugo as his legate to Alphonso, he prevailed on him to assure the pope of his obedience, and solicit the establishment of the Roman offices in all the churches of his dominions. Don Alphonso, having again married, successfully assisted his friend the king of Toledo against the king of Seville. Sancho, king of Navarre, being murdered by one of his brothers, and his subjects absolutely refusing to obey any of the race, Don Alphonso possessed himself of Biscay and Rioja, and took the remainder of the royal family under his care; while the rest of the kingdom put themselves into the hands of the king of Aragon. Alphonso having a mind to part with his wife, the pope's legate discovered, that she was related to his first queen, and therefore dissolved the marriage; and the king married a daughter of the duke of Burgundy, and the repudiated queen found another husband ere the king died: and thus was produced a strong instance of another

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

mark which Revelation hath assigned to Rome, “ The mother of the abominations of the earth.* His old friend the king of Toledo with his eldest son being dead, Alphonso in the course of four campaigns made himself master of all its territory, and of the city of Toledo itself; whither he transferred the seat of his own government: on this a league of Mahometan princes was formed against him; but, after having received from them one defeat, he compelled them to make peace with him. Alphonso having taken the opportunity of this peace to put the interior of his dominions into good order, again attacked the Moors in the West of the peninsula; at the same time assisting his own vassal, the king of Huesca, against the king of Aragon; yet this last prevailed, and put an end to that Moorish principality. Alphonso having again been a widower for some time, offered to marry Zaide, the very beautiful daughter of the king of Seville, provided she would become a Christian; the condition was easily accepted; and in consequence of this marriage Alphonso was prevailed on to form an alliance with Joseph, king of what now forms the kingdoms of Fez and Morocco, who readily promised to furnish troops towards the conquests of those Moorish principalities in Spain, which Alphonso and his father-in-law wished to divide between them. But when he had landed an army in Spain, he became the friend of the Moorish princes, took prisoner the king of Seville, and possessed himself of his kingdom. The people over which this Joseph ruled in Africa, are by the Spanish historians called Almoravides; they were an Arab tribe, who, about half a century before, retired into that part of Africa, and this Joseph had succeeded to their first chief, Abubeker ben Omar. Alphonso, seeing that it was the design of Joseph to make himself master of as much of Spain as possible, entered into hostilities against him, which continued with various fortune until the end of the century.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
11th century.

The eleventh century opened in Britain with unresisted ravages of the Danes, to whom at length Ethelred paid thirty thousand pounds, and levied it by the tax called Danegeld. The Danes in general now withdrew; yet many staid behind, and acting without controul,

* See Rev. xvii. 5.

Ethelred, depending on the assistance of Richard, duke of Normandy, whose sister he married, cruelly ordered the slaughter of all the Danes in his dominions, by which a horrid massacre was perpetrated. This the king of Denmark revenged by repeated invasions of the island; harassed and terrified by which, Ethelred at length retired with all his family into Normandy; when the king of Denmark was proclaimed king of England also. But in less than a year he, by a sudden death, made way for his son Canute, surnamed the Great, to be proclaimed by the Danes; but the English recalled Ethelred, and Canute, on account of the state of affairs in Denmark, left the island with his forces. Yet he was absent only a year, when, having secured the ancient throne of his family, he landed very unexpectedly with a numerous army at Sandwich, and met with no great resistance, from the treachery and desertion of the subjects of Ethelred, whose conduct since his restoration had been faithless, oppressive, and cruel; and who now refused to head his army, or second the efforts of his son; to avoid which he feigned himself sick, and then being really taken ill, died, after a reign of thirty-six years. His son Edmund, who acquired the name of Ironside, was by the English placed on the throne in the room of his father, and disputed with determined valour the kingdom with Canute, being, on the one hand, most faithfully and bravely supported by the citizens of London, not then misled by unprincipled demagogues, and, on the other, betrayed by the vile Edric Streon, duke of Mercia, until a partition treaty was agreed on, by which Wessex and part of the ancient kingdom of Essex, with the city of London, were assigned to Edmund, who was quickly after assassinated by two villains, bribed by Edric Streon. By a very strained interpretation of the partition treaty, enforced by the dread of his power, Canute obtained a general acquiescence in his unjust seizure of the whole kingdom, though Edmund had left two sons: these Canute sent afterwards out of the kingdom, and strove to get rid of all other claimants of the crown; while, by the equity of his administration, he gained the affections of the English. When affairs were brought into a tranquil state, the king passing over into Denmark, took with him a body of English forces under the command of earl Goodwin, who did him service so

A. D. 1013.

A. D. 1014.

A. D. 1016.

A. D. 1017.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1036.

A. D. 1039.

A. D. 1041.

signal, that Canute created him earl of Kent. After an unsuccessful war against the Swedes, in which they were the assailants, he undertook one more unjust against the Norwegians; when he dispossessed their king Olaus of his throne. After this conquest he laid aside all thoughts of war, and applied himself to what he deemed acts of devotion, and even made a journey to Rome; hoping thus to atone for the injustice of which he had been guilty: he died in the nineteenth year of his reign. He bequeathed his kingdom of Norway to Sweyn his eldest, but an illegitimate son; to Harold his second by the same mother he gave England; and to Canute or Hardicanute, by his wife Emma of Normandy, the kingdom of Denmark. Harold at first obtained possession of a part of England only; Wessex was, by the influence of earl Goodwin, preserved for a time for Hardicanute; but that unprincipled nobleman being gained by Harold, he was proclaimed king of Wessex also, and ere his brother could form measures for dispossessing him, death accomplished the same purpose: on which Hardicanute, or Canute the second, immediately repaired to England, where he took possession of the throne without opposition, and having filled it very unworthily for three years, died unlamented. By the management of Goodwin, Edward, son of Ethelred the second and Emma of Normandy, was in a general assembly acknowledged king of England; neither does it appear that he met with any opposition from the Danes; of the cause of the sudden extinction of whose power in England at this time no satisfactory account has been given. Before Goodwin would lend him his assistance, he obliged Edward to swear, that he would marry his daughter Editha. The great influence acquired by that nobleman would have outweighed that of the unsteady and trifling monarch, had it not been counteracted by the power of two very worthy characters, the earl of Northumberland, and the duke of Mercia. Yet the king was very far from having any affection for him; and at length, on the earl's boldly reproaching him for his partiality to the Normans, he resolved to bring him to punishment for disobeying his commands; and, after a short interval, Goodwin and his son Harold were driven into banishment; but afterwards, in consequence of the formidable attack which they threatened, were restored to their estates and

dignities. But the father did not long enjoy his recovered power, dying suddenly when sitting at table with the king; when his son Harold succeeded him in all his posts. This nobleman's power was as great, and, by his more gracious use of it, his influence even surpassed his father's, so that the king, however disliking the family, found it necessary to keep on good terms with him. The general tranquillity Edward experienced was interrupted by Mackbeth king of Scotland, who had taken possession of the little kingdom of Cumberland, in prejudice of one of the royal family of it named Malcolm, whom Siward earl of Northumberland being commanded by Edward to assist, by one battle reinstated. The manifest progress which Harold made in the affections of the English, and their deeming him a proper person to succeed to the crown, induced Edward to send for his nephew, Edward the son of Edmund Ironside, the right heir of it, out of Hungary, whither he had been conveyed out of reach of Canute: but he died soon after his arrival, leaving his claim to Edgar Atheling, his son. The death of Edgar inflamed the wishes and increased the hopes which Harold had formed of succeeding to the crown of England: yet when he passed over into Normandy, he did not refuse to take an oath to William the duke of that country, who expressed his hopes that king Edward would bequeath his kingdom to him, and his own resolution to support the bequest by arms. Harold thought proper to consider this oath as not obligatory, because he was in some measure compelled to take it, and therefore pursued every measure that promised to promote his purpose of succeeding himself to Edward. To these circumstances the king paid no regard, occupying his thoughts entirely with building the church and monastery of Westminster;* at the dedication of which he was

* As the situation of this Church excites a greater interest in its origin, the reader may not be displeased with a more particular statement of it. There was before in the same place, called Thorney by the Saxons, a famous temple, sacred to Apollo; which Sebert, king of Essex, on embracing the Gospel converted into a Church, that the Danes afterwards destroyed. It was this Church which Edward undertook to rebuild, and added a monastery, which, from its situation in reference to London, was called West-Minster.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1065.

taken ill ; and when it was seen he was dying, a deputation from the lords spiritual and temporal, then assembled at London, intreated him to name a successor ; but he referred it to them to choose him whom they thought the most worthy : a few moments after which he died. Ere the reign of Edward, the West Saxon, Mercian, and Danish laws were observed in different parts of England : this king reduced them into one body, when they became common to all England, under the name of the laws of Edward. He seems to have gained the title of Confessor from his canonization by pope Alexander the third. On the death of Edward, Harold, whether he ascended the throne by election or otherwise, was universally acknowledged for the sovereign of England. While the duke of Normandy, who had prevailed on the pope to countenance his claim, was preparing to wring the kingdom from him, Harold defeated an army of Norwegians, which, at the solicitation of Toston, his brother, had made a descent in the North. But, ere this expedition was concluded, William landed at Pevensey in Sussex ; but was so cautious in advancing, that he had got no further than Hastings, than he determined to wait there for his enemy. A few miles from thence, where the town of Battle now stands, was fought the engagement, in which, by the death of Harold, the crown of England was transferred from the Saxon to the Norman line : for after this William was with very little difficulty crowned in London, and acknowledged throughout the kingdom. Though this usurper (for he was in reality no better) began his reign with moderation and promises of protection to the English, he soon became suspicious of them, and Odo his brother, and William Fitz-Osbern, to whom he entrusted the regency during his first absence in Normandy, abusing their power for the purpose of enriching themselves, gave a beginning to discontents and insurrections ; and the severity of the king on his return, and the partiality he manifested to the Normans, with the oppression which these last exercised on the English, added to the general dissatisfaction and murmurs, until William, that he might recompense the Normans who had followed him, revived the tax of Dane-geld. From this time took place insurrection on one side and increase of oppression on the other ; some of the great men fled into

A. D. 1066.

Scotland, of whom prince Edgar Atheling was persuaded to be one; whose sister Margaret, Malcolm, then king of Scotland, married; and from this marriage sprang Matilda, grandmother to Henry the second. William built fortresses on all sides, which he garrisoned with Normans; took from the English their arms, and established the very obnoxious regulation of the Curfew; by which, on the sound of a bell at eight in the evening, they were obliged to extinguish both candle and fire; and to humble them entirely, he deprived them of all offices of authority, and dispossessed them of all fiefs of the crown, bestowing both on Normans. To the immunities of the clergy he paid no regard; and by means of two papal legates made as many ecclesiastical vacancies as he pleased to fill with Normans. Of his difference with his eldest son, his transactions in Normandy, and the manner of his death, notice has been already taken. His duchy of Normandy he bequeathed to his eldest son Robert; he expressed a wish that his second, William, might succeed him in the throne of England, and to his third, Henry, he gave the county of Maine, all his mother's money and jewels, amounting to a very large sum, and an annuity. The steps taken previously to his father's decease to secure the throne of England to William, surnamed Rufus from his red hair, were so successful, that he mounted it without impediment. The most prominent features of this prince's character were great courage, and no less brutality in his manners and behaviour, great indifference for religion, and disregard for honour and honesty. The magnificence which he manifested in some particulars, in others degenerated into the most idle extravagance. The most remarkable events of his reign were:—a conspiracy to drive him from the throne in favour of his brother Robert, which was defeated chiefly by William's activity in operation; a war against that brother; then another with him against their brother Henry; one with Malcolm, king of Scotland; the conquest of Glamorganshire by Robert Fitz-Hamon, assisted by twelve knights, who obtained each a manor in the country: a second war with the duke of Normandy; a rebellion excited by Robert de Mowbray; William's acquisition of the duchy of Normandy on his brother's joining in the crusade; his building that noble instance of grandeur in design and ability in

A. D. 1087.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1100.

execution, Westminster Hall. He was thirty when he ascended the throne, and, after a most tyrannical reign of twelve years, was accidentally slain, as he was hunting in the New Forest, by sir Walter Tyrrel, who was shooting at a deer. His reign is said to have exhibited a scene of the most scandalous sensuality: vanity, lust, and intemperance prevailed every where; while the men disgraced themselves by the most contemptible effeminacy in dress and conversation. By the favour of the people, who flocked to Winchester on hearing of the demise of the crown, Henry, the younger brother of the late king was permitted to seat himself on the throne, in prejudice of the duke of Normandy; and by the reformation of some abuses, the abolition of the Curfew, the grant of a charter, confirming divers privileges enjoyed under the Saxon kings, and renouncing the unjust prerogatives usurped by the two last monarchs; the recall of Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, and his marriage with Matilda, daughter of Malcolm king of Scotland, niece of Edgar Atheling, he established himself on it: occurrences that bring the history of Britain down to the end of the eleventh century.

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
11th century.

A. D. 1035.

The history of Sweden was suspended in the reign of Olaus Scot-conung, who was succeeded by his son Asmund Kolbrenner, said to have been a sensible, pious, and upright prince; but no events of his reign, that can be depended on, are related. His son, Asmund Slemme, of a very different disposition from his father's, next ascended the throne: having incurred the contempt of his subjects by surrendering a portion of territory to the Danes, to wipe it off, he raised an army to reduce Schonen, met Canute the rich, and was defeated and slain. On Asmund's death, Hacquin Rufus was elected king of the Goths, while the Swedes chose Stenchil for their sovereign. But the two princes came to an agreement, that Hacquin should retain the crown for his life, and that at his death Gothland should revert inseparably to the crown of Sweden. In consequence of which, Stenchil succeeded Hacquin, and proved a wise and valiant prince, and is said to have perished in battle with the king of Denmark. Ingo, an individual of noble, but not royal blood, was raised to the throne on the death of Stenchil: he was endowed with qualities truly princely: but, having prohibited the continuance of idolatrous

worship, and manifested zeal in promoting Christianity, he was murdered by his subjects. Halstan, his brother, inherited his crown and virtues, and after a short and happy reign died, and was succeeded by his son Philip, whose mild manners rendered his memory dear to the Swedes for many generations; yet no further particulars of his reign are transmitted to us. Ingo the fourth, whether the son or brother of Philip is not ascertained, next filled the throne, and resembled in manners his immediate predecessor. His life was a series of worthy and pious labours: as celebrated for her virtues was his queen, by whom he had two daughters; by marrying one of whom to Eric, king of Denmark, and the other to Magnus of Norway, he united in alliance the three Northern crowns. The scrupulous attention he paid to the execution of the laws, raised him enemies, and the Ostrogoths poisoned him as the great opponent of their licentious projects: and with his death ends the history of the eleventh century in Sweden.

A. D. 1064.

A. D. 1082.

Harold, the son of Sweyn, having by his utter profligacy provoked the Danes to depose him, Canute the Great, of whom so much has already been stated in the history of England, ascended the throne; and after having not only repulsed an attack of Olaus, king of Norway, but defeated both him and his ally the king of Sweden; while the last of these monarchs was slain in battle, and the other murdered, through the influence of the gold and intrigues of Denmark, he passed over into England, and there spent the remainder of his life. He was succeeded by his son Hardicanute, of whose character and succession to the crown of England mention has already been made. On his death it is that Magnus, the son of Olaus, king of Norway, invaded Denmark, and receiving the homage of the nobility, was publickly proclaimed king of Denmark and Norway: but Sweyn, a nephew of Canute the Great, put in his claim, but after some contest was forced by Magnus to retire into Sweden. The latter then turned all his attention to his war with the Vandals, and took vengeance for their cruel ravages by giving them a great defeat. Soon after this victory he lost his life, either by a fall from his horse, or by being drowned in the Baltic. On the death of Magnus, Sweyn, as the next heir, was called from exile in

History of
Denmark
and Norway
during the
11th century.

A. D. 1036.

A. D. 1041.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Sweden to the throne of Denmark: but the Norwegians placed Harold, the brother of their king Olaus, on their throne; who scrupled not at first to hold his kingdom as a fief of Denmark, but afterwards took the opportunity of Sweyn's being engaged in a war with the Vandals, to attack the Danish dominions, when, after having gained two naval victories, he sadly ravaged the Danish territories. But being tempted to make an expedition into England, he was there killed, and Sweyn regained peaceable possession of his dominions. Olaus and Magnus, the sons of Harold, shared his dominions, and made an alliance with Sweyn, which was confirmed by the marriage of the first with his daughter. After a futile attempt to recover the crown of England, and having his dominions fearfully ravaged by a revolt of the Vandals, Sweyn died of an acute fever. Harold, his eldest son, was elected his successor, but reigned only two years in indolence and sloth. On his decease his brother Canute was by the states raised to the throne: after obliging by force of arms several idolatrous tribes on the frontiers of Livonia and Muscovy to profess Christianity, he applied himself to correct the licentiousness that had increased among all degrees of men during the inactivity of the preceding reign; and he gave in his own conduct an example to his people; and by these means he made his reign that of religion and virtue: he was, too, a steady encourager and munificent patron of learning; but his grant of tythes to the clergy caused great disaffection. Having prepared an expedition for England, he was prevented from sailing by a conspiracy of his brother Olaus, who, though he himself was taken, yet had formed a faction so great both in the army and among the people, that the former deserted, and the latter rose in arms and put to death their virtuous monarch, with that justice which so strongly characterizes the decisions of the people. No sooner was Canute's death known, than Olaus was sent for and placed on the throne, and his conduct gave fair hopes of his reign; but a most distressfull famine and pestilence filled Denmark with misery, which the people reasonably enough considered as a punishment for the murder of Canute, and in the midst of which their king himself died. The states immediately sent to the next brother Eric to invite him to the throne: under this prince, who had many virtues,

Denmark began to recover her character and power. He so reduced the Vandals that they remained quiet during the rest of his reign: he is said in a fit of phrensy, caused by musick, to have slain four of his guards, as a penance for which he undertook a pilgrimage to the holy land, and died on his journey, in the year eleven hundred and one: which brings us to the close of this period of the history of Denmark.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Otho the third, after his return from Poland, was called into Italy to expell the Saracens, after which a revolt took place, first of the Tiburtines, and then of the Romans: but while the emperour was preparing to reduce the last, he was poisoned, it is said, by a pair of gloves sent him by the widow of Crescentius, whom, it is reported, he had debauched under a promise of marriage. Henry, duke of Bavaria, was by the seven electors chosen to succeed Otho, he dying without children, and was consecrated under the name of Henry the second. After being acknowledged through all the dominions and fiefs of the empire, he married Cunegunda, daughter of the first count of Luxemburg: he then made a circuit through the provinces, in which he manifested great equity and benevolence. The king of Poland having possessed himself of Bohemia, and declined doing homage to the emperour for that kingdom, and entered secretly into an association with the duke of Franconia, Henry expelled that duke from his dominions. Stephen, duke of Hungary, having married the emperour's sister Gisella, and converted a great part of his subjects to Christianity, received from pope John the nineteenth the titles of King and Apostle. Henry's transactions in Italy have already been noticed in the history of that country. On his return from whence by his reformation of abuses in church and state, he acquired such a character for generosity, justice, and moderation, that people from all the adjoining countries settled in the empire: he then drove Boleslaus, king of Poland, out of Bohemia, and pursued and gave him a defeat so complete, as obliged him to sue for peace. Some years of commotions in both the Lorrains, Saxony, and the borders, then following, Henry, though successfull against them, thought of abdicating the empire; but was dissuaded from it, and again necessitated to act against the king of Poland, whom he twice obliged to

Transactions
in Germany
during the
11th century.

A. D. 1002.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1024.

submit, and at last compelled to pay an annual tribute for Poland and Moravia. When by appeasing the commotions that arose in Italy, Henry had established a peace throughout his dominions, he died after a reign of twenty-two years: after much dispute, Conrad, surnamed the Salic, because he was born on the banks of the Sala, was elected to succeed Henry, and employed himself chiefly in re-establishing justice. A rebellion in Germany taking place, the leader of which was Ernest, duke of Suabia, Conrad defeated the insurgents in several engagements; in one of which was slain Ernest, after having been put under the ban of the empire.* After this war he quickly finished one against the king of Poland, who surrendering at discretion, was by Conrad restored to his dominions. After some more trifling operations against Bohemia and the Lutizians, a people inhabiting the duchy of Mecklenburgh, he was engaged in a war with Stephen, king of Hungary, whom he reduced to submission; and then in another with Eudes, count of Champagne; who being slain, Conrad obtained possession of all transjurane Burgundy. Having married his son Henry to Gonilda, daughter of Canute, king of England, and made a journey into Italy, he after his return died suddenly at Utrecht. In pursuance of Conrad's recommendation, his son Henry the third, surnamed the Black, was chosen his successor. Much of the transactions of this reign have been noticed in the history of Italy. Besides his operations there, Henry reduced Peter, the king of Hungary, to submission; and being acknowledged sovereign of the kingdom by the states, replaced Peter on the throne of it, receiving homage from him for it; and after another revolt, he imposed a tribute of both money and men on that country. Conrad, duke of Bavaria, being for his tyranny divested of his dominions, they were given to the emperour's son, who was declared king of the Romans, though only three years old. Baldwin, count of Flanders, next attacked Henry, and, by the assistance of the king of France, maintained the war until a third campaign. A severe famine, for

A. D. 1039.

* Of the form of this sentence of outlawry the following curious copy is given: "We declare thy wife, a widow; thy children, orphans; and send thee, in the name of the Devil, to the four corners of the earth."

the relief of his subjects under which Henry failed not to exert himself, was followed by an irruption of the Slaves into Saxony ; who, after defeating one of his generals, retired with a considerable booty ; a disgrace which, by the addition of publick calamities, overwhelmed Henry with chagrin, and probably contributed to his death, which soon after took place in the thirty-ninth year of his age. Henry the fourth, surnamed the Great, was acknowledged emperor in the room of his father, though but five years of age ; and his education committed to his mother. The contests among the nobles and vassals of the empire, rendered it difficult to the regent to maintain her authority ; and after about six years, the dukes of Saxony and Bavaria, the young emperor's uncles, with the archbishop of Cologne and other princes, carried him off by stratagem from his mother, and put him under the tuition of that archbishop and him of Bremen ; of which the former endeavoured to cultivate and improve his mind, while the other nefarious wretch indulged him in the gratification of his evil propensities. At the age of twenty-two the emperor began his own administration, by taking measures to restrain the licentious and iniquitous behaviour of the inhabitants of Saxony : this, added to his debauched life, involved him in a quarrel with the heads of that duchy, and they took up arms against him, but accepted his proposals of peace. Yet such was his misconduct, and so infamous in particular his incontinence, that he was deserted by his friends, merely on a report of his intending to have the dukes of Suabia and Carinthia assassinated ; and the princes of the empire even assembled to deliberate on his deposition ; but obtaining a conference with some of them, he so acknowledged his misconduct, and protested he would amend it, challenging to single combat the propagator of the evil report against him, that he appeased the princes. But the Saxons again rebelled, and having obtained nearly all they asked, behaved so intemperately as to cause a renewal of the war, when the emperor subdued all their country, yet accepted the submission of the chiefs of the rebellion. Soon after this began his contest with that most imperious and presumptuous pontiff, Gregory the seventh, and which has been already stated. Ere death had relieved Henry from this adversary, his inveterate enemies the Saxons being

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

joined by several princes, elected count Herman of Luxemburgh king of the Romans, and made war on those who adhered to the emperor. But the last called a general assembly of bishops, in which all the decrees of the pope against him were annulled, and Herman deprived of the title of king of the Romans: and more effectually did Henry strip him of his dignity by compelling him to flee for refuge into Saxony. In his room the rebels elected Ecbert, marquis of Thuringia, who likewise sunk under the arms of the emperor, and both died prematurely; Herman by a stone falling from an height on his head, and Ecbert being slain in a mill, where he had taken refuge after the loss of a battle. The revolt of Henry's son Conrad has been already noticed among the occurrences in Italy: this prince was in Germany put under the ban of the empire, and his brother Henry declared king of the Romans. But though the emperor now hoped to enjoy some tranquillity, as the chiefs of the rebels were dead, and an accommodation made with the Saxons and Bavarians, yet fresh disturbances soon harassed him; still, as the detail of these belongs to the history of the next century, that of the eleventh, as to Germany, must here be closed.

Occurrences
in Poland
during the
11th century.

The elevation of Boleslaus to the royal dignity, so excited the envy of his neighbour, the duke of Bohemia, that he invaded Poland, which the king not only defended, but carried his arms into his enemy's country, and subdued both Bohemia and Moravia. Elated with his success, Boleslaus next undertook to reinstate in his share of the kingdom left him by his father the Russian prince Suetopolk, and quickly did he penetrate to the river Bog; having with difficulty passed which, he defeated a very numerous army under the other prince Jaroslaw, then took the city of Kiovia and all the accumulated treasures of the dukes of Muscovy, and reinstated Suetopolk. But this ungratefull prince feeling his obligation too great to be repaid, planned the destruction of his benefactor and his army, but was prevented in his nefarious purpose, and forced to flee; when Boleslaus entered Kiovia, and delivered it up to be pillaged: after this he led back his army towards Poland, loaded with spoils; but in his retreat he was attacked by Jaroslaw, and was compelled to fight so hardly for his safety, that he gave up all thoughts of the

conquest of Russia, and turned his arms against Saxony, which he over-ran, yet the sovereignty of which he did not retain. But he did not observe the same conduct with regard to Pomerania and Prussia, of which he easily made himself master : he then turned his thoughts to the arts of peace ; but while he was giving the closest application to interior regulations for the benefit of his people, he received information that Jaroslaw was marching to attack him, when he prevented the assailant, defeated, and forced him to submit to the conditions he dictated ; which went, however, only to the imposition of an inconsiderable tribute. Having thus rendered tributary a vast empire, Boleslaus left the world with the character of the greatest monarch of his age : by a national assembly his son Mieczslaus was chosen to succeed him, making the second Polish sovereign of that name. Scarcely was he seated on the throne, when the dukes of Russia took arms, yet after extensive ravages in Poland their rebellion was repressed. But the indolence, profusion, and debauchery of the Polish king invited other revolts ; and Udalric, duke of Bohemia, having thrown off his dependence, Moravia, Prussia, Pomerania, and Saxony, followed his example. With the assistance of three Hungarian princes, Mieczslaus reduced Pomerania, but then totally resigning himself to intemperance, he was seized with a phrenzy, under which he died. On his death the people opposed the immediate election of his son, whose name was Casimir ; and his widow was declared regent. But her tyrannical conduct provoked the people to drive her into exile ; and her son, too, was expelled from the kingdom. In consequence of the anarchy which ensued, a scene of strife and bloodshed, and crimes of every sort took place : while, on the one hand, the duke of Bohemia, and on the other, Jaroslaw of Russia, made the most savage irruptions. By these sufferings the people were brought to a sense of their injustice towards Casimir ; but, previous to recalling him, thought it proper to apply to the pope against the duke of Bohemia ; but that prince, by a judicious application of presents at Rome, prevented any sentence on his sacrileges. Foiled in this measure, the Poles recalled Casimir, who, having entered into a monastery, was obliged to have a dispensation from the pope ere he could ascend the throne. The

A. D. 1025.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

courage, wisdom, and vigorous administration of this prince restored tranquillity and prosperity to his distracted country; whose most powerfull foreign enemy he appeased, by marrying the daughter of Jaroslaw, duke of Russia. After a most beneficial and happy reign of sixteen years, Casimir died, most deeply regretted: the eldest of his sons, Boleslaus, succeeded him, and soon proved himself worthy of the people's choice. His court seems to have been an asylum for distressed princes; but his benevolence appears to have prevented his always making due enquiry into the cases which he undertook to relieve. His charity, if indeed charity can exist without impartiality, involved him in a war, first with Bohemia, which ended with little profit on either side; and then with Hungary, in which he was victorious, but seems to have reaped little advantage from it: he next, under pretence of doing justice to the duke of Kiovia, turned his arms against Russia, where his success, obtained with much bloodshed, finally turned to his own damage; since, in the corrupted city of Kiovia, he resigned himself to the licentiousness that reigned among the conquered, and became proud, insolent, and despotick: while his long absence from his country produced, it is said, an event similar to that which took place between the wives of the ancient Scythians and their slaves, and ended in a promiscuous slaughter of the Poles. These miseries received an addition from disputes which arose in the church, and at length became a mere contest for wealth and power between the king and the clergy: herein the former was vanquished by the thunders of Gregory the seventh, himself excommunicated and deposed, and his kingdom put under an interdict. The king was abandoned by all, and compelled to seek refuge in Hungary; and still pursued by papal vengeance died at last in a menial office in a monastery in Carinthia. The pontifical resentment ceased not here; it excluded the son of Boleslaus from the throne of Poland, and continued the interdict, until removed by gold, and concessions the most abject: at length Uladislaus, the brother of the deceased king, was permitted to reign under the title of duke. During the late disturbances, not only Russia, but Prussia and Pomerania had thrown off the Polish yoke; the last of these Uladislaus with some difficulty reduced. But he was afterwards involved in civil broils, in which his sons took part

against him ; these, however, being appeased, he subdued Prussia and Pomerania, which had again revolted ; and after having exhibited great military talents, and returned home laden with spoils, he died beyond the close of the eleventh century.

On the death of Wolodimir, his kingdom being divided among his sons, one of them, Suetopolk, caused two of his brothers to be assassinated, and seized on their duchies. Jaroslaw attacked the usurper, and drove him into Poland, where Boleslaus the first espoused his cause, and all those events followed which have been detailed in the history of that kingdom. After the Poles had punished the ingratitude of Suetopolk, Jaroslaw recruited his forces, and dispossessed all his brothers of their dominions : his operations against the Poles, and the consequences of them, until Casimir established a lasting peace with him by marrying his sister, have been related ; after this, Jaroslaw faithfully assisted him in all his wars. But this on his death leaving his dominions among his sons, made them again the scene of civil war. Izaslaw, who began them by an act of the blackest treachery, when driven most justly out of the country by the people and his own brothers, was received and patronized by Boleslaus the second, whose reduction of Russia has been already stated, and the revolt of it from the Polish yoke ; which is all preserved of its history until the commencement of the twelfth century.

CHAPTER
V.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1103.

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
11th century.

CHAPTER VI.

The History of Europe during the twelfth Century.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Transactions
in the Greek
empire during
the twelfth
century.

A. D. 1118.

THE last victory which the emperor Alexius Comnenus gained in person was over the Turks in the neighbourhood of Nice, and with the same people his generals afterwards fought several successful battles; by which they were so discouraged that they sued for and easily obtained peace from Alexius; who spent the rest of his days in striving to heal the divisions which then rent the Greek church; and died in the thirty-seventh year of his reign. He was succeeded, in consequence of his bequest, by his son John, who quickly manifested his generosity, by granting a pardon to his sister Ann and her husband Bryennius with their accomplices, who had entered into a conspiracy to depose him and set Bryennius on the throne. This act of real goodness was followed by a course of victory unchequered for twenty years, in which he triumphed over the Turks, the Scythians, the Servians, and the Hunns. Conceiving after this the project of recovering Antioch from the Latins, he on his journey thither lost, to his inexpressible grief, his two eldest sons, Alexius and Andronicus; neither did he at Antioch receive encouragement to proceed in his purposed attempt, but finding the citizens firmly attached to the Latins, he in his rage ordered his troops to plunder the suburbs. After which, going into Cilicia, he was, while hunting, accidentally wounded in the hand by one of his own poisoned arrows, of which wound, having named his youngest son Manuel for his successor, who was immediately acknowledged

A. D. 1143.

by the nobility and chief officers of the army, he died, after having reigned twenty-four years. Manuel having returned to Constantinople, and arranged affairs there, recovered several cities in Asia from the Turks, and after these triumphs married a sister-in-law of the German emperor Conrad; yet behaved to her most vilely. To his base conduct he added the vilest treachery to Conrad himself; for having undertaken to supply the army he was leading to Judæa with provisions, he caused the regions through which they were to pass to be laid waste, and privately acquainted the sultan of Iconium with the designs of Conrad and his allies; through which communication their purposes were defeated. This strange and nefarious conduct occasioned a war with Roger, king of Sicily, in which he did that prince much harm, while he suffered considerably himself. During it, however, being attacked by the Servians, he repelled both them and their allies the Hungarians, carrying the war with success into the country of the latter; but in his return was attacked by the Turks; to retaliate whose assault he so formidably prepared, that they requested peace, which Manuel refusing, was, by a stratagem of the Turks, reduced to such a situation, that he gladly accepted another offer they made. But some of the conditions of this treaty, when out of danger, he dishonestly refused to perform, which produced a renewal of hostilities, when the Turks were so severely worsted, that they continued quiet the remainder of his reign. And Manuel himself turned his thoughts to the introduction of new opinions on religion, in which he was warmly opposed; among others by Eustathius, the commentator on Homer, and archbishop of Thessalonica. When he had nearly completed the thirty-eighth year of his reign, he died, having first taken the monastick habit. By the death of Manuel was closed the succession of victorious emperours; for his son Alexius Comnenus, a minor when he ascended the throne, was quickly murdered by Andronicus, a cozen-german of his father, who had, after taking up arms against the empress regent, got himself declared colleague in the empire; and when by this murder he was become sole emperor, proved so cruel a tyrant, that after two years Isaac Angelus, a person of high distinction, whom he had destined to slaughter, was proclaimed emperor by the people, and

A. D. 1180.

A. D. 1183.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1185.

he himself murdered with circumstances of horrid cruelty : thus died the last emperor of the Comnenian family. Isaac Angelus began his reign with success against the Sicilians, and would probably have prospered equally in a war with the Scythians, but that he, through jealousy, removed from the command of the troops employed against them his own uncle John Ducas ; and Branas Alexius, the greatest general of the age, being afterwards appointed to it, endeavoured to seize the empire, but was defeated chiefly by the courage and conduct of Conrad, son of the marquis of Montserrat, who killed Branas with his own hand. Isaac after this was, too, led to employ against Frederick Barbarossa emperor of Germany, to whom he promised both a free passage and a supply of provisions, the whole strength of his forces. For this service Saladin, the Turkish sultan, had promised to restore Palæstine to him : but Frederick, incensed at his treachery, over-ran Thrace, and wintered there, insisting on Isaac's furnishing sufficient vessels to transport his army to Asia in the spring, and sending a great number of hostages for his performance of that condition ; to which demands Alexius was compelled to submit. In a Scythian war which afterwards ensued, his ill success was followed by discontent so great among the soldiery, that his brother, Alexius Angelus, took advantage of it to depose and deprive him of his sight. But the usurper abandoned himself to the same vices of which he accused his brother, and the provinces of the empire were ravaged on the one side by the Scythians, and on the other by the Turks : and thus closed the twelfth century in the Greek empire.

A. D. 1195.

Occurrences
in Italy
during the
12th century.

At the beginning of the twelfth century, pope Paschal, being too powerful to be disturbed by the anti-popes which the emperor's party in Italy set up, held a general council at Rome, in which, on his non-appearance, the emperor was excommunicated. This council likewise composed an oath, which the bishops and all whom the pope required were obliged to take under the name of a profession of faith, abjuring all heresy, promising obedience to the pope and his successors, and to affirm what the holy and universal Church (meaning, as previously defined, the Church of Rome) affirms, and to condemn what she condemns. This oath being refused by some as not

enjoined by any former council, the pope insisted that no council could prescribe a law to the Roman Church. After the emperor, as will be seen in the history of Germany, had been deposed by his son, such was the triumph of the party of the pope, that the bodies of those bishops who had been accused of schism were ordered to be dug out of their graves, and that of the anti-pope Clement was exposed at Ravenna in an ignominious manner, and then thrown into the river; his followers having alleged that many miracles had been wrought at his tomb. After the decease of the emperor Henry the fourth, the disputes about investitures was revived with his son Henry the fifth, who, after having been crowned king of Italy at Milan, marched to Rome, where, being dissatisfied with the pope's conduct, he took him and all his cardinals prisoners, nor did he release them until Paschal by a formal bull granted to him the right of investitures by ring and crosier without any limitation; when he crowned Henry emperor of the West, and having celebrated mass, divided the Host between the emperor and himself, and pronounced an anathema against the party who should break their then present treaty. Notwithstanding this, the cardinals and councils in various places pretended to annul this treaty, and some of the latter proceeded to excommunicate the emperor; and at length the pope himself declared his own bull, so solemnly sworn to, null, and confirmed the excommunication of the emperor: and on Henry's complaining of this injustice, his holiness pleaded, that he had not personally excommunicated him. Irritated at this base evasion, the emperor marched to Rome, where being again crowned emperor of the West by the archbishop of Braga, he retired towards Tuscany, on account of the heats; stricken by which, Paschal himself was taken ill, and though he in some degree recovered, ere the winter was over he died at Rome. The cardinals and bishops immediately sent for cardinal Cayetan, and elected him pope, by the name of Gelasius the second: but the emperor quickly drove him from Rome, declared his election void, and caused Burdinus to be chosen under the name of Gregory the eighth. The party of this anti-pope continued even after the emperor's return to Germany so powerfull at Rome, that Gelasius retired into France, where he was received

A. D. 1118.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1119.

with great respect. During these disturbances in Italy the order of the Knights Templars was founded at Jerusalem; and in the following year Gelasius died in the monastery of Cluny. To him succeeded Guy, archbishop of Vienne, who assumed the name of Calixtus the second: this pontiff succeeded not only in taking his rival, whom he shut up in a monastery for life, but in finally arranging the matter of investitures with the emperor; who conceded the right of investing by the ring and crosier, thenceforth giving the temporalities only by the presentation of a sceptre. The year after died Callixtus the second, and Lambert, bishop of Ostia, was made pope, by the name of Honorius the second. In his pontificate, which lasted six years, little took place in Italy but a dispute with Roger, count of Sicily, who, on the death of William, duke of Apulia, as his heir, took possession of his estates, and assumed the title of duke without asking investiture of Honorius, but at length swore allegiance to him; and soon after their quarrel was thus terminated, Honorius died. On his decease a schism quickly commenced, and endured nearly eight years; for Gregory, cardinal of St. Angelo, being by the other cardinals elected ere Honorius had expired, and taken the name of Innocent the second, another party of the clergy and people of Rome chose the son of Peter Leo, a cardinal priest, by the name of Anaclete. The former of these obtained the support of the king of France and emperor of Germany, and the latter that of Roger of Apulia, on giving him the title of king of Sicily: and though the emperor came to Rome, and was there crowned by Innocent, Anaclete still kept possession of the Church of St. Peter, and many other places of strength in the city. Neither, when Lotharius came from Germany a second time, though he expelled Roger from Apulia, did he drive Anaclete from Rome, but there this last closed his life: soon after which the schism was closed, and the party that had supported Anaclete united themselves with Innocent. The next year the pope assembled a council of a thousand bishops, by whom Roger king of Sicily was excommunicated: while this council was sitting at Rome, Rainulph, to whom the emperor Lotharius had given the duchy of Apulia, died, and Roger landing an army from Sicily quickly reduced the greater part of it. The pope to stop his

A. D. 1124.

A. D. 1130.

A. D. 1138.

progress, led some forces to St. Germano, where he was taken prisoner and carried to the king, who, ere he released him, obtained absolution, and acknowledgment of his titles of king of Sicily, duke of Apulia, and prince of Capua, on condition of homage and an annual tribute. The Tiburtins having revolted and been subdued by his holiness, a sedition arose in his own army, because the troops were restrained from plundering Tibur, when the malcontents proposed to restore the ancient republick, took possession of the capitol, named a senatorian order, and renewed the war with the Tiburtins. Innocent partly quelled these commotions, laid the Romans under an interdict, and deprived them of having any part in the election of future popes. The seditions that still continued at Rome are presumed to have affected the health of Innocent, who died of a languishing illness: the cardinals immediately chose for his successor Guido of Castello, a cardinal priest, who took the name of Celestine the second, but lived not quite six months, when he was succeeded by another cardinal priest, named Gerard, who took the name of Lucius the second. In the mean time the seditious Romans having seized all the strong places in the city, assumed the civil jurisdiction, and appropriated the revenues of the Church's patrimony to their own use. Both Lucius and the republicans applied to the emperour Conrad, the successor of Lotharius: but the former having undertaken the siege of the capitol, his holiness was killed by a stone from the place. On his death was elected Bernard, an abbot, who assumed the name of Eugenius the third, and who finding himself unable to oppose the increasing outrages of the republicans, who, with their characteristick moderation and equity, pillaged and destroyed the houses of the cardinals and those nobles who favoured the pope, retired to Viterbo. A bishop arriving from Syria, intreating the assistance of the European princes, Eugenius gave liberty to St. Bernard to preach a crusade, in which that zealous preacher met with great success both in France and Germany, Conrad, as well as Lewis, king of France, taking the cross. In the mean time Eugenius, by the assistance of the Tiburtins, and the people of Latium, obliged the Romans to sue for peace: but this lasted a short time only, and the pope was again obliged to retire over the Tiber into

A. D. 1143.

A. D. 1144.

A. D. 1145.

A. D. 1146.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

- the castle of St. Angelo ; whence he was afterward driven into France. On his return from whence he wrote to the emperour Conrad a letter of consolation on his ill success in the crusade, and gave him the titles of Catholick prince, and defender of the Roman Church. Conrad the emperour dying, his successor, Frederick, concluded a treaty with the pope, by which the former engaged himself not to enter into any agreement with the king of Sicily or the Romans without the pope's consent, and to assist him against the last ; and the pope promised to give Frederick the imperial crown.
- A. D. 1153. The next year Eugenius died ; and a few months afterward the celebrated St. Bernard, abbot of Clairval, who had founded an hundred and sixty monasteries, and spent his life in advancing the power of the Church of Rome. Conrad, a cardinal, and bishop of Sabino, succeeded Eugenius, by the name of Anastasius the fourth, but survived only till the next year ; when Nicholas,* bishop of Albano, was chosen pope, by the name of Adrian the fourth. In his pontificate, while the emperour entered Italy with a powerfull army, and was crowned king of it, fresh disturbances occurred at Rome, by which the pope was driven from it : after which he had a meeting with the emperour, at which the last, after much dispute, submitted to hold the pope's stirrup as he alighted from his horse : they then advanced to Rome, and Frederick received the imperial crown from the hands of Adrian. But the Romans having attacked the bishops of the emperour's party, an engagement with the Germans ensued, in which a thousand of the Romans fell ; and his army being attacked with sickness, the emperour returned to Germany. After his departure, William king of Sicily turned his arms against the

* As this pontiff was an Englishman, and there is something remarkable in his history, the reader will not be displeased with having it stated, that he was born at St. Albans, and his parents are said to have been beggars. When a boy, he left his country for France, and was admitted a poor clerk in the church of St. James in Melgor, and, making a progress in letters, became a monk, when he rose to be first a prior, then an abbot : after which going to Rome on the affairs of his monastery, he so ingratiated himself with Eugenius, that he detained him, and made him bishop of Albano : soon after he was sent as legate either to Denmark or Norway, and returned to Rome a little before the death of Anastasius.

pope, and obliged him to consent to a peace, though the king would permit no legates to enter Sicily, nor suffer any appeals from the churches of it to Rome. A new difference soon after arising between the emperor and the pope, occasioned by the assuming language of the last and his legate, it was settled by a submissive explanation on the part of the pontiff. On the emperor's marching into Italy, and having reduced the prerogatives of the emperor in that country to writing, the bishops, nobles, and deputies swearing to observe every article of them ; as the first of these had paid him homage for their fiefs, new disputes arose between him and the pope, which were in some measure terminated by the death of Adrian.* The cardinals elected for his successor cardinal Roland, who took the name of Alexander the third : but two cardinals immediately after took on themselves to declare cardinal Octavianus pope, by the name of Victor the fourth. Hence arose one of those disgraceful schisms which have so often appeared in *the Church which cannot err*. The competitors reciprocally excommunicated each other, and the election of each was confirmed by a council : Victor was acknowledged by the emperor, and Alexander by the kings of France and England. Nor did these differences end with the life of Victor, who lived but five years after his election ; for on his death his party elected cardinal Guido, who also was acknowledged by the emperor, under the name of Paschal the third. But the exactions of the emperor's officers impelled some cities of Lombardy to enter into an association against him with the republic of Venice, and this confederation was joined by the Romans ; who inviting Alexander to return to his see, (for he had retired into France) he landed at Ostia, and was conducted from thence to Rome by a large body of the clergy and people, with branches of olive trees. But the emperor formally swore, he would never acknowledge Alexander or his successor, but would protect Paschal the third : soon after which, he entered Italy

A. D. 1159.

* This pontiff gave a striking instance of papal arrogance, in granting to Henry the second of England a bull, allowing him to make a conquest of Ireland, provided he paid a penny to St. Peter for every house in that kingdom, and suffering the Church to enjoy all its privileges.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

with an army, and making himself master of part of the city of Rome and St. Peter's Church, he and the empress were there crowned by Paschal. Alexander being pressed to listen to the emperor's proposals, that both popes should abdicate, fled from Rome in the habit of a pilgrim. A few days after which a mortality, occasioned by the heats, suddenly broke out in the emperor's army, which induced him to march from Rome immediately; and his troops continuing sickly during the winter, he at length quitted Italy entirely, with only the wreck of his army. In the mean time the citizens of Rome, while they opposed Paschal, would not admit Alexander, who held his court at Anagni, where an embassy arrived from Manuel, the Greek emperor, offering to unite the Greek with the Roman Church, and acknowledge the papal supremacy, provided he would give him the imperial crown so long usurped by the Germans; but this the pope declined. About the same time died the anti-pope Paschal; and his party, now much reduced, chose for his successor John, abbot of Surmio, whom Frederick, after some hesitation, condescended to acknowledge; but sent an envoy to Alexander with proposals which were not accepted. This attempt at reconciliation failing, after an interval of four years the emperor again entered Italy, but prospered so little in his expedition, that he was induced seriously to desire an accommodation with the pope; with whom he at length had in the city of Venice an interview, in which he was absolved from his excommunication, and, after prostrating himself at the pontiff's feet, received the kiss of peace; and articles being agreed on, all the parties swore to observe them. The Romans finding that the emperor was reconciled to the pope, sent addresses from the clergy, senate, and people, inviting him to return; and, on their giving security to deliver up to him the Church of St. Peter, and the regalia of the city, he arrived at the Lateran palace: when the anti-pope privately repaired to him, and threw himself at his feet; on which Alexander not only kept him in his court, but honoured him with his table. He then called a general council, which met the next year, to the number of three hundred bishops, in the Lateran; who, to obviate future schisms, decreed, that in future for the election of a pope, the voices of no less than two-thirds of the cardinals in his

favour should be deemed sufficient. The great preparations of Saladin against Jerusalem coming to Alexander's knowledge, he by a publick letter exhorted all the faithfull to march to the assistance of their brethren. During this pontificate Haimericus, patriarch of Antioch, and legate of the pope, collecting the pilgrims who were in the holy land into a body, led them to Mount Carmel, and instituted the order of Carmelite friars. Alexander dying, the cardinals elected cardinal Hubald, bishop of Ostia, who took the name of Lucius the third. This pontiff in the following year, attempting to restrain the power of the Roman senate, was expelled from Rome; and retiring first to Velitri, and then to Verona, he there had a conference with the emperour, in which they did not well agree; and the latter went to Milan, where his son was crowned king of Italy: and in the same year Lucius died, and was succeeded by Lambert Crevelli, archbishop of Milan, under the name of Urban the third; who filled the papal chair not quite a year: for, after some disputes with the emperour, and granting to Henry of England a bull for creating his son king of Ireland, he was seized with a languishing illness on hearing of the miserable state of the crusaders in the East, of which he died. His successor, Gregory the eighth, survived his election a still less time, dying within two months after it, in the midst of strenuous exertions to send assistance to the Christians in the holy land. Cardinal Paulinus was next chosen, with the name of Clement the third: he immediately proposed terms of accommodation to the Romans, and a treaty being concluded, he returned to Rome. In the mean time, too, a reconciliation was effected with the emperour, who took the cross: the kings of France and England, who had already done so, the pope pressed to settle their differences, and hasten their departure. But William king of Sicily dying, Clement, after pretending to his kingdom as fiefs of the see of Rome, gave the investiture of the island to Tancred, a natural son of king Roger; and the next year he himself died. Within a few days of his decease, the cardinals elected Hyacinthus, a cardinal-deacon, who assumed the name of Celestine the third, and the next day he crowned the emperour Henry the sixth, who had succeeded his father on his death in the holy land. But the pope had the arrogance to kick the

A. D. 1181.

A. D. 1185.

A. D. 1186.

A. D. 1191.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

crown off the emperor's head, as soon as he had put it on, to signify that he had the power of depriving him of the empire, as well as of conferring it on him. Henry soon after took most of the cities in Apulia and Calabria, but could not obtain possession of Naples; and the Romans, with the pope's permission, entirely destroyed Tusculum. Three years after this, on the death of Tancred king of Sicily, the emperor entered Italy, and being assisted by the fleets of Genoa and Pisa, made himself master of all Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, and seizing on the very great treasures of the late king, carried the queen and her children, with many bishops and nobles, captive into Germany. The inhabitants of Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, having revolted from the imperial government, Henry, with one of the armies raised in Germany for the crusade, reduced and punished them with great cruelty. The measure of this which he exercised, at length produced an insurrection, which beginning in Italy spread thence into Sicily, where the insurgents besieged the emperor in Palermo, and obliged him to submit to a dishonourable treaty; a few days after the conclusion of which he died. The pope conferring the crown of Sicily on the infant Frederick, king of the Romans, his holiness is said to have received a thousand marks of silver for himself, and as much for the cardinals. The Church of Rome at this time, too, recovered a great many territories in Tuscany, Campania, and Apulia, which had been long possessed by the emperors: after which Celestine died; and the very same day the cardinals elected Lotharius, who took the name of Innocent the third. After his consecration he received the oath of fidelity from the prefect of the city, and invested him with that office; an authority which no preceding pope had assumed, the prefects having always holden their dignity of the emperors. Throughout the ecclesiastical state, Innocent, too, turned out the judges appointed by the senate, supplying their places by others of his own selecting: after which he wrung from the German princes who possessed them, Romaniola, the march of Ancona, and the duchy of Spoleto. Marcoaldus, one of these, on the death of the empress Constantia, under pretence that the guardianship of her son, the king of Sicily, was committed to him, which had in reality been left to the pope, made himself master of

A. D. 1199.

several cities in Apulia. Innocent took several steps for reforming the discipline of the Church, while, in a most authoritative manner, he sent out his legates on every side, and ordered those where they appeared to proceed against the Waldenses, Cathari, Albigenses, and other sectaries; of whom it may be said, that while they held some very indefensible tenets, they in general testified against the gross and impious corruptions of the Church of Rome, as strongly by the purity of their lives as by their doctrines. Soon after this, Marcoaldus, after meeting with success in Apulia and Calabria, having passed over into Sicily, Innocent sent into that island an army, by which he was entirely defeated with the loss of all his baggage: and thus closes the history of Italy for the twelfth century.

Lewis, the eldest son and heir of Philip, whose character, conduct, and courage had saved the French monarchy, when sinking by the misbehaviour of his father, had nearly died of poison, which Bertrade, countess of Anjou, who now called herself the queen, caused to be given him. On Lewis exerting himself to bring her to justice, Philip interposed, and the injured prince was prevailed on to pardon her on her profession of penitence; the best proof of the reality of which was her subsequent respectfull conduct to him. The long reign of Philip was closed by his death, in the forty-seventh year after that of his father.* Lewis the sixth, surnamed the Gross, assumed the sole administration of affairs on the decease of his father: but little was his real power; his own immediate vassals confederating against him to prevent his restraining their enormities; while they were privately encouraged by Henry the first of England, to secure tranquillity to his estates on the continent. The great lords, however, entertained for Lewis a personal affection; while the impartial spirit of justice with which he executed the laws, gained him the respect of the clergy and the love of the common people. Henry refusing to execute a condition to which he was bound, a war ensued; but after one battle, in which his troops were defeated, a peace was concluded, and his son did homage to Lewis for the duchy of Normandy. The

Transactions
in France
during the
12th century.

A. D. 1108.

* During the reign of Philip were instituted the religious orders of the Chartreux, Cisteaux, and canons regular of St. Augustin.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

last was again involved in war with his vassals, continually engaging them, and often with the hazard of his life. A second war with the king of England proved less successful than the first, and was concluded by a peace, entirely to the honour and interest of Henry. After this Lewis married Alise, or Adelaide, daughter of Humbert, count of Savoy. The application of William, son of Robert duke of Normandy, which last was detained in confinement by his brother Henry, afforded Lewis a plea for forming a coalition, and again embarking in war against the king of England; but this, too, he was obliged to close by submitting to the terms dictated by Henry. This monarch's loss of both his sons by shipwreck, induced Lewis to renew his intrigues in Normandy in behalf of William; but the policy of Henry defeated them all: yet when he excited the emperor to invade France, the French lords so readily came forward in defence of their country, that the emperor thought proper to retire into his own dominions. On this occasion the oriflamme, afterwards considered as the royal standard of France, (being a crimson flag fixed to a gilt lance) is first noticed, and was, properly, the banner of the abbey of St. Denis. The king of England being by the emperor's death rendered desirous of one, a peace was quickly settled on equal conditions; yet through their allies the rival monarchs still opposed each other. The count of Flanders having been assassinated, Lewis conferred his fief on William of Normandy, who, however, not long after died of a wound he received in battle. Peace being restored, the king had his eldest son Philip solemnly crowned; but he being killed by a fall from his horse, the second, named Lewis, though only twelve years old, was in like manner crowned. The old king's gross habit of body induced an ill state of health, and after he had married his heir to Eleanor, the daughter of the duke of Guienne and Aquitaine, to whom her father, who died on a pilgrimage, bequeathed his territories, he himself expired. A better man the French allow never graced their throne; but there were some qualities wanting, to make him a king quite acceptable to a people, who seem to admire virtue much less than enterprize. The like troubles that perplexed the beginning of his father's reign, disturbed the opening of that of Lewis the seventh; while the excesses

of several of the nobility could be repressed only by force, the commons revolted ; but Lewis quickly reduced and chastised both. Still Thibaut, earl of Champagne, continued to intrigue against the king ; and fresh occurrences happening to widen the breach, the king made an expedition into Champagne, where he burnt the church of Vitri with thirteen hundred people in it ; remorse for which cruel deed not only produced a peace with the count, but a resolution in Lewis to go to the holy land as a penance. This determination Bernard, abbot of Clairvaux, a man, for those times, learned, naturally eloquent, austere in his life, irreproachable in his morals, zealous in the highest degree, and withall inflexible, who had long before gained the reputation of a saint, earnestly supported : while Suger, abbot of St. Denis, a man equal in the sincerity of his piety, and the perfection of his disinterestedness, who had had a great share in the administration during the former reign, and was beloved for the humility and strictness of his life, while he was admired for prudence and penetration, advised the king to contribute men and money to the expedition, but to remain at home himself ;—but Bernard carried his point. A great assembly of nobles and prelates was holden at Vizila in Burgundy, which was denominated *magnum parliamentum* ; and there the king received the cross from the hand of Bernard ; and the lords and multitude of people who entered into the same engagement, were difficult to be computed. But ere Lewis left France, Rodolph, count of Vermandois, and Suger, abbot of St. Denis, were in two other assemblies chosen and confirmed regents during the king's absence. The troops collected on this occasion are said to have amounted to fourscore thousand cavalry, besides a numerous infantry. The king himself led them to Constantinople, where he was received with great respect by the emperor Manuel Comnenes, and having passed over into Asia, he found the German emperor with the wretched remains of his army, far the greater part of it having fallen by the swords of the Turks, and the treachery of the Greeks. This is not the place to relate what passed in the East ; suffice it to say here, that Lewis at length returned without success to Europe, where, after the death of the abbot Suger, he repudiated his queen, yet not without sufficient grounds, and restored to her the

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

territories she brought him at her marriage : six weeks after which she married Henry, duke of Normandy, count of Anjou and Maine, son to Geoffrey Plantagenet and the empress Maud, and presumptive heir to the crown of England. * By which great alliance Henry, adding to the duchy of Normandy and the estates of the count of Anjou, the county of Poitou, and the duchy of Guienne, became at least as powerfull in France as the king himself. To obviate the injury to himself that might flow from this, Lewis accepted the homage of Eustace, count of Boulogne, for the duchy of Normandy, who attacked that province, when Henry contrived to persuade Lewis to conclude a truce with him. At the expiration of that truce the king invaded Normandy, but Henry's accession to the throne of England quickly induced him to make peace : his nobility then prevailed on him to marry Constantia, the daughter of Alonso, king of Castile : after which, on the king of England having commenced hostilities against the count of Toulouse, who had married a sister of Lewis, the last armed in support of his brother-in-law, but peace was at length concluded between them on nearly equal terms. The queen Constantia dying, Lewis, urged to it by his nobility, married Adelaide, the daughter of Thibaut, earl of Champagne : after which, a new war with Henry broke out ; until both, wearied with their reciprocal losses, concluded a treaty of peace at Montmirail. But outward peace was not real reconciliation ; Lewis afterwards took umbrage at Henry's causing his eldest son, who had married one of the king of France's daughters, to be crowned in England, while his consort was in France, and invaded Normandy ; and though this breach was by the prudence of Henry made up, yet was the situation of his affairs such as induced Lewis to seduce three of the sons of Henry into a confederacy against their father : yet this monarch prevailed over all his enemies, and obtained a peace on his own terms. Lewis's only son Philip, when just able to ride, being run away with by his horse in the wood of Compiègne, continued there all night, and by the fright he underwent was thrown into a fit of sickness : this prompted his father, in all the wretched superstition of the age, to make a pilgrimage to the tomb of the new saint, Thomas à Becket : when Henry received him with great pomp. But on his

return he was stricken with a paralysis, under which having languished about a year, he died. His son Philip, who had been crowned in his father's life-time, immediately assumed the government, though but in his fifteenth year. In the administration of this he took the most vigorous measures for giving ease and security to his people, and for establishing his own authority. He soon met with opposition from his mother and her faction, contrary to whose wishes he married Isabel, daughter to the count of Flanders, with whom he obtained as her dowry the county of Artois, and all the country along the river Lys. After a reconciliation with these opponents, the count of Flanders himself by his intrigues excited another party against him, but these, too, the young monarch reduced to submission; and on the decease of the countess of Flanders, a princess of the blood royal, he annexed the county of Vermandois, which she had inherited, to the crown, leaving to her husband, who continued a war against him as long as he was able, only the towns of Perron and St. Quintin. Henry, king of England, having declined on the death of his eldest son to restore Gisors and the Vexin, which had been given him in dowry with Margaret, the sister of Philip, and deferred the marriage of his son Richard with Alice, another princess of France, Philip had recourse to arms; but by the interposition of the pope's legate hostilities were suspended, and both the monarchs took the cross. Another difference, however, arose; after the determination of which, by the death of Henry, Richard succeeded to the crown of England. The two young kings now formed an alliance, swore fidelity as friends, and after Philip had raised the money necessary, and arranged the government of his kingdom, they marched together to Lyons, and there solemnly agreed to unite again in Sicily. There they accordingly met, but it was only to quarrel; and though their being embarked in a common cause prevented their coming to open hostilities, yet when they met again in Syria at the siege of Aco, the Ptolemais of the Greeks, where Philip arrived first, their bickerings were renewed; and when the place was taken, the French king returned home, leaving a considerable body of French troops with orders to obey Richard. From this time to the death of Richard, the French monarch seems to have been guided chiefly by

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

his aversion to and his dread of him. He entered into a close alliance with John, the brother, but bitter enemy of Richard. Having lost his queen Isabella, he married a Danish princess, with a view through her to obtain a claim on the crown of England; and when Richard was, in his return from the East, seized by the duke of Austria, and sold to the emperor Henry the sixth, he attacked his dominions in France: but Richard on recovering his liberty gained a victory over him, and, after some more operations, a peace was concluded on equal terms. Still this was infringed in six months, and the war renewed very much to the disadvantage of Philip; and though, by the interposition of the pope, a truce for five years was consented to, Richard was slain ere a peace was concluded. On John's ascending the throne of England, Philip, under colour of protecting Arthur, the real heir to the dominions on both sides of the water, invaded Normandy; but the war was closed by a proposal, that on Lewis, Philip's heir apparent, espousing Blanch, the daughter of the king of Castile, and niece of John, the estates of the last in France should, if he died without heirs of his body, be entailed on the issue of that marriage; and the peace thus made was not interrupted until after the close of the century.

Occurrences
in Spain
during the
12th century.

In the first year of the twelfth century the Moors, encouraged by the death of the Cid, turned their arms towards the city of Valentia, but though they defeated Alonso's son, count Henry, the place was so defended by the widow of the Cid assisted by the governor, that the infidels were obliged to retire: but on the attack being renewed the next year, Alonso ordered the Christians to evacuate the city. The king having lost his wife, though her son Don Sancho survived her, married for his sixth the princess Beatrix of Este; after which he lost a great battle against the Moors, though his measures prevented their profiting much by their victory. But now Joseph, king of the Almoravides, again arrived in Spain with a much more powerful army than any the Mahometans had before brought thither, and being met by the troops of Alonso, who for their encouragement had among them his son Sancho, though but eleven years old, an engagement took place in which the Spaniards were totally routed, and the prince Sancho slain. Such, however, was their own loss,

and the exertion of the king's daughter, Donna Urraca, in collecting forces anew, that the Moors retreated into their own dominions. Alonso, however, hurt at this very great loss, omitted no measure calculated to repair it: he appointed, too, his grandson Alonso, the child of his daughter Urraca by Don Raymond, which last was now dead, his sole successor in all his dominions; and at length died, worn out with age, sickness, and care. On this monarch's death his son-in-law Alphonso, king of Aragon and Navarre, who had married Donna Urraca, the widow of Don Raymond, demanded the kingdom of Leon and Castile in right of his wife; and was admitted to take possession of it. But so much less governable did he find his wife than his subjects, that he thought proper to confine her in a fortress; from which she was quickly delivered by some of the Castilian nobility. In Galicia great disturbances were raised, some of the nobility seizing the person of Don Alonso, and, under the pretence of loyalty to him, keeping the child a prisoner. Joseph, king of the Almoravides in Spain, dying about the same time as Alonso the sixth, was succeeded by his son Ali Joseph, who laid siege to Toledo, but was, by the exertions of the brave governour and garrison, compelled to raise it. The same success he experienced at Madrid, though he swept the country of booty and captives to a very great amount; which last, with the Christians residing in his own territories, he transported into Africa. Though a temporary reconciliation was effected between the king Alphonso and his queen, yet, unable to bear his coldness, she soon separated from him; and he being more unwilling to part with her territories than with her person, a civil war quickly ensued: at the commencement of which Don Alonso Raymond was formally crowned in Galicia. In the course of these differences among the Christians, the Moors made irruptions into their territories. The queen, at first defeated, afterwards obtained great advantage over her husband; and at length in a council at Palencia their marriage was declared void on account of consanguinity. But the uncertainty of her temper produced so many inconveniences that the nobility put the government of Galicia into the hands of her son, Don Alonso Raymond. This occasioned new disturbances; and though matters were compromised for a short

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

time, yet the queen considered the bishop of Compostella, who had crowned her son and proved himself a most faithful subject, and Don Pedro Frolaz, as men who had seduced the young Alonso into rebellion, and they looked on her as a princess not able to govern so many states at a critical conjuncture. The accommodation between the queen and her son's party lasted not long; yet another was soon made, and she went to visit him in Galicia, where new disorders arose. While things were in disturbance there, however, the inhabitants of Toledo recalled their natural prince Don Alonso Raymond, and he made a publick entry into that city. After this, he and his mother recovered several places which the king of Aragon had seized, but then became at variance between themselves again, until at length their disputes were finally terminated by the queen's death. Within two days after his mother's death, the young king Alonso received at Leon the oath of allegiance from the nobility of Leon, Castile, and Asturias. Most of the places holden by the king of Aragon opened their gates to him, either willingly or by constraint, and at length the differences of these two kings were amicably determined. Donna Theresa, the aunt of the king of Leon, who reigned in Portugal, having invaded his territories, he returned her visit in a manner that soon rendered her desirous of peace; the conclusion of which was quickly followed by her deposition, and her son Don Alonso Henriquez being placed on the throne of Portugal. The king of Leon now entered into marriage with Berengara, the daughter of Raymond, count of Barcelona; and the following year the king of Aragon laying siege to Meran, he soon compelled him to retire into his own dominions. All this time a predatory war was maintained by the Christians and Moors: but on the arrival of Texefin ben Ali, the king of Morocco, he, having assembled a numerous army, was by a sudden attack of the Spaniards defeated, and had his camp plundered. A cloud of trouble now assailed the king of Leon; a rebellion in the Asturias, an invasion of Galicia by Don Alonso of Portugal, and a menaced attack of the Moors on Toledo, but over all he triumphed; and when the Moorish monarch repeated the attack, Alonso not only forced him to retire, but advanced even to Seville, and the sea coasts; returning into his own

dominions laden with booty. The old king of Aragon had not such good success, his army being defeated by the Moors, and himself slain. His kingdoms then became divided; the people of Aragon choosing Ramiro, the brother of their deceased monarch, though a monk, and those of Navarre electing for their king Garcia Ramirez, a descendant from their ancient kings. Don Alonso on these changes not only got possession of all the country south of the Ebro to Saragossa, and of that city, but on his return to Leon was crowned and proclaimed emperor; having previously received the voluntary homage of the king of Navarre, as well as that which he claimed from the counts of Barcelona and Toulouse. But afterwards claiming the same from the sovereign of Portugal, he formed a league with the king of Navarre against the new emperor, in which, however, the new allies prospered little; and when the emperor had reduced them to tranquillity he turned his arms against the Moors. In the course of his operations against whom there was manifested a degree of gallantry on both sides, the particulars of which, if detailed, would make the page of history resemble that of a romance. After the emperor had taken from the Moors the fortress of Oreja, he was persuaded by the count of Barcelona to engage in a league against the king of Navarre, which prompted the latter to form one with the king of Portugal. But the chief result of these counter-measures was the espousals of the emperor's eldest son Sancho to the king of Navarre's daughter Blanca. The war with the Moors still continued with various success, until some information which he had received induced the emperor to prepare again to attack the king of Navarre; but that prince proposing to marry Alonso's natural daughter, his offer was accepted, and peace restored between them. The civil wars of the Moors, soon after this, threw into Alonso's hands the city of Cordova, as well as Calatrava, but still holden by the Moors as his vassals, by which he acquired the command of the best part of La Mancha; and then he proceeded, with the assistance of the maritime powers of Genoa and Pisa, to the capture of Almeria in Granada. The emperor having lost his empress Berengara, declared his son Don Sancho king of Castile, the mountains of Burgos, Biscay, and Toledo; and Don Ferdinand of Leon, Asturias,

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1157.

and Galicia. The cruel severities practised on the Christians in their power by the new dynasty of Almohades, who having overturned that of the Almoravides in Africa, had gained most of the places they possessed in Spain, and particularly Cordova, urged the emperor to prosecute the expeditions by which he had hitherto weakened those enemies. Early in the next season he entered the enemy's territories, and gained a complete victory over them; but Garcia, the king of Navarre, who contributed greatly to it, died ere the year was closed. The next year was celebrated the marriage of Alonso's son Sancho, and Blanca, the daughter of the late king of Navarre. After some further success against the Moors, the emperor married the daughter of Ladislaus the second, king of Poland; while Sancho, king of Navarre, married one of the emperor's daughters. The emperor having espoused an infant daughter of his to Raymond of Aragon, in consequence of this alliance was prevailed on to invade Navarre, but was diverted from that by the menacing attitude of the Moors, over whom having gained another victory, he was seized with his last illness, and died on his way to Toledo. Alonso's eldest son, Don Sancho, was received as king of Castile, and his brother Ferdinand as sovereign of Leon, Asturias, and Galicia. As soon as they heard of the death of Alonso, the Moors began to act on the offensive with great success. Don Sancho having persuaded his brother to restore to their posts his father's old counsellors, whom he had rashly discharged, proceeded to compose all his differences with the monarchs of Aragon and Navarre. About this time it was, that the Knights Templars having, in despair of defending it against the Moors, abandoned the town of Calatrava, St. Raymond, abbot of Vitero, undertook to defend it with only another monk, Diego Velasquez, who like himself had formerly borne arms. These in a few weeks by preaching raised twenty thousand men, and means to subsist them; on which St. Raymond gave the rule of the Cistercian order a military turn, whence arose that which has since been distinguished by the name of Calatrava. Don Sancho himself lived only to hear of a victory gained by his subjects over the Moors, and the crown of Castile devolved on his son Alonso, then but three years old. Though the deceased king had appointed a regent for his son, his authority

was disputed, and his ward taken from him: hence arose great confusion; the king of Leon led an army into Castile, but could not recover the person of his nephew: while the king of Navarre made himself master of several places which had been taken from him. Happily for the Spaniards, the Moors took no advantage of these distractions;* and when they were somewhat calmed, Ferdinand married Donna Urraca, daughter of Alonso king of Portugal. After his marriage he both strengthened and extended his frontiers: neither was it long before his prudence in fortifying his territories toward Portugal appeared. For Alonso, king of that country, by invading Galicia, commenced a war which ended in his being defeated and taken prisoner; yet Ferdinand took no advantage of his success, but renewed the peace with him on the former terms. - The people of Castile being desirous that their young king should marry, a daughter of Henry the second of England was obtained for him, and their marriage solemnized. Joseph, king of Morocco, having sent a body of troops into Portugal, they were defeated, and compelled to retire. The bad success of his forces induced the Moorish king to carry on the war in person; when attacking the Mahometans as well as the Christians of Spain, he made himself master of the kingdom of Murcia; which, however, he would scarcely have added to his empire, had not the kings of Aragon and Castile been engaged in a quarrel with the king of Navarre. A lieutenant of the king of Morocco having made another irruption into Portugal, and taken Torres Novas, proceeded into the territories of Leon, and there received a total defeat from Ferdinand. After some differences between the kings of Castile and Aragon, which were at length adjusted by the latter marrying Donna Sancha, the aunt to the former, those kings continued their war against the king of Navarre with so little success, that they were persuaded to refer their differences to the king of England; and though they did not immediately abide by his arbitration, they at length arranged things between themselves on nearly

* It was at this time that Don Pedro Fernandez converted the rule of St. Augustin into a military institution, by the name of the Order of St. James of the Sword.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the same terms. There now occurred another instance of the completion of prophecy, in the character supported by the bishop of Rome: his legate at the court of Leon discovered that Ferdinand and his wife were both great-grandchildren of king Alphonso the sixth; when his holiness insisted on the king's putting away his wife, and at length obliged him to comply, when he married another; and thus was the abomination of adultery committed by the command of the pope; and those whom God had joined together put asunder by an authority which that prelate had blasphemously assumed. The same scene of differences between the Christian kings of Spain themselves, and, in the intervals of these, attacks upon the Moors, continued until the death of Ferdinand, king of Leon, who was succeeded by his eldest son, Don Alonso. The year after his accession this prince united with the king of Castile against the Moors, and great was the success of their joint campaign. But the latter monarch keeping all their conquests, the king of Leon, irritated by this iniquity, immediately sought the alliance of the king of Portugal, and married the infanta Teresa, his own cousin german. With this marriage the pope's legate afterwards found fault; and Don Alonso being unwilling to part with his wife, the kingdoms of Leon and Portugal were put under an interdict. Alonso, king of Castile, having, by the cruel ravages committed by his troops in their territories, roused the vengeance of the Moors, and weakly ventured an engagement with them ere the arrival of his allies of Leon and Navarre, was totally routed, with the loss of twenty thousand Castilians, his camp, and all his baggage; after which he behaved with such insolence to his allies, that they both ravaged part of his, as they returned into their own dominions: while by an irruption into Portugal the Moors returned the barbarities practised against themselves. The king of Leon was at length obliged to submit to the assumed authority of the pope, and send away his queen; when the king of Castile taking advantage of the troubles thence arising, invaded the kingdom of Leon, and would have pursued the war against that monarch but for an attack made by the Moors on his own; still this interruption having ceased, he renewed his hostilities. But the king of Leon proposing a pacification, by the influence of

the nobles of Castile, the offer was attended to, and a marriage concluded between the king of Leon, and Donna Berengara of Castile. The two kings of Aragon and Castile next confederated against the king of Navarre, but with little success at first, though in the following year this last monarch was reduced to the brink of destruction. The birth of a son, named Ferdinand, to Alonso, king of Leon; and his taking from his mother-in-law some important fortresses bestowed on her by his predecessor, close the occurrences of this century in Spain.

While Henry the first was endeavouring to establish himself firmly on the throne of England by his marriage with Matilda, the daughter of Malcolm king of Scotland by Margaret sister to Edgar Atheling, his eldest brother Robert returned, and took possession of his dukedom of Normandy without opposition. He then endeavoured by an expedition into England to recover from Henry the crown of that kingdom, but found him too strongly supported, and chiefly by the influence of Anselm, archbishop of Canterbury, to be removed. By a treaty, therefore, he resigned all claim to the kingdom during the life of Henry, while the other promised to pay him annually three thousand marks, and resign to him all the places which he then held in Normandy. Henry, thus fixed in the throne, was soon involved in disputes with Anselm, who having gained his first point, by making, in a synod he convened, a decree prohibiting the marriage of priests, next contested the king's right of investiture, and by carrying his appeal to Rome, triumphed in this point also; and the king at length ceded the right of investiture, *on the pope's permitting the bishops to do homage to him*. Henry, who seems to have been a wretch of the most selfish turn, not only withheld the payment he had promised his brother, but took advantage of his imprudence and mismanagement to enter into a war against him, by which he deprived him of both his dukedom and his liberty; confining him to Cardiff castle until the end of his life. On Henry's return to England he gladly acceded to the demand made by the emperor Henry the fourth of his daughter Matilda in marriage, to pay whose portion he raised, according to the custom of the Normans, an aid from his subjects. The death of Anselm did not relieve the clergy in point

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Transactions
in Britain
during the
12th century.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

of marriage; but the prohibition is represented to have produced enormous vice. In the tenth year of this king's reign, it is asserted by some, that Cambridge was made a seat of learning, by Joffred, abbot of Croyland, sending one Gislebert, a divine, and three others, to Cambridge, to teach the sciences, who hired a barn to teach in; but their scholars soon became too numerous for that building to hold them. The king was soon obliged to leave England to oppose the intrigues and hostilities of the king of France, to which having put an end he returned, and passed five years in peace. Of the transactions in Normandy during this reign, notice has been already taken, as well as of the death of William, the king's only son. Though the peace with France did not secure Henry from disturbances in Normandy, he soon got the better of those which arose. Henry, giving over the hope of any children of his own, assembled all the immediate vassals of the crown, among whom was Stephen, his own nephew, earl of Boulogne, and David, king of Scotland, and got them to acknowledge his daughter Matilda, now by the emperor's death a widow, heir to the crown; after which he married her to Geoffrey Plantagenet, son of the earl of Anjou, to whom his father had resigned his dominions. The avowed purpose of the king of France to put William Crito, the son and heir of Henry's brother Robert, in possession of Normandy, caused the king to enter France with a powerfull army; but William himself being slain at the siege of Alost, this obliged Lewis to conclude a peace with Henry, which lasted during the reign of the last; in which there occurred little more worth noticing, but that his daughter Matilda produced a son, named Henry from his grandfather. This king died in the sixty-eighth year of his age, and the thirty-sixth of his reign. Stephen his nephew, by Adela, daughter of William the Conquerour, had already prepared the means of supplanting Matilda, and being placed on the throne himself. His principal assistants in this were his brother Henry, bishop of Winchester, and some of the leading clergy; swayed by these, the nobility consented to break the oaths they had taken to the right heiress of the crown; and on Stephen's promise of more privileges than they had enjoyed under his Norman predecessors, they assented to his coronation. Stephen having taken pos-

A. D. 1135.

session of all the late king's treasure with which to raise such an army as might be requisite to support him in the throne he had usurped, convened an assembly at Oxford, in which he signed a charter, acknowledging his election, confirming the immunities of the clergy, abolishing the forest laws and Danegeld, and reviving the ancient Saxon laws: after which, still in fear of Matilda, he permitted the barons to build and fortify castles to that extent, that in a short time there existed a thousand in different parts of the kingdom. From this period his reign was a scene of trouble: his barons sought independence, his clergy strove to be his masters: the Welsh harassed his kingdom on one side, and the Scotch on the other: and, on his being seized with a dangerous illness, his own brother, the earl of Blois, would have seized Normandy. With great courage did Stephen exert himself against all these enemies, even overcoming a general revolt in England, led by the late king's natural son, the earl of Gloucester. At length, when he was most deeply involved in disputes with the clergy, whose cause was supported by the people, the empress Matilda was invited into England, and a civil war took place, in which Stephen was taken prisoner, and deserted by all England, the county of Kent and city of London excepted: while Matilda's husband, the earl of Anjou, seized Normandy. But when Matilda deemed herself secure of the throne, her impolitick and haughty conduct alienated from her the pope's legate, brother of Stephen and bishop of Winchester, by whose means an assembly of the clergy had been induced to declare her queen; having offended, too, the citizens of London, an army was raised against her, in the course of the operations of which, her most powerfull assistant, the duke of Gloucester, was taken prisoner; in exchange for whom she liberated Stephen. On whose recovery of liberty, Matilda's party visibly declined; and though Henry her son was sent into England, his presence had little effect; while the death of her two most faithful counsellors, the earls of Gloucester and Hereford, induced her, after having sent her son into Normandy, to retire thither herself. Stephen, now in peaceable possession of the crown, caused some of the barons to swear allegiance to his son Eustace: but to this heir a formidable rival soon appeared in Henry, who not only became earl

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1154.

of Anjou on the decease of Geoffrey his father, but by his own marriage already mentioned with the divorced queen of France, came into possession of all the territories she had inherited. To support what remained of his mother's party in England, this brave and able young prince again passed over into that country; and, when on the eve of an engagement with Stephen, was prevailed on to agree to a conference, in which was settled a truce, that ended in a peace concluded at Winchester, by which it was covenanted, that Stephen should hold the crown of England for his life, and Henry succeed him; and William, Stephen's son, his eldest, Eustace, being dead, did homage to the duke for the estates of his family: and in the next year Stephen died. Henry, arriving in England about six weeks after the death of Stephen, was crowned the next day, and proved, spite of his personal vices, which were no less than pride, ambition, and lust, one of the greatest kings that have ever filled the English throne. His first object was to secure the internal tranquillity of his kingdom; this he began to effect by demolishing the great number of castles, which Stephen had permitted to be fortified; and sending away the foreign mercenaries, which the late civil wars had brought into the kingdom; he, with much more injustice, resumed all the grants of crown lands made by his predecessor. Having chosen a privy and a cabinet council, he convened a parliament at Wallingford: here the barons took the oath to his sons William and Henry, the first of which died a few days after; and the king consented to the laws of Edward the Confessor, and confirmed the charter of Henry the first. The affairs of England being settled, Henry went into France to do homage to the king for the very extensive territories which he held in that kingdom; and at the same time dispossessed his brother Geoffrey of Anjou. On his return to England, by a treaty with Malcolm, king of Scotland, he recovered to the crown of the former country, Carlisle, Newcastle, and Bamborough castle. Great now was Henry's prosperity; in two consequent years he had two sons born to him, Richard and Geoffrey; he conquered the city of Nantz; espoused his son Henry, only five years old, to Margaret, an infant daughter of the king of France; and his son Geoffrey, yet in the cradle, to Constance, the daughter of the

duke of Bretagne. But when he returned, with a most pleasing prospect of tranquillity, to England, his endeavours to introduce some degree of reformation among the clergy, the comparative impunity of whom under the most enormous crimes, as they were amenable to the ecclesiastical courts only, was productive of equal disorder and offence, gave rise to a long course of trouble, through the ungratefull and determined opposition of the haughty and impious Becket,* archbishop of Canterbury. To restrain the encroachments of the clergy, the king caused to be enacted, in a parliament assembled at Clarendon, sixteen articles, to which the clergy at first agreed; but on Henry being weak enough to request, that they might be confirmed by a bull, the pope had the arrogance to declare, that he could not agree to ten of them. On the bishop of Rome's rejection of these constitutions of Clarendon, Becket recanted his assent to them; on which the king caused prosecutions to be commenced against him on various accounts, from which at length Becket fled into France. The attempts made in this last country, to which Henry also resorted, to bring the obstinate prelate to any submission failing, the king returned to England, and before a numerous assembly which he summoned, and, with the assent of the clergy and people, he caused his eldest son to be crowned. The king being soon after attacked by a severe indisposition, became more desirous of putting an end to the contest with Becket, and on his recovery this was, after some difficulties, effected. But though the king forgave all the partisans of the archbishop, the charitable prelate would not forgive those who had offended him, but excommunicated the bishops of London, Durham, and Exeter; on whose complaint to the king, he dropt some words, by which four of his domesticks were incited to revenge all the insults he had received, by the murder of Becket;

* Thomas Becket was the son of a citizen of London, named Gilbert Becket, who lived on the site of the present St. Thomas's hospital, and had married a Syrian woman, named Matildis: he spent his youth in the study of the law, and became so eminent at the bar, that he was made archdeacon of Canterbury; and thence in the beginning of this reign becoming known to the king, he made him high chancellor; and afterwards, conceiving he could depend on him, promoted him to the province of Canterbury.

which they perpetrated in his own cathedral church. This murder afforded Henry's two principal enemies, the king of France and the archbishop of Sens, an opportunity to stimulate the pope to revenge it; but Henry's protestations of readiness to submit to whatever sentence should be pronounced, and a proper distribution of presents at Rome, overcame the menaces of excommunication and an interdict, which his holiness uttered against him. In the meantime the king resumed an old project of his, of conquering the neighbouring island of Ireland. This country is said to have been early peopled by Scythians, whence its ancient name of Scotia, to whom added themselves colonies of Spaniards; but while the former were, probably, only some wanderers from the great northern migrations of the Gomerians, the latter, there is reason to think, were in fact Phœnicians. The name given to this island by the natives was Erin; the Britons stiled it in their language Yverdon, and the Saxons Iren-land. The conversion of the Irish to Christianity was commenced by Palladius, whom pope Celestine the first sent to preach the Gospel to them; and on whose untimely death Patrick was sent, and converted most of the natives: hence has this last been considered by that people as their Apostle, and greatly revered by them. Ireland quickly abounded with monks, whose sanctity gave occasion to, what may in the present day seem remarkable, its being termed *the country of saints*. But the religion and learning which then flourished were partly expelled by foreign invasion: the Northumbrians, the Norwegians, the Estmanni, a tribe from Germany, all ravaged the country: Edgar, king of England, is said to have subdued it. Yet the intestine divisions caused still greater mischief: scarcely were the Irish free from foreign freebooters, especially from the Danes, who severely oppressed them, than a civil war broke out among them, which led to a partition of the island; the numerous petty states of which were at length reduced to seven, which were, Connaught, Cork, Leinster, Ossory, Meath, Limeric, and Ulster: of these the king of Connaught took the lead. Such was the state of Ireland when Henry undertook the conquest of it. While this monarch was engaged in a war with France, Dermot, king of Leinster, having by a nefarious act, which seems scarcely ever to have

been uncommon in that country of saints, debauching and carrying away the wife of the king of Meath, brought on himself the arms of this last and of the king of Connaught, and being driven from Ireland implored the protection of Henry ; who promising to assist him himself, when he had concluded his war with France, recommended him to apply in the mean time to some of the English barons ; two of whom closing with his proposals, accompanied with a small band, repaired to Ireland, where their attempts at conquest were crowned with success so rapid, that Henry grew jealous of them, and commanded them to return. But, on their declaring that all their conquests were at his command, he made an agreement with them, that, leaving all the sea-ports to him, the conquerours should hold the rest of him and his successors. After this settlement the king himself repaired to Ireland with a formidable army, on which the Irish voluntarily submitted, and all their kings strove who should first swear allegiance to him : and thus, without spilling a drop of blood, did Henry become lord of Ireland ; where having garrisoned the proper places, and appointed Hugh Lacy to govern the country in his name, with the title of justiciary of Ireland, he returned to England. The next important affair concluded, was that of Becket : in this the king submitted to the terms imposed by the papal legates, among which was the degrading condition of walking barefoot to the tomb of the pretended saint, and receiving discipline from the hands of the monks of St. Augustin. This settled, the king's attention was next claimed by a conspiracy which seems to have been raised principally by the queen, stimulated by jealousy, too justly entertained, but most wickedly indulged. Into this were seduced the king's three eldest sons, whose impious attempts against their father were supported by the unprincipled king of France. After a scene of great alarm, however, Henry triumphed over them all, the king of Scotland, who was taken prisoner, included. A peace, too, was made with France, and a marriage between Henry's son Richard and Alice, the daughter of Lewis, contracted ; and the princess, who was very young, was delivered to Henry to be educated in England. But ere the king of Scotland was released, he swore to do homage for his kingdom to the crown of England ; and this he afterwards

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

performed in the presence of the barons of both kingdoms, when those of Scotland solemnly swore to withdraw their obedience, if their king should recede from what he had done. After this, Henry turned his attention to the administration of justice in the kingdom, and instituted the six districts, through each of which two of the twelve judges of the realm were twice every year to make a circuit for the administration of justice. In the parliaments holden at Northampton, and called the assizes of that place, the constitutions of Clarendon, except those concerning the clergy, were renewed. Tranquillity, however, could not be enjoyed by Henry, whose slavery to his lust was such, that he was suspected of having seduced the French princess, his intended daughter-in-law; nor were his sons more contented with their situation than before. To prevent another conspiracy, he disgraced himself by sowing dissensions among them; yet was he much concerned at the loss of his eldest, Henry, who was taken off by a slow fever, and appears to have died penitent. His son John the king sent as governour to Ireland, but such was his conduct there, that it was necessary to recall him. Richard, too, by his turbulence gave him much uneasiness, having attacked the territories of his brother Geoffrey; who soon after died at Paris. Philip, king of France, being foiled in his attempt to cause an open breach between Henry and his now eldest son Richard, a temporary reconciliation was made between the two monarchs, by their uniting in taking the cross. This, however, lasted not long; the war broke out anew, Richard again left his father, and sided with the king of France; with whom Henry was at length constrained to make peace on his own terms. Henry's mortification at this was much increased by a discovery, that his favourite son, John, had been concerned in the confederacy against him with the French king; shortly after expressing the highest irritation at which, he was seized with his last illness, and died at Chinon. To this great monarch, whose reign forms a remarkable period in the history of England; and which has been ably and elegantly elucidated by lord Lyttleton in his life of Henry the second, succeeded his daring and rebellious son Richard; one of whose first measures was the release of his mother still in confinement, though all those who for his sake had exposed

A. D. 1189.

themselves to his father's resentment, he forbade to appear in his presence. Some disturbance made by them at his coronation occasioned a slaughter of some Jews in London, a cruelty which was imitated in several other places; but with particular ferocity at York. One of the most important particulars of this reign, and which in itself and the preparations for it occupied a large portion of it, was the king's expedition to the holy land. Among the various means he took to raise the very great sums necessary for this, was that of delivering Berwick and Roxborough to the king of Scotland, and desisting from his claim to the sovereignty of that kingdom for the sum of ten thousand marks. Of the expedition and its event, in the king's being forced to return without recovering Jerusalem, and of the unworthy treatment he received from the duke of Austria and the emperor of Germany, mention is elsewhere made; here it is proper to state, that while he was absent, the insolent misconduct of Longchamp, bishop of Ely and pope's legate, to whom and the bishop of Durham Richard entrusted the regency during his own absence, occasioned great disturbances, led to the deposition of that regent, and gave an opportunity to prince John, Richard's brother, to promote the project he had conceived of supplanting the king in his throne. The exertions of the queen-mother, and the general fidelity of his subjects, however, preserved for Richard the crown, until, on paying an hundred and fifty thousand marks to the emperor for his ransom, he was released, and returned to England. The animosity manifested, and the many ill turns done to Richard during his absence by the king of France, provoked the English monarch to prepare immediately for war against him; in raising money for which he scrupled not to be guilty of the grossest injustice towards his own subjects. This war continued five years with mutual slaughter, and little preponderating success on either side, and was at length, on the pope's solicitation, ended by a truce, under which each party retained what was then in his possession. During the king's absence a daring democrat, called William Longbeard, misled the populace of London into a sedition, by the mode still in use of haranguing against a tax, which he assured them, and doubtlessly with as much truth as his successors in Guildhall or Palace Yard,

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1199.

would fall wholly on the poor ; but the principal citizens taking to their arms, the disturbance was quelled, and with an wholesome severity the leader and nine of his accomplices were hanged in chains. An equal piece of justice was done by Richard himself, who, during a famine in England, finding at St. Valeri ships freighted with corn from thence, ordered the people that belonged to the vessels to be hanged ; thus taking a compendious and effectual way to prevent prohibited exportation, and diminish the sufferings of thousands of the innocent by executing justice on a few of the guilty.* While Richard was thinking of returning to England, he was induced, by the desire of seizing some treasure that had been found, to besiege a castle in the Limosin, before which he received a wound, that brought him to a painfull death : but ere he expired, he by will bequeathed all his dominions to his brother John.† This prince having sent to England proper persons to secure him a favourable reception there, got himself solemnly crowned duke of Normandy ere he left the continent, and then passed over into England, where he ascended the throne without opposition, though the hereditary claim lay in Arthur, the son of his elder brother Geoffrey. Constance, the mother of this prince, to preserve her son's territories from the greedy grasp of John, put Arthur under the protection of the king of France, to whom she surrendered the principal places of Bretagne, Poictou, Anjou, Touraine, and Maine. But little was the young duke profited by this ; since, after a war between the two kings, on their reconciliation, one condition of which was, that John

* About this time lived the famous freebooter Robin Hood, and his companion Little John, who are said to have infested Yorkshire : he robbed only the rich, but did them no personal injury ; falling sick at the nunnery of Berkeley, he was there betrayed, and bled to death.

† Richard was the first king of England who carried on his shield three lions passant : and about this time coats of arms became hereditary ; having their origin in the badges painted on the shields or the armour of the crusaders. In the first year of this monarch the citizens of London obtained licence to be governed by two bailiffs or sheriffs, and to have a mayor for their chief magistrate. Henry Fitz-Alwin, the first mayor, continued in that office twenty-four years. During this reign, too, the tradesmen of the city were divided into several corporations, called companies.

should take possession of Poictou, Maine, Touraine, and Anjou, he was obliged to do homage to him even for Bretagne. John after this, conceiving a violent passion for Isabella of Angoulême, prevailed on the pope to dissolve the marriage with his first wife, on pretence of that consanguinity, which nine years before he deemed no impediment to it. Pope Innocent the third having, with the predicted presumption of the papal character, determined to deprive princes of every thing that had the appearance of ecclesiastical jurisdiction, Hubert, archbishop of Canterbury, under his direction, held a synod, not only without the leave, but in direct opposition to the commands of the king; thus giving a commencement to those differences which ended in the royal vassalage to the see of Rome. But here the twelfth century closing, the history of England must, for the present, be suspended.

The irregular notations of chronology in the history of Sweden leave us ignorant in what year, on the poisoning of Ingo, the Ostrogoths placed on the throne of that kingdom Ragwald Knaphoesde, whose ferocity and tyranny occasioned a conspiracy by which he lost his life. In his room another worthless character, Magnus, the son of Nicholas king of Denmark, was presented with the crown; but, after some time, the Ostrogoths and Swedes joined in transferring it to a man of opposite character, named Suercher, who, raised from a private station, gained the reputation of an accomplished monarch: but, too indulgent to his son, the vices of the young man raised tumults, in which not only himself but his father fell. Eric, a grandson of Ingo, was, by an agreement of both people, next placed on the throne; who totally subdued the Finlanders, and compelled them to receive Christianity. Having afterwards compiled an admirable code of laws, his severity in the execution of them excited a rebellion of those who most needed coercion, and they having called in the king of Denmark and his son with a powerfull army, Eric fell in fighting valiantly against them. Both Goths and Swedes flew to arms to revenge the death of their king, and having slain their enemies, together with both the king and prince of Denmark, they bestowed their crown on Charles, the son of Suercher, who had commanded their army against the Danes, but who, from a suspicion that he was concerned in the death of Eric, was at first rejected by

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
12th century.

A. D. 1149.

A. D. 1154.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the Swedes. But their reluctance being at length overcome, he reigned in tranquillity and unexceptionably, until Canute, the son of his predecessor Eric, who had retired into Norway, suddenly entered Sweden, took Charles prisoner, and beheaded him. Canute by a subsequent victory over a combined army of Goths and Danes, rendered himself absolute master of Sweden and Gothland, and reigned peaceably for three and twenty years. According to an agreement between the Swedes and Goths, that the descendants of Charles the son of Suercher, and of Eric the lawgiver, should alternately succeed to the crown, Suercher, the son of the last Charles, succeeded Canute, and for some years governed with great wisdom, but at last became tyrannical and cruel, putting to death all the relations of Canute he could seize. Yet Eric, the only son of that king, saved himself in Norway; from whence being recalled after several years by the discontented subjects of Suercher, he gained over that king three victories, in the last of which Suercher falling, Eric obtained peaceable possession of the kingdom, though after the close of the twelfth century.

Occurrences
in Denmark
during the
12th century.

On the death of Eric, the son of Sweyn, on his pilgrimage to the holy land, Nicholas, the only surviving son of the last prince, was placed on the throne of Denmark. The first breach of the tranquillity of this prince's reign was caused by Henry, prince of the Vandals, whose ravages extended over the duchy of Sleswick, until Canute, the son of Eric, obtained of Nicholas the government of that duchy, and pursued such measures as compelled the Vandal prince humbly to sue for peace. Hence, too, arose a strict friendship between them; and Henry, when dying, gave Canute the guardianship of his children, and the government of his kingdom; while, through his influence, too, he was appointed by the emperor duke of Mecklenburg; and soon after invested with the title of king of the Vandals. Yet, through the continued malice and dissimulation of those whose envy his virtues and achievements had excited, this great man, the ornament of his country, was at length cut off by a band of assassins, led by Magnus, the son of Nicholas, with that king's consent. This nefarious step, and the subsequent perfidy of Nicholas, produced a civil war, in which the people were led by Eric, the brother of the

murdered Canute ; to whom the sceptre of Denmark was at length transferred. The civil war was now prolonged, in the course of which Eric was deserted by his brother Harold, and on the other hand, the assassin Magnus was slain ; and at length, Nicholas himself was killed by the inhabitants of Sleswick in revenge of the death of Canute. On this last occurrence, the burghers of Sleswick proclaimed Eric king, who did not hesitate to secure himself on the throne by the death of all but the youngest of the sons of his brother Harold, who escaped for a time by fleeing into Norway, but returning from thence with an army to Zealand, and being there proclaimed king, he was removed by assassination. Magnus, king of Norway, having, when Eric was resident with him, attempted his life, the latter not only supported the malcontents of Norway, but carried the war so vigorously into that country, as to take Magnus captive, whom he cruelly deprived of his sight, raising Harold, who had returned from Ireland, to the throne. Eric now turned his attention to the interior of his kingdom ; but the regulations he attempted in that, excited such great discontents, that, while employed in them, the king was assassinated. To succeed him was elected Valdemar, the son of Canute, king of the Vandals ; and Eric, a relation of the royal family, and surnamed the Lamb on account of the mildness of his disposition, was chosen his colleague on account of Valdemar's minority. The reign thus begun was disturbed not only by disputes caused by the insolent assumptions of the ecclesiasticks, but by the attempts on the kingdom by Olaus, the son of Harold, who, however, after an obstinate contest, at length fell in battle. Eric, relieved from this rival, after reigning some time with piety, justice, and popularity, became a slave to uxorious indolence, by which he forfeited the reputation he had gained, and lived not to recover it, being taken off by a fever. On the death of Eric the fifth, Valdemar being still in his minority, the Zealanders chose for their king Sweyn, the son of Eric Emund, and the Jutlanders Canute, the son of Magnus. This partition of power immediately produced a civil war between the new kings, which, though suspended for a short time, that they might unite against the pagans, was quickly renewed, and carried on with various fortune ; but by young Valdemar, when he

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1165.

came of age, joining Sweyn, his power preponderated ; but after some success against the Swedes, the son of whose king had provoked the war, his cruel and unjust conduct towards his own subjects induced Valdemar to espouse the cause of Canute, which led to a new partition of the Danish territories, by which Valdemar himself obtained Jutland and Sleswick. Still Sweyn's treachery towards Valdemar was such, as to lead to a co-operation of this prince and Canute against him, when they compelled him to abdicate all his dominions. With the assistance of the duke of Saxony, however, he returned ; and Valdemar, to save the menaced effusion of Danish blood, assented to a new partition of the kingdom : after which the perfidious Sweyn endeavoured by assassination to destroy his colleagues : Canute fell, but Valdemar by his strength and valour escaped, after having killed two of the ruffians employed. Thus was produced another civil war ; but in which the villainous Sweyn being slain, Valdemar came into the sole possession of the crown of Denmark. Having acquired this measure of power, he compelled the Vandals, after some struggles, to sue for peace, quelled some internal disturbances, and accepted the crown of Norway : which he had no sooner received, than the Vandals recommenced hostilities, which at length ended in their being again reduced, when they agreed to abjure idolatry, and embrace Christianity. About this time Valdemar laid the foundation of the city of Dantzic. The diet now proposing that the king should take his son Canute, though only four years old, as his associate in the throne, Valdemar readily consented. After another vigorous attack on the power of the Vandals, Henry, duke of Saxony, informed Valdemar of a conspiracy against his life, and thus enabled him to crush it in time : yet the same prince formed with the Vandals an alliance against him, which was quickly broken by the policy of the Danish monarch ; and Henry renouncing his new confederates united with Valdemar in fearfully ravaging their country. After a more formal treaty with the Norwegians, by which it was agreed, that Valdemar's second son should succeed to their throne, if Erling and his son Magnus died without male issue, the same scenes recurred of insurrections and defeats of the Vandals, of conspiracies against the king, and the detection of

them, till Valdemar having betrothed one of his daughters to the duke of Suabia, the younger son of the emperor Barbarossa, and been himself invested with the duchy of Holstein in perpetuity, fell sick, and, by the assistance of an empiric, breathed his last. Canute, the son of Valdemar, having during his father's life been declared his successor, now took full possession of the throne. The leading events of this prince's reign, who was the sixth of his name, were the reduction of a rebellion in Schonen, where the revolted had elected one Harold for their king; the final conquest of the Vandals, and the annexation of their country as a fief to the crown of Denmark; the establishment of uniformity in the public worship of the churches of Denmark; and a war with Otho, marquis of Brandenburg, who entering into an alliance with Adolphus, earl of Holstein, involved the last in war with Canute, when Valdemar, the brother of this monarch, over-ran the earl's territories, and took him prisoner, adding a considerable tract of Germany to the Danish dominions. And thus closes the history of the twelfth century as to Denmark.

The emperor's resistance to the election of popes by the Roman Church, in contempt of his authority, led Pascal the second to excommunicate him anew; while his adversaries excited his son Henry, under pretence of necessity and zeal for religion, to rebel against him, when by the basest hypocrisy this vile prince got his father into his power; and at a diet, the pope's legates having repeated the sentence of excommunication, Henry the fourth was divested of the imperial dignity, and his son proclaimed emperor. The former, however, refusing to abdicate the throne, had his crown torn from his head by force, and his royal robes violently stripped off. A voluntary resignation is said to have been afterwards obtained from him; but he so far abased himself as to implore absolution at the feet of the pope's legate, and then was told the pope alone could grant it. The impious cruelty of his son even reduced this unhappy monarch to penury, and at length ordered him into close confinement. From this, however, he escaped to Cologne, where he was recognized as emperor, and thence repairing to the Low Countries, his friends raised a considerable body of troops, but ere any further step of importance could be taken towards his restoration, he died at

Occurrences
in Germany
during the
12th century.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1125.

Liege, in the fifty-sixth year of his age, and forty-ninth of his reign. Henry the fifth, surnamed the Young, thus in undisputed possession of the empire, though he was at first highly favourable to the clergy, soon became at variance with the pope on the subject of investitures; and after some contests with the Hungarians and Poles, in which he gained no honour, he marched into Italy, and there obtained from the pope even more concessions than he had demanded; yet these his holiness made solely to gain time. Nor was the dispute about investitures settled for some years; when the states of Germany, complaining that they were tired of the contest, a request was made to the pope to convene a general council, when one met at the Lateran, and made an arrangement, to which both the parties so long at variance agreed. After this accommodation with Rome, Holland revolted from the emperor, but was reduced by his arms; yet the spirit of sedition spread, and, by a sudden insurrection, he himself was driven out of Ruffac, a misfortune which made a deep impression on his spirits, if it did not contribute to his death, which took place after he had reigned eighteen years. By the intrigues of Albert, archbishop of Mentz, Lotharius, duke of Saxe-Supplembourg, was preferred to both the late emperor's nephews; who soon after his accession marched into Bohemia and compelled Sobieslaus, the brother of the late duke, who had by force possessed himself of the guardianship of his son, which rightly belonged to his elder brother, to make some reparation to that brother, and do homage to himself. Being persuaded by St. Bernard to support pope Innocent the second, against his rival Anaclete, he marched into Italy, and established the former at Rome, receiving on his knees the imperial crown from his hands. On his return to Germany, Lotharius ordered that justice should be administered in the empire according to the code of Justinian, which had been neglected for several centuries. The same laws were afterwards introduced in France and Spain. The emperor was quickly recalled to Italy to defend the pope against Roger, duke of Apulia, and having triumphantly re-established the former in Rome, and driven the latter into Sicily, on his return to Germany he was overtaken by death near the city of Trent in the twelfth year of his reign. For the successor of Lotharius, the princes of the empire

unanimously elected Conrad, duke of Franconia, nephew of Henry the fifth. Henry the Haughty, duke of Bavaria, having been divested of the duchies of Saxony and Bavaria for refusing to deliver to the new emperor the regalia which Lotharius had put into his hands, and died in consequence of the mortification, Roger, king of Sicily, to enable him to retain the conquests which he had now made in Apulia, excited Welf or Guelphe, the brother of Henry, to make war with the emperor for the recovery of the two duchies; and in the course of this war it was, that Guelphe having given his troops for the word *Hievvelf*, Frederick, the emperor's brother, gave his that of *Heigibelin*; and hence originated the names of the parties, the *Guelfs* and *Ghibelines*, which afterwards made so much noise in Italy; where that of the pope was distinguished by the first, and the imperial by the other.* Of Conrad's crusade some notice has already been taken: in this he was accompanied by his nephew Frederick Barbarossa, duke Guelphe, and many other noblemen, at the head of sixty thousand cavalry; of which one half perished by the treachery of the Greek emperor, and the remainder were entirely defeated by the Turks. The bad success of this expedition brought no light reproaches on St. Bernard, as a false prophet in promising victory to those who should embark in it. Still another crusade was undertaken against the Moors in Portugal, in which a great number of Germans from the vicinity of the Rhine and the Weser took the cross; and about the same time the Saxons engaged in a third crusade, and with a most unchristian spirit, under the command of Conrad the Saxon, and Henry, duke of Saxony, converted the natives of Sclavonia by fire and sword to Christianity. The death of the emperor's eldest son, named Henry, gave him great

* It was in the castle of Weinsberg in a sally from which the word *Hievvelf* was given; and on surrender of the same it was, that the wife of Guelphe, fearing that Conrad's generosity to her husband was feigned, entreated him to permit herself and the other women, to come out with as much as each could carry; which being granted, they all appeared staggering under the weight of their husbands; a manifestation of conjugal affection which drew tears from the emperor, and engaged him to come to an accommodation with Guelphe.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

affliction ; when, on account of his own ill state of health, he recommended to the diet his nephew Frederick duke of Suabia, a prince in every respect worthy of the throne; and who was approved of by all the princes. Soon after this Conrad died, after a reign of about thirteen years : Frederick above-mentioned, surnamed Barbarossa, was immediately elected emperor. This prince's transactions in Italy fall under the history of that country. On his first return from thence he took care to punish those who had disturbed the publick peace in Germany, by taking up arms against each other :* then he reduced to obedience Boleslaus, duke of Poland. The duchy of Bohemia he erected anew into a kingdom to secure the attachment of Uladislaus the duke ; for though Henry the fourth had conferred the title of king on a former Uladislaus, the duchy itself had not until now been acknowledged as a kingdom. In a second expedition into Italy the emperor having destroyed Milan, and sowed the site of it with salt, menaced the Genoese, who had declared themselves independent of the empire ; but they having appeased him by submission, and a promise to equip a fleet for his service, he both pardoned them, and gave them as a fief the Riviera, from Monaco to Porto Venere, and gratified them with several privileges which they had not before enjoyed. After having been twice more called into Italy, and, as has been related, returned the last time into Germany with great loss, Barbarossa had his eldest son, Henry, elected king of the Romans, and some time after his son Frederick was elected and crowned king of Germany. Having, on the complaints of the Bohemian nobility, summoned their king to appear at a diet, on his refusal the emperor led an army to Prague, and deposed him, giving the regency to Sobieslaus his relation, who had formerly been minister. This affair settled, the emperor again went to Italy, and having, after several losses, made peace with the pope, on his return into Germany he found complaints against Henry the Lion, which led first to his being put under the ban of the empire, and then

* The penalties inflicted on this occasion were remarkable : each count was condemned to carry a dog on his back from one county to another ; each gentleman to bear a joint-stool ; and the common people to shoulder cart wheels.

deprived of all his territories, except those of Brunswick and Lunenburg. After this loss Henry, by the advice of the emperor, retired into England; where was born to him a fourth son, whom he named William, and from whom the present House of Brunswick is descended. Otho, who had taken possession of Bavaria, so improved that duchy by the measures he pursued, that the emperor growing jealous of his power, declared Ratisbon a free town, erected Styria into a duchy, and took from his territories the Tyrol and the duchy of Meranea. Four years after this, Frederick married his eldest son Henry to Constance, sister and heiress of William, king of Sicily.* Disturbances having arisen in Bohemia, were at length quelled by the power of the emperor; and Frederick, son of Uladislaus, the late duke, was put in possession of his father's dominions. While the emperor was engaged in efforts to establish peace and good order in Germany, advice of the capture of Jerusalem by Saladin arrived; when Barbarossa himself and his son Frederick, duke of Suabia, with sixty-eight of the principal German noblemen both ecclesiastick and lay, took the cross; and adventurers, well accoutered and provided, assembled to the number of an hundred and fifty thousand. After taking the most prudent measures for the securing the tranquillity of his dominions during his absence, the emperor led his army through Hungary and the dominions of the Greek emperor into Asia; but, after some brilliant achievements there, he like Alexander chose to indulge himself with bathing in the cool waters of the Cydnus, and in them was drowned: his son, the duke of Suabia, took the command of the army, but was, with the greatest part of the troops, carried off by an infectious disorder. After the departure of his father, Henry, king of the Romans, had the trouble

A. D. 1190.

* In the course of the same year, 1186, Bertrand, bishop of Metz, introduced into Germany the custom of keeping archives, in which were registered the deeds of private estates; before which all causes of property were judged by living witnesses, and the sentence left to the decision of single combat. These combats, it deserves to be noticed, as marking the wide apostacy made from Christianity, were fought in the bishop's court-yard, or before the town-house, in the presence of the bishop's officers, who adjudged the victory, and punished the vanquished either with mulct or mutilation.

of reducing Henry the Lion ; who, disregarding the oath he had given, came from England and attempted to recover his dominion. he was reduced, however, to sue for peace, and Henry the sixth, who had now heard of the death of his father, and that of William of Sicily, marched into Italy to be crowned by the pope, and then take possession of Sicily. But in the last of these purposes he was frustrated, and on his return to Germany he made his brother Conrad duke of Suabia, and at Coblenz built an house for the knights of the Teutonic order.* Feeling himself, however, very firmly established in the empire, Henry determined to render it hereditary in his House, and obtained from an assembly of the princes a law, that for the prevention of the disturbances attending elections, the crown should be hereditary, and devolve to heirs male or female. Admirable were the patience and perseverance with which this emperour applied himself to the administration of justice. His knowledge of this, however, was not sufficient to keep Henry the Lion from seizing Holstein, and refusing to restore it to the right owner, Adolphus the duke ; and therefore the latter having obtained sufficient assistance expelled him from thence, and, making himself master of Staden and Lubec, received from the emperour the investiture of them, and some other places conquered from his adversary. At this time occurred the

* This Order arose among a number of German gentlemen, who, after the decease of the emperour Frederick the first, performed in Palæstine such gallant exploits, that Henry king of Jerusalem formed them into an order of knighthood, under the title of St. George, but they afterwards assumed the name, and took for their patroness the holy Virgin, who had been already chosen such for an hospital erected on Mount Zion for the benefit of German pilgrims. Their statutes, which were on the same plan as those of the Knights Templars and of St. John, formed an order partly military, partly charitable ; pope Celestin confirmed to them the gift of the German hospital on Mount Zion, and granted them the same privileges as the Knights of St. John ; ordaining that their habit should be white, with a black cross upon it ; and that they should bear the same cross upon a white banner, and wear it on their achievements and armour, living according to the rule of St. Augustin : Philip, king of France, allowed them to wear a fleur-de-lys at the extremities of the cross. These knights, after having been expelled from the holy land, subdued Prussia, Pomelia, and a part of Pomerania, which they lost again, after Albert of Brandenburg, their grand-master, renounced the errors of the papacy.

seizure of Richard the first of England by Leopold, duke of Austria, and his transfer of the royal captive to the emperor, as has been already related. The dukedom of Bohemia becoming vacant by the death of Conrad de Znaim, who had succeeded Frederick, after some contest between two other candidates, the states of the country elected Henry, bishop of Prague, who was confirmed by the emperor. After endeavouring to excite fresh troubles in Saxony, that restless prince, Henry the Lion, was at length reconciled to the emperor, but did not long survive to prove the sincerity of his professions of future tranquillity. The next achievement of the emperor Henry was his conquest of the two Sicilies; while he was employed on which, the empress, though near fifty, was delivered of a son, who was christened Frederick. After his return to Germany, he got his son, though yet in the cradle, elected king of the Romans; after which, on the solicitation of the pope's legate, Henry at a general diet so pressed the assembly to embark in another crusade, that such a multitude of soldiers offered themselves from all the provinces of the empire, as to form three large armies; one of which marching through Hungary was joined by Margaret, queen-dowager of that country, who ended her days in Palæstine. A second embarked from Lower Saxony, and the emperor himself led a third into Italy, where his severities increased the revolts, and even his own queen united against him with the inhabitants of Sicily, so that he was obliged to submit to a disadvantageous treaty; soon after the conclusion of which he died, in the seventh year of his reign. After the death of Henry, by the pious exertions of his holiness pope Innocent the third, in absolving some of the princes of the empire from the oath they had taken to the infant Frederick, Germany was divided between two, Philip, the brother of the late emperor, who by his will was directed to assume the administration of the government during the minority of his nephew, and Otho, duke of Saxony, who was chosen by a party of the princes, instigated to that work by pope Innocent, who most shamelessly excommunicated Philip and all his adherents. Thus was excited a civil war, which raged to the end of this century; and in the last year of which the empress Constance died in Sicily, having previously had her infant son

A. D. 1197.

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Poland
during the
12th century.

A. D. 1103.

crowned king of that island, having obtained the pope's consent, raised a large sum of money.

The civil war which had arisen between Uladislaus, king of Poland, and his own sons, being ended by the interposition of the archbishop of Gnesna, Boleslaus, the king's legitimate son, in a few weeks over-ran Prussia and Pomerania, and returned home laden with spoils, previous to the decease of his father, who died in the fifty-ninth year of his age. This monarch, with the consent of the states, divided his dominions equally between Boleslaus his only legitimate, and a natural son, named Sbigneus. The unprincipled ambition of the last quickly gave rise to civil wars, which at length terminated in his own just destruction. The alliance of Boleslaus with the king of Hungary next brought on him the arms of the emperor Henry the fourth; and here he was again successful, driving that powerful monarch out of Poland. But at the latter end of his reign his success forsook him; and being implicated in a war with the Russians, he was by a stratagem so defeated, that his grief for a check so severe is supposed to have accelerated his death, which took place after he had reigned six and thirty years. Though Boleslaus the third had divided his territories equally among his four eldest sons, leaving his youngest, Casimir, yet in the cradle, unprovided for, the states having raised Uladislaus, the eldest, to the ducal throne, restrained the others from forming alliances without his authority. The harmony between the brothers was soon disturbed by Uladislaus, who, excited by his ambitious wife, attacked the territories of two of the others, but, though at first successful, he was afterwards defeated, driven out of Poland, and deposed. In his room Boleslaus his brother was elected duke, who generously gave the deposed Uladislaus the province of Silesia. This ungrateful prince, however, solicited the assistance of the emperor Conrad to reinstate him; but the able resistance of Boleslaus defeated all that prince's efforts: after the cessation of which, Poland enjoyed some years of profound tranquillity, which was at length interrupted by an invasion which the emperor Frederick Barbarossa was persuaded to make by Uladislaus and his wife, but which ended in the ruin of the imperial army, and a treaty between the emperor and the Poles.

After this, Boleslaus undertook to force Christianity on the Prussians; but when he seemed to have succeeded, his new converts relapsed, and the Polish army was attacked at a disadvantage, defeated, and dispersed; duke Henry being killed on the field, and his brothers Boleslaus and Mieczlaus escaping with great difficulty. After this, Uladislaus being dead, to terminate the broils excited by his children, a new division was made of Silesia, and the last years of Boleslaus the fourth were passed in peace. He was succeeded in the ducal throne by his brother Mieczlaus the third, who, far from justifying the choice which raised him to the sovereignty, proved a most oppressive, cruel, and remorseless tyrant; whence conspiracies being formed, he was at length formally deposed. For him was substituted Casimir, who obtained the surname of the Just, as his conduct shewed on account of the sagacity he displayed in his youth, and the equity of the Old. It was long ere Casimir could be prevailed on to accept the ducal dignity; but, when once enthroned, he soon gained to him Lower Poland and Pomerania, which adhered to his person, to acknowledge him. Being firmly established in the sovereignty, he ratified the choice of the states by the excellence of his government. Through his exertions the peasants were rescued from the oppression of the nobles; and that without any blood being shed in the contest. Yet some of the nobility, irritated by this retrenchment of their power and emoluments, became partizans of Mieczlaus; and the commander Casimir, finding the states would not listen to his proposal for restoring his brother, connived at the arts practised to effect a revolution in his favour. But this worthless prince so conducted himself, that Casimir was obliged to take arms against him, and reduce him to the possession of some places in Lower Poland. But a war with Russia quickly calling Casimir from home, this new opportunity for attempting the restoration of Mieczlaus was seized by some of the Polish nobility, but, through the unexpected return of Casimir, all their projects were frustrated, and his clemency again shone brightly. The last achievement of Casimir was the conquest of Russia, effected more by his reputation than his arms: soon after his return from which he died at Cracow. After much opposition and great hesitation, Lechus, the son of Casimir, was chosen to suc-

CHAPTER
VI.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

ceed his father, when Mieczlaus the Old having formed alliances, raised an army, after one destructive but indecisive battle presented on the mother of the prince, by arguments calculated to impress a feeble mind, to come to an accommodation with him, on condition that he should adopt her two sons, Lechus and Conrad, give them one province for their present support, and declare them his heirs; and with the restoration of this crafty and worthless prince most amply closed the history of Poland for the twelfth century.

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
12th century.

Few are the anecdotes of Russia during the twelfth century, when foreign nations did not disturb that country, its own sovereigns were perpetually raising internal commotions. One of these, Wladimir the second, nephew to Izaslaw, is said to have possessed himself of the greatest part of that region, and caused himself to be declared sole monarch of it. His son Wsewold the second, to whom he transferred all his power, plunged the state afresh into the most cruel disorders by dividing his dominions among his children, while this tempted the Tartars to make incursions into the country. Towards the middle of the century commenced mutual enterprizes of the Russians and Poles against each other, nor did such cease until the end of it; though the accounts of these, given in the separate histories of the two countries, agree so little, that it seems by no means worth while to detain the reader with a more specifick detail of them.

CHAPTER VII.

The History of Europe during the thirteenth Century.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in the Greek
empire during
the thirteenth
century.

ALEXIUS ANGELUS being raised to the throne of Constantinople by the deposition of his brother Isaac, abandoned himself to the same vices for which he pretended to have removed him; while the Scythians on the one hand, and the Turks on the other, laid waste whole provinces, and took several important places. When he thought himself firmly settled on the throne, he set Isaac at liberty, and began to treat his son Alexius as his own: but these things soothed not the resentment of Isaac; who opening a correspondence with his daughter Irene, married to Philip, emperor of Germany, and the young Alexius escaping to that prince, through him a treaty was at length brought about with the French and Venetians, who undertook with an army which they had in Dalmatia ready to march against the Turks to establish the young Alexius on the imperial throne. To accomplish this proved no very difficult matter; after a siege of about a fortnight Alexius Angelus was compelled to retreat from Constantinople, Isaac was by the people saluted anew with the title of emperor, and the young prince invited to share the empire with him. This proposal the confederates gladly accepted; on Isaac's ratifying the treaty with them which his son had made, the young Alexius was solemnly crowned, and, all further attacks from his uncle being obviated, on the death of Isaac, which soon occurred, became sole master of the empire. But short was the time he enjoyed that dignity, since John Ducas, surnamed Murt-

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1204.

zuphlus, by a course of treachery, after having gained his confidence, first involved him in hostilities with the Latins, and then, having prejudiced the people against him, murdered him with his own hands, and contrived to get himself declared emperor. These transactions were no sooner made known to the princes of the crusade, than they determined to revenge the death of Alexius on the usurper, and seize the Greek empire for themselves; a resolution which they quickly executed by marching to Constantinople, and taking it after a short siege, when Ducas made his escape in the night. The Latins chose Baldwin, earl of Flanders, for the sovereign of the empire which they had seized, and allotted to him the country of Thrace with its metropolis, and a limited authority over other provinces taken from the Greeks. But Thessaly they erected into a kingdom for Boniface, marquis of Montserrat. The Venetians obtained the islands of the Archipelago, part of Peloponnesus, and several cities on the Hellespont. Yet Theodorus Lascaris, the son-in-law of Angelus, having escaped from Constantinople into Bythynia, was joyfully received by the inhabitants, when taking possession not of that country only, but of all the coast of Asia Minor, from the Mæander to the Euxine Sea, he assumed the title of emperor, and fixed his throne in the city of Nice. At the same time David and Alexius Comnenus, grand-children of the late tyrant Andronicus, seizing on Pontus, Galatia, and Cappadocia, erected a new empire at Trapezond, or Trebizond; over which their posterity reigned until the time of Mahomet the Great. And besides these five larger portions of it, several principalities were erected on the ruins of the Constantinopolitan empire. Baldwin, however, had not with the rest of Thrace reduced the city of Adrianople; but while besieging it, was himself taken prisoner by the Bulgarians, and by order of their king put to a most cruel death. Alexius Angelus in the mean time came out of his concealment in Greece, and passing over into Asia prevailed on the sultan of Iconium to attack in his behalf Theodorus Lascaris, who by his personal prowess forced the Turks to a peace on his own terms; but was, on the other hand, after a war of several years, obliged to acknowledge the authority of Henry, brother to the emperor Baldwin, and his successor, on the

throne of Constantinople. This last prince then turned his arms against the Bulgarians, whom he expelled from Thrace ; but could not recover the provinces of Ætolia and Epirus from Michael Angelus, a prince of the Greek imperial family, who, on Constantinople being taken by the Latins, caused himself to be acknowledged despot of that country. Henry after a reign of ten years died at Thessalonica. He was succeeded by Peter, count of Auxerre, who had married his sister, and signalized himself on several occasions. This prince having been solemnly crowned by the pope on his way from France to Constantinople, laid siege to Dyrrachium, which had been taken by Theodorus, the brother of the above-mentioned Michael, who had succeeded to his dominions ; but was obliged to desist from the enterprize, and was soon after treacherously put to death by Theodorus. On this, his eldest son having declined it, his second, Robert, was with difficulty prevailed on to accept the imperial dignity : in the third year of whose reign Theodorus Lascaris dying, left his empire to John Ducas, surnamed Vataces, the husband of his eldest daughter. But with this man the brothers of the deceased obtained assistance from the Latin emperor Robert to dispute the succession. The Latin army, however, was defeated, and John, encouraged by his success, tried his fortune by sea, too, and reduced most of the islands in the Archipelago ; and then, being strengthened by an alliance with the king of Bulgaria, and having prolonged the truce with the sultan of Iconium, he made himself master of all the places which the Latins held in the Bosphorus and Hellespont. In the mean time Theodorus, despot of Epirus, reduced under his power Thessaly and Epirus, and caused himself to be crowned emperor by the patriarch of Bulgaria ; but invading Bulgaria in breach of treaty, was defeated, taken prisoner, and had his eyes pulled out. Not long after this died the Latin emperor Robert. Being succeeded by Baldwin the second, either his brother or his son, but eight years old, John of Brienne, formerly king of Jerusalem, was appointed regent, and early in his administration defeated the united forces of the Bulgarians and the emperor of Nice, who had laid siege to Constantinople. This he repeated the next year : and a third attempt of the said enemies was frustrated by a fleet of the Venetians : soon after

A. D. 1216.

A. D. 1222.

A. D. 1229.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1255.

A. D. 1259.

this the regent died ; but a disagreement between their enemies preserved the Latins, until the emperor being arrived at maturity made an alliance with the Comneni, who reigned at Trapezond. Yet John Ducas proved superior to them both ; and besides extending his conquests far in Asia, he carried them in Europe almost to the very gates of Constantinople. This conqueror died after a reign of three-and-thirty years : his son, Theodorus Lascaris, succeeded him ; who, after a successful though short reign, left his throne to his son, John Lascaris, then but nine years old. The nobility, angry at the emperor's committing the guardianship of his son to Muzalo, a man of mean descent, though of very high character, though they had by oath bound themselves to obey him, did on the day of the obsequies of the emperor assassinate him, and paying no regard to the patriarch, who had been joined with him in the care of the prince, declared Michael Palæologus, an officer of great courage and experience in war, guardian to the prince, and protector of the empire. On the news of the first victory gained after his exaltation, the nobility and populace saluted him emperor, and, on his binding himself by a solemn oath to resign the empire when the young prince should come of age, the credulous patriarch placed the crown on his head. Thus in possession of the empire, Michael, in the second year of his reign, by his general Alexius Strategopulus, recovered Constantinople from the Latins, compelling Baldwin the second to flee into Italy. After removing his court to this city, he endeavoured to restore its population by recalling the Greek families which had left it, and prevailing on the Latins, who were there, not to remove. For this purpose he granted great privileges to the natives of Venice and Pisa settled there ; and though he thought proper to remove the Genoese to the suburb of Galata, he permitted them to be governed by their own laws and magistrates, and to trade free of all customs and taxes. But when he had thus gained the affection of both natives and foreigners, he eclipsed his glory by the foul crime of depriving the young prince, John Lascaris, of his sight ; and from henceforth his days afforded a scene of trouble. Excommunicated by the patriarch, defeated by the Bulgarians, attacked by the Venetians and the king of Sicily, he attempted to

bring about an union of the Eastern and Western Churches, and acknowledged the supremacy of the bishop of Rome. This occasioned fresh disturbances, and led him to the commission of new cruelties ; while another pope excommunicated him for having contributed to the massacre of the French in the Italian Vespers : at length, worn down with care, he died, after a reign of very nearly twenty-four years. To him succeeded his son Andronicus Palæologus, who, by annulling whatever his father had done towards an union of the churches, excited such animosities as to throw the whole empire into a ferment. To add to this, being jealous of his brother Constantine, who on account of his victories over the Turks was the darling of the people, he ordered him to be thrown into prison. The Turks seized this opportunity of reducing several places in Phrygia, Caria, and Bithynia, and among the rest the city of Nice, being led by the celebrated Othoman or Othman :* one of the imperial generals sent against whom revolted, and assumed the purple ; but was taken by the other, and deprived of his eyes. These dissensions enabled the Turks to extend their dominions not only by conquests in Asia, but by subduing most of the islands in the Mediterranean. The rest of the century passed in contests with this persevering enemy, sometimes victorious, sometimes beaten, but never so vanquished as not to renew the war.

In the first year of this century, Innocent the third acknowledged the emperor Otho, and offered to absolve the nobles of the empire from all obligations under which they might be to Philip, and by his legate excommunicated the latter, and all that opposed Otho. Nor while attentive to affairs in Germany did he omit to promote a new crusade, appointing two of the cardinals to take the cross for an example. Some tumults in Rome, the next year, compelled the pope

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1283.

Transactions.
in Italy
during the
13th century.

* By this family the second woe predicted in Rev. ix. 13, &c. was accomplished, and the four angels, or ministers of the Divine decrees, which had hitherto been kept about the Euphrates, being loosed, began those conquests on corrupted Christendom which were at length carried into Europe, and the whole curse of which is not yet removed, neither, indeed, has it had its due effect in bringing the offenders to repentance.

CHAPTER
 VII.
 SEVENTH
 PERIOD.

to retire to Anagni, where he received from the king and primate of Armenia an embassy, by which, while his assistance was requested against the count of Tripoli, the king requested that none but the pope might have the power of excommunicating him or his kingdom; and the primate desired the pall, ring, and mitre. A similar embassy arrived from Bulgaria, and numerous were the other instances of the most abject submission to the see of Rome, given by various and far removed nations; while the presumptuous and impious assumptions of the pope now boldly presented themselves. Diopoldus, who commanded the Germans in Apulia, meeting with success, the pope absolved him and his followers from the sentence of excommunication, but obliged the Apulians and Sicilians to take the oath of allegiance to the Apostolick see. Philip, emperor of Germany, having obliged his rival Otho to take refuge in England, Innocent, on the representations of a numerous embassy which he sent, consented to absolve him, on a condition highly to the advantage of the temporal interest of his holiness: but Philip so managed his negotiations, as to obtain from the legates publick absolution, without any regard to the pope's interested proposal. It was in the time of this tyrannical pontiff that Peter de Castro Novo, a Cistercian monk, together with Arnold, an abbot, and friar Radulphus, erected the tribunal of Inquisition, by which they hoped to conquer the resolution of those who continued unmoved by their preaching. After the murder of the emperor Philip, Otho being elected as his successor, was very liberal in his concessions to the pope, who had so stedfastly adhered to him in his adversity; and the letter in which he promised those concessions was signed by the bishop of Spire, and sealed with the golden bull: soon after which, on his arrival in Italy, Otho received at Milan the iron crown from the archbishop of that city, and at Rome that of the Western empire from the pope. But here a tumult took place, in which a thousand Germans were killed; when the emperor left the city, and being informed that several fiefs of the empire had been seized by the Church of Rome during the troubles in Germany, he sent some troops into Campania to recover the usurped territories, and retook several cities in Tuscany that were garrisoned by his holiness's soldiers. During these transactions

Innocent had published a bull in France, with the offer of plenary indulgences to all those who should undertake a crusade against the Waldenses;* and in consequence of it fifty thousand men, led by the archbishop of Sens, and several other bishops and many nobles, marched against the city of Beziers, where they put all the inhabitants, amounting to sixty thousand, to the sword, and then pursued the war in other places. The emperour Otho continuing in Italy, seized on the territories of the Church in Tuscany and Romaniola; and at length the pope pronounced against him a sentence of excommunication and deposition, to which Otho paid no regard. Nor did his receipt of this contemptuous treatment from one prevent the arrogant pontiff from dealing his rebukes, censures, and commands, to other princes far and near: and at length he opened the celebrated council of the Lateran, in which were present twelve hundred and fifteen prelates, besides the ambassadors of various kingdoms and states. And here, to demonstrate that general councils may err, the doctrine of the transubstantiation of the elements in the Eucharist was admitted. At this council were present the founders of the two celebrated orders, which have done so much for the establishment of the papal power, Francis and Dominic, the former a native of the Ecclesiastical state, the latter born in Spain: they came to apply for a confirmation of the orders they had recently instituted.† Next year, the inhabitants of Milan refusing to forsake the part of Otho, their city was laid under an interdict: but, only exasperated at this, they made an irruption into the territory of Pavia; and, quickly after, Innocent died: two days after which the cardinals present A. D. 1216.

* These were a sect of Christians, which seems to have arisen in the vallies of Piedmont, of very strict lives, and, a little extravagance excepted, of sound doctrine. But their testimony against the corruption and apostacy of the Church of Rome drew on them the persecuting and vengefull arm of that Church. Some writers appear to have not sufficiently distinguished between these and a very different sect, the Albigenses, who were some of the remains of the ancient Paulicians; themselves, it should appear, a branch of the Gnosticks.

† In Rev. xiii. 11, the reader may see the emblem of the monastick orders, and a most accurate prediction of the manner in which they have supported and extended the influence of the bishop of Rome.

• CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

elected Cencius Labellus, a Roman, and cardinal-priest ; who took the name of Honorius the third. This pontiff scrupled not to intermeddle, by his pretended spiritual authority, in any dispute he thought proper ; like his predecessor, making Rome the court of appeal for the world. Yet he absolved the inhabitants of Milan from their excommunication, and brought about an accommodation between the cities at war. Otho being dead, the emperor Frederick, having settled the affairs of Germany, came into Italy, and was with his empress crowned by the pope at Rome. After leaving that city the emperor held a general assembly of the states of the kingdom of Naples at Capua, and passing over into Sicily held one of the states of that island, of which also he was king, at Messina. Some difference arising between the emperor and the pope, in which they mutually criminated each other, after two conferences the emperor, having engaged to go to the holy land, gave orders for preparing a large fleet in the ports of Sicily. At the end of two years, however, Frederick prevailed to have the expedition deferred for two years more. The king of Jerusalem, whose daughter the emperor had married, being compelled by his son-in-law to resign his title in his favour, the pope conferred on him the government of the territories of the Church, from Viterbo to Monte Fiascone. Soon after, Honorius being requested by Frederick to mediate between him and the associated cities of Lombardy, concluded an accommodation between them ; and, shortly after, died himself at Rome. Hugolin, cardinal-bishop of Ostia, was chosen to succeed him ; and taking the name of Gregory the ninth, he by excommunication and menaces at length compelled the emperor to proceed to the holy land ; yet this being done ere his reconciliation to the Roman see, the virulent pontiff appealed to temporal arms, sent his troops to attack the kingdom of Naples, and, by his efforts to excite a general revolt, involved all Italy in a civil war ; not only the inhabitants of the same city, but even the individuals of the same family, being divided between the two factions of the pope and the emperor ; the former denominated Guelphs, and the latter, Gibelines : the mutual hatred of which descending for many generations from father to son, occasioned much bloodshed to both parties, long after they had ceased to recol-

A. D. 1226.

lect the original cause of their animosity. Advices of the pope's successfull invasion of his territories, having induced the emperor to conclude with the Saracens a truce for ten years, he returned to Italy, and quickly recovered Apulia and Campania; and, after some time spent in negociations, a peace was concluded between him and the pope; when the last was invited to return to Rome, whence he had been driven by the opposite party. Still the animosity between the factions continued very violent, especially in Lombardy; and another great sedition made Gregory think it prudent to retire again from the metropolis. Though, after this, the pope, by means of the influence which the Franciscan and Dominican friars had acquired over the people, reconciled some of the dissensions, yet new ones continued to arise. Gregory was engaged in hostilities with the Romans, and the cities of Lombardy renewed their animosities. In the mean time, of the Dominican friars were established inquisitors in various kingdoms, and the persecution of all who differed from the Church of Rome was carried on relentlessly. The associated cities of Lombardy not accepting the pope's mediation with the emperor, this last entered Italy, and defeated with great slaughter the army of the former. Frederick having, too, reduced nearly all the cities of Lombardy, and refused the conditions of submission offered by the inhabitants of Milan, Gregory, dreading this growth of the imperial power, attached himself to the interest of the confederates; and the Latin emperor Baldwin purposing to march to Constantinople with sixty thousand men, his holiness granted him an indulgence, that if he should be forced, in the countries through which he passed, to swear any thing to the prejudice of the empire of Constantinople, his oath should not be binding. On the other hand, he excommunicated the German emperor for having made his natural son Henry king of Sardinia, and having subjected ecclesiasticks guilty of capital crimes to the judgment of the temporal courts. This sentence the pope supported by an alliance with the confederate cities, and the republicks of Venice and Genoa, and his legate in Lombardy even compelled the clergy to enlist. These measures the emperor retaliated by a severe prosecution of the war; during the raging of which, the enormities of Gregory were at length stopped

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1241.

by death. After a vacancy of thirty days, the Roman see was filled up with cardinal Geofry, who assumed the name of Celestine the fourth, but lived only to the eighteenth day after his election. Through the disagreement of the cardinals concerning a successor, the papal throne now continued vacant twenty months, nor were hostilities suspended for any length of time ; at last, by ravaging the territories of the college, the emperour compelled the cardinals to proceed to an election, and they chose cardinal Sinigald, a Genoese, who took the name of Innocent the fourth. After some fruitless negotiations for peace, this new prelate found it necessary from the imperial preponderance near Rome to retire, and he accordingly left Italy, and retreated to Lyons ; where he created twelve new cardinals, and granted them the privilege of wearing a red hat. He afterwards assembled in that city a general council, in which a sentence of excommunication and deposition was pronounced against the emperour ; in consequence of which several princes of Germany, on the exhortation of his holiness, elected for emperour, Henry, landgrave of Thuringia. After this, Innocent ordered a crusade to be preached against the emperour ; and endeavoured to excite a rebellion against him in Sicily. The pope's faction in Italy drawing courage from these measures, a conspiracy was formed to assassinate the emperour ; who, on the other hand, hired several assassins to murder Innocent ; while the continuance of their quarrel rendered the country a scene of misery and desolation. The emperour's tenders of negociation were rejected by the pope, and a considerable advantage gained over the former by the garrison of Parma ; and his son, the king of Sardinia, was taken prisoner ; while preparing to rescue whom, he was seized by the illness of which he died. Being informed of the death of Frederick, the pope immediately excommunicated his son Conrad, the king of the Romans, and all his adherents, assuming authority to confirm the empire to William, count of Holland, chosen by some of the princes on the decease of Henry, landgrave of Thuringia ; after which he returned to Italy. In the mean time Conrad, king of the Romans, led an army into that country to take possession of his hereditary dominions : but of these his holiness offered Naples and Sicily, first to the brother of the king of England,

and then to that of the king of France. Hereticks, or reputed hereticks, becoming very numerous in Lombardy, Innocent appointed a Dominican friar to act as inquisitor against them; who executed his commission with such severity, in putting several of them to death, that he himself was murdered; for which suffering, Innocent rewarded him with canonization. At length, on the invitation of the Romans, the pope returned to their city; where, after rejecting some offers of peace made by Conrad, he excommunicated him: soon after which that prince died, leaving an infant son, named Conradin. Neither did Innocent long survive him; dying at Naples of a disorder, increased by advice of his army being defeated by Manfred, the brother of Conrad. The cardinals at Naples being obliged by the prætor to proceed to an election, chose the bishop of Ostia, who took the name of Alexander the fourth. The war in Italy continued during his pontificate, in spite of his efforts to put an end to it; and he died at Viterbo when intent on reconciling the Venetians and Genoese.* After three months dispute, the cardinals elected for his successor Peter Pantaleo, patriarch of Jerusalem, who assumed the name of Urban the fourth. This prelate filled the see but little more than four years, in which he manifested the same aversion to the House of Suabia as his predecessors, and took on him to confer, on certain conditions, the crown of Sicily on Charles, count of Anjou, and brother to the king of France, called St. Lewis. On the decease of Urban, the Roman see continued vacant more than four months; and at length cardinal Guido was chosen, and took the name of Clement the fourth. He immediately confirmed his predecessor's treaty with the count of Anjou; and on his repairing to Rome and swearing to fulfill the conditions, he gave him the investiture of

A. D. 1254.

A. D. 1261.

A. D. 1265.

* During his pontificate appeared the sect of the Flagellants, a band of enthusiasts, excited by one Rainerius, an hermit of Perugia, who warned his hearers so successfully to have recourse to penance, that both males and females, of every age and condition, immediately stript themselves to the waist, and went in procession through the streets, scourging themselves severely, and calling on the Virgin Mary to intercede with her Son to grant them mercy. In a short time this became so favourite an amusement, that there was scarcely a city in Italy where there were not a great many of these devotees.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1269.

Sicily and Naples, and afterwards, on his having done homage for the fiefs in the Church of St. Peter, he and his wife Beatrice were crowned king and queen of both the Sicilies : which ceremony over, Charles marched into Apulia, and defeated Manfred in a battle, in which this last fell. The Gibelines then invited Conradin into Italy ; while the pope forbad all persons to assist him, under pain of excommunication. Still the Gibeline faction were active and powerful ; Conradin came into Italy, and the pope thundered excommunication against him. But more effectual were the operations of the count of Anjou, who defeated and took him prisoner, and then most unwarrantably had him and some of the chief of his friends executed as criminals. Soon after this Clement fell sick at Viterbo, and died without having been at Rome during his pontificate. The disputes among the cardinals kept the see vacant two years and nine months, during which time Italy was harassed with the mutual hostilities of the various states that had assumed independence in it. At length the cardinals elected for bishop of Rome Theald or Thibaut, archdeacon of Liege, who took the name of Gregory the tenth. The first step of this prelate after his consecration was the appointment of a general council, to be assembled within two years, and which was accordingly assembled at Lyons to the number of five hundred bishops, besides abbots, and other dignified ecclesiastics. The most remarkable particulars which passed in which were, the ambassadors of the Greek emperor consenting to allow the supremacy of the Roman see ; and the ordaining that thenceforth, on the election of a pope, the cardinals should be shut up in the conclave, and allowed only one dish of simple victuals, until the election was made. And Clement in a consistory of cardinals and German prelates confirmed the election of Rodolphus, count of Hapsburg, for emperor of Germany. Gregory having left Lyons, and in some months arrived at Milan, proceeding from thence to Arezzo, there died. Ten days after his decease the cardinals elected the bishop of Ostia, who took the name of Innocent the fifth : his pontificate lasted not quite six months ; and he was succeeded by Ottoboni, who assumed the name of Adrian the fifth, and died on the thirty-seventh day of his pontificate. In his room was chosen the cardinal-bishop

A. D. 1276.

A. D. 1276.

A. D. 1276.

A. D. 1277.

of Tusculum, who took the name of John the twenty-second, but enjoyed his dignity little more than eight months, being killed by the fall of a roof of a chamber at Viterbo. In the mean time the factions at Milan continued their civil war, but that of the Visconti proving superior, Otho, the archbishop, was declared both spiritual and temporal sovereign of Milan. Though the cardinals were now reduced to seven, they were six months ere they could determine on a successor for John. At length John Caistan, cardinal-archdeacon, was elected, and assumed the name of Nicholas the third. The characteristick of this prelate seems to have been ambition: he obtained from the emperor Rodolphus the ratification of the articles before agreed on, by which were ceded to the see of Rome all the lands granted by the emperours to it since the time of Lewis the Debonaire, with many fiefs. Yet in reality Rodolphus only yielded the right of receiving homage from subjects who had contested it for an hundred years, and who, in submitting to the pope, reserved such privileges as rendered them almost independent. He reconciled the emperor and Charles, king of Sicily; yet engaged in a conspiracy with the Sicilians against the last: but, ere their plot could be executed, Nicholas died of an apoplexy. After some disturbances without, and some contests within the conclave, Simon de Brio, a Frenchman, and cardinal of the titles of St. Cecilia, was chosen pope, and assumed the name of Martin the fourth. The senatorial dignity being given him by the Romans immediately after his election, he appointed the king of Sicily as his deputy, and afterwards granted them a power of annually choosing two senators from among themselves to govern the city. In the course of the subsequent year the Sicilians revolted from Charles, and, on ringing of the bells for vespers, surprised and massacred all the French on the island, not sparing even their own countrywomen, suspected of being pregnant by Frenchmen. Excommunication and an interdict not unjustly followed this nefarious transaction. But the same penalties were not with equal justice inflicted on the king of Arragon and his kingdom, for attempting to take possession of Sicily in right of his wife. In the contest for this island Charles the Lamé, eldest son of the king of Naples, was defeated at sea, and carried captive into Sicily: a few

A. D. 1280.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1285.

months after which Charles himself died ; nor did the pope survive him many weeks. Four days after the death of Martin, James Sabellus, cardinal-deacon of the title of St. Mary, was elected pope, taking the name of Honorius the fourth. The spirit with which this prelate meant to act was soon manifested, when Peter, king of Arragon, dying, he excommunicated both his sons. He solicited the emperor Rodolphus to come and receive the imperial crown at Rome ; but the latter sent his chancellor, by whom, on their paying certain sums of money, he confirmed the liberties of the cities of Florence, Genoa, Bologna, and Lucca ; while others asserted their own independency without purchase. Though this accommodation was not considered as absolutely separating those cities from the empire, yet from this period is dated the commencement of Italian independence and liberty. This measure, as tending to strengthen the authority of the see, was highly pleasing to Honorius ; who, however, did not

A. D. 1287.

long enjoy the gratification, dying the next year at Rome. Cardinal Jerom, bishop of Pilastrina, being chosen to succeed him, took the name of Nicolas the fourth. By his exertions Charles the Lamé was set at liberty by the king of Arragon ; and Nicolas afterwards crowned him king of Naples and Sicily, annulling all the covenants he had made with the king of Arragon as prejudicial to the rights of the Roman see. The next year he created Roderick, a Franciscan, archbishop of Morocco, and appointed him apostolick legate in all Africa. This pope lived to hear of the total expulsion of the Christians from Syria, and died at Rome. After contests among the

A. D. 1292.

cardinals had delayed the election for more than two years, their choice fell on Peter di Murro, an hermit near Sulmo, who took the name of Celestine the fifth ; but whose simplicity and ignorance soon rendered his abdication necessary, which he willingly performed : ten days after which, cardinal Benedict, of the family of the Cajetans, was elected, and assumed the name of Boniface the fourth. On his consecration the kings of Sicily and Hungary walked, when he returned from the Church, on each side of his horse, holding the bridle. Fearing his enemies might oblige his predecessor to resume the papal dignity, he seized the innocent hermit, and confined him during his life. The king of Arragon having consented to cede

Sicily to the king of Naples, the inhabitants, unwilling to fall again under the government of the French, immediately chose Frederick, the brother of the king of Arragon, for their monarch. Two cardinals of the family of Colonna having opposed his election, and since published some libels against him, the pope took an opportunity their conduct afforded him to formally depose them, in a council called for that purpose; and afterwards ordered a crusade against them and their adherents as schismatics. Strange as such titles may appear to those who read the Gospel, Boniface having appointed James, king of Arragon, standard-bearer, general, and admiral of the Church, he crowned him king of Corsica and Sardinia, granting him those two islands as fiefs of the see of Rome, under a tribute and certain military services. The arrogant behaviour of this pontiff to the cotemporary sovereigns of Europe, could only be surpassed by his impious presumption, in the method he took to celebrate the conclusion of the century, by publishing a plenary remission of sins to all penitents, who should visit the Churches of the Apostles Peter and Paul for fifteen days: in consequence of which such multitudes of superstitious persons flocked to Rome, that, during the greater part of that year, there were reckoned no less than two hundred thousand strangers in the city. With another freak of this pretended Vicar of the Lord, the history of the thirteenth century in Italy may be closed: being desired by the emperor Albert to confirm his election, he would not hear the ambassadors, but appearing in publick with a sword by his side, and dressed like a general, he affirmed, that he himself was both emperor and pope. Throughout this century, indeed, the predicted arrogance of the bishop of Rome was most strongly manifested in the most perfect accordance with the emblems detailed in the seventh chapter of the prophet Daniel. He appeared as a temporal power, though a small one, (a little horn); vigilantly inspecting the conduct of all the other powers of Christendom (having eyes like a man); and thundering out his censures and menaces against all who paid him not the most obsequious obedience, (having a mouth speaking great things). The submission proffered and paid to him from all parts was such as to be most worthy of remark; and power appeared to be given him over all kindreds, and tongues, and nations.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in France
during the
13th century.

While the two-horned beast of the Revelation, the monastick orders, most accurately executed what was prophesied of them ; by causing men to pay worship to the pope, and particularly by the introduction of the Inquisition, did they deprive of the common privileges of society all who would not acknowledge themselves within the pale of his jurisdiction ; while the repugnance between the doctrines promulgated from Rome and those of the Gospel signally marked the age of apostacy.

At the commencement of this century Philip, king of France, gladly listening to the complaints brought to him against the English monarch as duke of Normandy, first excited against him his nephew Arthur, who being taken and murdered, he acted against him with all the forms of the law, and then proceeded with an army to execute the sentence of it, taking from him the whole duchy of Normandy ; and when at length John began to appear in defence of his remaining territories, a truce for two years was concluded between the monarchs. Philip was now so intent on his plan for extending his power at home, and humbling the great vassals of his crown, that he connived at all the ravages committed in the south of France by the army of crusaders led by the authority of the pope against the Albigenes, first by Eudes, duke of Burgundy, and then by Simon de Montfort. But the excommunication of John, and the impudent offer made by the bishop of Rome of his kingdom to any one who would seize it, tempted Philip to prepare for the conquest of England. But in this project he was foiled by the measures of the English monarch, in forming against him a very powerfull conspiracy ; over the allied army of which, however, Philip obtained a complete victory near the village of Bouvines in Flanders. After returning in triumph to Paris, he directed his arms against the dominions of John ; but, by the interposition of the pope's legate, a truce was concluded between these two monarchs for five years ; which yet was broken the very next year with the grossest hypocrisy ; Philip pretending to have nothing to do with his son's expedition into England, though he furnished him with an army and fleet. To his pretences, however, the pope seems to have given little credit ; since, for an attack on one who had basely acknowledged himself his vassal, he excom-

municated both Philip and his son. This last being at length foiled in his attempt on the crown of England, and returned home only with disgrace, was, on the expiration of the five years truce, employed by his father to reduce Rochelle; but then the truce was renewed for four years, and Rochelle restored. At the earnest request of the pope, Lewis was then sent against the Albigenses, by whom Simon de Montfort had been slain while besieging Thoulouse. But in this crusade the prince made little progress, and his father thought fit to recall him: immediately after which Philip died of a fever. This monarch had done great things both for the crown and the country of France, and at his death the balance between the former and its vassals preponderated in favour of the crown. He was the first king who took regular troops into his own pay: he encouraged learning by augmenting the privileges of the university of Paris. For the publick utility he made roads, built bridges, and raised edifices; and by re-uniting to the crown Normandy and the other provinces he conquered, he left his kingdom as large again as he received it. His successor, Lewis the eighth, surnamed the Lion, was, at the time of his coronation, called on by an embassy from Henry the third of England to restore, according to the treaty made between them, the dominions which John had possessed. A plausible pretence being found to evade compliance, a war ensued, in which the English monarch was deprived of all his remaining territories in France except the city of Bourdeaux, and the country beyond the Garonne. But these were so firmly defended as to induce Lewis to agree to a truce for three years: after which, pressed by the pope's legate, he renewed his crusade against the Albigenses, and took from them the city of Avignon; but being obliged to defer the siege of Thoulouse to another year, he was in the mean time seized with a distemper, of which he died in a week. Lewis the ninth, his son and successor, was but twelve years old when his father died: his mother Blanch immediately assumed the regency, and caused him to be crowned at Rheims. But the great lords regretting the diminution which their power had suffered, a conspiracy was formed by a number of them to compell the queen to accede to the concessions they demanded; this league, however, she very ably contrived to dissolve. Still the

A. D. 1223.

A. D. 1226.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

malcontents formed another project for seizing the person of the king; but in this, also, they were frustrated: while the queen, having received a large subsidy from the clergy, so powerfully assisted the army of the Church against the Albigenses, that their great supporter, the count of Thoulouse, was reduced to make peace on the hardest terms. He gave his daughter and sole heiress to Alonso, the king's brother, through which all his estates were afterwards annexed to the crown. The queen in the course of her regency gave repeated proofs of both firmness and address, yet was far from escaping censure, and particularly for entrusting the education of her son chiefly to the clergy. The count of Bretagne being perpetually striving to bring over an English army to his assistance, Lewis, now upwards of nineteen, by his mother's advice resolved to attack him with an overwhelming force, and reduced him to make his submission on any terms. The count Champagne, now become king of Navarre in right of his mother, he treated in the same manner. In consequence of the mortification thus received by these potent vassals, they and others determined to retire for a time from a country where they found restless spirits kept under restraint, and all took the cross. As long as they remained abroad, the kingdom enjoyed tranquillity; but on their return, depending on the assistance of the English monarch, they began another civil war, in which, however, Lewis triumphed over them all. After this, being seized with a very severe illness, in which many thought him dead, on his recovery he took the cross; and, after great exertions to induce his nobility to join him, and having taken all the steps he could to secure the tranquillity of his dominions during his own absence, he embarked and sailed to the isle of Cyprus, and the next spring landed in Egypt, where he obtained immediate possession of the rich and well fortified city of Damietta. But this first success contributed only to excite a confidence which led to subsequent defeat; until at length the army, corrupted by want of discipline, and out-numbered by the enemy, was reduced to a poor remainder, which with the king and his brother were compelled to surrender. His captivity, of which the severity was increased by the very harsh usage he received, Lewis bore with great fortitude, and at last terminated it by a treaty of peace with the

Mahometans for ten years ; the king restoring Damietta, and paying a million of pieces of gold for the ransom of the other prisoners ; and with these he safely passed in some Genoese galleys to Aco in Syria. But while he was exerting himself for the general good, affairs in France demanded his presence : the queen-mother had been misled to measures that produced a civil war, and having at the same time been induced to condemn unjustly two persons who had reported falsely, as she conceived, the captivity of her son, she died of a broken heart. Advice of this brought the king to a determination to return ; which, after putting the Christians of Syria in the best posture he could, he did. Here he still wore the cross on his upper garment, and affected the plainness of a private man in his dress and manners. Henry the third of England soon paid him a visit, and by the frankness of his behaviour won much upon him, and the truce between the two crowns was soon renewed. After this Lewis assiduously applied himself to regulate in his kingdom whatever had fallen into disorder during his absence. For a few places which he surrendered to them, he obtained from Henry of England and Edward his son a full renunciation of their claim to Normandy, Anjou, Touraine, Maine, and Poitou : and his own eldest son Lewis dying, he contracted a marriage for the next, Philip, with the princess of Arragon. In the matter of his brother, Charles of Anjou, being made by the pope king of the two Sicilies, Lewis was passive, as not approving of a grant in which there was so little justice. But more decided was the testimony of probity he gave in settling the claims which some of the nobility had upon the crown ; and whose opinion of his equity was such, that they did not object to his being judge in his own cause, since, if the case were doubtful, he decided against himself. He framed a code of laws, bearing the title of the Establishment of St. Lewis : he regulated the policy of the cities and large towns, and introduced lasting regulations among the artificers and tradesmen. Neither were his good offices in promoting peace among his neighbours withholden ; at the establishment of which he seems more particularly to have laboured, with a view to another crusade, which he undertook against the Mahometans of Barbary. But after having made himself master of Carthage, he was taken off by the plague

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1270.

before Tunis: his son Philip immediately assumed the regal title, and being reinforced by the arrival of his uncle the king of Sicily, he not only defeated the king of Tunis more than once, but was able to conclude a treaty, under which Charles and himself were to receive a large sum of money, and the former double tribute for the next fifteen years from the king of Tunis: after which Philip returned to Paris; and, having celebrated his father's funeral and his own coronation, he was, by the contumacy of the count de Foix, involved in hostilities with him, the result of which was the reduction of the count, and such a punishment as prevented the great vassals of the crown from following his example. Henry, king of Navarre, having at his decease left an only daughter, Philip obtained from the pope a dispensation for her marriage with his second son, Lewis, and sent the count of Artois with an army into Navarre for the protection of that kingdom: after which he himself took for a second wife Mary, the daughter of the duke of Brabant. Edward the first of England having done homage to Philip for the lands he held of the crown of France, claimed, under a covenant made with Lewis the ninth, the country of Agenois; and the claim being incontestable was admitted. The pope having excommunicated Pedro, king of Arragon, for contesting Sicily with Charles, and given his dominions to which of Philip's younger sons that monarch pleased to name, the French king declared his son, Charles of Valois, king of Arragon, and supported his nomination by entering Catalonia at the head of an army, and laying siege to Gerona; after the surrender of which, the part of his fleet which he had not discharged was defeated by the Arragonese fleet, through the loss of which the army became greatly distressed for provisions; which reverse of fortune so affected the king, that he was seized with an illness, and died at Perpignan. Philip the fourth, surnamed the Fair, his eldest son, was crowned at Rheims with his consort Joan, queen of Navarre in her own right, by whom, too, he became possessed of the counties of Champagne and Brie. The young monarch found his affairs in a perplexed state, and made an ineffectual attempt at reconciliation with the king of Castile. Edward the first of England having demanded the country of Xaintonge, in pursuance of the treaty between Lewis the

A. D. 1285.

ninth and his father, Philip ordered it to be restored, and the English monarch repaired to Paris, and did homage for his French dominions. At length pope Honorius, who had opposed any agreement between Philip and the king of Arragon, dying, by the mediation of Edward a compromise was accomplished; and the quarrel with Castile having been also adjusted, and the count of Artois having returned from Sicily with most of the French troops that served under him, peace was, in some measure, established on all sides. Hostilities having been committed without authority between some vessels of the two nations of France and England, Philip's arrogant violence in pursuit of satisfaction had nearly involved the two crowns in a war; and afterwards his breach of a covenant concluded, completely did so. This was carried on with vigour on both sides; Edward made powerfull alliances, and Philip contrived to buy off his allies: at length a truce was concluded for two years, and the points on which the kings differed were referred to the mediation of the pope, who had at first offended both monarchs by the haughty terms in which he commanded them to submit their differences to his decision; but as he softened his terms, they consented to accept him for umpire, but the quarrel between the king of France and Boniface, being revived ere all points could be settled, the pope was no more consulted; and the two monarchs entered into a definitive treaty and a defensive alliance, conceived in such terms as caused it to be deemed a league against the pope. But this was not concluded until after the close of the century; here, therefore, must the history of France be suspended.

The first year of the thirteenth century was marked in Spain by the conclusion of a three-years truce between the kings of Castile and Arragon on the one part, and that of Navarre on the other. The firmness of Alonso, king of Leon, in keeping his queen, contrary to the decrees of Innocent the third, brought on his kingdom an interdict from that arrogant prelate, which caused a schism among the Spanish bishops. However, the king of Castile declaring his readiness to receive his daughter again, the king and queen of Leon resolved to separate; and by his holiness, Alonso was once more declared a single man, with two wives living, and six or seven

Occurrences
in Spain
during the
13th century.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

children. The question of the restitution of the dower of the princess of Castile occasioned a three-years war between her father and her husband, which, however, was concluded in a generous manner on both sides. Don Alonso, king of Castile, desirous of putting an end to the wars between the Christian princes in Spain, the generous measures he took produced from the kings of Arragon and Navarre promises of assistance against the Moors, and a war was begun with them ; in the early part of which the king of Castile lost his son and heir Ferdinand by a fever, induced by fatigue. The Miramolin making extraordinary preparations for the conquest of the kingdom of Toledo, the Castilian monarch exerted himself in procuring the assistance of allies, and a crusade was appointed by the pope against the Moors, which brought into Spain a body of fifty thousand foreign auxiliaries ; the greater part of which, however, under pretence of inability to bear the heats, but, in reality, because they were restrained in their sanguinary purposes, marched back from the scene of action. The rest of the Christian army passing the Sierra Morena by a route before little known, but discovered to them by a shepherd, came to an engagement with the Moors, and in a battle, since denominated that of Toloso, totally routed them, killing in the field and in the pursuit, it is said, two hundred thousand men, with a very disproportionate loss on their own side ; though the victory was so obstinately contested, as to be once despaired of by the king of Castile. The vast loss which they that day sustained, did in a considerable measure determine the fate of the Moors in Spain. After this victory Don Alonso, king of Castile, with true Spanish magnanimity, hesitated not to make great sacrifices to secure the perfect friendship of the king of Leon, and establish on fair terms a peace between this last prince, and Alonso, king of Portugal : while the Miramolin retired into Africa, having by his misfortune lost the esteem of his subjects. After some further operations against the Moors with various success, Don Alonso, king of Castile, was seized with a malignant fever, which causing his death, obviated all his designs against that people. To Alonso succeeded his son Don Henry, only in the eleventh year of his age. By the intrigues of the counts of Lara the regency appointed by the deceased monarch was

soon changed for that of Alvaro de Lara, whose behaviour was so tyrannical toward the people, and so imperious to Donna Berengara, queen of Leon, the king's elder sister, to whose care his father had committed him, that she retired to a fortress, whither some of the prime nobility followed her. But while things appeared verging very fast to a civil war, the young king was accidentally killed by a tile falling on his head. When Donna Berengara was informed of her brother's death, she sent to the court of Leon for her own son, the infant Ferdinand; yet having called an assembly of the states of Castile at Valladolid, she was there solemnly acknowledged by nearly all the nobility and prelates of Castile to be in her own right queen of the two Castiles; but quickly permitted herself to be superseded by her son, who was solemnly inaugurated. When thus on the throne, he received some trouble from the intrigues of Don Alvaro, which were closed by the death of that turbulent subject. Thus relieved from disturbance, Berengara married her son to Beatrix, daughter of the late Philip, emperor of Germany. About this time, the affairs of the Moors fell into great confusion, and their dominions became divided into several small principalities. Next year James, king of Arragon, married Eleonora, sister to queen Berengara; and the young queen Beatrix being delivered of a son, he was, threesmonths after his birth, acknowledged for successor to his father in a general assembly of the states; while the intention of the king to begin a war against the Moors was obviated by his being called on to assist the king of Leon in suppressing an insurrection in Galicia: in the same year this last monarch founded an university at Salamanca. Ferdinand of Castile commencing, at length, his operations against the Moors, received the submission of Albuzet, king of Valentia, who became his vassal; and he employed the rest of the campaign with success; during which his sister Berengara was at Burgos married to John de Brienne, king of Jerusalem. The next year was signalized by successes against the Moors, on the part of both the kings of Leon and Castile; who for three more years pursued their victories over the same enemies; but in the fourth, Alonso of Leon died on a journey to Compostella. Though this king declared his daughters co-heiresses of his dominions,

A. D. 1217.

A. D. 1238.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1252.

the states having solemnly sworn to the succession of his son Ferdinand, the different claims had nearly produced a civil war; but at length the affair was compromised, on condition, that the king of Castile should give each of his sisters a large pension, and they renounce all pretensions to the kingdom of Leon: and thus was effected that union of the kingdoms of Castile and Leon which has continued ever since. Ferdinand had next a personal interview with Don Sancho, king of Portugal, in which he represented to him how much it was their common interest to live in friendship; after which the Castilian monarch, with a course of almost uninterrupted success, continued reducing the territories of the Moors, and enlarging his own, for the space of twenty years; when his views of farther conquest, which extended even into Africa, were intercepted by his death. To this prince succeeded his son Alonso, surnamed the Wise. The Moorish kings of Granada and Niebla became his vassals; and the claim he made of Gascony on Henry the third of England was compromised, by the marriage of that king's son with Eleonora, the Castilian monarch's sister. His natural daughter, Beatrix de Guzman, was, too, taken in marriage by the king of Portugal; to whom, as her dowry, he gave the country of Algarve. Alonso involved himself in many troubles by aiming at the German empire; and his domestick disturbances at length rose to that height, that his own brother Henry took up arms against him, but was at length obliged to take refuge in Africa; and the king of Niebla, who had joined him, preserved his liberty only by parting with his dominions. This king conferred on his subjects a considerable benefit by completing a collection and digest of the Spanish laws, which his father had begun, and by directing that all law proceedings, in which much Latin was intermixed, should be in the Spanish tongue. But while he was engaged in the pursuits of science, a conspiracy for a general revolt was formed by the Moors; and some years of war it required to reduce them all to submission: this, however, was at length accomplished; and all the strong towns of Murcia particularly, were, on the expulsion of the Moors, re-peopled by Christians. The year after this took place, the infant Don Ferdinand was married to Blanche, the daughter of the king of France. In somewhat more

than another twelvemonth; a deep conspiracy was formed among many of the first rank against the king of Castile; and easily did they mislead him to pay them money, which they employed in levying troops. But, after retiring to the Moors, Alonso, having assembled the states and reduced the taxes, and the king of Arragon preparing to assist him, and the monarch of Castile having accepted a new successor to the crown of Granada, the mal-contents were reconciled to him. But Alonso, still desirous of the imperial title, left Spain to have an interview with the pope; and of his absence Mahomet, king of Granada, took advantage to invite Aben Joseph, king of Morocco, to unite with him in an attack on Andalusia. The invitation was complied with, and the troops of the Castilians twice routed by the confederates; in further operations against whom the infant Ferdinand contracted a fever, which in a few days ended in his death. His next brother, the infant Sancho, by his exertions compelled the king of Morocco to retire to the coast, while Alonso, being apprized of what was passing, returned as quickly as possible into his dominions. Here his ambitious son Sancho proposed to be declared heir apparent of the crown; and in an assembly of the states it was determined that he should be so acknowledged, though his elder brother had left issue. This determination against his grand-children was much resented by the king of France, but by the interposition of the pope an open rupture between the two crowns was for some time prevented. Yet the queen of Castile, and her daughter-in-law Beatrix, with her two children, having retired into the dominions of Arragon, the infant Sancho, finding that his uncle Frederick had been privy to that retreat, caused him and another great man to be murdered; and war was at length declared between Castile and France; and though pope Nicolas was very earnest to bring about a reconciliation, and to dispose the king of Castile to it, compelled him to break with the Moors, against whom he was far from successful, the French took the fortress of Pampeluna, committing great excesses there. After a truce had been concluded with the Moors, however, and the war with the same people again renewed, the negociations with France at length ended in a peace. The same event might have taken place with regard to Granada,

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

but for the unreasonable demands of the infant Sancho ; who a little after, on his father's applying to the states for some remedy to the distressfull state of the finances, so intrigued with the members of the assembly first, and afterwards with the people, that in another assembly of the states he was declared regent, under the pretence of his father being superannuated. Don Alonso, being informed of what had thus passed, solicited the support of most of the nobility, and all the great cities, but found none except Badajos, which would attend to his address ; when, abandoned by all in Europe, he demanded assistance of the emperour of Morocco. This was given, but with little effect, and the whole Christian power in Spain became involved in discord and confusion ; while the Moors overlooked the favourable opportunity. Though the old king of Castile solemnly disinherited his son Sancho, yet on this last protesting against any rebellious intentions, and offering to do whatever could reconcile him ; and this submission being backed by advice, that Sancho was dangerously ill, and professed the sincerest sorrow for his conduct to his father, he pardoned him, and was so affected at his state, that it brought him to his grave. Don Sancho easily secured the succession to himself ; and at the commencement of his reign, by the help of the Genoese, defeated the whole naval power of the Moors ; and on the re-appearance of it, compelled their fleet gladly to return to Africa : after which Sancho had the satisfaction of having born a son and heir, to whom he gave the name of Ferdinand. Intrigues now broke out in the kingdom of Castile ; and Don Lopez de Haro, whom the king had made his prime minister, uniting with the infant Don Juan, the king's brother, took arms ; but being invited to a conference with Sancho, he there so openly menaced the life of the king, that he was slain by the nobility present, while the infant Juan was arrested. This incident quickly produced a civil war : Alonso de la Cerda, son of the king's elder brother Ferdinand, being set at liberty by the king of Arragon, was proclaimed king of Castile, but met with little success ; though by concessions he purchased the support of both the king of Arragon, and of him of Granada. Yet at length, in an interview between the kings of France and Castile, it was agreed, that he and his brother should have the kingdom of

A. D. 1284.

Murcia, on doing homage for it to the crown of Castile. Aben Joseph, king of Morocco, making preparations to attack the Castilian monarch, this last mustered such a force as to defeat him both by sea and land. But the king's brother Juan, unmindfull of the clemency he had experienced, broke out into open rebellion ; yet no great consequences were produced by his operations. In the spring of the year following, Sancho died at Toledo : his eldest son Ferdinand, then in the tenth year of his age, was acknowledged by the nobility for their sovereign. The infant Juan put in a claim to the crown ; but on the queen, who was regent, offering to restore to him his honours and revenues, he returned to court, and did homage to his nephew. There immediately arose a variety of other demands which the queen contrived to satisfy ; and even that of the infant Henry, who required the government of the kingdom with the title of regent. But these compliances produced only a very short tranquillity : Don Alonso de la Cerda, supported by all the forces of the king of Arragon, and having for his allies the kings of France, Portugal, and Granada, and joined too by the faithless infant Juan, to whom he promised the kingdoms of Leon and Galicia, was proclaimed king of Castile, but made little progress towards obtaining possession of that kingdom ; though the attacks of himself and his allies brought great distress upon the state. Under all these difficulties the prudent conduct of the queen-dowager Maria contributed materially to preserve the kingdom for her son. The manner in which she managed her revenue, and the clear account she gave of her expenditure, procured from the states very large grants, which so increased her power, that the infant Juan relinquished the parts of Leon and Galicia of which he had possession, as well as the title of king, and did homage to Ferdinand, and swore fealty to the established succession. While the king of Portugal pressed the accomplishment of a double marriage, that had been proposed between the young king Ferdinand, and the infanta Constantia of Portugal, and between Alonso, prince of Portugal, and the infanta Beatrix of Castile : for which marriages the bulls and dispensations requisite were obtained from Rome. And thus expired the thirteenth century in Spain.

A. D. 1295.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
13th century.

The conduct of king John was so inconsistent with his promise of restoring the privileges of the nobility and the people, that it occasioned strong representations from the barons; but these by the promptitude of his measures John compelled to submit. His transactions in France have already been noticed. The next most prominent occurrence of his reign was his quarrel with that arrogant prelate Innocent the third, who assumed the liberty of causing cardinal Stephen Langton to be elected archbishop of Canterbury by a deputation of monks at Rome, and of consecrating him without the king's consent. In the course of this contest the kingdom was laid under an interdict, and the king excommunicated, and a bull published, absolving his subjects from their oath of allegiance: all which measures failing of making the king comply with all the demands of the pope, this last had the insolence to publish a sentence of deposition against him, and award his crown to the king of France and his heirs for ever. While these disputes were pending, John had born to him two sons, Henry and Richard, both of whom were now in danger of being ousted from their inheritance: for the French king prepared to take the benefit of the pope's sentence; when John, alarmed at the appearance of so powerfull an enemy, and conscious of the merited disaffection of his own subjects, determined, as the least evil, to submit to the blasphemous pontiff, and bound himself by an oath to this, ere he knew the extent of the demands made on him; and when these were detailed, he found himself required to resign his kingdom of England and lordship of Ireland to the bishop of Rome, and thenceforth hold both as his vassal, at the annual rent of seven hundred marks for the former, and three hundred for the last. To this the degraded monarch was obliged to submit: but acquired by his debasement only a suspension of his troubles; for his barons refusing to follow him to the continent to pursue the war against France, on his attempting to force them a league was entered into, at the head of which was cardinal Langton, to obtain from the king the re-establishment of all the privileges granted to his subjects by the Charter of Henry the first. To obviate the effects of this confederacy, John sought the assistance of the pope, and this his holiness vouchsafed to give him, in consideration

of a large sum of money, and a second resignation of his crown. The avowed protection of the pope, however, did not avail to prevent the barons from prosecuting the attainment of the re-establishment of their privileges. They addressed the king in most respectfull but plain terms, reminding him of the solemn oath he had taken to restore the ancient laws. John first endeavoured to gain time, and on being pressed with a more explicit statement of their demands, refused their request: on this they chose lord Robert Fitz Walter for their general, and commenced hostilities. Their success in these, and the defection from the party of the king, led to a negociation, and, on a day appointed, the king, attended by only five or six lords, among whom was the cardinal archbishop, the principal author of the troubles, but now affecting to act as a mediatour, and on the other side a great number of barons, met in Runnemede, between Stanes and Windsor; where the king, with no small simulation of good-will, signed the great Charter, and the Charter of the Forest; which have been ever since considered and appealed to, as the basis of the liberty of the English. And to secure the royal performance of what was thus promised, it was agreed, that on any breach of the Charter, if a complaint duly preferred was not redressed within forty days, it should be lawfull for the barons and people to take up arms, and, provided no violence were offered to the person of the king, queen, and their issue, to seize the king's castles, and oblige him to redress their grievances. Thus forming, it should seem, a better ground for resistance to tyranny than all the reasonings, which have since been so unreasonably admired, concerning an implied contract; and at the same time leaving without excuse the detestable measures pursued in the great rebellion against Charles the first. But with an individual so unprincipled as John, the obligation of an oath was soon laid aside: determined to render void the Charters he had granted, he privately raised a body of foreign troops, and applied to the pope as his lord paramount. The menaces which that prelate uttered against the barons were answered by their seizing Rochester, where the king had a large magazine of ammunition. Neither did his absolving John from his oath, nor his excommunication of themselves, deter them from repelling by force the attempts of the king to

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1216.

reduce them ; though he with two armies of foreigners ravaged the country in a merciless manner. The distress to which the barons were brought by having their houses and lands plundered by these mercenaries, at length induced them to solicit the king of France to send his son Lewis with sufficient forces to free them from this tyranny ; promising that they would in that case place the crown of England on his head. The condition was accepted, and, in defiance of all the pope's remonstrances, prince Lewis landed with a large force in England ; and, though the legate excommunicated him, he marched to London, and received the oath of fealty from the barons and citizens. Great was the success with which this prince for some time met ; but jealousies of the French, and offence at their arrogance, began at length to rise in the breasts of the barons : yet, ere John could profit by this favourable turn, a fever, induced by vexation, and rendered more putrid by the eating of peaches, put an end to his life. John was succeeded by his eldest son Henry, at the time of his accession only ten years of age. The cause of this young prince was generously undertaken by William Mareschall, earl of Pembroke, who assembled the few lords that adhered to John, and prevailed on them to support his son, who was accordingly crowned at Gloucester, the pope's legate being present. The earl of Pembroke was immediately chosen guardian of the king, and protector of the kingdom, nor could a man fitter for the charge have been selected. By his judicious conduct of affairs the cause of Lewis gradually declined, until he deemed it requisite to ask for peace ; which he obtained on terms which amounted to little more than the dereliction of what he had usurped, and then retired quietly to France : when the young king, having been received with great pomp in London, swore to maintain the privileges of the nation. But while the regent was pursuing the measures requisite for the performance of what the king had sworn to execute, he was cut off by death, and Peter des Roches, bishop of Winchester, was made regent. His ministry was disturbed not only by the open rebellion of William de Froz, earl of Albemarle, but by contests between the inhabitants of Westminster and the citizens of London. Against the last of whom, Hubert de Burgh, chief justiciary of England, acted

with rigour so illegal as to bring on himself the hatred of the nation at large, and induced the parliament, which was soon after assembled, to request the king to cause the Charter of Liberties to be observed throughout the kingdom; and Henry readily sent to all sheriffs orders for that purpose. But Hubert suffered him not to continue this equitable line of conduct: by his counsel many of the barons were, by persuasion or menaces, brought to resign their castles to the king; while others firmly opposed themselves to the designs of that haughty minister who had now absorbed the royal favour. To the civil broils which at this time infested England, was added an attack on Henry's dominions on the continent by the king of France; during the continuance of which, Henry was in the parliament declared of full age. To an impudent request for supplying the necessities of the pope, the same parliament made no reply, and the king evaded a repetition of the demand. Hubert, having persuaded Henry to send the bishop of Winchester from court, endeavoured to set himself above the laws, by making his master absolute: hence the most illegal means of raising money were resorted to, and the two Charters so solemnly sworn to were annulled; while the author of these pernicious counsels was created earl of Kent. The conduct of him and his master, however, at length compelled several of the barons, together with the king's brother, Richard, duke of Cornwall, to take arms for the purpose of obliging the king to restore the two Charters. But the power of this confederacy was broken by such favours being bestowed on Richard, as satisfied him. On the decease of Stephen Langton, a dispute arose between the monks of Canterbury, the suffragan bishops of the province, and the king, concerning the right of electing his successor, which was carried for decision to Rome; and there the king's envoys offering the pope a tenth of all the moveables of England and Ireland, he declared the election which the monks had made void; but gave the dignity himself to Richard Le Grand, chancellor of Lincoln, and afterwards sent a chaplain into England to collect the promised tenths, who, after some ineffectual resistance, raised the sum of money; Henry being conscious that he should need the pope's authority to support him in the exactions his necessities might here-

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

after render requisite : and indeed such soon appeared. Henry now resolved to recover by arms the provinces taken from his father ; but, after great preparations made, and large supplies raised, he made an expedition to France, in which he gained only the reputation of imbecillity, and a love of pleasure ; and during which the king of Connaught invading the English territories in Ireland, derived from this attack no other advantage than having twenty thousand of his subjects slain, and being himself taken prisoner. The parliament being called to replace the money which the king had squandered, declined granting any more ; and great discontent soon appeared at the encroachments of the pope on the rights of private patronage, at which Henry seemed purposely to connive. The enemies of Hubert de Burgh at length succeeding in obtaining the recall of the bishop of Winchester to court, his representations had such effect on the king, that Hubert was dismissed from the office of justiciary, though his patent was for life ; and was then prosecuted with great severity for some time, until the king relented, and leaving him in possession of his own estates, sent him to the castle of the Devizes, until his further pleasure should be made known. By the advice of his new minister, the king now introduced into all places of power and profit natives of his French dominions, purposing through their means to render his authority absolute. This produced undisguised resistance on the part of the barons, and open war was levied by the earl of Pembroke, but with much more justice and magnanimity on his part, than on that of his base and faithless sovereign ; though by the machinations of the bishop of Winchester he himself was at length slain in it. But the influence of that unprincipled prelate was at last undermined by Edmund, whom the pope, after annulling the election of others, prevailed to have chosen archbishop of Canterbury, who opened the king's eyes to the manner in which he had been misled. The bishop was ordered to his diocese, and his creatures were dismissed from their posts with disgrace ; but the prosecutions commenced against them ended principally in two of them paying a thousand marks each. Soon after this, the marriage of the king's sister Isabella with the emperor Frederick the second was solemnized, and, though not

customary in such a case, the parliament granted a supply for her portion: Henry, now at peace, himself married Eleanor, second daughter of Raymond, earl of Provence. Although the king made a new favourite of William of Provence, his queen's uncle, and thus excited fresh disgust in his barons, his recalling to court two of those whom he had banished, Segrave and Rivaulx, caused still more; and the knowledge of his being so little beloved at home, encouraged his neighbours to encroach on him: yet all these disgraces and losses made no beneficial impression on the mind of Henry. Wanting money again, he, by the most positive promises of correcting his government, obtained an aid from the parliament, and then squandered the supply in useless expenses. But at this time what neither his arms or credit could obtain, the differences between Lewellyn, prince of Wales, and his son Griffyn, procured for Henry the homage of the former for his dominions. The arrival of a legate from Rome, merely to drain the kingdom, did not diminish the murmurs against the king; with whose connivance, if not at whose request, he was sent.* Simon de Montfort, a son of the general of the crusade against the Albigenses, now become one of the king's chief favourites, married the dowager countess of Pembroke, the king's sister, to the great disgust of prince Richard, Henry's brother. Yet the king at length made him earl of Leicester, though with his accustomed inconstancy he afterwards quarrelled with him; at which time the queen was delivered of a prince, called Edward. As the reign of Henry had hitherto exhibited nothing but imbecillity, extravagance, and falsehood, on the part of that monarch, so in the succeeding part of it the barons were absolutely compelled, through want of the royal protection, to take measures for their own defence against the exactions of the bishop of Rome, which were, under various pretences, carried to an height scarcely credible, and supported by the most shameless menaces of interdict and excommunication. Nay, one of his holiness's modest demands was, that each of the bishops should find him a certain number of armed men to maintain the war in which he was engaged with the emperor. And

* In the same year the earldom of Chester was annexed to the crown.

while the king was surrounded with foreigners, who absorbed his favours, the ecclesiastical benefices were filled with Italians, who neglected their duties; and only fleeced the sheep. The opposition of the barons to Henry in his demands of money, induced him to resort to every mode of raising it; and from the practices of the pope he borrowed the most tyrannical measures, introducing into his writs and proclamations the clause of "Non obstante;" by which was invalidated every privilege and every former grant. After having married his daughter Margaret to Alexander the third, king of Scotland, he was most grossly insulted by his former favourite the earl of Leicester, against whom the Gascons had preferred complaints, and instead of whom he appointed his own son, prince Edward, governour of Guienne. But this was by the nobles considered as an act of injustice; and when the earl was put on his trial by his peers, so far were they from condemning him, that Henry, fearfull of still worse consequences, dissolved the assembly. While the king suffered himself to be entirely governed by foreigners,* the pretensions of the king of Castile to Guienne involved him in a war with that monarch; which lasted, however, but a short time, ending in a treaty of peace, confirmed by a marriage between prince Edward and the Castilian king's sister. The pope having offered the kingdom of the two Sicilies to Henry's second son Edmund, his father weakly accepted the offer of what was not yet conquered, and involved himself in still greater difficulties, and rendered himself still more odious to his own subjects by the means he took to raise money for this visionary acquisition: while most shameless was the manner in which the pope drained England of money, under pretence of establishing prince Edmund in the kingdom offered him. The grievances with which barons, clergy, and people were, through these measures, afflicted, at length roused the first no longer to confide in the promises of reformation given by a monarch as remorseless in perjury as any that have disgraced a throne; and they compelled the king to assent to the

* The extent to which the influence of these had arisen, may be conjectured from this fact; that the annual income enjoyed by them in the kingdom, amounted to near three times as much as the revenue of the crown.

appointment of twenty-four commissioners, who should make the reformation necessary in the government ; and at the head of whom was placed the earl of Leicester. In the parliament which met for this purpose at Oxford, in the year twelve hundred and fifty-eight, twelve persons were present as deputies of the community, but not themselves commoners, being all barons ; nor does it appear that they assembled as a separate chamber. The commissioners drew up six articles, called the Statutes of Oxford, to which the king gave his assent ; and which prince Edward swore to observe and support. The statutes themselves met with considerable opposition, especially from the foreigners ; but these were obliged to yield, and retire from the kingdom. When these were gone, the barons bound themselves by oath to support the provisions of Oxford with their lives and fortunes. Henry was compelled to assent to all their measures ; and the four-and-twenty commissioners made a disadvantageous peace with France, but freed England for a time from the mischief done by the vast number of Italian ecclesiasticks, who held benefices in the country without residing on them. But the king, eager to throw off the yoke imposed on him, obtained from the pope absolution from his oath respecting the provisions of Oxford. This had nearly blown up a new flame ; but by the prudence and equity of prince Edward, and the fear of the miserable consequences entertained by all parties, an accommodation was brought about through the mediation of the king's brother Richard, who had been elected king of the Romans. Yet the king neglecting to confirm the provisions of Oxford, and relying on the support of the king of the Romans and prince Edward, treating the barons as rebels, they at length recurred to arms, and chose the earl of Leicester for their general. In their hostilities against the royal favourites and counsellors ; and the foreigners in the kingdom, they were joined by the city of London. The war thus begun, though repeatedly suspended by treaties, in the forming and breach of which both parties betrayed great want of good faith, at length produced a decisive battle, fought near Lewes in Sussex, in which Henry and his brother, the king of the Romans, were taken prisoners, and prince Edward was obliged to submit to the terms dictated by the earl of Leicester, and to become himself one of the hostages for

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the performance of them. Into the hands of that earl the royal person was now thrown, and he was not sparing in his use of the royal authority: in the king's name a parliament was called, but of the barons on the victorious side only; while, to render the assembly more general, four knights were ordered to be sent up from each county to sit in the ensuing parliament, as the representatives of their respective shires. By this parliament a new form of government, ostensibly under the king, but in fact managed by three commissioners, was devised, and at the head of it was placed the earl of Leicester, who kept Henry in his custody, and acted so absolutely, that the barons grew jealous of him. To counteract the effects of this, another parliament was summoned; to which each county was ordered to send two knights, as their representatives, and each city and borough as many citizens or burgesses. As this parliament only nominally set at liberty prince Edward, the earl of Gloucester, who was at the head of those who suspected that Leicester had a design on the crown, openly prepared for war against him; and having procured the escape of the prince, resigned to him the command of the troops which he had raised. To prevent the pernicious effects to his own interest which might arise from the liberty of the heir apparent, Leicester caused orders to all the king's subjects to be published, for the most vigorous opposition to be made to him and his adherents; who yet in a short time saw himself, through the great resort made to him, at the head of an army more numerous than that of the confederate barons. With this he first defeated the earl's son, and then himself, in a battle fought near Evesham, in which Leicester fell, and the king recovered his liberty. The power having now changed hands, Henry hesitated not to revenge himself on the property of his rebel subjects: all the malcontents, however, were not subdued; and ere they were so, the symptoms which the king gave of returning to his former courses, and the little recollection the prince shewed of the promise he had given to preserve the ancient laws, induced the earl of Gloucester to take arms again. But though he succeeded so far as to get possession of the city and tower of London, he was soon compelled to submit, though on no very hard terms. The troubles which had harassed the kingdom for five

years thus extinguished, the king obliged Lewellyn, prince of Wales, who had assisted the rebels, to pay a sum of money, deliver up some castles, and do homage for his principality. After which, the pope's legate having published a crusade, the prince took the cross; while the king summoning a parliament, the statutes of Marlborough were enacted. Edward performed his vow in going to Palæstine, but his force was too trifling to enable him to make any progress; having convinced the Saracens, however, of the danger of his enmity, and slain an assassin sent to dispatch him, after losing by sickness or in battle a considerable portion of the troops he had, he concluded a truce for ten years, and returned to England: but ere his arrival there, his father, who had enjoyed great tranquillity during his absence, died after a short illness. To Edward, though absent, the barons with one accord swore fealty, and appointed a regency; and in a few days after the king's arrival, he and his queen Eleanor were crowned. Great were the designs this monarch had in contemplation; and wisely did he prepare the way for their execution, by correcting the mal-administration of justice that had for some time prevailed in his kingdom, and enacting, in a parliament holden at Westminster, the wholesome statutes which have drawn their title from it. After this, Lewellyn, prince of Wales, having refused to do him homage, and negociation having proved fruitless, Edward vigorously carried the war into that country, and obliged the prince to submit to the terms he dictated: yet those Edward in great part relaxed. By the death of the mother of his queen he now came into possession of the earldoms of Ponthieu and Montreuil: after which he applied himself to remedy the great adulteration of the coin, causing to be executed in London only, two hundred and eighty Jews convicted of clipping, coining, or putting off false money. The next beneficial measure of this great monarch was, the enactment of the statute of Mortmain, to prevent all the land of the kingdom getting into the hands of the church. The statute of Quo Warranto made by a succeeding parliament, produced more pernicious effects; but by the spirit of the barons, and the king's prudence, these were quickly stopped. Lewellyn, prince of Wales, now taking up arms, the king entered his country; and the former, encouraged by some

A. D. 1272.

partial advantage gained, and a superstitious persuasion of success, ventured on a general engagement, in which his army was routed, and himself slain ; when Edward became master of the whole country, and distributed it for the most part among his officers and courtiers to be holden under him : and in a parliament it was resolved, that the principality should be inseparably annexed to the crown of England. Two years after this, the king deprived the city of London of its charter, and displaced the mayor for receiving bribes from the bakers ; but by a present to Edward the charter was recovered : in the same year the second statute of Westminster was enacted. Edward being called by affairs of importance into France, was detained there three years ; and his first care on his return was to punish the misdemeanours committed during his absence by the judges. He then convened a parliament, in which the third statute of Westminster was enacted, and the exile of the Jews finally determined : their immoveable goods were, in consequence, confiscated ; and with the rest they were sent away for their iniquitous and pernicious practices. The next important event of this reign was the settlement of the succession to the kingdom of Scotland, which being referred to Edward, after much investigation, during which he endeavoured to establish beyond all future contradiction his right of sovereignty over that country, he pronounced in favour of the claim of John Baliol, in bar of that of Robert Bruce. Over this new monarch he affected to exercise the authority of a sovereign lord, in such a manner as soon rendered him desirous of being freed from the vassalage ; to compass which he entered into an alliance with the king of France, and then formally renounced his dependence. Edward, informed of his negotiations with the French king, appears to have resolved to seize this opportunity of making a conquest of Scotland, and, to secure the assistance of Robert Bruce, offered the crown to him, as forfeited by Baliol, and was joined by a great number of Bruce's friends. After which having taken Berwick, and defeated Baliol in a general engagement, he in the course of a campaign obliged him to resign his kingdom to his disposal by a formal instrument, signed by himself and most of the Scotch barons, and sealed with the great seal of Scotland. To leave no doubt of the

subjection of the country, Edward caused all the nobility and officers of the kingdom to swear fealty to him, and removed the regalia of it into England; while, to secure his new conquest, he placed English garrisons and governours in all the castles, and left John Warren, earl of Surrey and Sussex, to command in Scotland. But while triumphing on this side, Edward's affairs in France wore a different aspect, where, though he strove to avoid a rupture, he was, with very unequal forces, engaged in hostilities with Philip; but when the affairs with Scotland were arranged, he formed a potent league against that enemy; yet his allies did not fulfill their engagements, and an expedition he made into Flanders ended in bringing disgrace on him. While, too, he was employed in it, the Scotch rose, under the conduct of William Wallace, and in a very short time recovered from the English all the towns they held, except Berwick, and declared their gallant leader regent of the kingdom. Apprized of these circumstances, Edward hastened the conclusion of a truce with France; and, after returning to England, advanced at the head of an army as far as Falkirk in Scotland, where he gave Wallace a complete defeat; after which he recovered all the places of strength with the same ease with which he lost them. Wallace, perceiving that the great men of the kingdom were jealous of the authority being placed in the hands of a man of no high family, resigned the regency; when Comyn was by some chosen to supply his place, by whose persuasion all the inhabitants taking arms at the same day and hour expelled the English garrisons. Exasperated at this, Edward entered Scotland the third time, obliged their ill-armed militia to engage, and defeated them. The Scotch, now in despair, had recourse to submissive entreaties, and these being rejected, they put themselves under the pope's protection, whose insolent assumptions enraged the king; yet he ventured not to refuse them a truce at the request of the king of France. During this truce, Edward invested his eldest son, then seventeen years old, with the principality of Wales, and the earldom of Chester: and with this occurrence was in England closed the thirteenth century.

Eric Cnutson having driven Suercher from the throne of Sweden, and at length slain him in an attempt to recover it, renewed the treaty

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

13th century.

of alternate succession with the children of the late king, and reconciled himself to the king of Denmark, by marrying the sister of Valdemar; from which time he reigned happily, and at length died regretted. John, the son of Suercher, immediately ascended the vacant throne, and governed three years with admirable wisdom and integrity. On his decease, the son of Eric Cnutson succeeded to the crown; and, under the disadvantages of a paralytick disorder which greatly disfigured him, he secured the real esteem of his subjects by his courage, wisdom, and virtue. Yet a family of the name of Falkunger, powerfull and ambitious, forming designs on the crown, all the measures Eric could take to deter them from prosecuting them, were of no avail. All but Birger Jerl, to whom Eric had married one of his sisters, revolted, defeated the forces of the king, and obliged him to flee to Denmark; where raising an army, he returned and expelled Canute Falkunger, whom they raised to the throne, restored the publick tranquillity, and punished the traitors as they deserved. In this king's reign a papal nuncio arriving in Sweden, prohibited ecclesiasticks from marrying. Eric sent his brother-in-law Birger Jerl to convert the Tawastians, an idolatrous people of Finland, to Christianity, by the power of the sword; and ere this military apostle returned, died himself. By the intrigues of Ivar Bla, one of the chief nobility, Waldemar, the eldest son of Birger Jerl, was next raised to the throne, and the administration committed to Birger's hands during his son's minority. In this situation he built and fortified the city of Stockholm, revised the laws of the kingdom, and did every thing which could raise the reputation and secure the happiness of his country. In acknowledgment of which services the nation requested his son to grant him the title and dignity of a duke, instead of that of jerl or earl, which he before enjoyed. This fair reputation, however, he afterwards deeply tarnished by an act of atrocious perfidy against the family of the Flockengers, whose envy against him had excited a civil war in Sweden, and during a truce with whom, he caused several of them to be seized and beheaded. After having thus freed himself from his most formidable enemies, he married his son to the princess Sophia, daughter of Eric; yet he retained the government in his own hands to the end of his life.

After his death jealousies occurred between his sons, on the three younger of whom Waldemar had been by his father prevailed on to confer appendages, that rendered them too powerfull for his own tranquillity. Magnus and Eric, the two elder of them, by the assistance of the king of Denmark, waged war with Waldemar, and took him prisoner; when, by a decree of the states, whose affection Magnus had by his good qualities and great accomplishments gained, all the kingdom except East and West Gothland, and the province of Smaland, were assigned to him, and Waldemar was obliged to rest content with the rest; and at length the Danes, who changing sides had taken up his cause, having concluded a treaty with Magnus, he was under the necessity of renouncing the whole kingdom, when his brother ascended the throne. Soon after his coronation Magnus married Hedwig, a daughter of the duke of Holstein, in consequence of which many from that duchy repaired to the Swedish court, the countenance they found in which excited so great jealousy among the natives of that kingdom, that by a confederacy all the Holsteiners that attended the queen in a journey to Gothland were massacred. On the Flockengers, who took the lead in this nefarious act, Magnus afterwards took vengeance; and so reduced their influence, that he for the rest of his reign possessed his crown in perfect tranquillity, obtaining, by the excellence of the laws he enacted, and the equity of his government, the surname of Ladislaus. On the decease of this eminent monarch in the year twelve hundred and ninety, his son Birger succeeded him, but being only eleven years old, Torkel Cnutson was, in compliance with the will of the late king, appointed regent. During his regency the country of the Carelians was by conquest made a province of Sweden, and the fortress of Wibourg built to check the Russians. On the young king's coming of age, his marriage with the princess of Denmark was celebrated; but Cnutson still continued to direct the government, in which he proved himself one of the first politicians of the age. For the benefit of the people he both rendered the laws perspicuous and concise, and enforced them with strictness and impartiality; he passed also in particular one, prohibiting the sale of slaves. But here closes the thirteenth century in the history of Sweden.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Denmark
during the
13th century.
A. D. 1203.

The history of Denmark was last suspended in the reign of Canute the sixth, whose dominions were considerably enlarged by the conquests of his younger brother Valdemar, who totally subdued what is now termed Holstein, with several other territories; and soon after whose marriage with the sister of Otho, duke of Brunswick, Canute himself died suddenly. Immediately on that monarch's decease, Valdemar was unanimously chosen to succeed to the throne, and his reign was begun by the enactment of many salutary laws; and by a treaty with Adolphus, duke of Holstein, who was set at liberty on renouncing all claim to that duchy, and to the citadels of Hamburg and Lawenburg. Of the assistance which the Danes gave to the Swedish usurper Suercher, and the loss they on that occasion sustained, notice has been already taken. Valdemar endeavouring to propagate Christianity by a mode customary in those days, that of arms, was recalled from his expedition to attend at the birth of his eldest son Valdemar, and the nuptials of his sister with Eric king of Sweden. The next year was signalized by the foundation of the city of Stralsund, and the birth of a second prince, named Canute, after which his mother died. The forces of Valdemar made great progress on the coast of Pomerania, and took Stetin: he was next engaged in a war with Henry, count of Schwerin, brother to the emperor Otho, in which he lost and regained the city of Hamburg. On his return from which, his son Valdemar was at a general diet unanimously chosen for his successor. He was next occupied in an expedition against the Livonians, who, assisted by the Muscovites, Lithuanians, and other barbarous tribes, had driven from among them all who had embraced Christianity, and sworn allegiance to the crown of Denmark. The account given of the revenue of that kingdom in the reign of this monarch exceeds all credit: however, Henry count of Schwerin contrived to carry him by treachery into captivity, from which he was not released under three years, and then he obtained his liberty on terms to which the persuasions of his own subjects, representing the distracted state of his kingdom, alone induced him to yield; by which he ceded Holstein, Schwerin, Hamburg, and the other towns and fortresses on either side of the Elbe. When Valdemar had recovered his liberty, the city of Lubeck

revolted, having first made an alliance with Albert of Saxony, and the neighbouring princes, at the instance of the emperor: this, added to other circumstances, so provoked Valdemar, as to lead him to a most unjustifiable mode of releasing himself from the obligations which he had taken on him, by an application to the pope to be absolved from his oaths.* Thus warranted, the perjured prince with fury seized and plundered several places in Holstein, but in leading back his army, was encountered by the dukes of Holstein and Saxony, and several other German princes, and, after a most sanguinary battle, deservedly defeated with the loss of an eye, and that of his best troops and most experienced generals. Yet Valdemar continued undismayed, and prepared another army: with this, however, nothing was done, but ravaging part of the country of his opponents; and no more military exertions were made by Valdemar. The death of his eldest son, accidentally slain in hunting, seems to have broken his spirit. After this distressing event, his second son Eric was unanimously chosen for his successor, and crowned as his brother had been. After some other wars, of which a summary account alone is given, the king applied himself to the enactment of laws, the encouragement of industry, and the relief of his subjects from the weight of the taxes which had necessarily been imposed on them: and, being arrived at an advanced age, died, full of honour as well as of years. His son Eric, being of the age of twenty-five, now mounted the throne: but his brothers had all been made independent of him; Canute was duke of Bleking, Abel of Sleswick, and Christopher of Falstre. In consequence of this arrangement dissensions soon ensued, and seven years passed in wars and temporary reconciliations between the brethren: after which Eric, having quelled a revolt of some of his own subjects, was involved again in

A. D. 1241.

* I cannot pass by all the repeated instances which force themselves into notice in this Abridgment, of this blasphemous practice of the bishops of Rome, of dispensing with the obligation of oaths, without earnestly begging the reader to consider, how fully by this assumption of Divine authority they accomplished in themselves what St. Paul predicted of that singular power, that "he should sit in the temple of God, shewing himself that he is God."—2nd Epistle to the Thessalonians, ch. 2, v. 4.

CHAPTER
VIL
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1250.

war with the princes of Holstein, and while endeavouring to come to an agreement with them, through the interposition of his brother Abel, he was by that unprincipled prince seized, carried off to sea, and there murdered. The report spread by Abel to screen his own guilt, that his brother perished by the foundering of the vessel, was soon exploded by the corpse being thrown on shore in its mangled state: ere this discovery, however, as Eric left no male issue, Abel, with consent of the states, seated himself on the throne. But he had not long occupied this, ere the consciousness of his crimes, and the sense of his ingratitude to a brother, whose affection to himself was demonstrated by the contents of his will, rendered him the most wretched individual in Denmark. Neither did he long enjoy his ill-gotten crown; since, in two years time, he was slain in a battle against some subjects, who resisted the demand of a newly-imposed tax. Though Abel left two sons, the choice of the states fell on his brother Christopher, who took on himself the guardianship of Abel's children, by which he was soon involved in disputes, that terminated in hostilities, at length concluded by an agreement, that while his nephews should acknowledge their submission to the decree which the states had passed for the exclusion of themselves from the succession to the crown in favour of Christopher and his descendants, he should restore to them the duchy of Sleswick, and put them in immediate possession of their patrimony in Denmark. The king was scarcely freed from this contest, but he was implicated in another with the archbishop of Lunden, whose arrogance need hardly have feared a comparison with that of the popes themselves. After this had continued some time, the prosecution of it was interrupted by a contest for the duchy of Sleswick, to which, on his eldest nephew's decease, his younger, Eric, laid claim; but of which the king took possession by force of arms. Christopher having had his son Eric declared his successor, as the archbishop of Lunden opposed his coronation, the nobility performed that ceremony, and a private clergyman consecrated him. The diet having the conduct of the archbishop of Lunden stated to them, put him and some other ecclesiasticks under arrest: hence arose appearances of another war, when Christopher was removed by a sudden death, but suspiciously

accounted for. His son and successor Eric, the seventh monarch of that name, being yet in his non-age, to his mother Margaret were committed the reins of government. Her administration not only began with troubles from the old cause of the archbishop of Lunden; but to these was added a war with Eric, the son of Abel, for the duchy of Sleswick, in which the king and his mother were both made prisoners. The policy of Margaret, however, soon obtained their release; and, after some further disputes with the ecclesiasticks, the kingdom enjoyed for five years a profound peace. But while Eric was occupied with the internal administration of his kingdom, the Muscovites and their allies suddenly attacked the province of Esthonia, but, after having ravaged a great part of it, were defeated by the Danes. This was followed by a war with Eric of Sleswick, whose successes were stopped only by his death: on the occurrence of which, further disputes arose about the guardianship of his sons, which were compromised by the king's giving the government of the duchy to the eldest son of Eric: two years after which a rupture took place between Eric, and Magnus, king of Norway, when the latter suffered a defeat. Four years after which, the Danish monarch, to the regret of all ranks of his subjects, lost his mother: after whose death he was involved with many enemies; and when, by the reduction of some, and a peace concluded with others of them, he promised himself future tranquillity, he was assassinated by a band of conspirators, among whom were some of the principal nobility of his kingdom. Eric the eighth, surnamed the Pious, succeeded his father; but, being yet a minor, the kingdom was governed by his mother and the senate; and Valdemar of Sleswick was appointed his guardian. The measures taken to punish the murderers of the late king, produced a war with Norway, where the conspirators found refuge and support; and which lasted, greatly to the damage of Denmark, to the close of this century. During the early part of these hostilities, the queen-dowager entered into a treaty of marriage between the king and Ingeburga, daughter to Magnus, king of Sweden, and betrothed her own daughter to the son of Magnus; and in the course of them the bishop of Lunden escaping to Rome, procured an interdict on the kingdom, and a sentence against the king;

A. D. 1281.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Germany
during the
13th century.

who, on the other hand, had the satisfaction of seeing the city of Lubeck beg his protection, and give him for it an annual subsidy. An ineffectual attempt to effect a peace with Norway closed the century; to the transactions in Germany, therefore, must the reader's attention now be called.

The commencement of this century was marked in Germany by a letter from pope Innocent the third to Otho, then one of the competitors for the empire; exhibiting a glaring instance of the blasphemous arrogance of that shameless pontiff: "By the authority," said he, "of Almighty God, devolved on us in the person of St. Peter, we received you as king of the Romans, and ordain that you shall henceforth be respected and obeyed accordingly." But, in spite of the papal support, Otho's party sensibly diminished, while, by the contest, the whole empire became a scene of anarchy and blood; and at length, such was the superiority of Philip, that Otho was compelled to flee for refuge to England. Philip now remained undisputed master of the empire, and behaved in a manner that gained him the affections of all his subjects; while he began accommodating matters with the pope, by offering to cede to his holiness some territories of the empire: but, ere these negotiations were finished, Philip was assassinated by count palatine Otho, of Wittelsbach. The death of Philip being made known to the other Otho, his rival, he called a diet, in which his former election was renewed, and at an ensuing assembly, in which it was confirmed by additional voices, Beatrice, the daughter of the murdered emperour, demanded justice on the assassin of her father; when his dominions were confiscated, and a price set on his head, which was soon after cut off on the banks of the Danube, and thrown into the river. Beatrice herself was at length married by the emperour Otho. This last accepted the pope's invitation to repair to Rome, and receive at his hands the crown of the Western empire, where he ceded to the Church the lands of the countess Mathilda, and took an oath of obedience to the pope. But their friendship lasted not long: Innocent, enraged at those steps of Otho mentioned in the history of Italy, thundered out excommunication against him, and by his order the archbishop of Mentz published the

sentence throughout Germany, adding to it the convocation of a diet for a new election ; when Frederick, duke of Suabia, and king of Sicily, who had been proclaimed king of the Romans at the desire of his father, Henry the sixth, was chosen emperor. Though Otho had at first some success against this new rival, involving himself in a war with France, and being, as already stated, defeated at Bouvines, his cause so declined, that he at length abdicated the empire, by retiring into Brunswick ; where, after four years spent in private life, he died. In the mean time Frederick, who was the second of that name, was confirmed in the imperial dignity by the princes assembled, and crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle. While he was employed in establishing the tranquillity of the empire by the correction of abuses, Honorius the third, who had succeeded Innocent in the popedom, ordered, as has been already stated, another crusade to be preached, in which, however, Frederick did not then embark ; but having reduced to his obedience some places which had not yet acknowledged his authority, and made various regulations for securing the tranquillity of Germany, and particularly for attaching to himself the good-will of the clergy, he marched with a considerable army into Italy, and was at Rome crowned by the pope ; after which, having received the oath of fidelity and homage from the cities and states of Italy, he declared his son Henry king of the Romans ; who was afterwards crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle. When on the pope's expostulations Frederick was really preparing to embark for the East, he received information of a league in which the towns of Lombardy had privately engaged to renounce his authority. In consequence of this occurrence he obtained the pope's consent to deferring his expedition ; while the associated towns justified their confederation by a treaty with Frederick Barbarossa, empowering them to make alliances one with another. These towns were Milan, Bologna, Placenza, Verona, Brescia, Mantua, Vercelli, Lodi, Bergamo, Turin, Alessandria, Vicenza, and several others. But Frederick's transactions in Italy having been already detailed, as far as the nature of the present Work will admit, in the history of that country, need not be here repeated. Some notice has also been taken of the rebellion of his son Henry, who, instead of being

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

punished according to the greatness of his crime, was only sent into Sicily, and, as might be expected, again engaged in rebellious practices against his father, who now was impelled to have him seized and put into confinement; under which the guilty prince died. The duke of Austria having been concerned with Henry, the emperor ravaged his dominions; at length making himself master of Vienna, where he founded the university which still subsists. After this expedition his son Conrad was elected king of the Romans; and then Frederick returned to Italy, where, after a series of quarrels with the popes, he was by Innocent the fourth formally excommunicated. Neither did that pontiff fail in his efforts to prevail on some princes of the empire to proceed to an election of a king of the Romans, in the person of Henry, landgrave of Thuringia; who was, however, quickly slain in an attack on the city of Ulm. To keep up an opposition to Frederick, the pope and his partizans effected the election of another king of the Romans, William, count of Holland; and the next year the emperor, while he was in the kingdom of Naples, was, according to some, seized with a fever, which ended in his death; while there are not wanting those who affirm, that he was murdered by his illegitimate son Manfred. Conrad, king of the Romans, no sooner received the news of his father's death, than he assumed the title of emperor, but died after he had marched into Italy, as has been before stated; leaving an only son, named Conradin, in the third year of his age. William the second, count of Holland, who had been elected, and afterwards crowned king of the Romans, at the death of the emperor Frederick assumed all the ensigns of the imperial dignity. But though, in order to support himself against the party of Conrad, he entered into alliance with Otho, duke of Brunswick, yet his party made but little progress in Germany. Among other steps he took to conciliate the affections of the Germans, he patronized an association formed by the cities of Frankfort, Mentz, Cologne, Worms, and Spire, for the defence of their commerce; the advantages of which association quickly became so visible, that nearly almost all the towns of Germany and Flanders requested to be admitted into it; and this, probably, is the true epoch of the general union of the Hanse towns, though a similar treaty had

A. D. 1248.

long before existed between Lubec, Hamburgh, and Bremen. The Teutonic Knights in Prussia, being at this period attacked by the yet unconverted inhabitants of that country, an army of German crusaders marched to their assistance, and the pagans being defeated, the Prussian generals were baptized; and the town of Konigsberg was founded by the Teutonic Knights. William, king of the Romans, endeavouring to reduce the Friezlanders, who had revolted, perished in the attempt. After the death of this prince, several assemblies were holden in vain for the election of a successor, because no prince would undertake so weighty a charge: at length, the imperial crown was by one party offered to Richard, duke of Cornwall, brother to Henry the third, king of England, and by him accepted. On the other hand, another party, headed by the archbishop of Triers, chose Alphonso, king of Castile; who also accepted the honour, but was prevented by his war with the Moors from coming into Germany; whither his rival repaired, and was crowned with his empress at Aix-la-Chapelle by the archbishop of Cologne. Still the largesses which he distributed to secure his election were such, that they left him unprovided with what was necessary to maintain the imperial dignity, and he was at length obliged to abandon the empire, and end his days in England. After Richard's abdication, Alphonso exercised, in some points, the imperial authority. Of these competitors the pope took care not to disoblige either, by declaring decidedly for the other; so that, from the departure of Richard to the election of Rodolphus, the empire may be said to have been without an head, and was involved in all the miseries of anarchy. During this interregnum occurred the death of young Conradin, as noticed in the history of Italy; and on the death of Richard of England, the princes of Germany, tired of their sufferings, without attending to the remonstrances of Alphonso, raised to the imperial throne Rodolph, count of Hapsburg; who, on receiving advice of his election, repaired to Frankfort, where the diet had assembled, and was thence, by all the princes, conducted to Aix-la-Chapelle, and crowned. His first care was to restore the security of the publick roads, by just severities on robbers and assassins: he then, in right of his son Albert, who had married an half-sister of

A. D. 1273.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Conradin, wrested from those, who had wrongfully possessed themselves of it, the rich inheritance of that prince, consisting of Alsace and part of Suabia ; and then he obtained from the pope the confirmation of the imperial dignity ; Alphonso being at last persuaded to renounce his claim to it. But in Ottocarus, king of Bohemia, who had unjustly possessed himself of Austria, Stiria, Carniola, and Carinthia, and protested against his election, Rodolph found a still more obstinate opponent, whom, after humbling several smaller adventurers, he was obliged to reduce by force, and at length overcame in a battle in which the usurper fell. After which the emperor bestowed the government of Stiria, Carinthia, and Carniola, on his own eldest son Albert, whom he invested, too, with the dukedom of Austria ; as he did Rodolphus, another of his sons, with the county of Suabia : he reduced also Henry, duke of Bavaria, to submit to the terms which he dictated. Neither did he go into Italy to terminate his differences with the papacy, but settled them all by his ambassadors. Notwithstanding all the care this emperor took to re-establish tranquillity in Germany, discord still reigned in many cities, and even religious communities ; scarce a parish but felt the miseries of civil war. The different processions engaged each other in the streets ; canons fought with their own bishops, and the burghers, as well as noblemen, decided the most trivial disputes by single combat.* About this period Gregory the tenth made an ineffectual effort to set on foot another crusade ; and Hungary was laid waste by the Cumani, a savage people inhabiting part of Walachia and Moldavia. Rodolphus, with the consent of the states, ordained, that the German language only should be used in all law proceedings, and in the diets ; and, after quelling some more refractory members of the empire, he married his daughter Judith to Wincellaus, king of Bohemia, and confirmed by patent the honorary post of cup-bearer, attached to the crown of Bohemia. Ladislaus the third, king of Hungary, having been slain by the Cumani, and the succession to his crown being disputed, Andrew the Venetian, grandson of king

* It is observed, that this absurd and very criminal custom so prevailed, that it contributed as much as all the wars to the depopulation of the empire.

Andrew, got possession of it. After some more exertions to secure a regular administration of justice in his dominions, and having in vain demanded of a diet, that his son Albert should be created king of the Romans, Rodolphus died in the seventy-third year of his age. An interregnum of nine months now succeeded in the empire, in which several civil disturbances occurred; and particularly an association of the nobles of Austria and Stiria against their duke Albert, on account of his oppressive administration; in which receiving powerful support, the duke was compelled to give them satisfaction. At length the princes of the empire assembling at Frankfort were, by the intrigues of Gerhard, elector of Mentz, induced to proclaim Adolphus of Nassau, the poorest prince that ever ascended the imperial throne, but deemed the greatest warrior of his time. After whose short reign of seven years, employed in contests with different nobles, and marked by a merciless persecution of the Jews, the empire again reverted to the House of Hapsburg, in the person of Albert, the son of Rodolphus, in whose favour Adolphus was first deposed, and by whom he was afterwards slain in battle. Albert A. D. 1298. the first having been crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, and finding the pope not favourably disposed to him, entered into an alliance with Philip, king of France, and, in consequence of a contract of marriage between his own eldest son Rodolphus, and Philip's daughter Blanche, engaged to bestow on the former and his heirs, as hereditary fiefs, the duchies of Austria and Stiria; and assigned, as the dowry of the princess, the county of Alsace and the territory of Fribourg, to be possessed for ever by her husband and his heirs: whence this seems to be the æra at which the duchy of Austria, and the landgraviate of Alsace, became the hereditary countries of the House of Hapsburg. But against this alliance the ecclesiastical electors protested; and the pope, when informed of the intended nuptials, and requested to confirm the election of Albert, behaved like a madman. After a short contest with John d'Avenes, count of Holland, little to his own honour, the emperor proceeded to reclaim the imposts, which the ecclesiastical electors and other princes had converted to their own use; and, on their refusal to restore them, summoned the electors to appear before a diet at Mentz. But this history

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Poland
during the
13th century.

being now arrived at the end of the thirteenth century in Germany, the statement of the consequences of this dispute must be deferred, and the story of Poland resumed.

After Mieczlaus the Old had, by imposing on the mother of Lechus the sixth, re-seated himself on the throne of Poland, she, perceiving that she had been duped, formed a party against him ; in the contest with which, however, he at length gained the upper hand ; yet did not long enjoy his success, falling a victim to his own intemperance. Highly inconsistent are the testimonies concerning his successor, and it is certain only, that Lechus was in the end restored ; but that only to see his kingdom attacked by the Tartars, who, after defeating an united army of Poles and auxiliary Russians, retired, leaving the country a prey to famine and pestilence, occasioned by the ravages they had perpetrated. Lechus himself was soon after murdered, by a conspiracy planned by Swentopelus, a palatine ; and a civil war ensuing, Poland became a scene of contest between a number of petty princes. The two principal of these, who at length contested the ducal throne, were Conrade, and Henry, duke of Silesia ; of whom the latter at last, after a sanguinary contest, assumed without further opposition the title of duke of Poland, obtained possession of Cracow, the capital, and enjoyed both to the end of his life. Neither after these contests for the sovereignty of Poland were the Tartars idle ; they again ravaged the country with the most enormous barbarity, pillaged and burnt the capital, and extended their devastations into Silesia, Moravia, and even Hungary ; the king of which they defeated with vast carnage, and destroyed more than an hundred thousand of his subjects. While Poland was in this situation, Boleslaus, surnamed the Chaste, the son of Lechus the sixth, was raised to the throne, but opposed by his uncle Conrade, which gave rise to a civil war, that proved unfavourable to the last, who yet ceased not to harass his nephew. After a long reign Boleslaus died, having, with the consent of the people, adopted Lechus, duke of Cujavia. This prince, who was surnamed the Black, passed a reign replete with carnage : first, he was attacked by the Russians, whom he defeated ; then by his own subjects, instigated by the clergy, who, for his imprisoning the bishop of Cracow,

obtained from the pope a sentence of excommunication against him, in consequence of which he was compelled to flee to the Hungarians for assistance, who restored him to his throne; again attacked by the Russians and their barbarous allies, he performed his last exploit in their defeat, and, dying without issue, left his crown a subject of further contest. The struggle now made for the sovereignty of Poland, though violent, was short; and Henry, duke of Breslaw, proved the successful competitor; but about five years after his election died, as some allege, by poison; leaving the duchies of Cracow and Sandomir to Premislaus, duke of Great Poland, and his own relation, who was the second sovereign of that name. He, perceiving how much of its splendour Poland had lost since its princes had been deprived of the regal dignity, assumed the title of king; but lived not to experience the benefit of the measure, being slain, A. D. 1296. but how or by whom is by no means clear. Neither are the accounts of the succession more decisive: Uladislaus the third, surnamed Locticus, and Premislaus, the son to the late monarch, both appear to have reigned, but in what order remains doubtful. The former was deposed for his vices; and the latter was assassinated, just as his people had begun to taste the fruits of his prudent administration. But as soon as the throne was vacated by whichever of these reigned last, the people unanimously offered it to Wincseslaus, king of Bohemia, who had married Rixa, the daughter of Premislaus. A. D. 1300. His reign commenced with a cruel persecution of Locticus and his adherents, who were compelled to quit the kingdom: he then conferred the principal offices of the state on Bohemians, and garrisoned the fortresses with Bohemian troops. The consequences of these measures must be hereafter related; since the execution of them brings down the history of Poland to the end of the thirteenth century.

As the end of the twelfth, so the beginning of the thirteenth century in Russia passed in feuds and contentions; and these were succeeded by an irruption of a numberless multitude of Tartars, who actually made a conquest of the country, headed by their Khan Batto or Battus, and marked their steps by every act of cruelty. Most of the Russian princes, the great duke himself, George Smolensko, included, were made prisoners, and racked to death. Con-

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
13th century.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

ditions the most mortifying were imposed on the vanquished nation : by one the nature of the rest may be judged of: their sovereigns, who were themselves to present the annual tribute to the Tartarian ambassador on horseback, were also to offer him milk to drink, and if any drops of it fell down, were to lick them up ;—a badge of servitude which continued nearly two hundred and sixty years. In the mean time the succession in the grand duchy ran as follows: George Sevoloditz above mentioned, was succeeded by his brother Michael Sevoloditz Zernigouski, who lost his life in opposing the Tartars: he left three sons, Feodor, Alexander, and Andrews, whose wars with each other proved fatal to them all. A son of Alexander, of the same name, was then by the Tartars placed on the throne; and his son, Daniel Alexandrowitz, removed his court from Wolodimir to Moscow; where he first assumed the title of great duke of Wolodimir and Moscow. Daniel leaving two sons, Gregory, the eldest, ascended the throne; but was soon assassinated by another prince, named Demetri Michaelowitz, whom the Tartars punished with death; and John, the youngest, was made czar. But these several reigns bringing us at least to the close of the century, here the history of Russia must be again suspended.

CHAPTER VIII.

The History of Europe during the fourteenth Century.

THE story of the Eastern empire was last suspended in the reign of Andronicus Palæologus, who, after the decease of his son and colleague Michael, (who died of grief for the death of his younger son, assassinated by mistake by some ruffians in the employment of his own elder brother Andronicus) having in vain endeavoured to reclaim from his profligate courses the same Andronicus, had at length the mortification to have him revolt against him, and compell him to divide the empire with him: the young Andronicus taking for his share Thrace, from Christopolis to Rhegium, with the suburbs of Constantinople, and the elder retaining that city itself, with all the cities and islands in the East; and in the West the whole country between Christopolis and Dyrrachium. But this agreement lasting not long, the war was renewed, and Constantine, the emperor's son, fell by treachery into the hands of his nephew, by whom he was kept in confinement all his life. The emperor, then, meeting with other losses, proposed an accommodation; when the prince was taken into partnership in the empire and formally crowned. In the mean time, favoured by these intestine broils, the Turks enlarged their dominions in Asia, reducing most of the places on the Mæander, as well as the city of Prusa, in Bithynia; which, on the death of Othman, his father Orchanes chose for the seat of the Turkish empire. But to return to Andronicus: this prince, impatient of a partner in the sovereignty, took measures to provoke his grandfather

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in the Eastern
empire
during the
14th century.

A. D. 1316.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1328.

to act against him, and then so successfully pursued hostilities, that he got possession of Constantinople and the person of his grandfather, whom he suffered no longer to have any share in the administration of affairs; but allowed him an annual pension of twenty-four thousand pieces of gold for his maintenance, and the imperial palace for his habitation. Andronicus the third began his reign with such success against the Bulgarians, as reduced them to sue for peace, which the emperor having granted on terms very honourable to himself, he turned his arms against the Turks. But here, though at first prosperous, he at length met with a severe defeat; discouraged at which he returned, wounded too, to Constantinople, when Orchanes pushed his conquests, not only to Nice in Bithynia, but to Abydus; and, by his sons Solyman and Amurath, to several other important places in Asia, and among others to the ancient city of Nicomedia. The younger Andronicus being now seized with a dangerous illness, the elder, either by constraint or of his own accord, retired into a monastery, and continued there until his death. The

A. D. 1332.

emperor, being unable to oppose the progress of the Turks, concluded with them a dishonourable peace, by which they were to hold all the places which they had conquered in Asia, leaving the Romans to enjoy in tranquillity what they had not wrested from them. But this treaty the Turks quickly infringed, by taking advantage of a revolt of the Thessalians to pass into Europe, and ravage the sea-coast: soon after which Andronicus died. John, the

A. D. 1341.

eldest of the two sons which Andronicus left, was on his father's death declared emperor, but, being only nine years old, John Cantacuzenus was appointed his guardian, and protector of the empire; and with great fidelity did he discharge his trust. Still the envy of the patriarch, who had great influence over the dowager-empress Anne, at length prevailed to excite in her such suspicions of the designs of Cantacuzenus, that she impelled him to provide for his own safety by assuming the purple; and all attempts at accommodation with the empress were frustrated by the iniquitous misrepresentations and base intrigues of the patriarch, and Apocaucus, the most inveterate enemy of Cantacuzenus, who by his ill usage of the mother of the last brought her to her grave. After some military

A. D. 1347.

operations, and a base attempt of his enemies to have him taken off by poison, Cantacuzenus, by the assistance of Crales, prince of Maesia, advanced to Constantinople; and being admitted with his army by some of the citizens, the empress was prevailed on to come to an accommodation with him, on condition that he should become colleague with the young prince, have the sole administration for ten years, and then reign jointly with him; and, to cement this union, Cantacuzenus gave his daughter Helena in marriage to young Palæologus, and caused her to be crowned as well as himself. For ten years did this emperor govern so equitably, that his most inveterate enemies found nothing to lay to his charge, but the friendly correspondence which he preserved with Orhanes, the Turkish sultan, to whom he had, certainly not laudably, married one of his daughters. In the sixth year of his administration the Genes of Galata, who were then become very powerful, taking umbrage at the emperor's refusal to permit them to enlarge their suburb, waged open war with him, gaining several advantages at sea, and wresting from him some of the islands in the Archipelago. When Palæologus came to age to partake in the government, a diffidence of Cantacuzenus was by intrigue raised in his breast to that height, that a civil war at length broke out between them, in which the latter was successful: yet he consented to a peace; and, on its being signed, voluntarily resigned his power, and became a monk. But his son Matthew, who had been declared emperor, continued hostilities, in which he was utterly defeated, and afterwards taken prisoner; yet on renouncing his claim to the empire, Palæologus restored him to his liberty. During these civil commotions, the Turks led by Solyman gained their first fixed settlement in Europe, by taking Gallipolis: quickly after which Orhanes dying, Amurath, his son and successor, pursuing the conquests which Solyman had commenced, made himself master of several strong holds in Thrace, and, at length, of Adrianople itself, and after subduing all the country, made that city the seat of his empire in Europe. Successive and rapid revolutions now took place among the Greeks: Andronicus, the emperor's eldest son, having conspired against his father, was deprived of his sight and confined; but, after two years, by the assistance of the

A. D. 1357.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1392.

Genoese of Galata, made his escape, and being admitted into Constantinople, caused himself to be proclaimed emperor, and threw his father and two brothers into the prison where he had been detained. But they also after two years made their escape, when Andronicus, to avoid a civil war, magnanimously restored them to the throne; on which they ceded to him Selymbria and several other places. In the mean time, Amurath the Turk being treacherously slain, his son Bajazet succeeded him, and pursuing the conquests begun by his predecessors, added Thessaly, Macedonia, Phocis, Peloponnesus, Mysia, and Bulgaria, to his dominions. Elated with his success, he treated the Greek emperor, who was unable to oppose him, as his vassal, and required his son Manuel to attend on him. Soon after the unhappy emperor died, leaving no other son than Manuel; who withdrawing privately from the court of Bajazet, so exasperated that tyrant, that he ravaged the country about Constantinople with fire and sword, and invested that city itself by sea and land. Manuel in his distress applied to the Western princes, and a very large army was sent to his assistance, under the conduct of Sigismund, king of Hungary, and John, count of Nevers, who were at length totally defeated by Bajazet, and their camp and baggage and a vast number of prisoners taken, among whom were the count of Nevers and three hundred officers of distinction; all of whom, the count himself and five others excepted, were, after being outrageously insulted, put to death in presence of the ferocious monster. After this victory, finding the people of Constantinople determined to resist to the last, Bajazet entered into an agreement with John, the son of Andronicus, to set him on the throne, if he would cede to him Constantinople, and remove the seat of his government to Peloponnesus. This agreement made, Bajazet offered the citizens of Constantinople to abstain from farther hostilities, if they would expell Manuel, and place his nephew on the throne, to which, as the son of his elder brother, he had a prior claim. By this proposal the city was divided into two factions: to obviate the evils of which Manuel informed his nephew, then in the Turkish camp, that he would resign to him the sovereignty, on condition of being at liberty to retire with his family whither he thought proper. To this

condition John readily acceding, was admitted into the city and conducted to the imperial palace; when his uncle sailed for Venice. John then being solemnly crowned, was by Bajazet reminded of their agreement, and urged to execute the principal article of it by yielding to him Constantinople: but the citizens refusing to permit this, the Turk renewed the siege with greater fury than before. But when he had reduced the place to extremity, he received advice, that the victorious Tartar, Tamerlane, had turned his arms against him, and was preparing to break into Syria; alarmed at which, Bajazet raised the siege of Constantinople, and passing the Hellespont marched as quickly as he could to Prusa, which he had appointed for the general rendezvous of his forces; and where we must leave him, being arrived in the history of the Greek empire at the end of the fourteenth century.

The arrogance of Boniface the eighth was manifested not only in his conduct toward the emperor, but in that to the king of France; who, to repress the boldness of his legate, committed him as a prisoner to the custody of the archbishop of Narbonne: informed of which, the pope by a nuncio not only ordered the king to release him, but declared, that the pope was sovereign of the whole world, both in temporals and spirituals, and that to think otherwise was heresy. The king of France, unappalled by these groundless pretensions, decreed, in a parliament, that no ecclesiastick should go to Rome, nor any gold or silver be carried out of his kingdom. During this dispute, Boniface interfering in the election of a king of Hungary, and his legate behaving imperiously, the most powerful party excommunicated and banished the pope and all his adherents. And in France not only the king and nobles treated the papal assumptions with contempt and severity, but the bishops expostulated by letter with Boniface, on his claiming any sovereignty over France; and when he published the famous Bull of the two Swords, it was answered by several treatises published in France, demonstrating that the Church had no authority in temporal affairs. Though, to gain further support in his contest with France, the pope consented to acknowledge the validity of the election of the emperor Albert, he could not prevail on the king to assent to the terms of accommodation; and there-

Occurrences
in Italy
during the
14th century.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

fore at length excommunicated him and laid his kingdom under an interdict, absolving his subjects from their allegiance, and ordering the emperor to take possession of France. But while Boniface was proceeding thus loftily, the cardinals Colonna and William Nogaret, one of the king's counsellors, passed into Italy; and, with the assistance of three or four hundred French horse, which had come into Italy with the count of Valois, and which Nogaret privately hired, surprized the pope at Anagni, and using him with great indignity, menaced him with deposition by a council at Lyons. But when they had detained him for three days, and plundered his very great treasures, the people of Anagni rescued him, and expelled the French: but such was his vexation, that on his return to Rome a few days after, he was seized with a fever, of which he died. The choice of the conclave next fell on Nicholas Bocasini, bishop of Ostia, who took the name of Benedict. He soon had the satisfaction of being acknowledged by the patriarch of the Eastern Christians the chief pastor of all Christians. After a vain effort to reconcile the contending factions in Italy, and annulling all the acts of his predecessor against the king of France, and other endeavours to promote peace among Christians, while intent on animating their princes to a crusade he died, not without suspicion of poison. After near ten months spent in contention between parties of the cardinals, the archbishop of Bourdeaux was, by agreement with the king of France, chosen pope, and assumed the name of Clement the fifth, and sending for the cardinals to Lyons he was consecrated in that city. Like his predecessor, Clement endeavoured to promote a crusade; to which his holiness added an effort to recover Constantinople from the Greeks with the assistance of the Venetians. In the hope of quieting the troubles of Italy, he appointed a legate for that country, and the adjacent islands, with a most ample commission; and this prelate, cardinal Neapoleo Ursini, being very roughly treated by the people of Bologna, both laid the city under an interdict, and deprived it of the privilege of teaching, on which the greater part of its professors removed to Padua. At the instance of the king of France, this pope published a bull for the suppression of the Knights Templars, who were accused of horrid crimes, and doubtlessly had been guilty of

A. D. 1303.

A. D. 1304.

great enormities, but the wealth of whose order was said to be a principal motive with the king for desiring the suppression of it, which led to the confiscation of their effects. Clement having moved his court to Avignon, a city of Provence, then under the dominion of the king of Sicily, excommunicated the Venetians for having taken possession of Ferrara, which belonged to the Church. But the Venetians not yielding to his spiritual arms, he sent against them an army of French crusaders, commanded by a cardinal-deacon, who defeated the Venetians, and recovered the city in dispute. About the same time Charles, king of Naples, dying, Clement, on receiving the homage of his eldest son Robert, crowned him king of both Sicilies, creating him also vicar-general of the patrimony of the Church in Italy, and count of Romaniola. In the following year the Knights Hospitallers, who had retired to Cyprus on their expulsion from Palæstine, drove the Turks out of the island of Rhodes, and established themselves there. The emperor Henry arriving in Italy with a considerable army, behaved with great moderation between the contending factions of the Guelphs and Ghibelines, yet was placed in great danger of his life by a sedition at Milan, where he had received the iron crown : on the news of which sedition the Guelphs revolted openly from him. The pope having granted to five cardinals a commission to crown the emperor at Rome, assembled a council at Vienne, in which, among other things, he, at the instance of Raymund Lully, ordained, that the Hebrew, Arabic, Chaldaic, and Greek languages, should be publicly taught at Paris, Oxford, Bologna, Salamanca, and wherever the pope should keep his court. The emperor having, notwithstanding the opposition of the Guelphs and Robert, king of Sicily, taken possession of part of the city of Rome, was there crowned ; and being prevented by the Germans returning home from attacking the king of Naples, he turned the other way, and ravaged the territories of Florence. After which resuming his former purpose against Naples, he was on his march seized with the fever of which he died ; though some historians positively assert, that he was poisoned by a consecrated wafer, administered to him by a Dominican friar, bribed by the Florentines, and others of the Guelph faction. Neither did Clement long survive

A. D. 1312.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1314.

him ; since, after publishing a bull*condemning the emperour's sentence against Robert, he was seized with a complication of distempers, under which he died. His decease was followed by a dissension in the conclave, when one party thought proper to set fire to the building, and the conflagration extending to great part of the city, obliged them to disperse ; neither did they re-assemble for more than two years ; during which the Pisans made themselves masters of Lucca, and Maffeo Visconti expelling the archbishop from Milan assumed the title of prince of that city. The cardinals delaying to elect a pope, Lewis, king of France, sent his brother to Lyons ; who, having prevailed with them to come to that city, confined them until they finished the election ; by which at length the cardinal-bishop of Porto was raised to the pontificate, under the name of John the twenty-first, who fixed his residence at Avignon, and renewed all the assumptions of his predecessor Clement ; declaring the emperours to be vassals of the see of Rome, and that during an interregnum the pope had from the plenitude of his power, as successor of St. Peter and vicar of Christ, authority to dispose absolutely of all affairs of the empire. In consequence of which claim he granted the vicariate of the empire in Italy to Robert, king of Naples, and cited the two competitors for the imperial crown to justify their claims before his tribunal. Hugh, bishop of Cahors, being accused of having engaged in a conspiracy against the lives of the pope and cardinals, was, on conviction and degradation, delivered over to the secular arm, and first partly flayed, and then burnt alive. A sect of the Franciscans having, in contempt of the papal dispensations, proposed to live up to the rigour of their founder's rules, brought on themselves various accusations ; and, in consequence of a bull issued by John, were persecuted in Sicily, and four of them burnt at Marseilles. But Maffeo Visconti supporting them at Milan, the pope renewed the sentence of excommunication against him ; on which a league was formed against his holiness and his party by several chiefs of the Ghibelines ; hostilities were renewed in Italy with great fury, and Genoa and its territories were, both by friends and foes, most pitiaibly ravaged for years. John finding his spiritual arms took little effect on the Ghibelines, sent Philip of Valois into Lombardy with a body

of French troops, but the superiority of the enemy induced him to return to France; a circumstance which gave additional courage to the Ghibelines. To strengthen himself, therefore, against them, his holiness promised to confirm the election of Frederick, duke of Austria, to the empire, if he would assist the Guelphs with an army. Accepting this offer, Frederick sent his brother into Italy with a body of horse; but on its being represented to him, that he was thus acting against his own interest, he recalled him. The affairs of the Ghibelines suffered something by the death of Maffeo Visconti, but their arms soon became again successful, though the pope thundered against the emperor a bull, declaring him deprived of all sovereignty, and summoning him to appear at Avignon. Informed of this sentence, the emperor published a manifesto, in which it is observable, that he hesitated not to assert, that the pope was Anti-Christ, and had the spirit of Satan, in allowing himself to be worshipped. The Romans, two years after this, having expelled their nobility, and appointed a governor and council, sent to the pope a request that he would reside among them; but this he declined, on account of the journey and his age; but to obviate the designs of the emperor he appointed cardinal John d'Orsini, legate in Tuscany, Campania, and Sardinia, and created James Sabellus and Stephen Colonna consuls at Rome. The emperor Lewis soon after entered Italy, held a council, in which the pope and his adherents were excommunicated, and advancing to Milan was there crowned with the iron crown. From the Romans he received an invitation to their city, while the pope pronounced a definitive sentence of deposition against him, and ordered the electors to proceed to a new election. His legate entered Rome by surprise, but was the next morning expelled with great loss to the forces he had with him. The emperor with his army, quickly after reaching Rome, gained the good-will of the Romans by his conduct and promises, and was there crowned: after which, in a solemn assembly, John was declared, for various crimes, deposed from the pontificate, and all his adherents capitally condemned; and, with the consent of the Romans, another pope, Peter di Corbaria, a Franciscan, was elected by the name of Nicholas the fifth; who made a promotion of seven

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1334.

cardinals, sent legates into different provinces of Christendom, and confirmed the deposition of his first holiness. Lewis meeting with no success against the king of Naples, the fickle and unprincipled Romans made a longer continuance in their city unsafe for him; and on his departure they hailed with loud acclamations the legate of John, who annulled all his acts. In the next year the March of Ancona, and the whole patrimony of the Church, returned to their obedience to the see of Rome, and the city of Milan submitted to the pope; and the emperour, finding his interest in that country daily declining, quitted Italy; and John offering great rewards for the apprehension of the anti-pope, on being discovered at Pisa he threw himself on the clemency of the pope, who, on his begging absolution with a rope about his neck, obtained it from John, but was honourably confined in the palace until his death. The king of Bohemia entering Italy with an army as vicar of the empire, by conquering the greater part of Lombardy alarmed the emperour, as well as his opponents the Guelphs, but was quickly recalled into Bohemia: yet he afterwards returned, and joined his troops to those of the legate. But the Guelphs and Ghibelines having formed a confederacy, defeated him, on which he abandoned his conquests, and evacuated Italy. The emperour having resolved to call a general council for the deposition of the pope, ere he could execute his purpose John died. This pontiff added a third crown to the pápal tiara.* A few days after the death of John, the cardinals elected for his successor James Fournier, a Cistercian monk, who took the name of Benedict the twelfth. Under his pontificate the wars between the two factions in Italy still continued, and the imperial authority being disregarded, each powerfull prince attacked his weaker neighbour for the enlarge-

* The history of the triple crown appears to be this: the first crown worn by the popes was sent by Clovis, king of France, as a present to St. John de Lateran, and was placed by pope Hormisdas, about the year 515, on his own head, above the cap he usually wore. His successors till Boniface 8, used the single crown; but that pope, on the occasion of his disputes with Philip the Fair, assumed a double crown, to signify his claim to both spiritual and temporal authority. At last John added a third crown to the tiara, which has been worn by all his successors.

ment of his own territory; while no reconciliation was effected between the pope and the emperor, because his holiness insisted on the abdication of the latter. Yet an embassy from several bishops of Germany pressed Benedict to accommodate their differences; and, on the failure of this application, the German princes published an edict declaring, that whoever was chosen king of the Romans by the majority of the electors, was thereby really king or emperor of the Romans without the approbation of the pope. The Sicilians, since the death of Frederick, having refused to return to obedience to the king of Naples, his holiness laid that island under an interdict. Next year he gave the investiture of Sardinia and Corsica to the king of Arragon. Azo Visconti dying at Milan, his brother Luchino succeeded to the principality; and, the imperial power being now disregarded in Italy, he was reconciled to the pope, and purchased of him the title of vicar of the empire: a step which was followed by other princes of Lombardy, whose usurpations his holiness sanctioned for certain sums of money. Two years after this sale of what did not belong to him, Benedict died at Avignon: the conclave supplied A. D. 1349. the place of the deceased pope by Peter Proger, a Benedictine monk, who assumed the name of Clement the sixth; and, declining an invitation of the Romans to remove to their city, followed the hostile steps of his predecessor against the emperor. Lewis, alarmed at his proceedings, sent an embassy which offered the most submissive concessions; but the arrogant pontiff insisting on several other articles, the princes of the empire took up the matter in a diet, and declared, that they would never agree to them. Irritated at this opposition, his holiness began to treat with the king of Bohemia and some other princes to proceed to the election of another emperor. About the same time he presumed to create Lewis, count of Clermont, king of the Canary islands, on condition of his converting the inhabitants to what was then called Christianity. He sent, too, a legate à latere into Italy, to support the faction of the Church in that kingdom, and with more justice excommunicated the murderers of Andrew, king of Naples, and gave a full commission to some counts to punish them, whether they proved lay or clergymen. The king of Bohemia and his son Charles, marquis of Moravia, now came

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to Avignon, and negociated for the German empire with his holiness, who published a bull deposing Lewis, and absolving his subjects from their allegiance; and having formed with Charles a treaty by which the authority of the empire in Italy was destroyed, and that of the popes established, recommended him as a candidate for the empire, and he was accordingly chosen emperor by four out of the seven electors, and Clement published a bull confirming the election. During these things, a violent but brief revolution took place at Rome: one Nicholas Gabrini di Rienzo, who had been a publick scribe, assembling the Romans in the capitol, so eloquently contrasted their present state with their ancient liberty, as to induce them to declare him tribune of the people, and confer on him the supreme power. Having, by the death of some, and the exile of others of the nobility, established his authority, and by his regard to justice made himself respected, several cities of Italy promised him their assistance, and even foreign princes sought his alliance; while the pope himself commended his proceedings, and exhorted him to govern Rome in his name. But, intoxicated with success, Nicholas quickly entered on measures so extravagant as ruined his character; and the banished nobles entering the city by surprize, he escaped, and, after wandering some time about the mountains, was taken, carried to Avignon, and there detained a prisoner. During this revolution the emperor Lewis was killed by a fall from his horse: and, soon after, the king of Hungary entered Italy to take possession of the kingdom of Naples, in defiance of the menaces of Clement; to whom Jane, the queen of Naples, fled, and sold him the city of Avignon and its territory for eighty thousand golden florins. The plague raged at this time in a violent degree in Italy, and other countries of Europe, and the Jews were for two years persecuted and murdered in Germany and Poland, without distinction of age or sex, as the causes of this calamity, though the pope published a bull in their favour. He published another, too, appointing a jubilee at Rome the ensuing year, and promising a full remission of sins to those penitents who should visit the churches of St. Peter, St. Paul, and St. John de Lateran. When this jubilee commenced, so great were the numbers of people that assembled, that there were continually from a

million to twelve hundred thousand foreigners in Rome. On these the Romans practised all manner of extortion; and because the cardinal-legate dispensed with the time of their visitation, he was attacked in the streets, and afterwards poisoned, with several of his relations, on his road to Campania. Such was at that time the state of apostasy from the doctrines of the Gospel, in that which called itself the capital of Christendom! The archbishop of Milan, who, on the decease of his brother Luchino, was become both spiritual and temporal sovereign in that city, having seized Bologna, Clement, on his neglecting to appear at Avignon, excommunicated him and his adherents, and to counteract his application to the Ghibelines, endeavoured to form a defensive league with the cities of Lombardy and Tuscany. The wealth gained by the Romans in the year of the jubilee, occasioned great disturbances in that city during the following year; and in the next Visconti of Milan purchased a peace with his holiness, probably induced to it by fear of the arrival of the emperour Charles in Italy, since he had before treated the pope with the greatest contempt.* By this treaty his holiness having abandoned the cities which he had engaged in a league against Visconti, they entered into alliance with the emperour; a few months after which Clement died. Stephen Albert, bishop of Ostia, was by the cardinals next raised to the papal throne, and assumed the name of Innocent the sixth. This prelate seems to have begun with an attempt to reform his court, and induce the cardinals to correct their luxurious lives: the ecclesiastical state in Italy he found wholly

A. D. 1352.

* A letter, supposed to be written by this prelate, and addressed to the pope, was found in the Consistory. It was dated from the middle of Hell, and, in the name of the prince of darkness, thanked his vicar the pope, and his counsellors and cardinals, for their great services, exhorting them to a steady perseverance in their present course, that they might be entitled to a full reward in his kingdom. Then mentioning the particular vices of each of them, he chid them for allowing their doctrine to differ from their life, and exhorted them for the future to teach as they lived. Now if the reader will attentively consider the last part of the second verse of the thirteenth chapter of the book of the Revelation, he will, it is conceived, see some reason to doubt, whether the archbishop's idea of the pope being the vicar of the devil, was not derived from that passage of Holy Writ.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

usurped by different princes, and the city of Rome a scene of confusion; Francis Baroncelli having expelled the nobility by the people's favour, assumed the titles of tribune the second and Roman consul, and invited the Ghibelines to an alliance. Almost all Italy was desolated by intestine wars; a new league had been formed against Visconti; the Venetians and Genoese were waging war with all the animosity of rivals in gain: an army of banditti had been got together by a friar Moriale, a Provençal, and Knight Hospitaller, and their numbers continually increasing, they formed themselves into a military society, and put garrisons into several cities they had taken. To oppose Baroncelli at Rome, Innocent sent with his legate the former tribune Nicholas Rienzo, whom the people received with great joy; and Baroncelli, the late favourite, being put to death, they made their submission to the Church: yet many months had not passed ere they revolted against Rienzo, and put him to death. The emperor Charles having entered Lombardy with a small army, received the iron crown at Milan, and afterwards the imperial at Rome; but it appearing that he had totally abandoned all the rights of the empire in Italy, he became so odious to the Italians for his pusillanimity, that he soon retired into Germany. The banditti above mentioned, which had acquired the name of the grand company of Ancona, continued their depredation under the command of the count di Lando, whom they had made their leader, in the room of their first chief Moriale, who had been put to death at Rome by the tribune Rienzo. And at the same time the pope's court at Avignon was over-run with disorders; one cardinal having raised a tumult about precedency, in which some persons were slain, and others having taken some young married women from their husbands by force, and publickly kept them. In the mean time Italy was devastated, not only by the wars which the Visconti maintained against the other princes of Lombardy, but by a destructive invasion of the Turks, and indeed similar scenes of war in the country, and a repetition of similar revolutions in the city of Rome filled up the remaining years of the papacy of Innocent the sixth; who, after having filled the pontifical throne ten years, died at Avignon. A few days after his decease, William Grimoaldi, a

Benedictine, was chosen to succeed him, who took the name of Urban the fifth, and never deviated from the austerities of his order; and after he had reigned for five years, in which he was by his legate successfull against the Visconti, he removed his residence to Rome. The pope wanting the imperial assistance against Bernabo Visconti, Charles entered Italy, and, uniting his forces with those of the pope, soon induced Bernabo to sue for peace; which he obtained, on agreeing to evacuate all the places belonging to the see of Rome, and some other conditions. The emperour had afterwards an interview with Urban; and returning with him to Rome, led his horse by the bridle to St. Peter's church. Urban next published a bull, forbidding all laymen to punish clergymen. After this he was flattered with the Greek emperour's appearing at Rome, and professing all the articles of the faith of that Church: the year after which, he returned to Avignon, where he soon died. The cardinals unanimously chose for the next pope cardinal Peter Roger de Maumont, who took the name of Gregory the eleventh. His territories being attacked by the Visconti, he assembled a considerable army, and gave the command of it to Amadeus, count of Savoy: he then succeeded in terminating the disputes between the king of Trinacria and the queen of Naples, and afterwards applied himself to promote a league of the Christian princes against the Turks, and on the other hand to extirpate heresy. The army of Gregory was so successfull against the Visconti, that they again proposed an accommodation, and one was concluded.* While the pope was thinking of transferring his residence to Rome, a general revolt of the cities subject to the see of Rome took place, occasioned by the tyranny of the papal legates, and encouraged by a war commenced by the Florentines,

A. D. 1370.

* This year died the poet Petrarch, who was a native of Arezzo, in Tuscany; his parents having been driven from Florence by the Guelphs. After studying the law for seven years, he retired to Vacluse, in the neighbourhood of Avignon, where he first saw the subject of so much of his poetry, Laura. After having received the laurel in the capitol, he was appointed archdeacon of Parma: at Milan he was made a counsellor of state, and at Padua received a canonry. He died at Arqua, in the seventieth year of his age.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

who complained that they had prevented their city from being supplied with provisions, and that the pope's commander, John Hawkwood, had ravaged their territory. Having declared, that all who revolted from the Church should be received into their league, not only Bologna and Perugia, but more than sixty cities in Romagna, Campania, the March, and the duchy of Spoleto, concluded an alliance with Florence and the Visconti. To counteract this league, Gregory, having excommunicated the Florentines, to the great detriment of their commerce, raised an army, and sent it under the command of a cardinal into Italy, and afterwards removed himself to Rome. But his presence did not contribute, as he had hoped, to the repression of the disorders: the people of Rome soon resumed the government of their city in opposition to the pope. More cities engaged in the league against him; the Florentines set his interdict at nought; and it was only after solicitations that he prevailed on Bernabo Visconti to enter into a negotiation. While the authority of the pope met with such resistance in Italy, the doctrines of Wickliff in England, and the opposition made to it in Germany, contributed to shake its stability in those countries.* But while Gregory was striving to obtain assistance for the Church, he was cut off by death. The decease of Gregory was followed by a forced election of Bartholomew, archbishop of Bari, the mob of Rome having compelled the cardinals to elect an Italian, and he assumed the name of Urban the sixth. But the French cardinals had no sooner retired from Rome, under pretence of avoiding the heats, than taking troops into their pay, they required him to resign his new dignity, and on his refusal, published a sentence against him as an apostate and Anti-Christ, and chose for pope cardinal Robert, under the title of Clement the seventh. The schism thus commenced continued upwards of forty years: their holinesses persecuted one another with reciprocal anathemas, and proceeded even to the use of temporal arms; but Urban's party being the strongest in his native country Italy, Clement

A. D. 1378.

* The people of Florence, too, had protected a man who explained the Apocalypse, that strong testimony against the bishop of Rome, and other parts of Scripture, in the vulgar tongue.

embarked with his cardinals for France, and was joyfully received at Avignon. The queen of Naples having declared for Clement, Urban excommunicated her; and prevailed on the king of Hungary to send Charles of Durazzo with an army to take possession of her dominions; which, after a successful battle, in which he took prisoners both the queen and her husband, he did; his holiness supplying funds for these military operations by melting down and selling a great many gold and silver chalices, crosses, and images of saints. Charles, whom Urban had previously crowned king of Sicily, having caused Jane, queen of Naples, to be murdered, the duke of Anjou, whom she had adopted as her son and heir, was at Avignon crowned by Clement king of Sicily, and afterwards leading a numerous army into Italy was joined by many Neapolitan nobles, and took several towns in Apulia and Calabria; but his troops were soon so reduced as to be inferior to those of Charles. Urban having repaired to Naples, to solicit the performance of Charles's promises, was there imprisoned by the king he had made; yet this difference was quickly healed, and during his residence at Naples his holiness published a crusade against the duke of Anjou, who by his death soon left his competitor in quiet possession of the kingdom of Naples. The very little respect with which this last treated the pope, soon produced a rupture between them, which was fomented by cardinal Reali; to whose intrigues were ascribed a conspiracy among the cardinals, both against the dignity and life of the pope; which, however, being discovered, six or seven of them were seized, and put first to the torture, and, after a year's confinement, to death. In the mean time, Urban having exasperated Charles, the king of Naples, by a sentence of excommunication, was forced by that monarch to flee to Genoa, and while he was there resident, his enemy Charles fell by assassination in Hungary; on whose death his widow crowned his son Ladislaus, or Lancelot, then but ten years, king of Naples, while the opposite party did the same to Lewis, the son of the duke of Anjou; nor was it until after much humble solicitation that Urban was prevailed on to support in any manner the party of Ladislaus, and in the mean time the Clementine party gained possession of Naples, and several other advantages. While at Genoa

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1389.

an attempt was made to poison Urban, and his palace was assaulted; when the doge neglecting to punish the assailants, the pope removed from that city. While Clement, by desiring a general council, and declaring himself willing to submit his cause to the determination of that, gained himself many friends. The chiefs of the duke of Anjou's party quarrelling among themselves, his holiness collected a body of horse, and marched towards Naples; but having a fall from his mule, and being deserted by the greater part of his army, he was obliged to return to Rome; where, to prevent an insurrection, he published a bull for a jubilee in the following year: but he died before its celebration, and it was generally supposed of poison. A few days after the death of Urban, the cardinals at Rome chose Peter Tomacello, a cardinal-priest, and a Neapolitan, to succeed him, who took the name of Boniface the ninth, and received a sentence of excommunication from his holiness of Avignon, and repaid the compliment in kind. After the celebration of the jubilee, Boniface sent a cardinal to crown Ladislaus and his wife Constantia king and queen of Sicily and Jerusalem; and he the next year mediated a peace between the Visconti and the Florentines. Soon after this, the indignities he suffered from the Romans obliged him to quit the city, and retire to Perugia; where he granted to the king of Naples a divorce from his queen, *because her mother was reported to have been seduced*. A few months after his return to Rome, his life was endangered by a furious insurrection, quelled at length by the king of Naples, who had some troops there. Clement, the anti-pope, dying, the cardinals at Avignon, notwithstanding the solicitations of the king of France, chose Peter de Luna, who assumed the name of Benedict the thirteenth, and who professing a willingness to resign for the promotion of union, endeavours were made to put an end to the schism by that means; but neither of their holinesses chose to adopt it. At length Boniface declaring that he would resign, if the other would abdicate, the king of France imprisoned the latter; while the first remaining undisturbed, continued to exercise his jurisdiction as usual; and on the Romans requesting him to return, lest, as a new century approached, his absence might diminish the resort of pilgrims to Rome, he refused so to do, unless

the city were governed by a senator of his appointment. To this the people assenting, he appointed Malatesta, of Pesaro, as their senator, who superseded the government of the bannerets, which had subsisted for some time; and on the pope's return to the capital, he fortified the castle of St. Angelo, the capitol, the bridges, and gradually made himself absolute master of the city, and is therefore considered as the first pontiff who entirely transferred the authority from the people. Though no jubilee appears to have been appointed, great numbers in the following year resorted to Rome, where the plague raging, very few returned home; many were robbed, and the women ravished by his holiness's soldiers in the neighbourhood of the city; and with these occurrences, so characteristick of the mother of the abominations of the earth, ended the fourteenth century in Italy.

The war in which the king of France was engaged with that of England, at the close of the last century, was terminated by a definitive treaty early in this. Of the disputes of the former with pope Boniface the eighth, mention has been made in the history of Italy. During the continuance of these, Philip, having determined to unite Flanders to the crown of France, and having a strong party in his favour among the Flemings, who were then excessively rich, possessing well-built and populous cities, sent his brother the count de Valois against Guy de Dampier, count of Flanders, and soon did he reduce him to throw himself on the mercy of the king, which was extended to him by sending him as a prisoner to Compiègne, and appointing a governour over the conquered country. That country, however, revolted; and after much bloodshed, Philip was obliged to release Robert de Bethune, the eldest son of the count of Flanders, and accept of his homage for the county, and a sum of money for the expences of the war. After the papal residence had been removed to Avignon, Philip sent his son Lewis into Navarre, where he took the title of king, as his mother's heir: he completed, too, the marriage between his daughter Isabel, and Edward the second of England. But in his purpose of setting Charles of Valois on the imperial throne, on the death of the emperor Albert, he was counteracted by the pope's urging the electors to accelerate the election, and naming to

Occurrences
in France
during the
14th century..

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

them Henry of Luxemburgh. He succeeded better in re-uniting to the kingdom the city of Lyons, which was at this time a kind of principality under the archbishop, who was induced, partly by promises, and partly by menaces, to surrender it on certain conditions to the crown. Of the suppression of the Knights Templars, another prominent feature of Philip's reign, notice has been already taken; here it need only be added, that in France the persecution was the severest, and the grand master, James Molai, having declared publicly on a scaffold, that all the confessions drawn from them were false, was, with the three great officers of the order, burnt to death by a slow fire behind the wall of the king's garden, and died with great composure. After this, Philip again made an attempt on Flanders, but succeeded no further than obtaining the fortress of Courtray to be delivered into his hands. The distress the French suffered from the exhausted state of the publick treasury, produced discontents and associations, which hurt Philip exceedingly; while the detection of the wives of two of his sons in an adulterous commerce, added so to his vexation, as to bring on a lingering disease, of which he died, in the thirtieth year of his age.* Lewis, surnamed Hutin, king of Navarre, succeeded his father; but such was the ascendancy which his uncle, the count de Valois, had over him, that he in fact governed France, and prevailed to have the king's able minister, De Marigni, put to death, and forced the king to renew the war against the Flemings, raising funds for it by the most iniquitous and oppressive means. The loss of Courtray was the only result of this attack, Lewis dying suddenly, either of drinking water when he was hot, or of poison: he left his queen pregnant; and his brother Philip, count of Poictou, after some resistance from Charles of Valois, who would have seized the government by force, was by the parlia-

A. D. 1314.

A. D. 1316.

* This active monarch fixed the parliament of Paris, which previously attended the royal person: he erected the parliament of Thoulouse, consisting of six ecclesiastical and six lay counsellors. The court of Exchequer in Normandy he regulated after the same plan, and appointed the great days or solemn assizes at Troyes in Champagne. His difference with pope Boniface the eighth led him to call together what were afterwards termed the Assemblies of the States, in which the nobility, clergy, and deputies of the cities sat separately.

ment declared regent. The queen was in due time delivered of a son, who was named John, and proclaimed king, but lived only three weeks, if more than one: on whose death, Philip his uncle, surnamed **Le Long**, was declared king, and crowned at Rheims; in preference to his niece Joan, queen of Navarre, his elder brother's daughter. To obviate disputes about his title, Philip callèd a general assembly at Paris, the members of which swore allegiance to him, and took such other measures, as pacified all who had exerted themselves in behalf of his niece. This prince having taken the cross in the council of Vienne, was with difficulty dissuaded even by the pope from performing his vow. But the Mahometan princes in Africa, alarmed by the show of preparation for that purpose, offered great sums of money to the Jews resident in France if they would poison the wells, fountains, and rivers of that country; and by their instrumentality so extraordinary a mortality was produced, that it would have been scarcely possible to raise an army. The detection of this nefarious measure caused an insurrection of the people against the Jews, in which, under the colour of justice, most extensive and horrid disorders were committed. The efforts of Philip to reform the disorders of the clergy, and ameliorate the condition of his kingdom, obtained him the hatred of the former, and made him little beloved by the nobility; nor did he die without great suspicion of being poisoned, after having completed only the fifth year of his reign. Philip was succeeded in the throne by his brother Charles the fourth, surnamed **Le Bel**, who wishing to get rid of his wife **Blanche** of Burgundy, obtained from the pope a divorce on two reasons, not very substantial; the one, that her mother had been godmother to the king; the second, that **Blanche** herself was related to him in the fourth degree:—so light did Rome make of the marriage bond. The divorce obtained, Charles married **Mary**, a daughter of the emperor **Henry** of Luxemburgh. A short war between France and England next took place; promoted, it was thought, by **Edward's** most abandoned queen. At the suggestion of the pope, Charles next attempted to secure to himself the imperial crown, but without success. Having lost his second queen, he for a third married a daughter of the count of **Evreuse**, though more nearly related than

the wife from whom he had been divorced on account of consanguinity. In this monarch, who reigned but six years, ended the male line of Philip the Fair ; for the queen, who was pregnant at his decease, was delivered only of a daughter. But, previous to that event, the succession itself in reality was disputed between Philip, count de Valois, and Edward the third of England, in a contest for the regency, which was acknowledged to belong to the next heir : and this contest was, by the parliament of France, decided in favour of Philip. On the queen's delivery, Philip assumed the title of king ; and, though Edward asserted his claim, as nephew of the last-deceased monarch, he was crowned without other opposition. One of the new monarch's first measures was, the restoration, by dint of arms, of Lewis, count of Flanders, whom his subjects had expelled : on his return from which expedition, the king of England not answering satisfactorily his summons to do him homage, he seized his revenues in France. The English monarch, however, next year came into France, and rendered to Philip simple homage ; though he afterwards acknowledged, by letters patent, that liege homage was due. But the peace, which might have continued between these two monarchs, was disturbed by the intrigues of Robert of Artois, who had married Philip's sister ; and who, not succeeding in a claim he made on the county of Artois, embarked in such a course of practices as to bring on himself a sentence of banishment, and be at length obliged to retire in disguise into England, where he was kindly received by Edward. The two kings now prepared, under various pretences, for war ; which was at length commenced by Edward in Flanders, who, under the title of vicar-general of the empire, attacked Cambray, of which the French had made themselves master, and which the emperor, though under treaty with France, was resolved should be got out of their hands. The place, however, was not taken ; and Philip so defended the rest of his frontier, that without any impression being made, a truce for a year was agreed on. But this was no sooner expired, than the disputes about the succession to the duchy of Bretagne, between Charles de Blois and John de Montfort, occasioned a renewal of the war ; the wife of the former applying to Edward for assistance, who passed himself into Bretagne

with a considerable force; but, by the skill and prudence of the French commander, made so little progress, that he listened to Clement the sixth, and agreed to a truce for a year, which was afterwards, in a conference at Avignon, prolonged for three more, but was not observed. Since Philip having, at a tournament holden at Paris, caused twelve gentlemen of Bretagne to be seized and put to death, on a mere suspicion of their holding intelligence with John de Montfort or king Edward; this last was so exasperated, that he sent word to Philip that he considered the truce as no longer subsisting, and immediately commenced hostilities in Guienne. In the beginning of this renewed war, things went favourably for Philip; Edward not succeeding in his views on Flanders, and the French king's son, the duke of Normandy, soon recovering most of the places taken by the English in Guienne. But when Edward himself landed in Normandy, rapid was his progress, until he came within twenty miles of Paris; there finding Philip would not accept his challenge to meet him, either in single combat or with his army, he retired into the county of Ponthieu; and, having received fresh invitations from Flanders, began his march towards that country: when Philip, having assembled most of his great vassals and a numerous army, pursued him, and overtaking him near Cressy, a village four leagues beyond Abbeville, a battle was fought, in which the French were defeated with great slaughter; and the next day a large body of militia on their way to join the king were most of them put to the sword. Edward pursued his march to the coast, and laid siege to Calais: hither Philip, after having been joined by his son, the duke of Normandy, and increased his army to an hundred thousand men, followed, but found him too strongly posted to be attacked, and the town was obliged to surrender; when Edward insisted on six of the principal inhabitants being sent to him with halters about their necks for execution, but, by the intercession of the queen, their sentence was changed into exile from Calais; out of which town, indeed, Edward turned all the inhabitants, re-peopling it with his own subjects. The war proving equally unsuccessfull for Philip in other parts, he with great satisfaction accepted the interposition of the pope, by which a truce was made for three years. All the

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1350.

country between Paris and the sea having been laid waste by the war, and that beyond the Loire being in the same condition, a famine next took place, which was succeeded by a plague that swept away multitudes. The dauphin of Viennois having resolved to retire from the world, relinquished his territories to Charles, Philip's grandson, who was the first of the royal blood of France that bare the title of dauphin. Philip himself was so smitten with the beauty and good sense of Blanche, sister to Charles the Wicked, king of Navarre, that he married her, but enjoyed not her society long; for in less than a year he died, after a short illness, in the twenty-third year of his reign. John, duke of Normandy, Philip's eldest son, now ascended the throne of France; and from his character and experience, his subjects had ground to hope for happiness under his reign. An act of severity perpetrated in the stile of his father, by beheading without trial Rodolph de Brienne, constable of France, under the charge of having entered into engagements with the king of England, gave the nobility great uneasiness. The truce between the two kingdoms was interrupted by aggressions on both sides; yet in the following year was renewed: at the same time Charles, king of Navarre, having taken possession of his dominions, returned to the French court, in which he had been bred, and married the princess Joan, the king's daughter. But when on his complaint, that the county of Angoulesme was ruined by the war, the king bestowed on him several places in Normandy, but gave the county to his own favourite, the constable Charles of Spain; so exasperated was the king of Navarre, that he caused that prince to be murdered in his bed, and even defended the crime; and being brought to no punishment, his ambition was inflamed, his party increased, and the king debased. Charles, who was justly called the Wicked, kept up a correspondence with the English, and with all malcontents: the king, informed of these practices, gave the duchy of Normandy to the dauphin, ordering him to seize the estates of the king of Navarre; who on this became so troublesome, that the court thought it right to pacify him at the expense of an hundred thousand crowns. The kings of France and England being inclined to appeal once more to the sword, the French forces in Guienne, through the jealousy reigning

between their commanders, Gaston Phœbus, count of Foix, and the constable of Bourbon, gave the Black Prince but little opposition : while, on the side of Calais, Edward himself declined an engagement ; which protraction of the war obliged John to apply to the states for a supply of money, for which purpose they imposed many taxes, and at the same time appointed a committee of accompts, to superintend the receipt and disbursements of the money granted. The king of Navarre proceeding in his intrigues to the most criminal length, the dauphin, after being convinced by his father that his views were sinister, got him and most of his creatures into his hands, when some of the worst of the last were beheaded, and he himself was imprisoned : but this produced not the hoped-for tranquillity ; since prince Philip of Navarre commencing open hostilities, received succours from the English, and all Normandy fell into the greatest confusion. The prince of Wales profiting by this, advanced into Berry, plundering the country, but on the approach of John with a much superior army, retreated into Poictou ; where the king having surrounded him forced him to an engagement, in which the French were totally defeated, with the loss of six thousand killed, and fifteen thousand prisoners, among the last of whom was the king himself, and his fourth son Philip. This event threw France into great confusion, though the dauphin assumed the title of the king's lieutenant, and as such assembled the states : he found all wanted to dictate to him, and the king of Navarre at the same time making his escape, by haranguing the populace of Paris governed them as he pleased. In consequence of a very just execution ordered by the dauphin, a general insurrection took place in that city ; and the scheme of the malcontents was then, as it has been since, to introduce a democratical government ; but when this was proposed to the other great cities, it was contemptuously rejected. Encouraged by this, the dauphin demanded and obtained from the parliament the title and authority of regent. Great as were the miseries now suffered by the kingdom, an addition was made to them by the ill-timed extravagance and unfeeling luxury of the nobility, who treating with ridicule only the sufferings of their tenants, at length so irritated them, that first some, and then many, formed a design like that seen

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

in our own days of extirpating the nobility, and actually began to put it into execution. But the noblesse of that day, having more spirit than those of later times, stood to their arms, and avenged their own cause severely ; one body under the duke of Orleans cutting off ten thousand of the insurgents, and the king of Navarre putting to the sword twelve thousand. The regent, too, raised an army ; but acting more leniently was admitted into Paris, and the leaders of the king of Navarre's faction in that city were destroyed ; after which that king himself sent a publick defiance to the regent, and openly commenced hostilities. But, when it seemed probable that he would succeed against Paris, he suddenly altered his plan, and made peace with the regent on moderate terms ; yet his brother refusing to accede to this, continued with the English to carry on the war in Normandy. In the mean time king John having concluded a treaty with Edward, which the states refused to ratify, he and his son Philip were placed in close confinement, and the English again invaded France : but after ravaging the country without reducing any place of importance, an extraordinary tempest, by which many of his men and above a thousand horses were slain, made such an impression on Edward, that he entered into negociations which ended in a treaty, under which John was released, after a four years captivity, and in his return to Paris was met by the king of Navarre, who promised to live thenceforth in the strictest friendship with him. To the unpleasant measures which John was obliged to take to raise sufficient to discharge his ransom, were added the still more afflicting circumstances of a plague, and an inundation of disbanded soldiery, who had served in the English army, and now, under officers of their own choice, made a lawless war for plunder, styling themselves the *tard-venus*, or late-comers, because they had but the gleanings of the harvest. The duke of Burgundy dying, John, with but little claim of right, took possession of his duchy, and annexed it to the crown : but soon separated it again, settling it by letters patent on his favourite son Philip and his heirs, declaring this new duke the first peer of France ; thus laying the foundation of the second House of Burgundy. John having gone to Avignon to amuse his mind, it should seem, rather than any thing else, was there persuaded by the

A. D. 1364.

pope to take the cross. At his return home, the escape of his son Lewis, count of Anjou, who had been put as an hostage into the hands of the king of England, and would not return, induced him to go into England himself; where he was honourably received, but made little progress in the final settlement of the peace, and was seized with a lingering disorder, of which he died, in the fourteenth year of his reign. To him succeeded his son Charles the fifth, surnamed the Wise, who applied himself to recover his kingdom from its distracted state, composed affairs in Bretagne, and concluded a treaty of peace with the king of Navarre; but his dominions were still most cruelly harassed by bodies of disbanded soldiers, which uniting together formed larger masses, denominated grand companies. From these locusts Bertrand du Guesclin undertook to deliver the country, by leading them against the Moors in Spain, and Charles readily advanced money for the commencement of the expedition, and Du Guesclin obtained at Avignon, from the fears which the popes and cardinals entertained of such an host as he had led thither, a still larger sum. Charles having thus freed his dominions from one evil, gradually restored the administration of affairs in them; and when he found himself in a condition to renew the war, by his emissaries in the English conquests he inflamed the discontents, which the taxes that the Black Prince was compelled to impose on the inhabitants, had excited, and even summoned that prince, then in a debilitated state, to appear before him, and answer the complaints made against him by his barons; and the contemptuous rejection of this summons served for a plea for renewing the war, with the approbation of both the clergy and nobility of France. Great were the aids which they gave the king, and so successfully did he use them, that, in the course of three years, Bertrand du Guesclin, whom he had recalled from Spain and appointed constable of France, conquered great part of the English possessions. But the arrival of John, duke of Lancaster, with fifty thousand men, gave for some time other employment to the French forces; while a severe famine, followed by a pestilence, which raged equally in Italy, France, and England, disposed the hostile monarchs to listen with more attention to the admonitions of the pope, to send plenipotentiaries to Bruges to treat

of peace ; and here a truce was concluded for one year, and afterwards prolonged for another. In this interval, Charles caused to be registered in the parliament, an edict to fix the majority of the kings of France at their entrance into their fourteenth year, which had been fixed at fourteen complete. On the death of Edward, prince of Wales, the great terrour of France, the truce was renewed for another year ; but a peace Charles seems never to have intended to conclude. As soon as the truce expired, he began hostilities by sea ; and, on hearing of the death of king Edward, his armies attacked the English on all sides, and so successfully, that there soon remained to them in France nothing but Bayonne and Bourdeaux, with their immediate districts, and the fortress of Calais. About this time, the king of Navarre being charged with a design to procure Charles to be poisoned, was deprived of his possessions in Normandy, and his lordship of Montpellier. The king next proceeded against the duke of Bretagne before the peers in parliament, and procured the confiscation of his duchy : but the nobility of it opposed the execution of the sentence, drove the French out of the province, and recalled their duke ; who gained such advantages as produced negociations for peace. The English having recovered some considerable places in Guienne, and the earl of Buckingham having thrown himself, with a strong body of troops, into that province, scarcely could the king receive advice of this, ere he was informed, that his death approached from the stoppage of an issue in his arm ; when, after giving instructions for the government during the minority of his son, and the general line of policy he wished to be pursued, he expired.* Charles the sixth being, at his accession, only twelve years of age, the duke of Anjou, being the eldest of his uncles, was allowed to assume the regency ; and the care of the king's person and education was assigned to the dukes of Burgundy and Bourbon ; the last of which was his maternal uncle. But such was the behaviour of all around the young monarch, but the duke of Bourbon, that things fell rapidly into confusion. The regent seized all the late king's treasure, to enable

A. D. 1380.

* This monarch was the founder of the royal library at Paris ; and in his reign theatrical entertainments were first introduced into France.

himself to take possession of the kingdom of Naples on the decease of queen Joan, who had adopted him ; and others, plundering as much as they could, rendered necessary heavy impositions on the people : the consequence of which was an insurrection in Paris, which being repressed by some of the more substantial inhabitants, the regent, under pretence of punishing the rioters, extorted from the former an hundred thousand livres : carrying the treasure, which he had thus iniquitously obtained, into Italy, the duke of Anjou there consumed it without any memorable achievement, and died of chagrin. On his departure, the management of the king devolved on the duke of Burgundy, who led him, with a very large army, to the assistance of Lewis, count of Flanders, whose subjects had revolted on account of the burdens laid on them to supply a profligate court. The Flemings were utterly defeated, and treated with the bitterest severity : returning to Paris with his victorious army, the king, or rather the regent, took ample vengeance for some disorders committed during his absence, by taking possession of the city, as if he had entered it by storm, putting to death some of the principal citizens every day for a fortnight, extorting an enormous sum from the rest, and depriving the city of its privileges. The like extortion was practised on several other cities ; yet was the army disbanded without being paid. An English army having come to the assistance of the inhabitants of Ghent, who were not reduced, occasioned the king to make another expedition into Flanders ; after which a truce was made between the two crowns for six months. Lewis, count of Flanders, dying, the duke of Burgundy added to his duchy that county, with those of Artois, Revel, Nevers, and several lordships. The king, being now seventeen, married Isabella, daughter of the duke of Bavaria : while his counsellors laid a plan for the invasion of England, the prosecution of which being interrupted by some of the Flemings, the king turned his arms against them with success. But the next year, the scheme against England was resumed ; yet, after most expensive preparations, failed from the tardiness or obstinacy of the duke of Berry, who had from the first disapproved of it. Whether at the suggestion of others, or the dictates of his own mind, Charles had long been meditating on freeing himself from the super-

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

intendence of his uncles, and at length in a numerous council, which he assembled at Rheims, he declared his intention of from that time discharging the regal functions himself; and he appointed for his new council the duke of Bourbon, the constable, the chancellor, and some others of his father's old officers. An immediate change took place in affairs; a truce with England was concluded for three years; and by the reform made, the imposts diminished, and the grievances alleviated, the affability of his behaviour, and the observance of his promises, the king soon became highly popular. A profligate courtier, who had been a confident of the regent duke of Anjou, having with several hired assassins nearly murdered the constable, and then fled into Bretagne, the king, on the duke's refusing to deliver him up, led an army into that province; but on his march, apparently through fatigue and the effects of the heat of the sun, was seized with a sudden phrenzy, when the dukes of Berry and Burgundy assumed the government; while, in consequence of the king's situation, both court and country became most corrupt and miserable; all was discord, intrigues, debauchery, and confusion. When the king appeared to be, through medical care, tolerably recovered, an unfortunate accident caused a relapse; and ever afterwards he had four or five fits every year during his life. During his lucid intervals his uncles supplied him with amusements to divert him from business: they did not, however, oppress the people as before; but endeavoured to substitute martial and manly exercises for gaming, and similar modes of consuming time; while they manifested great respect to the parliament, which now began to sit throughout the year. Richard the second of England finding it expedient to marry the princess Isabel, the daughter of Charles, though a child, the kings had an interview, and concluded a truce for thirty years. When Charles prevailed on Richard to restore to the duke of Bretagne the fortress of Brest, which he held on mortgage; and he redeemed Cherbourg in Normandy from the king of Navarre, and all his estates in that province, with the duchy of Nemours. It was at this time that the Genoese, wearied with domestick troubles and foreign wars, put themselves under the protection of France. When Wenceslaus, emperour of Germany was deposed, Charles's brother,

the duke of Orleans, led an army into Germany to restore him ; but returned without achieving any thing more than securing to himself the duchy of Luxemburg, which he had purchased of that prince. In the last year of this century, the king's disease so increased, that it became improper to trouble him with any business ; but the duke and duchess of Orleans took the opportunity of the absence of the duke of Burgundy, to prevail on him during a lucid interval to give his brother a commission of lieutenant-general and governor of the realm at such times as he should be himself disabled. Through the umbrage taken at this by the duke of Burgundy, a civil war would probably have taken place, but for the interference of the duke of Bourbon ; and, when the king was next in health, he put to his council the question between two competitors, when the duke of Burgundy had the majority of voices : and thus closed the fourteenth century in France.

The history of Spain was suspended, while Ferdinand the fourth of Castile was yet under the guardianship of his mother, Donna Maria. By the base intrigues of two of the royal family, the infants Don Juan and Henry, the young monarch was prevailed on to elope from his mother, after which his marriage with Constantia, the infanta of Portugal, was magnificently solemnized. The reign of this king presented nothing but one scene of perpetual disturbance ; and, when he had in some measure overcome or appeased the factions that opposed his authority, he renewed the war against the Moors, and in the first campaign died after a short illness. To him succeeded his son Alonso, scarcely more than two years old, which led to a contest for the regency, declined by the elder queen dowager, but sought after by the infants Don Juan and Don Pedro ; and in this the parties of the two princes appealed to arms. But the king's mother, Donna Constantia, dying, the surviving queen brought about an agreement, that the care of the person and education of her grandson should be entrusted entirely to her ; and that the two infants should act respectively as regents in the parts that had declared for each ; and this arrangement was confirmed by an assembly of the states ; while, by another meeting of the same, both regents were obliged to give security for the publick money in their hands, and

Occurrences
in Spain
during the
14th century.

A. D. 1312.

for exhibiting, when required, a distinct accompt of them. Don Pedro acquiring great reputation by his wars with the Moors of Granada, Don Juan betrayed great jealousy of him ; but, by some new arrangement, they were reconciled, and with united forces met the Mahometan army ; by which the Spaniards were defeated, and both the infants died in the conflict. This success the Moors pursued by taking several places, and ravaging the country ; while among the Spaniards new contests arose for the regency. The principal of the pretenders to it were four, and of these Philip, the king's uncle, appears to have had the best claim ; yet all of them prepared to vindicate their right by arms. But an assembly of the states of Castile, at the instance of the queen-dowager, confirmed in the regency the two who had ventured to assume the title, Don Philip, and Don Juan Emanuel, who was also of the royal family. But the other competitors entered into a confederacy, which threw Donna Maria into great difficulties, from which she was delivered only by her death ; which so affected all parties, that they consented to a cessation of hostilities for a year : when this was expired, a most furious civil war commenced, when the king exerted himself to put a stop to the discord, confusion, and bloodshed, that prevailed among his subjects ; and no sooner had he entered his fifteenth year, than the citizens of Seville declaring for him, he went thither, and convoked a general assembly of the states at Valladolid ; to which both the regents resorted, and resigned their authority. The king, once in possession of his authority, by just acts of severity, at the head of a body of picked men, cleared the great roads of Spain of the banditti which had long infested them. At Burgos he punished those who had been guilty of oppression during his minority ; and, being unable to gain Don Juan the Deformed, who was surrounded by banditti and murderers, and perpetually raising new disturbances, he caused him to be treacherously dispatched by assassins ; and endeavoured to justify the measure, by representing to the people, that he was a criminal too powerfull for the laws : he then seized his estates, and annexed the lordship of Biscay to the crown. The king next year visited other parts of his kingdom, hearing complaints wherever he came, equally punishing the really guilty, and the false accuser.

While he was thus employed, to his great regret he lost his uncle Don Pedro. Taking the field against the Moors, he reduced several places; while Don Juan Emanuel, who had entered into an alliance with them, excited an insurrection on the frontiers; on which Alonso gave away all his employments, and even put his daughter Donna Constantia, who had born the title of queen, under a guard. Enraged at this, Don Juan interested the king of Arragon in his cause, and a scene of devastation and bloodshed, with assassination on both sides, followed, which was put an end to only by the death of count Don Alvaro, the king's favourite, and the marriage of Alonso himself with the infanta of Portugal, and that of Donna Eleonora his sister, with Alonso, king of Arragon: a league offensive and defensive with these two monarchs was the result of these marriages. After some attempts to reconcile Don Juan Emanuel, the king made a campaign against the Moors, in which he took several towns; and afterwards accepted the offer of the king of Granada to become his vassal, and pay him an annual tribute of twelve thousand pieces of gold. To counteract the continued intrigues of Don Juan Emanuel, by attaching to his own person those on whom he conferred it, Alonso now instituted an order of knighthood, called that of the Band. About the same time his new vassal, the king of Granada, forgetting the engagement into which he had recently entered, demanded and obtained assistance from the king of Morocco, and renewed his intrigues with the restless Don Juan Emanuel. By the African troops the fortress of Gibraltar was besieged, but surrendered by treachery. His kingdom being still over-run with factions which prevented his acting with vigour against the Moors, Alonso by extraordinary acts of severity diminished the boldness of the rebellious. But on Don Juan Emanuel's offer of submission, he consented to a marriage between his daughter, Donna Constantia, and Don Pedro, prince of Portugal. Scarcely had Alonso begun to taste the tranquillity arising from this, when the viceroy of Navarre commenced hostilities against him; but the Castilians giving him a defeat, a peace was concluded. When Alonso had prepared to oppose a general confederacy of the Moors, he was informed of another conspiracy among his own subjects, at the head of which were the

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

incorrigible Don Juan Emanuel, and Don Juan de Lara, whom the states, on the king's representation, voted traitors, requesting him utterly to destroy both. The latter of them at length surrendered himself to the king, and meeting with not only pardon but most unmerited kindness, became a steady and affectionate servant to him all his days. Fresh disturbances began with the next year: Don Pedro, who had succeeded his father in the kingdom of Arragon, was engaged in a civil war against his mother-in-law, but by the interposition of Don Juan de Lara their differences were compromised, and even Don Juan Emanuel begged Alonso to accept of his submission; and thus nothing remained to divert this king's attention from the proceedings of the Moors, but the war with Portugal; the king of which had espoused the cause of the Castilian confederates; but with him, though justly offended, Alonso was by the pope's legate at length prevailed on to come to an accommodation. By the exertions of Don Juan Emanuel (on whom Alonso's frank forgiveness had made the same impression as on Don Juan de Lara), at the court of Arragon, that monarch entered into a close alliance with the king of Castile: after which the last entered upon action against their common enemies the Moors, and with considerable success in the first campaign. By the defeats of which, however, though in one of them he had lost his son, the king of Morocco, Abul Assan, was not discouraged from prosecuting the war with great vigour, and he defeated the Castilian fleet which opposed him; and then transporting into Spain more than sixty thousand men, he followed them himself, and joining the army of the king of Granada, the united forces laid siege to Tariffa; to the relief of which, when reduced to deep distress, Alonso advanced, and being joined by the king of Portugal, they defeated the Moors, slaying or taking nearly half their army. After which the king of Castile by the reduction of Alcala, and some other places, so alarmed the king of Granada, that he offered to become his vassal again; but refusing to renounce his alliance with Abul Assan, the negociation ended. To free himself from further apprehension of any large armies from Barbary, Alonso determined on the capture of Algeziras, and accordingly began and continued the siege of it under every difficulty (the Moors

then first making use of cannon), until the place surrendered ; and the king of Granada again submitted to vassalage and the former tribute ; and a truce for ten years was made with the king of Morocco. Though now in profound peace, the inhabitants of Castile, being afflicted with a plague and other calamities, could contribute very little to the repair of the losses occasioned by the war, and the king's endeavours to relieve the publick distresses by œconomy were interrupted by the hope, which the rebellion of one of Abul Assan's sons excited, of being able to make himself master of Gibraltar, the only place that monarch now held in Spain. To this, therefore, in breach of the truce, he laid siege ; but when the garrison were almost reduced to capitulation, the plague broke out in the Spanish camp, and carried off the king himself. His only surviving son by the queen, Don Pedro, surnamed the Cruel, succeeded to the throne ; on which, though no minor, he was governed by his mother and her favourite, Juan Alonso de Albuquerque. The siege of Gibraltar was immediately raised ; for the court was no longer led by spirit, but governed by intrigue : Donna Leonora Guzman was first imprisoned, and then put to death. Had no other sanguinary deeds been recorded of Don Pedro than this, to which he only assented at the instance of his mother, he would hardly have received the surname of the Cruel ; but that epithet he merited by a reign of the most unrestrained cruelty. He was involved in perpetual wars with the king of Arragon, the Moors, or his own subjects, whom his enormous crimes impelled to resistance or revenge. Having murdered his wife, though during her life he married another, whom also he deserted, he prevailed on the states, and, it should seem, by gross subornation of perjury, to acknowledge his illegitimate son for heir of the crown. But however great his influence might appear from this circumstance, when his brother, Don Henry, count of Trastamora, who had been forced to retire into France, to avoid the fate of another brother, whom Don Pedro had put to death, came into Castile supported by the king of Arragon, who dreaded the effects of Pedro's continued success against himself, having with him more than twenty thousand veteran French and English troops, he met with so little opposition, that he caused himself to be proclaimed

A. D. 1350.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

king, and was as such accepted by most of the nobility of Castile, and solemnly inaugurated. He got possession, too, of a very great treasure laid up by Pedro; and, to secure his friends, no sooner was he crowned, than he punctually performed all the promises he had made to the individuals who had followed his fortunes: while Pedro, retreating from place to place, endeavoured to put the great mass of his treasures in a place of security by sending them by sea to Portugal; but the vessel, on board of which they were, was captured, and the whole fell into his brother Henry's hands: while their master, going from one place to another, rewarded the archbishop of Compostella, by whose influence he had been well received in Galicia, with murdering him and seizing all his wealth. Such a prepossession is there for the Black Prince in every English breast, that with regret must be penned his having taken up the cause of the nefarious wretch Pedro, and that, too, it should seem, merely for the money offered him: for solely through the army which he led into Spain was Don Henry, after receiving a total defeat, obliged to evacuate Castile, and his worthless brother, re-seated on the throne. Edward for his own security concluded a truce between the crowns of Castile and Arragon, and was then induced, by a sickness that broke out in his army, to return to Guienne. Don Pedro, after his departure indulged more than ever his insatiable thirst of blood: but in the mean time his brother received succours so effectual, from those whose assistance he solicited, that, ere the end of the year, he was again master of Castile and the kingdom of Toledo, all but the capital; which supported a siege until Don Pedro, reinforced by his vassal, the king of Granada, marched to raise the siege, and was met by his brother, and defeated in the plains of Montiel. After the battle, Pedro threw himself into the castle of Montiel; being blockaded in which, he endeavoured to corrupt the French commander sent to the assistance of Henry, but was taken in his own trap: for, being invited to the tent of Bertrand, he was there attacked by his brother and some followers, and put to death. Thus fell a prince, in wickedness scarcely inferior to Nero: he had, indeed, more abilities and less contemptible vanity than the imperial wretch; but in cruelty and treachery, it may be doubted, whether the Roman would suffer

by a comparison with the Castilian. Don Henry remained by no means in tranquil possession of his brother's dominions, on the contrary he had wars to maintain on every side: with the king of Portugal, who set up pretensions to Castile, with the king of Granada, and that of Arragon, leagued with the prince of Wales and the duke of Lancaster. But his prospects in time began to clear on every side; and the mildness of his administration made him beloved at home, while his prudence and vigour gained him respect abroad: so that, ere another year was passed, he had concluded a peace with the king of Portugal, and truces with those of Arragon and Navarre. Yet the king of Portugal, still dreading the resentment of Henry, entered into a treaty with the duke of Lancaster, who had married a daughter of Don Pedro, invited him to Portugal, and promised to support his pretensions to Castile, of which he then assumed the title of king. But Henry soon compelled the Portuguese monarch to consent to a peace, which he now also concluded with the king of Navarre. The duke of Lancaster having concluded a treaty with the king of Arragon, Henry endeavoured with success to detach the latter from the alliance; and a peace was made and a treaty of marriage between Don Juan, prince of Castile, and Leonora, the daughter of the king of Arragon, ratified. In the last year of Henry's life, the perfidious king of Navarre again provoked him to hostilities; but was soon obliged to beg for peace on Henry's terms, which yet were highly generous. Soon after this, the Castilian monarch was seized with the disease of which he died: his son Don Juan immediately succeeded to the throne; and about the same time, Mohammed Yago, king of Granada, dying, was succeeded by his son, Mohammed Guadix Abulhagen, a pacific prince of many virtues, who sending to congratulate Don Juan on his accession, and renew the truce, his ambassadors returned highly gratified with their reception; and the truce endured throughout their reigns. Juan, being informed that the king of Portugal, though making professions of friendship towards him, had invited the duke of Lancaster to come with a fleet and army to Portugal, resolved to attack him ere his ally arrived. When the succours did come, the good correspondence between the English and the Portuguese did not continue long; and,

A. D. 1378.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

ere hostilities actually commenced, the king of Portugal was prevailed on to make peace, and his English allies were carried safely home by the Spaniards. The king of Castile having lost his queen by death, the destination of the infanta of Portugal was again altered ; and, at the instance of her father, he took her to wife : and, a few months after, the king of Portugal died ; when his only daughter Donna Beatrix, the queen of Castile, was proclaimed queen of Portugal, and the queen-dowager had the title of regent ; but an illegitimate brother of the late king, whose name was Don Juan, seized on the government, and assumed the title of protector. The king of Castile, supporting the title of his queen, was acknowledged as their king by many of the Portuguese nobility ; but the nation in general adhered to the worse title, of the protector ; a war consequently ensued, in which, after actions of various success, the Castilian army having reached Lisbon was attacked by the plague, and obliged, after strong garrisons had been thrown into all the places taken, to retire into Spain. Having failed in an infamous scheme of having the protector cut off by assassination, the king of Castile again led an army into Portugal, but was there shamefully defeated by a very inferior number, whom he attacked with fatigued troops, sacrificing the lives of his soldiers to his own folly. The Portuguese, who had declared their protector king, in their turn invaded Castile, and defeated a Spanish army. At length, the duke of Lancaster arriving in Galicia, the city of St. James Compostella opened its gates to him, and he was there proclaimed king of Castile ; and, not long after, a treaty was concluded between him and the Portuguese monarch, in consequence of which the last espoused one of the duke's daughters. Carlos, king of Navarre, dying, his son of the same name was placed on the throne, to whom the king of Castile restored all the castles he had in his hands, as pledges for money due from that crown. The Portuguese and English having made no very successful irruption into the territories of Don Juan, that monarch after their retreat opened a negotiation with the duke of Lancaster, which terminated in a decisive treaty, under which the duke's only daughter by his wife, Donna Constantia, was to espouse, as soon as he was of age to marry, the infant Don Henry, or, in case of his previous death, his younger

brother Ferdinand ; five towns and their territories were to be given in dower to Donna Constantia ; the duke was to receive six hundred thousand pieces of gold, and his duchess forty thousand franks a year ; and, on the other hand, they both were to renounce for ever their rights to the crown of Castile. But in the ratification of this treaty they inserted a proviso, that the heir apparent of the crown of Castile should bear the title of prince of Asturias : and thenceforward the king and the duke and duchess appear to have lived in great cordiality. The Portuguese monarch having this year gained some advantages, the king of Castile took much pains to have the truce renewed. In the following year the latter, whose spirits had been affected by the exhausted state of his treasury, had his anxiety somewhat diminished by an application from the king of Granada to have the truce renewed ; and the same from him of Portugal. Under these pleasing circumstances he instituted a new order of knight-hood ; and, with the profaneness so common in the followers of the bishop of Rome, called it that of the Holy Spirit. Not long after this, his country lost an excellent sovereign, by his being killed by a fall from his horse. His successor Henry, the third king of Castile of that name, being but a few days more than ten years old at the death of his father, the government was administered by a council of regency for nearly three years ; when the young king assuming the administration of it, celebrated his marriage with the princess Catherine of Lancaster. After which, the princes of the blood being inclined to confederate against him, because he curtailed the great pensions granted them during the regency, he with great ability, and singular address for his age, defeated all their intrigues, and overcame all their opposition. Then renewing the truce with the king of Granada, on the Portuguese having surprized Badajos, he would not listen to the ambassadors which their king sent with an apology, but made great preparations for war. Yet, in the course of a year, a truce for ten was concluded between the two crowns ; and the fleet which he had prepared to act against Portugal, did essential service in clearing the seas of the Barbary corsairs, and burning Tetuan. A most destructive plague afterwards raged in Spain. But the last year of the century was marked by no event of more

A. D. 1390.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
14th century.

importance than the erection at Seville of the first clock ever seen in Spain.

The fourteenth century opened in Britain with both Edward and his parliament's firmly resisting the pope's pretensions with regard to Scotland, and the renewal of the war in that kingdom. Neither in the treaty made two years after with France, were the interests of Baliol at all attended to : but the English monarch entered Scotland the fourth time, penetrating to the extremity of the island, and ravaging the country on every side. Wallace, too, being betrayed into his hands, he treated him as guilty of high treason, and had his quarters hung up in four different towns. But the king exercised the like severity in cases more justifiable than this : being informed that justice was administered throughout the kingdom both very negligently and very partially, he gave an extraordinary commission to judges nominated by himself, to enquire after malefactors of all ranks, and punish them on the spot : and even his own son prince Edward, having with his favourite Gaveston and some others committed an outrageous trespass on the park of the bishop of Litchfield and Coventry, he ordered him to be publicly imprisoned. Robert Bruce, who had hitherto served Edward faithfully, finding that he did not perform his promise of placing him on the throne of Scotland, resolved to attempt the doing of it for himself ; and accordingly going into the country and openly declaring himself, he was joined by sufficient numbers to cause himself to be solemnly crowned at Scone. This quickly brought on him the arms of Edward, which obliged him to flee, and dispersed his adherents ; to whom the king shewed little mercy. But, on his retreat, Bruce again appeared, collected troops, and defeated his commanders ; and when the king, exasperated at this, had prepared to disable Scotland from all further resistance, he was seized with an illness under which he did not long survive. No sooner had his son Edward acceded to the throne, than, in breach of his oath, he recalled from banishment Gavestone, the corrupter of his youth, loaded him with honours and wealth, and entirely resigned himself into his hands. Consistent with the unprincipled weakness thus betrayed, was the subsequent conduct of Edward. Having performed the only promise he made to his father

which he did keep, in marrying Isabel, the daughter of Philip the Fair of France, he thought not of prosecuting the war with Scotland, but lived in the midst of libertines and buffoons, with which his favourite took care to fill his court. Exasperated by the insolent behaviour of the favourite, and finding that they could not rely on the promises of the king, the lords concerted to put the government into the hands of a council of one-and-twenty, to which the king assented; as he was afterwards compelled to do to certain articles drawn up by the barons, by one of which Gaveston was banished for life. Yet even after this he recalled him; when his increased arrogance confirmed the lords in their design of proceeding by force, and they accordingly took arms; and having got the favourite into his power, the earl of Warwick had him beheaded: after which, pursuing their operations against his master, he was forced to solicit the mediation of the pope's nuntio, Lewis, the queen's uncle, then in England; and the earl of Gloucester, who had stood neuter. By their means certain articles of reconciliation were agreed on; but it proved very difficult to obtain from the weak and faithless monarch the publication of the pardon he had promised; and pending the negociations, the queen was brought a-bed of a son, who was named Edward. During these internal struggles, Robert Bruce, against whom Edward had, in the second year of his reign, led an army, but so improvidently, that he was obliged to retreat for want of subsistence, recovered all Scotland but Stirling castle. Edward then, somewhat roused, conducted an hundred thousand men into that country, but was most shamefully defeated at Bannockbourn; and such was the terrour which that day impressed on the English, that they long after permitted their borders to be ravaged without resistance. A long and severe famine followed; during the three years duration of which, the most shocking atrocities were committed to relieve the cravings of hunger; and then the bloody flux, produced by gross food, killed numbers so great, that the living scarcely sufficed to bury the dead. These sufferings did not diminish the mutual animosity of the king and the barons; the last of which were at length prevented from again recurring to arms, only by the interposition of the more moderate lords and the pope's legate; by whom at

last a formal reconciliation was accomplished between the king and the earl of Lancaster. While these things were passing in England, Robert Bruce, taking advantage of the discontents of the Irish, occasioned, at least in part, by the oppression suffered from the English officers, sent some troops into Ireland, which at first made great progress, but, on the arrival of succours from England, were defeated with the loss of their leader, Bruce's own brother. Yet, on the side of England, Robert's success still continued; nor did Edward's attempt to obtain a peace, through the mediation of the pope, avail to aught, but to manifest the extreme arrogance of that power, in assuming authority in temporals as well as spirituals over the kings of the earth, and to exhibit an accurate and impressive accomplishment of the words of the prophet, that "his mouth spake great things." At length, however, after a vain effort to recover Berwick, he obtained a truce from Robert for two years. But this was scarcely proclaimed, ere new troubles arose from a new favourite, of the name of Spencer, who being first placed by the lords as a spy about the king, gained, by his own father's advice, the royal favour by his obsequiousness; and he equalled Gaveston in the ill use he made of it through excessive pride and insatiable avarice. The lords again confederated, but refrained from all representation until they had an army on foot, with which they ravaged the lands of both the Spencers, and then petitioned the king for their removal; and he referring the matter to the parliament, they were both banished. But their exile continued not long: an affront offered to the queen by an individual of the confederacy, induced her to encourage Edward to oppose the barons by force; and so suddenly did he arm, that he threw them into the deepest consternation; and recalling both the Spencers, all who did not throw themselves on the royal mercy felt the weight of the favourites' resentment. The earl of Lancaster himself was defeated, taken, and beheaded; and more blood was shed upon the scaffold, than England had seen flow thereon since the Norman conquest. Having been successfull against his own subjects, Edward marched into Scotland; but not only was forced to return for want of subsistence, but was pursued by Robert Bruce, who took his baggage, and ravaged England, even to the walls of York; and

then consented to a truce for thirteen years. Edward was now in a situation most pleasing to his own disposition ; but the eagerness of his favourites for revenge permitted him not long to continue so. After punishing great numbers of others by fine, death, or banishment, they marked three more important victims, the bishops of Lincoln, and Hereford, and Roger Mortimer the younger : the last of whom, by some secret patronage, escaped all the sentences passed against him, and at length got out of the Tower, where he had been confined. Of Edward's dispute with the king of France concerning the homage for Guienne, and of the resignation of that duchy to his son, and of the latter's following his mother to France, who went thither under the plea of negotiating a reconciliation between her husband and her brother, notice has been already taken. After the arrival of young Edward at Paris, all the English, who had fled from, or been banished their country, repaired to the queen, and with the rest Roger Mortimer, who became her chief counsellor. With him, too, her behaviour became scandalous ; nor was it amorous intrigue alone, but political conspiracy also, that she was justly suspected of carrying on ; while she disobeyed all her husband's commands to bring his son home. The conjuncture was too delicate for the imbecility of Edward ; he increased his domestick enemies by blaming his own ambassadors, and gave a better opportunity for action to his foreign, by declaring war against the king of France. At length, the queen leaving the court of France, having previously hired a body of troops of the earl of Hainault, proceeded to hostilities against her own husband, and landing in England was joined by the earl of Lancaster and several other lords ; and published a manifesto in the name of her son, and the king's brother, the duke of Kent, who had also joined her, and her own, stating that they had taken arms to deliver the kingdom from the oppressions of the Spencers. The queen's forces made a most rapid progress ; and the king, finding no support, endeavoured to retreat to Ireland, leaving the elder Spencer in Bristol, whither at length came the queen ; and the place surrendering in a few days, he was immediately hanged in his armour. And the king himself, being soon after discovered in Wales, was carried to Monmouth castle, where the great seal being

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1327.

demand of him, he sent it to the queen and prince ; and a parliament was immediately summoned : before the meeting of which, however, the younger Spencer was tried, condemned, and hanged on a gibbet fifty feet high. The parliament having assembled, determined on the deposition of the king, most illegally, without all controversy ; and on the proclamation of his son, who, having more principle than his mother or the parliament, solemnly vowed, that he would not accept the crown during his father's life-time, without his express consent : this, however, was obtained by commissioners, to whom the king delivered his regalia. After this resignation, the prince was proclaimed a second time by the name of Edward the third, and crowned : but the queen seized the government, and employed Mortimer as her prime minister. The dethroned monarch, after suffering very much without finding any pity from his diabolical wife, was most cruelly murdered : his son, who was persuaded his father died a natural death, after a campaign against the Scotch, who had invaded the northern counties, celebrated at York his marriage with Philippa of Hainault, to whom his mother had betrothed him. Three years did the infamous Isabella and her paramour oppress, rather than govern the kingdom ; and a disgraceful peace which they made with Scotland contributed greatly to increase the discontent against them. A confederacy was formed against them by some of the first nobility ; but produced no other effect than the bringing, by a deep-laid plot, the king's uncle, the duke of Kent, to the block. At length, some suspicions of his mother's guilt arising in Edward's breast, the insinuations he received, made him seek for further information ; and this determined him to punish the guilty. By a well-laid scheme, Mortimer, who had been created earl of March, was seized and sent to the tower of London : a new parliament was called ; and the king, though not of full age, assumed the administration of the government : his very first measures in which were, to reduce the exorbitant dower his mother had obtained for herself to three thousand pounds a year, and confine her to an house of her own near London. As to her favourite, he was impeached, condemned, and executed, as a traitor. The same year that this act of justice was performed, Edward was gratified by

borders of their country at the head of an army, when they demolished the fortifications, and abandoned the place. This irruption being made just after the conclusion of a treaty for the release of their king, altered Edward's determinations with respect to Scotland: he purchased Baliol's right to the crown of that kingdom for a pension of two thousand pounds sterling. But instead of making use of the title he had bought, Edward permitted his sister, the queen of Scotland, to prevail with him to renew the treaty, which David's subjects had broken, and that king was after eleven years captivity released. The victory of Poitiers, and the capture of John, the French monarch, having produced a truce with France, Edward employed himself on the internal concerns of his kingdom; and, after a confinement of twenty-eight years, his worthless mother died. The states of France having refused to ratify the treaty, into which John had entered for his release, Edward again landed in France at the head of an hundred thousand men; of the operations of which army an account has already been given, as also of the circumstances which induced him to listen to the proposals of peace made to him. This treaty being signed and sworn to by the two kings at Calais, whither John was carried, and this last monarch released, having, during his captivity, been treated with high honour and great generosity; Edward then gave another proof of his judgement, by appointing sir John Chandos, a man particularly qualified for the office, his lieutenant-general in his French dominions. And the same year the prince of Wales married Joanna, the daughter of his great uncle, the earl of Kent, and countess-dowager of Holland. The king being now in his fiftieth year, solemnized it as a jubilee, and granted a general pardon for all offences. Having raised the duchy of Guienne into a principality, under the name of that of Aquitaine, and invested the prince of Wales with it, the last went and resided at Bourdeaux, keeping there a royal court. After the death of John, the French monarch, in England, through whose return the citizens had the honour of entertaining four kings at once,* Pope Urban the sixth, seeing the prosperous state of England,

* Those of England, France, Scotland, and Cyprus.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

haughtily demanded the arrears of that tribute which the mean-spirited John had agreed to pay to the bishop of Rome. This demand the king laid before the parliament ; when it was rejected in terms so decisive, that even the arrogant pontiff did not think proper to insist on it. The latter part of Edward's reign formed a sad contrast to the former : his third son, the duke of Clarence, died at Montserrat, in the thirty-second year of his age : soon after which began those disputes with the faithless Charles of France, who found a ready support in that nation as faithless, which have already been detailed, and which at length produced a declaration of war from the French king, whose perfidious craft had completely amused and imposed on the English monarch. This last, on finding, to his great surprize, that hostilities were begun, summoned a parliament, which voting him the necessary aids, advised him to re-assume the title of king of France. Nor was the renewal of the war the only circumstance that this year caused vexation to Edward ; he also lost his queen, to whom he had been married two-and-forty years. The prince of Wales was now so debilitated, that he resigned the principality of Aquitaine to the king, and returned to England ; while by his departure the affairs of the English in Guienne were totally ruined : but when Edward's forces were nearly expelled from that province, a truce was concluded between the two crowns. The tranquillity derived from this truce, in some measure consoled the English for their losses, which in the end comprehended every thing in France but Calais : yet they found, that peace itself might be made expensive by the vice and weakness of their sovereign. Edward, whose achievements and noble disposition had deservedly raised his character very high, betrayed the imbecility of age in becoming enamoured of a lady of the bed-chamber to his late queen, named Alice Pierce. On her was squandered the money which had been raised for the prosecution of the war ; which unfeeling mismanagement very reasonably excited no small discontent ; and when the king wanted money, the parliament petitioned for the removal of those favourites and ministers who had rendered themselves obnoxious, among whom were Alice Pierce, and the king's own son, the duke of Lancaster ; and so earnestly was the petition pressed,

the birth of a son, to whom his own name was given. The king now turned his attention to one of the great objects of his ambition, the recovery of the sovereignty of Scotland; and, through the instrumentality of Edward, the son of that Robert Baliol who had been deposed by Edward the first, that country was over-run, and Baliol, seating himself on the throne of it, did homage for his kingdom to Edward; who himself took the town of Berwick, and annexed it for ever to the crown of England. The Scotch, however, could not brook this subjugation of their country; and no less than four expeditions did Edward make into Scotland; and at length left it, not perfectly subdued, to the government of Baliol, supported by a small army of English. His attention was diverted from that country by his purpose of prosecuting his title to the crown of France; of which, and his triumphant wars in support of it, though he never carried the principal point, notice has been taken in the history of that country. Six years, with the suspension of a truce for two badly observed, had the war lasted, when, by the legates of pope Clement the sixth, another truce for three years was agreed on. While Edward was employed in France, the adherents of David Bruce, king of Scotland, gained great advantages over Baliol and his small force. Edward, after the last-mentioned truce had been concluded, advanced with a large force towards Scotland, but suspended hostilities on condition, that the Scotch should acknowledge him for their sovereign, unless king David should appear in that kingdom before the ensuing month of May, with an army strong enough to give battle. This, by the help of France, the young king did; and, as a proof of the strength of his forces, as well as of his own capacity to make a good use of them, he penetrated as far as Durham, and put all the inhabitants to the sword, but took care to retire ere Edward could reach him; while the affairs of France requiring the English monarch's attention, he offered David a two-years truce, which was accepted. The cessation of hostilities with both France and Scotland, afforded time to the king for some internal regulations, much needed: a parliament was therefore assembled, in which were passed several beneficial acts, and especially the statute of provisors, to obviate the shameless assumptions of the bishop of Rome, in con-

ferring English benefices even before they were vacant. Edward, who had found himself much deceived by the foreign alliances he had before made, now determined to look only to individuals for either men or money ; and that he might draw to his court as many military adventurers as possible, he published a tournament, which he held at Windsor with great magnificence and courtesy. And the next year the truce with France being broken, as before mentioned, hostilities were renewed the year following. The king himself, accompanied by the prince of Wales, then about sixteen, landed in Normandy with a powerfull army, where the operations already stated took place. But during the siege of Calais the king of Scotland, at the suggestion of Philip of France, made an irruption into England ; when he was met and defeated by queen Philippa, and himself taken prisoner. During the truce which followed the surrender of Calais, Edward was further honoured by an offer from some of the electors of Germany of the imperial crown ; but this he prudently declined. The prosperity of their country at this time rendered the English very licencious ; nor was their impious ingratitude permitted to go unpunished, since there was brought into England a plague so great, that it is stated, that half the nation were swept away by it.* This year was instituted the Order of the Garter ; and in the same, the coast of England being infested by some Spanish pirates, the king himself thought fit to embark and engage them, when he took twenty-six of their ships, sunk many more, and dispersed the rest. John, who had succeeded his father Philip in the throne of France, renewed the truce for four years ; but it was ill observed on both sides ; yet on its expiration was prolonged until April in the ensuing year : previous to which he invested the prince of Wales with the duchy of Guienne. The Scotch having about this time taken Berwick by surprize, the king advanced to the

* In London it was so severe, that in one burying place purchased by the lord Walter Manny, to avoid the danger of burying in church-yards, and which now forms part of the ground belonging to the Charter-house, were interred above fifty thousand people in one year : in memory of which he built a chapel on the same ground, and founded an house for Carthusian monks.

that Edward deemed it right to comply. Soon after this change, to the general grief of the nation, occurred the death of the prince of Wales; on whom history seems almost at a loss to express sufficient encomiums. Soon after his decease, Alice Pierce was recalled to court, and the old ministers reinstated. While these things were doing, John Wickliff, a doctor of divinity of Oxford, began to publish tenets which were condemned by pope Gregory the eleventh; and Wickliff was cited to appear before the archbishop of Canterbury and a synod at St. Paul's in London. Here, being avowedly protected by the duke of Lancaster, though his opinions, as explained by himself, were contrary to the doctrine of the Church, he was only enjoined silence. Not long after this the king became dangerously ill, and was most shamelessly deserted in his extremity. Alice, who chiefly attended him, when she perceived he was dying, seized whatever she could find of value, and even the rings on his fingers, and withdrew. All deserted him after her example, one single priest excepted, who addressed some exhortations to the dying monarch, then unable to reply articulately: thus ended the life of this illustrious prince in his palace at Shene. To Edward succeeded, without opposition, Richard, his grandson by the Black Prince, then only in his eleventh year. On the meeting of the parliament, several governours were appointed to take care of the king's education, and his three uncles, in conjunction with some bishops and lay lords, were appointed regents. The most important occurrence of the king's minority was the insurrection which was led by the man commonly called Wat Tyler, who, provoked by the indecent and oppressive insolence of a collector of the poll tax, had killed him; and being supported by multitudes from the counties of Kent and Essex, who, exasperated as well by the negligence of the government in not protecting the coasts, as by the oppressions of its officers, and those of the mien lords, resolved to clear the country of nobility and gentry; and marching to London put to death all the lords, gentlemen, magistrates, and lawyers, that fell into their hands by the way. But when their leader, at a conference with the young monarch in Smithfield, menaced him with his sword, the mayor of London, William Walworth, indignant at such insolence, slew the

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

rebel at one blow ; on which the king, with singular presence of mind, called to the multitude to follow him as their general, and led them into St. George's fields, where being met by a small body of armed citizens, under an able officer, a panick immediately pervaded the unprincipled mob, and throwing down their arms, they begged for quarter and dispersed. While Richard was thus in danger of being dethroned, a contract of marriage was completed between him and Ann of Luxemburg, the sister of the emperor Wincseslaus, and soon after the troubles were appeased, the princess arrived in England. As Richard increased in years, his character developed itself, and he betrayed a conceit of his own abilities, which proved they were but slender. He was fond of pomp and superfluous expense ; greatly swayed by flatterers, and made favourites of those who had the same contemptible tendencies as himself ; the chief of whom were Alexander Neville, archbishop of York, Robert de Vere, earl of Oxford, and Michael de la Pole, the son of a merchant in London. These favourites encouraged in the king's mind such jealousy of his uncle, the duke of Lancaster, as contributed much to the detriment of the publick service. But the dislike thus raised, rendered the king more ready to assist the duke in his attempt to obtain the throne of Castile, which has been already mentioned, and towards which the parliament, fearfull of the duke's raising troubles in the kingdom, readily furnished a grant. The same parliament declared Roger Mortimer, earl of March, (son of Philippa, only daughter of Lionel, duke of Clarence, third son of Edward the third,) presumptive heir of the crown ; and, ere it was dissolved, the king created his uncle, the earl of Cambridge, duke of York, and the earl of Buckingham, his other uncle, duke of Gloucester ; and his favourite, the earl of Oxford, marquis of Dublin, and, quickly after, duke of Ireland : while Michael de la Pole was made earl of Suffolk. But the next parliament obliged the king to remove these two unworthy favourites ; confiscating the whole estate of the first, and summoning the last to give an account of his administration : yet the simple monarch, though convinced of his favour having been abused, as soon as the parliament had separated, reinstated in their posts the banished favourites ; who returned with hearts bent on revenge, especially

against the duke of Gloucester, and earl of Arundel, who had examined the publick accompts, and so occasioned their condemnation. But they excited the king to measures so avowedly hostile to the liberties of the country, that the duke of Gloucester and the lords of his party, after in vain trying what negociation could do, found themselves, to secure their lives, obliged to take arms; and the earl of Derby, eldest son of the duke of Lancaster, having, with part of their army, defeated the troops raised by the duke of Ireland, the king fell into the power of the confederates; whose inclination to deal more leniently was obviated by his own fickleness and insincerity. On the meeting of the parliament, the favourites were again banished, and their estates confiscated; and a judge, an alderman of London, and some knights and gentlemen, who had supported the king in his attempt at despotick power, were hanged at Tyburn; and then acts of oblivion were passed in favour of both parties. Richard, having entered into his one-and-twentieth year, took the government into his own hands, making a very weak choice of ministers. When the duke of Lancaster returned from his Spanish expedition, the king, to deliver himself from his presence, invested him with the duchy of Guienne: soon after which the duke's eldest son, the earl of Derby, gained high reputation by his gallant achievements in Prussia, while his royal cozen Richard was expending great sums in tournaments; circumstances which suggested a comparison by no means in favour of his majesty. And, still more to the disadvantage of the last, was it, that his affectation of surpassing in magnificence all the sovereigns of Europe, and his excessive profuseness, drew on him the aversion of his subjects, when they saw how insensible he was to their sufferings. The English settled in Ireland having earnestly pressed the king for assistance against the natives, by whose frequent insurrections they were in danger of being expelled the island, the king himself, after the funeral obsequies of the queen, who died this year, were performed, set out for Ireland: but, as it was late in the season, he made but little progress that campaign; and ere the next could be commenced, he was recalled to England by the clergy, alarmed at the instances made in the parliament by the friends of Wickliff, that a reformation of the Church might be

A. D. 1394.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

attempted. The next year was solemnized a marriage between Richard and Isabel, the daughter of Charles the sixth, and a truce of twenty-eight years concluded between the crowns ; when a meeting of the two kings gave Richard another opportunity of practising his enormous, and to himself (a truth which sovereigns would do well to observe) destructive extravagance. The duke of Gloucester having renewed the king's dislike to him by remonstrating on the impolicy of his measures, Richard, after pretending to be reconciled to him, basely caused him to be kidnapped, carried to Calais, and there murdered. By a packed House of Commons he obtained from the parliament the condemnation of the archbishop of Canterbury, and of the earls of Arundel and Warwick (the former of which two last was, for all his services, put to death ; the detestable tyrant, it is said, being present at his execution). This parliament, which, contrary to what was then the general custom, the king continued longer than one session, not only came to resolutions entirely subversive of the freedom of the nation, but appointed a committee of twelve peers and six commoners, who with the king were invested with the authority of the whole body ; and this establishment of a new form of government was confirmed by a pope's bull.* Thus secure, as he deemed himself, Richard wantonly indulged in the exercise of arbitrary power ; and in a quarrel between the eldest son of the duke of Lancaster, (who from earl of Derby he had made duke of Hereford,) and the duke of Norfolk, banished them both, the first for ten years, and the last for life ; and on the decease of the duke of Lancaster, without any new offence, most iniquitously changed the sentence of his son into that of perpetual banishment, and confiscated all his estates. A train of the grossest oppressions within the kingdom, and of the most revolting disgraces without, then followed ; while the success of the Irish insurgents, in opposing whom the presumptive heir of the crown, the earl of March, had been slain, made Richard determine to go into that island himself ; on his journey banishing the earl of Northumberland as a

* At this time, the militia of Cheshire having expressed a strong inclination to serve the king, he erected that county into a principality.

traitor for not joining him. In Ireland he was at first successfull, and exhibited symptoms of courage; but, in the mean time, the malcontents of England, which were many, let the duke of Hereford, then in France, know, that they wanted only a leader to deliver themselves from the oppression which they endured. This invitation the much-injured and ambitious prince readily accepted; and landing in Yorkshire with a very small force, was immediately joined by the earl of Northumberland, and Henry Percy his son; and, by the numbers which resorted to him, was, in a few days, at the head of threescore thousand men. Having, on his arrival, assumed the title of duke of Lancaster, he published a manifesto, declaring, that he had recourse to arms merely to obtain satisfaction for the injustice he had suffered; on the appearance of which there was a general manifestation of unwillingness to oppose him, and such a desertion of the duke of York, whom Richard had left regent, by the terrified ministers, that he retired from the care of publick affairs, and left the vessel of the state without pilot or mariners. On these favourable occurrences, the duke of Lancaster advanced to London, where being received with great affection and zeal, he continued his march to Bristol, whither the earl of Wiltshire and the other ministers had retired. These he quickly compelled to surrender at discretion; and most illegally sacrificed their leader, and some others, to the people's call for vengeance. The whole kingdom after this embraced the duke's party, and even his uncle of York joined him. Richard, who on hearing of these events should immediately have returned to England, was detained so long, partly by bad advice, and partly by contrary winds, that an army raised for him in Wales and Cheshire disbanded themselves from despair of his coming; and when at length he arrived, so desperate appeared the state of his affairs, that he himself abandoned the troops he brought over with him, and withdrew to Conway castle. Here, finding himself almost alone, he determined to throw himself on the mercy of him who we may now justly term his rival, and he conducted him to London; where he was put into the Tower. Here he afterwards resigned the crown and sceptre, and by a formal instrument abdicated the throne: still the parliament thought proper to have regular charges drawn up

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1399.

against the king, and proceed on these to a solemn sentence of deposition ; which passed, the duke of Lancaster's claim to the crown was most unjustly allowed, and he was proclaimed king of England and France, and lord of Ireland : the right heir of the crown, the earl of Mortimer, to afford no cause of jealousy, prudently retired into the country. Henry, for such was the Christian name of the new king, having been crowned, created his eldest son, of the same name, then aged thirteen, prince of Wales, duke of Aquitaine, Lancaster, and Cornwall, and earl of Chester : and in the parliament, which met the next day, the crown was settled on the House of Lancaster. To preserve it on his own head, Henry endeavoured to ensure himself peace with all foreign princes, and cultivate the goodwill of his own subjects, while he precluded Richard from all means of escape. But a conspiracy formed to assassinate Henry, and restore the dethroned prince, seems to have hastened the death of the last ; of which various accounts are given, though all agree that it was not natural. This was followed by a scene of commotion ; the king of Scotland, on the one hand, declared war against Henry, and on the other, the Welsh revolted, under Owen Glendour, or Glendourdy ; but a truce with the former concludes the occurrences of the fourteenth century in Britain.

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
14th. century.

The history of Sweden was last suspended in the reign of Birger, who acted entirely by the advice of his minister and former tutor, Cnutson : yet differences quickly arose between the king and his brothers, in which the former appears to have treated them very harshly, compelling them to take refuge in Denmark to avoid imprisonment, and then confiscating their estates. The dukes proceeding from Denmark to Norway, there found such assistance as enabled them to commence hostilities against Birger ; but, by the interposition of some Swedish senators, their quarrel was terminated ; but Cnutson was made the victim of both parties, dismissed from his employments, and imprisoned ; and then, under false charges, beheaded. This injustice went not unrevenged ; they found, too late, that he had acted uprightly. The king now endeavoured to keep his brothers in absolute subjection ; while they seized him, and forced him to resign the crown to duke Eric. The king of Denmark

took the part of the deposed monarch; and, through him, Birger was by treaty restored to part of his dominions, and the dukes held the rest as vassals of his crown. The profusion of these princes soon led them so to oppress the people with taxes, that two insurrections broke out, to reduce which the king was compelled to promise a diminution of the imposts. After seven years of tranquillity, Birger, by the most malicious hypocrisy, seized, and, in fact, caused both his brothers to be murdered: this led to hostilities from those of their party; and an army, under the command of a Matthew Kettlemunson, took Magnus, the king's eldest son, prisoner; and the general was then himself declared protector of the kingdom: as such he prosecuted the war against Birger, and forced him to retreat to Denmark. On this abdication, Kettlemunson convoked a diet, and contrived to get the crown of Sweden given to Magnus, a child of three years old, the son of duke Eric; who soon after, by the will of Hacquin, king of Norway, succeeded also to that crown; and in the next diet Magnus, the son of Birger, was, in direct breach of articles of capitulation, condemned to die. Kettlemunson acting as regent during the king's minority, took Schonen from Denmark. When Magnus was about twenty, the regent dying, he took the government into his own hands, but managed it most capriciously. The great object of the young king's ambition was the kingdom of Denmark; but the superior abilities of Valdemar, the monarch of that country, obviated his projects, and he was obliged to content himself with some cessions, paying even for part of them. After having lived for twelve years in peace, Magnus conceived the project of an expedition against the Russians, which terminated in his being compelled to cede to them a part of Carelia. The pecuniary distresses arising from the expense of this unsuccessful expedition, produced taxes on the people which excited great discontents; and his gratuities to a worthless favourite, who partook also in the favours of the queen, raised still more indignation against the king. At length the senate advised the king to resign the crown of Sweden to his eldest son Eric, and that of Norway to his second, Hacquin; and on his refusal, the nobility revolted, and placed the crown on Eric's head. A civil war between Magnus and his son ensued, and at length

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

ended in a partition of Sweden between the two kings. The intention of Eric to marry, so alarmed his mother, lest the respect due to her should be diminished by the appearance of another queen, that she had him taken off by poison : when Magnus, regaining possession of all his dominions, solemnly swore to correct his former errors ; but thought not of his oath after he had taken it. In the hope of revenging himself on the favourers of Eric, he entered into a close alliance with the king of Denmark, ceding to him all the Danish provinces which had been conquered by Sweden : and at his suggestion, or by his connivance, Valdemar attacked different parts of the Swedish dominions. In this situation the Swedes applied to Magnus's son, Hacquin, the king of Norway, who arrested his father and confined him. The senate insisted on Hacquin's breaking with Denmark, and marrying the count of Holstein's sister. These conditions were approved by Magnus, and accepted by his son ; and it was added, that if either of them should be guilty of a breach of them, the senate should be at liberty to elect Henry of Holstein for their sovereign. But the princess of Holstein was in her passage driven on the coast of Denmark, and there detained by Valdemar ; who persuaded Hacquin to marry, according to a former covenant, the princess Margaret of Denmark. On this breach of the treaty with them, the Swedes elected Henry of Holstein for their king ; but he declined the proffered diadem, recommending Albert, duke of Mecklenburgh, nephew to Magnus ; who likewise declined the offer, but proposed his own second son Albert, who was accepted ; was proclaimed in Gothland, and soon got possession of Stockholm ; where, after Magnus had been formally deposed, he was proclaimed a second time. The former, however, being supported by the kings of Denmark and Norway, penetrated to the province of Upland, when he was defeated, and taken prisoner by Albert ; his son Hacquin escaping wounded from the battle. Albert after this, finding his progress much obstructed by the Danish troops, with the consent of the senate purchased a peace of Valdemar at the expense of much territory. Yet Albert soon trampled under foot the oath by which he had ratified it ; and forming with several princes a league offensive and defensive against the kings of Denmark and Norway,

he conquered Schonen, while his allies compelled Valdemar to abandon Denmark. But by the king of Norway Albert was driven from the field; and at length an accommodation was made, by which Magnus was released, on condition of taking, in recompense for the crown of Sweden, three provinces: after which he passed the remainder of his life in Norway. But Albert after some years, elated with prosperity, began to treat the Swedes with contempt; he kept up a standing army of foreign mercenaries, and gave to foreigners the most important offices of the state, and so drained the country, that the produce of the taxes failed; and the states refusing to annex to the crown the third part of all the revenues of the kingdom, he seized on them: a violence which not only enraged the whole nation, but induced the nobility to implore the assistance of Margaret, queen of Denmark; who promised them effectual assistance, if, in case she conquered Albert, they would secure to her the crown of Sweden: and of this condition the Swedes were obliged to accept. The new war to which this covenant gave rise, was but short; Albert determined on a decisive engagement, in which he was defeated, and made prisoner. But the princes of Mecklenburgh, the count of Holstein, and the Hanse Towns supported his cause; and having in their hands the chief fortresses of Sweden, they greatly harassed the army of the queen, burnt many places, and cut in pieces several bodies of peasants. In Stockholm the Germans perpetrated most nefarious acts of oppression; and, by the invitation of the princes of Mecklenburgh, the Baltick was covered with pirates. At length, the parties came to an agreement, under which Stockholm was to be surrendered to Margaret; and Albert, his sons, and several of the nobility, released: but no sooner had Albert recovered his liberty, than he turned his attention to a renewal of the war. In the mean time, Margaret, seeing herself in the possession of the three kingdoms, sent for to her court her great nephew, Henry, the son of Wratislaus the seventh, and Mary of Mecklenburgh, grand-daughter of Valdemar the first by Margaret's own sister Indiburgha. This prince's name she changed to Eric; and though an infant, it is asserted, that he was chosen sovereign of the three kingdoms, and Margaret was appointed regent. This princess laboured to remedy in Sweden all

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the grievances and afflictions of a tyrannical reign and sanguinary revolution; while she left no means untried to confirm the union of the three crowns; and succeeded so far as to get articles signed by the states of the three kingdoms, promising on oath to remain under the dominion of the same sovereign. Not long after this, Albert having lost his son Eric, surrendered to Margaret Stockholm, with all his pretensions to the crown of Sweden: when she, finding herself established on that throne, manifested a partiality for Denmark, which caused much complaint from the Swedes; which the queen, it is said, answered with fair promises only: and in this state was Sweden at the end of the fourteenth century.

Occurrences
in Denmark
during the
14th century.

A. D. 1320.

The history of Denmark was last suspended in the reign of Eric the eighth, surnamed the Pious. This monarch, by plaintive supplication, obtained from the pope the removal of the interdict which had been laid upon his kingdom: and the rest of his reign passed in a series of differences and reconciliations with the neighbouring princes, which were attended with no very remarkable change in their territories or their relations, before Eric died. So warmly was the vacant throne contested by Christopher, the late king's brother, John, earl of Wagria, Christopher's half-brother, and the favourers of Eric, duke of Sleswick, that it was two years ere the election was determined in favour of the first. It appears from the articles, to the observance of which this monarch swore, that the regal authority had at that time been reduced within very narrow limits. The king, however, had interest sufficient to procure the settlement of the crown on his own family; and his son Eric was not only declared presumptive heir to it, but appointed his associate in the throne; and as such was crowned. The very next year Christopher began to infringe his coronation oath, on which a powerfull confederacy of his subjects was formed against him. This, by his unpopular measures, he soon made general; and then endeavouring to reduce it by force, his son Eric was taken prisoner by the malcontents, and he himself was obliged to flee into Germany. On this, the heads of the league resolved to deprive him of all hopes of returning; and, the nobility being assembled, raised, with the consent of the people, Valdemar, duke of Sleswick, to the throne. But he being a minor, and no

regent being appointed, the kingdom became a scene of confusion and contention ; which gave Christopher sufficient opportunity to lay a plan for the recovery of the crown ; and he obtained promises from some of the bishops and many of the nobility, that their services should not be wanting to him, if he appeared in Denmark with a force sufficient to support them. The bishops, by extenuating the faults of his reign, and exaggerating all the errors of Valdemar's administration, wrought a great change in the publick sentiments ; and the first transaction of the friends they gained him, was the rescue of his son Eric ; after which a diet was holden at Roschild, where the king on the one hand promised a full pardon, and his subjects on the other, the most faithfull service. On this restoration of Christopher, Valdemar and his uncle Gerhard, who held the chief authority under him, were reduced to great extremities ; though Christopher's misconduct rendered him every day less popular. He treated with contempt, and even punished for their good counsel, his best friends, among whom was a bishop, who, escaping to Rome, procured the kingdom to be laid under an interdict, which continued seven years. But his brother, the count of Wagria, more attentive to the welfare of the country, proposed to Valdemar to accept a pension for his claim to the crown ; to which he assented, laid aside the ensigns of royalty, and retired to his own duchy of Sleswick. Thus was Christopher fully restored. After this a quarrel between the count of Wagria and Gerhard, who was earl of Fionia, involved Christopher in a war, in which he was worsted by this last ; but moderate terms of peace being offered to the king, he accepted them, and thus the contest ended. But Eric, the eldest son of Christopher, now died in consequence of a wound received in the only battle fought during the war. Nor did the king long survive his son ; since, having been seized and imprisoned by some adherents of Gerhard, but without the knowledge of that earl, who, on being apprized of it, immediately ordered him to be released, the shock occasioned by this sudden fall from his high estate so affected him, as in a few days to cause his death. On the decease of this monarch an interregnum ensued ; and the condition of Denmark, parcelled out among different princes independent of each other, was truly

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

truly deplorable ; yet peace reigned for three years. But then Otho, the second son of the late king, made an effort to recover his father's throne, but was taken prisoner by Gerhard, and put into close confinement. Magnus, king of Sweden, who had come into possession of Schonen, thirsted after the rest of Denmark ; and Valdemar of Sleswick, incited by his uncle Gerhard, now resumed views of ambition ; while several of the nobility cast their eyes on Christopher's son Valdemar. In the mean time, the unhappy Danes suffered miserably by taxes, famine, and pestilence : the cultivation of the land was neglected, a dreadful plague broke out, the poor fell dead in the streets, the gentry were reduced to wretchedness, the whole country was more than half depopulated ; yet ambition and all its plots engrossed the attention of the great. At length, partly through the interposition of the emperour Lewis, at whose court Valdemar had been educated, an agreement was made, that the son of Christopher should marry the duke of Sleswick's sister, and ascend the throne of Denmark : when seated on this he confirmed the privileges of the people, and passed an act of oblivion. The Danes, seeing their country again united under one legitimate prince, became eager to expell the foreigners, from whom they had suffered ; and they fought various engagements with the Holsteiners, and wherever they met them, massacred them without pity of age or sex. While Valdemar was directing his efforts to recover what had been alienated, or wrung from the crown, his queen was delivered of a prince : after which, the Friselanders having for a series of years refused to pay a tribute, formerly imposed on it by the Danish monarchs, Valdemar marched into their country, and easily reduced them to submission. To strengthen himself against the princes of Holstein, Valdemar entered into an alliance offensive and defensive with the duke of Sleswick. The king after this became highly superstitious, embarking in fanatical expeditions ; still he continued gradually to recover the crown lands that had been alienated ; while the plague, which has been already noticed as prevailing at this time in other parts of Europe, raged with such violence in Denmark, that nothing but terroure and despair reigned in that miserable kingdom. Valdemar, however, gained the affection of his subjects, by placing

at their disposal a large sum of money which he had saved : after which, the title of duke of Halland becoming extinct, the king annexed that duchy to the crown. Commotions in Jutland now succeeded, and were not settled, even for a time, until two years had elapsed. In the mean time was born the princess Margaret, who afterwards became so renowned : in the year after whose birth, her father amused himself with a pilgrimage to Avignon, to visit Innocent the sixth, at the great expense of his subjects. After his return home, Valdemar applied himself to a laudable administration of justice. The inhabitants of Jutland, being irritated by the imposition of an heavy tax, revolted, and after some military operations, in which Valdemar triumphed, a peace being first concluded with the princes of Holstein, a truce was granted to the people of Jutland ; soon after which, his third daughter, Margaret, was betrothed to the king of Norway. The Jutlanders taking arms again, after some operations against them, the king turned his attention to Schonen, which the king of Sweden agreed to cede to him, and a peace followed. Notwithstanding the harmony between that king, Magnus, and Valdemar, the two countries soon came to a rupture, because the former had engaged the king of Denmark to assist him against his subjects. Valdemar ravaged the isle of Oeland, over-ran that of Gothland, and plundered its wealthy capital, Wisby. This engaged him in a war with the Hanse Towns, some of whose citizens had suffered when that city was sacked : and these had influence enough to draw to their alliance the king of Norway, and several other princes : yet the war ended with no great advantage on either side. When Valdemar had procured tranquillity on the side of Sweden, by deserting his old ally Magnus, the nobility of Jutland, with great part of the people, revolted ; and formed several powerfull alliances ; and at length brought even Albert, who had been placed on the throne of Sweden, to join them. From this storm Valdemar retired to the emperour's court ; and in the mean time the grand mareschal of Denmark contrived to break the league ; when Valdemar returned, and made it his study to pass the rest of his days in tranquillity. From the time of his return being constantly afflicted with the gout, he recurred for relief to an empiric, took his prescrip-

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1375.

tion; and died within a few hours. Valdemar leaving no male issue, after some debate, by the intrigues of his younger daughter, Margaret, queen-dowager of Norway, her son Olaus, king of that country, was chosen to succeed his grandfather; and as he was then but eleven years old, his mother was declared regent during his minority. The reign of this prince lasted but eleven years; neither did there occur in it any event worth noticing in an account so concise as the present. On his decease, the male line of sovereigns in the three northern kingdoms became extinct, when, contrary to custom, Margaret, his mother, was chosen queen by the states of Denmark. The same success attended her intrigues in Norway, and she became sovereign of both kingdoms: when, as has been already stated, she named the younger Henry of Mecklenburgh, whom she from that time called Eric, presumptive heir to the crown of Norway. The circumstances which gave rise to Margaret's receiving the offer of the crown of Sweden, her acceptance of it, and the union of the three northern kingdoms, which she effected in an assembly of deputies from the states-general of them all at Colmar, have been already mentioned; and in the regulation of points depending on this league, and necessary to put Margaret in full possession of her authority, and secure its continuance, did the rest of the century pass.

Occurrences
in Germany
during the
14th century.

The fourteenth century commenced in Germany with as strong an instance of the assumption of superiority by the bishop of Rome over other sovereigns, as any that the history of Europe has yet supplied. The ecclesiastical electors of Germany having preferred to Boniface the eighth a complaint against the emperor Albert, that pontiff not only commanded them to summon by publick proclamation the emperor to appear by his envoys before him, but, releasing his subjects from their oath of allegiance, forbade them to acknowledge him, and declared he should proceed against him and his adherents, spiritually or temporally, as he should judge most expedient. In the end, however, the electors above mentioned were obliged to yield to the more real power of Albert, and make their peace with him at their own cost. This emperor next engaged in an unsuccessfull expedition against Wincellaus, king of Bohemia, from

which, by a most nefarious stratagem of that monarch in poisoning the water, he returned with the loss of the greatest part of his army. The pope, having now quarrelled with the king of France, made advances towards a reconciliation with the emperor, and confirmed his election, but on terms most humiliating; the emperor consenting to acknowledge the pope's supremacy in temporals as well as spirituals, and that kings and emperors received the power of the temporal sword from him. Ladislaus, the son of Wincellaus, king of Bohemia, having by the Hungarians been elected for their sovereign, on the death of Andrew the Venetian, lost by his vices all the footing he had gained in Hungary; but, on his father's decease, he succeeded to the crown of Bohemia, and re-assumed the name of Wincellaus, which the Hungarians had changed to Ladislaus, while in Hungary the party of his rival Charobert, nephew to the emperor, daily gained ground. And on his new throne such was the conduct of Wincellaus, that he was assassinated by his own subjects; and Henry, count of Carinthia, elected to succeed him. But this prince was compelled by the emperor to resign his crown to Rodolphus, Albert's son; who suddenly dying, Henry again ascended the throne, nor was the emperor able to make him relinquish it a second time. Though unsuccessful in this, Albert had the pleasure of seeing his nephew Charobert at length settled on the throne of Hungary. Albert had laid a plan for depriving the Swiss of their franchises, and erecting their country into a principality for one of his sons; but the tyranny of the governors he set over them, so irritated that hardy people, that first the three cantons of Ury, Switz, and Underwald, and then all the rest, engaged in a confederacy; and, freeing themselves from the Austrian yoke, established the Swiss republick. The same desire of aggrandizing his family that brought on Albert the loss of Switzerland, occasioned his death: for, having refused to restore to his nephew, John, duke of Suabia, his territories, of which he had as his guardian got possession, the enraged youth formed a conspiracy against him, and assassinated him. For the successor of Albert in the imperial throne, was, much to his own surprise, chosen Henry of Luxemburgh, before whom in an imperial diet at Spire sentence of death was pronounced against John of

A. D. 1308.

A. D. 1308.

CHAPTER
VII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1313.

Austria for the murder of the late emperor ; and by whom, after some dispute, the sons of Albert were invested with the duchy of Austria. After this, Henry's son John, having been by the Bohemians raised to their throne, rendered vacant by their expulsion of Henry, duke of Carinthia, he was, according to a previous treaty, married to Elizabeth, daughter and heiress of Wincseslaus, king of Bohemia ; and thus this last country came into the possession of the House of Luxemburg ; though John was forced to take much of it by force out of the hands of the duke of Carinthia. Of the new emperor's transactions with the pope, his journey into Italy, and what occurred there, mention has been already made ; to avoid repetition, therefore, it need here only be noticed, that he died in that country. On his decease an interregnum of more than a year ensued ; which time was consumed in the intrigues of Frederick, duke of Austria, and Lewis, duke of Bavaria, competitors for the empire of Germany, while that country itself was partly desolated by pestilence and famine, and convulsions of nature. At length the electors meeting, a schism took place among them, one party electing Lewis, duke of Bavaria, while the other chose Frederick, duke of Austria. Both these princes were crowned ; and the contest between the rivals, for each of whom some part of the empire declared, continued for several years ; while the pope, John the twenty-second, had the arrogance to summon them both to appear at his tribunal, that he might determine to which the empire belonged. But at last a battle, in which the army of Frederick was defeated, and himself taken prisoner, ruined his affairs, and finally fixed Lewis on the throne ; who, having much increased his own power, and appeased the troubles of Germany, attempted a reconciliation with the pope ; but the enormous presumption of that pontiff, who at length excommunicated Lewis, while it prevented any agreement, impelled the assembled princes and states of the empire to declare, that the proceedings of the pope were abusive, and to menace with punishment all who paid the least regard to his bulls. After which, the support given to Lewis was such, that Leopold of Austria, the brother of Frederick, was prevailed on to desist from all further opposition, and sent to Lewis all the imperial ensigns which he had in his possession ;

and this prince was persuaded to make proposals of final arrangement to Frederick ; who, heartily tired of his confinement, exchanged for his liberty all his present pretensions to the empire. By this peace Lewis was enabled to go into Italy, his transactions in which country have been already detailed. After his return to Germany, the conduct of John, king of Bohemia, having raised his suspicion, he excited several princes to attack his dominions ; but John triumphed over them all ; and one of them, Otho of Austria, was, by the artifices of the pope, prevailed on to acknowledge himself a vassal of the Church of Rome ; and as such began to act against the emperour ; but soon perceiving himself to have been duped by his holiness, he made peace with Lewis. This prince now began to govern the empire without opposition ; but as the pope ceased not from his efforts to excite a revolt against him, he resolved to assemble a council to depose him ; but, ere he could execute this resolution, the unworthy pontiff died. A war now took place between Lewis and the king of Bohemia, on account of the wife, or, more accurately perhaps, of the portion of the wife of young John of Luxemburg, who at length renounced all claim to her, (their marriage having been dissolved by the bishop of Frisingen,) and ratified her marriage with the margrave of Brandenburg, the emperour's son. Lewis having in vain endeavoured to procure a reconciliation with Benedict the twelfth, who seemed to tread in the steps of his predecessor John, the princes of the empire, both ecclesiastical and others, declared the empire independent of the pope, and Lewis lawfull emperour ; and when, on application to him, Benedict refused to annul the sentences of his predecessor, they in a diet at Frankfort declared, that a king of the Romans, chosen by a majority of the electors, needed not the confirmation or consent of the see of Rome ; and in the next year the emperour, by his own authority, took off the interdict, which the late pope had imposed. Albert, duke of Austria, having now embarked in an attempt to subdue the Swiss, was recalled into Alsace to quell some fanatics, who were persuaded by their wretched leader, that it was their duty to extirpate the Jews in revenge of the death of Christ. Extensive was the carnage, and wide the desolation that hence ensued ; but Arnleeder, the man who

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

headed the zealots, being taken and executed, and his followers driven out of the country, the Jews who remained were permitted to live in peace. Lewis having renounced the alliance he had formed with Edward the third of England, and acted as arbiter of the contests that prevailed in Denmark, took the opportunity of the peaceful interval which ensued, to cause the laws to be rigorously executed against vagabonds and criminals; granted protection to the innocent and industrious, and rewarded merit to the utmost of his power; and such an impression did the prudence and mildness of his administration produce, that he became generally beloved by his subjects, and had his friendship sought and cultivated by almost all the princes who had been his enemies. Clement the sixth having succeeded to the pontificate, confirmed by new bulls all the sentences against the emperor; and, in return to his desire of reconciliation, proposed such terms, as were indignantly rejected by the diet, on which his holiness fulminated new excommunications; and in one of his bulls is found the following characteristick passage: "May the wrath of God, of St. Peter, and St. Paul, crush him in this world, and in that which is to come: may the earth open and swallow him alive; may his memory perish, and all the elements be his enemies; and may his children fall into the hands of his adversaries, even in the sight of their father." But to these the venerable prelate added more effectual measures; by his intrigues procuring Charles of Luxemburg, son of John, king of Bohemia, to be chosen by some electors king of the Romans, and crowned at Bonn; his election having been confirmed by the pope. But, in spite of this schism, the emperor maintained his dignity and good fortune to the last, the other princes and states faithfully preserving their attachment to him; and his son Lewis, marquis of Brandenburg, defeating the new king of the Romans in the Tyrol: soon after which, as the emperor was hunting in Bavaria, he fell suddenly from his horse and expired. Charles of Luxemburg, who, by his father's having fallen in the service of the French in battle with the Black Prince, had succeeded to the crown of Bohemia after much opposition, and buying off two competitors, was universally acknowledged emperor in the room of Lewis. But scarcely was he thus established on the

A. D. 1347.

throne, when the hoped-for tranquillity of the empire was prevented by an insurrection of the populace against the Jews, who were accused of having poisoned the wells and springs, and of whom, in Strasburg only, two thousand were burnt alive ; the perpetrators of this nefarious deed receiving encouragement from the bishop, and several other noblemen, who found this a convenient way of discharging the debts which they had contracted with the Jews. When these disorders were quieted, Charles fixed his residence at Prague, where he had established an university : from hence he sent a body of troops to assist the empress-dowager against her own son, the count of Holland, who endeavoured to deprive her of one-half of her possessions ; but, after mutual victories, by the mediation of the king of England, an accommodation was made between the mother and son, on condition that she should have possession of Hainault, and William remain master of Holland, Zealand, and Friezland. Some disturbances, first on the side of Switzerland, and then in other parts of the empire, having caused Charles to defer his march into Italy, before he left Germany he erected the counties of Luxemburg and Bar into duchies, in favour of his brother Wincellaus, and his cozen Robert de Bar. On his departure for Italy, he appointed his father-in-law, Robert, count palatine, vicar of the empire ; and then going into Italy, those occurrences there took place which have been already mentioned in the history of that country. On his return from thence, he found confusion prevailing in Germany ; to put a stop to which he assembled a very numerous diet at Nuremberg, in which was passed the celebrated edict named the Golden Bull ; by which was established the form of the election of emperours, the number of electors, and their particular functions, and other points relating to them and the government of the empire. After the formal publication of which edict, the emperour made a magnificent entertainment, at which each of the electors appeared in his specifick department in the imperial household. On his return to Bohemia Charles employed himself chiefly in accumulating treasure, and extending his hereditary kingdom, which he had already augmented by the addition of Silesia and Lusatia : yet his general sloth and indolence became such, that he received from the nobles a

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

remonstrance, reminding him of his duties ; but he replied, that he was not disposed to maintain an emperor in the provinces with the revenues of Bohemia : and, being grown extremely covetous, he sold privileges to all the noblemen and towns that chose to pay for them ; and it might have been said of him, that he bought the empire by wholesale, and sold it by retail. The emperor, having lost his queen, married Elizabeth, daughter of Bugislaus, duke of Pomerania, and grand-daughter of Casimir, king of Poland ; who, it is remarked, paid the expense of the nuptials. Two bodies of freebooters having broken into the empire, one of forty thousand men, under the command of Arnold de Carnolle, surnamed the high-priest, Charles, at the instance of the princes of the empire, took the field against them ; when Arnold, sensible of his inability to contend with the imperial troops, and having the proposals he made rejected, retired into Burgundy, where he was assassinated by his own soldiers ; who, after his death, soon dispersed. The dukes of Austria and Bavaria having actually taken the field against each other, to decide their pretensions to the Tyrol, furnished to the emperor a plea for resisting the request the pope made him to march into Italy. But the contending dukes were prevailed on to prolong the truce, which had been made between them. At length, however, Charles took resolution to go into Italy ; and, on his return from thence, convened a diet at Frankfort, where an edict was published to prevent the feuds so usual among the nobles. But this seems not to have had its intended effect ; since, within a year after its publication, a war broke out between the duke of Brunswick and the bishop of Hildesheim, and in two years more another took place between the dukes of Luxemburg and Juliers. Further to remedy such disorders, therefore, the emperor convened another diet at Nuremberg ; where it was decreed, that no prince or nobleman should retaliate for an offence by arms, untill two full months after the reception of it : and this, termed the regulation of sixty days, was of signal service. The indolence of Charles prevented him not from attending vigilantly to the interest of his own family : he purchased for his second son, Sigismund, the marquisate of Brandenburg ; and by presenting each of the electors with an hundred thousand ducats,

A. D. 1173.

prevailed on them to elect his eldest, Wincelauſ, though but fifteen years of age, king of the Romans ; and having, on his return from France, his journey to which country produced no important conſequences, prevailed on the duke of Luxemburg to declare him and his ſons heirs of his duchy, ſoon after his arrival at Prague, he died of a fever. Wincelauſ, the ſon of Charles, then only ſeventeen, ſucceeded his father, and proved a prince of depraved taſte and vicious inclinations : he commenced his reign with ſeeming attention to the affairs of the Church, but quickly reſigned himſelf to all kinds of debauchery ; while the provinces of the empire became a prey to the banditti already mentioned, of late comers, and grand companies. Theſe freebooters he afterwards took into his pay ; and having, by his miſconduct, driven the Bohemians to revolt, he allowed thoſe wretches to deſtroy the country without remorse. To his debauchery he added cruelty and baſeneſs ; no means of extorting money being too vile for his employment of them. Among other vile tricks, he ſold blank patents, ready ſigned and ſealed, by which the rich and powerfull were authoriſed to oppreſs the weak and poor ; ſo that there was no ſecurity for commerce, no police, no order in the empire ; and hence naturally aroſe civil wars. The electors and other princes and ſtates, ſeeing no proſpect of the reformation of the emperour, took cognizance of the general affairs of the empire, and accommodated with difficulty the quarrels and diſputes between ſeveral ſtates. The towns of Suabia, Franconia, and the Rhine, formed what was called the great league, and the princes engaged for their mutual defence ; and thus tranquillity was for ſome time maintained. Yet war broke out at length between the Houſe of Austria and the towns which had become independent, and Leopold of Austria loſt his life in endeavouring to reduce the Swiss, who thus entirely freed themſelves : while Alsace, Suabia, and the palatinate, ſuffered by contentions for ſovereignty on the one hand, and independence on the other. While Wincelauſ was drawing on himſelf the deteſtation of his ſubjects, his brother Sigismund, having diſtinguiſhed himſelf by his valour and capacity, at length aſcended the Hungarian throne, after the death of Charles Durazzo. About two years after, another inſurrection againſt the Jews, and relentless

persecution of that people, disturbed the peace of Germany : and to this succeeded commotions in Alsace, and other provinces on the Rhine ; which, after much ravage, were put a stop to by a peace between the parties concerned. The excesses and cruelty of Wincseslaus increasing daily,* the nobles of Bohemia, by the advice of his brother Sigismund, put him into confinement ; and, on his escaping from thence, and resuming the government without amending his behaviour, they had again recourse to the king of Hungary : that monarch then led an army into Bohemia, and, compelling the emperour to submit, was declared regent of the kingdom, and redressed the grievances of the people. Wincseslaus himself was again made prisoner, but again escaped, and was permitted again to resume his authority, on condition of amendment. But afterwards, marrying the daughter of the duke of Bavaria, his extravagance so increased, that his revenues were inadequate to the expenses of his household ; and the princes of the empire, perceiving that he seemed to take pleasure in dismembering the empire for his own sordid views, he having sold several seignories and royalties in Italy, together with the title of the duke of Milan, at length thought that the publick safety demanded a chief capable of re-establishing and protecting the peace of the empire, the electors entered into an association ; and in a diet at Mentz, where the emperour refused to appear, it was determined, that he should be compelled to make a formal renunciation of the empire, when they would proceed to a new election. Though Wincseslaus menaced, the electors executed their resolution. But Frederick, duke of Brunswick and Lunenburg, a wise and valiant prince, whom they first elected, was basely murdered by the count of Waldeck, when he went to Frankfort to receive the imperial crown ; and in his place they chose Robert, count palatine of the Rhine. At the news of his deposition Wincseslaus was but little affected ; and during nineteen years more that he reigned in Bohemia alone, his conduct was considerably improved.

* One of his nefarious acts was, ordering his wife's confessor to be drowned, because he would not reveal her confession. The same year, the doctrine of Wickliff was introduced into Bohemia, by a gentleman who had studied in England.

And with the accession of his successor must the history of this century in Germany be closed.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1400.
Occurrences
in Poland
during the
14th century.

When we last left the history of Poland, Winceslaus, king of Bohemia, had been placed on that throne, in the room of Uladislaus Locticus; but, on the death of the former, the last, on professing an entire reformation of manners, was restored. No sooner had he re-mounted the throne, than he engaged in a war with the Teutonic Knights, who had usurped the greater part of Pomerania. Conrad, duke of Mazovia, having settled them in the territory of Culm, they quickly extended their dominion over both Prussia and Pomerania, and over some also of the neighbouring countries; and in the year thirteen hundred and ten made themselves masters of Dantzick. Against these the king of Poland marched, and obtained a complete victory over them and their allies. In this and two subsequent engagements, which the obstinacy and perfidy of the Knights forced Uladislaus to fight with them, he exhibited all the qualities of a great general; and after his victory gave impressive proofs of his generosity, being satisfied with obtaining the territories which had occasioned the war. Uladislaus having never yet been crowned, and scrupling to assume the regal dignity without the consent of the pope, sent an embassy to request that; and, as a liberal donation was, by the same hands, transmitted, no difficulty was raised, and he was accordingly crowned at Cracow: soon after which he was attacked by a chronick disorder, which put an end to his life, after he had strongly recommended his son Casimir for his successor, and given him some excellent directions for his conduct. This new king, Casimir the third, afterwards surnamed the Great, finding that the Teutonic Knights would not make the restitution which they had covenanted with his father to make, and that they had craftily drawn into their interest the kings of Hungary and Bohemia, attempted not to enforce the treaty, but contenting himself with the restoration of Culm and Cujavia, turned his thoughts to the acquisition of the province called Bláck Russia. This (by what claim of right indeed it does not appear) he quickly subdued; and then over-ran the duchy of Mazovia, and annexed it to his crown: after which he applied himself to the internal regulation of his kingdom, and gave the Poles,

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1370.

what until then they had never had, a written code of laws, the administration of justice having before been carried on in a very barbarous mode. Casimir erected several fortresses, surrounded the principal cities of his dominions with strong walls: he relieved the peasants, enriched the nobility by promoting industry, and increased the general wealth of his kingdom. The monarch of Poland who

A. D. 1381.

succeeded Casimir, was Lewis, king of Hungary, his sister's son, who ascended the throne without opposition, having in his uncle's life-time been in the diet declared prince of Poland. But the dissatisfaction to which the circumstance of his not being a Pole by birth gave rise, this prince increased by impolitically removing the regalia into Hungary, residing there himself, and leaving to his mother, a weak woman, the government of Poland. Such an opportunity of attack and revolt was readily seized both by the Lithuanians and the Russians: and though Lewis reduced these, and might thus have gained the affections of the Poles, he only brought more Hungarians to keep them in awe, and filled the chief dignities with people of that nation. Yet did he prevail by bribery and menaces to have nominated for his successor Sigismund, marquis of Brandenburg, whom he sent to reside in Poland; and then, after a reign of twelve years, did he breathe his last. Sigismund's imperious behaviour provoked the Poles to set him aside, and prefer Hedwiga, the daughter of their last monarch, who received the crown, on condition of marrying with the consent of her subjects, and expressly stipulating, that her husband should reside constantly among them. A wife with such a dower was soon sought after; but the first suitor of whom the Poles approved, was Jagelio, duke of Great Lithuania, who embraced Christianity, and on his marriage united his duchy inseparably to the crown of Poland, together with the extensive provinces of Samogitia and Black Russia. This prince, on ascending the throne of Poland, took the name of Uladislaus, and began to reduce his new kingdom to order, by defeating the palatine of Posnania who had thrown off his allegiance, and bringing all the higher Poland to submission; while the king's brother, Skirgello, entered Lithuania with an army, and obliged the Teutonic Knights, who had invaded that country, to evacuate it. For these most unprincipled wretches, though their

Order was instituted to defend the Christian faith, strenuously opposed the progress of it in Lithuania, where the grossest idolatry, accompanied with the nefarious rite of human sacrifices, prevailed. Serpents and trees being there the objects of adoration, Uladislaus, when he had secured the tranquillity of Poland, cut down their groves, extinguished their sacred fires, and crushed their serpents under foot. The inhabitants expected to see those who did these things suffer the marked vengeance of Heaven; but having waited in vain for this, they became convinced that those they had fancied to be deities wanted power, suffered themselves to be baptized, and desired to be instructed in the doctrine of Christ. Uladislaus then sent Skirgello to govern them as his viceroy; but the violent conduct of this fierce prince drove into rebellion another of the royal family, named Vitowda, who joined himself to the Teutonic Knights, and aimed directly at the sovereignty of Lithuania. Yet, on the first opportunity that offered, he came to an accommodation with the king, who gave him the government of Lithuania. After some years attention to the internal affairs of his government, Vitowda waged war with the neighbouring Tartars, and pushed his conquests to the banks of the Don and the Volga; encouraged by which, and contrary to the advice of Uladislaus, he ventured to attack the mighty power of Tamerlane; when, from one of his lieutenants, he met with a defeat, though he slew a number of the enemy, equal to that of his own army. On the return of Vitowda into Lithuania, he found the Knights again ravaging the country, and having defeated them, he, by an irruption into Livonia, punished the inhabitants of it for assisting them. There then followed a series of wars between Poland and Prussia; and at length Uladislaus determining to punish the perfidy of the Knights before they became too powerfull, a general engagement was fought, in which he gave them a decisive overthrow; which, however, the king did not improve as he might have done, and those restless freebooters obtained a more favourable peace than they either could expect or deserve: an event with which must be closed the history of the fourteenth century in Poland.

The history of Russia was last suspended when that country was under the dominion of the Tartars, who having, in the room of

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
14th century.

CHAPTER
VIII.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Demetri Michaelowitz, made John, surnamed Kalita, czar, on his death the eldest of his sons, Iwan Iwanowitz was, with their approbation, raised to that dignity. During these reigns the Poles made great conquests in Russia, especially under Casimir the Great, as has been mentioned in the history of that monarch's reign. Demetrius Iwanowitz, who succeeded his father Iwan, made frequent efforts to free himself from the galling yoke of the Tartars: he defeated their Khan in several battles, and, when conquerour, refused all tribute, and assumed the title of Great Duke of Moscovy. But the oppressors of the North returned in still greater numbers; and Demetrius, at length overpowered, after a struggle of three years, perished with his whole army. His son, Drusilius Demetriwitz, revenged his father's death, drove his enemies out of his dominions, and conquered Bulgaria: he made an alliance with the Poles, and ceded to them part of his country, on condition of their assisting him to defend the rest against the Tartars. But from this alliance the Russians reaped but little benefit: yet, as far as the scanty materials for Russian history at this time will justify a decision, the reign of Basilius must have extended to the close of this century.

CHAPTER · IX.

The History of Europe during the fifteenth Century.

BAJAZET, the Turkish emperour, having been defeated by Tamerlane in Galatia, Manuel, who had by him been compelled to resign the throne of Constantinople to John, returned to that city amid the acclamations of the people, who drove John from the throne, and restored their former sovereign. The intestine divisions of the Turks after the death of Bajazet, gave Manuel an opportunity of recovering several provinces, which Mahomet, the youngest of Bajazet's sons, whom he had assisted against his brother Musa, and who, having overcome all his competitors, was finally acknowledged sole monarch of the Turks, permitted him peaceably to enjoy until his death. To him succeeded his son John Palæologus, in whose reign Amurath the second, the son and successor of Mahomet, recovered all the provinces which had been seized after the death of Bajazet. In the beginning of his reign he laid siege to Constantinople, but was called away to oppose a younger brother, who had revolted in Asia. Having subdued him and his supporters, Amurath entered Macedon, took and most cruelly plundered Thessalonica, and most of the cities of Ætolia, Phocis, and Bœotia: then, after reducing Servia, he burst into the dominions of the king of Hungary, and laid siege to Belgrade, which was so bravely defended, that he was obliged to raise the siege; and in his retreat was attacked by the celebrated Hungarian, John Hunniades, who cut a great number of his men to pieces. Not long after, Hunniades gained a still more

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in the Greek
empire until
its fall; and
in the Turkish
provinces in
Europe, from
thence to the
end of the
15th century.

A. D. 1424.

signal victory over the Turks in the plains of Transylvania, in which, with the loss of three thousand men, he slew on the spot twenty thousand Turks, and almost an equal number in the pursuit. Another far more numerous army, sent by Amurath to supply the loss of the first, fell almost to a man by the sword of the brave Hungarian. By several other no less remarkable victories, he recovered from the Turks all Bulgaria and Servia; but at length was defeated by Amurath in the battle of Varna, in consequence of the death of Uladislaus, king of Hungary, who, fighting with more courage than prudence, was surrounded and slain. Yet Hunniades escaped; and being appointed protector of Hungary during the minority of Ladislaus, chosen king in the room of Uladislaus, he had another engagement with Amurath, in which, after three days hard fighting, his army was, by the superiority in numbers of the Turks, utterly routed, though Hunniades escaped into Hungary. In the mean time John Palæologus was obliged to purchase an uncertain peace of Amurath, by the cession of some fortresses which he still held on the Euxine, and engaging to pay him annually three hundred thousand aspers.* Convinced, however, that he obtained even these terms only because the Turk was then engaged with George Castriot, surnamed Scanderbeg, prince of Epirus, Palæologus endeavoured to secure the assistance of the Western princes, by promising his utmost endeavours to reconcile the Greek and Latin churches; and the act of union was subscribed in a council at Ferrara by the patriarch and other prelates. But this measure was so highly disapproved of at Constantinople, that the disturbance there raised, added to the death of the empress, and the arrogance with which he was treated by Amurath, gave him such concern, that he sunk under the weight of his years and afflictions; leaving the empire, now confined within the walls of Constantinople, to his brother Constantine. Amurath, not long surviving him, was succeeded by his son Mahomet; who at first entered into an alliance with Constantine; but, after he had put an end to the war with the king of Caramania, did every thing to distress the inhabitants of Con-

A. D. 1448.

* Something more than an English farthing.

stantinople ; while Constantine, discerning his ultimate purpose, acquainted the Western princes with the danger in which he was placed, but procured no assistance from them. Still, though by the reduction of all his out-lying fortresses Constantine was blockaded by land, the Greeks were yet masters by sea, and by ravaging the coasts of Asia obtained a great booty, and an incredible number of captives. But when Mahomet had drawn together three hundred thousand men, and a fleet of near three hundred sail, he planted his batteries, in which were several pieces of cannon of extraordinary size, and one in particular carrying a ball of an hundred weight, as near to the walls of Constantinople as he could, and quickly made several breaches, but these were as quickly repaired by the besieged ; and though the garrison consisted of only nine thousand men, yet under the command of John Justiniani, a Genoese adventurer, they made a defence not only vigorous in itself, but very destructive to their enemies ; while on the water only five ships, freighted with provisions for the city, successfully fought their way through the Turkish fleet. Mahomet finding himself unable to break into the harbour to the emperor's ships, which, though few, did the Turks great damage, resolved on a most extraordinary measure, which had been presignified in the prophet Daniel's prediction of the progress of the Turkish power,* and had a tract levelled and properly prepared for drawing along it a squadron of galleys, from the Bosphorus behind the suburb of Pera to the haven of Constantinople ; and by means of engines conveyed through this road eighty vessels over-land for the space of eight miles, and then re-launched them in the harbour itself : a bridge was then constructed, by which his troops might on that side be led to the assault. Constantine, observing these preparations for a decisive attack, offered to submit to any tribute which the Turk should think proper to impose ; but Mahomet declared his

* In the fortieth verse of his eleventh chapter, where the progress of the king of the north, which power at the time of the end, *i. e.* the last 1260 years of Daniel's last kingdom, was and has yet been no other than the Ottoman, is thus singularly described : " shall come against him (*i. e.* the Roman sovereign,) like a whirlwind, &c. and he shall enter into the countries, and shall *overflow and pass over.*"

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1453.

resolution to become at any rate master of the city ; while the other was as resolute to die in, rather than surrender it. At length, therefore, the great assault was made ; Constantine was killed, after defending the city with the most exemplary courage ; and this last was given up to plunder for three days ; during which a promiscuous and merciless slaughter was made of its inhabitants. These days expired, Mahomet took the poor remainder of the inhabitants under his protection ; and during the pillage many, among whom were several men of science, who afterwards helped to promote the restoration of learning in the West, escaped in five ships to Italy. Thus came Constantinople into the hands of the Ottomans, the Euphratean horsemen of Holy Writ ; and Mahomet the second now chose it for the seat of their empire ; and such has it continued to this day, the time pre-ordained for their removal being not yet arrived. Mahomet the next spring reduced Servia ; and then had a palace, since called the old palace, built for himself in Constantinople. In the course of about five years after this, the whole of the ancient Peloponnesus and modern Morea was reduced by the arms of Mahomet, besides many cities and a large tract of country on the main land. And in another year the city of Trebizond in Asia, with the whole region of which it formed the metropolis, was, by a forced surrender, yielded to him by David Comnenus. In the mean time Mahomet found in Scanderbeg, prince of Epirus, an adversary who gave him much trouble, and diverted part of his forces for several years ; and in fourteen hundred and sixty-one, Mahomet thought proper to enter into a treaty of peace with an enemy whom he found it so difficult to subdue. But, on the other hand, Mahomet conquered the Greek island of Mitylene, and obtained that of Lesbos, on terms which he never performed. Vladus, waywod of Walachia, next drew on his country the arms of the Turk by his refusal of homage to him ; and great were the cruelties perpetrated on both sides during the continuance of hostilities ; but Vladus, after being forced to abandon his country, was, on returning, after an absence of some years, slain in an engagement with the Turks. Some commotions raised in the Morea by the Greeks, assisted by the Venetians, caused Mahomet to send a force, which not only subdued the

revolters, but added old Illyria to his dominions. And the next year he slew the prince of Bosnia, and over-ran that country, and completed his conquest of all the Illyrians. The progress of Mahomet excited the fears of the Venetians, who attempted to make a league against him; and did themselves pursue hostilities, with various fortune, in the Morea and the Greek islands. Scanderbeg, under the promise of powerfull assistance from the pope, broke the peace which had been concluded, and committed successfull ravages in the Ottoman dominions. The Venetians, after succeeding in various places, suffering a great loss in the Morea, applied for assistance to Mathias Corvini, son of Hunniades, king of Hungary, who passing the Danube at Belgrade, demolished the Turkish forts there, and entering Servia, brought back twenty thousand prisoners, and a great quantity of spoil. The attempts which Mahomet made against Epirus, met only with their accustomed success; but some of Scanderbeg's best officers having been taken in a pursuit pushed too far, the barbarous Turk, after opprobrious usage, caused them to be flayed alive; under the torments of which they survived fifteen days. But their prince still defeating his generals, Mahomet hired two Turks to assassinate him; who were, however, detected, ere they had perpetrated their base design, and executed. Foiled in this, the Turk renewed his attacks on Epirus, and at length led thither in person a mighty host; with which, having achieved but little, he returned to his capital; while the great Scanderbeg was seized with the fever of which he died: after whose decease Mahomet made himself master of all Epirus or Albania. During these transactions the king of Hungary wrested the whole of Bosnia out of the hands of the Turks, with a part of Servia too; and on the other hand the Venetians succeeded in several attacks on their dominions. But their possession of the island of Negropont, the ancient Eubœa, was so inconvenient to Mahomet, that he employed a large army, together with a fleet, for the reduction of it; nor did they succeed in their attempts to retake it. Yet strengthening themselves by a confederacy with several Christian princes, they continued a predatory war against his coasts with no small damage to the Turk; who, on the other hand, wresting from the Genoese Kaffa, the strongest place in

A. D. 1466.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1481.

Crim Tartary, made himself master of that country, and appointed Mengli Ghieray to be Khan of it. The operations against the Venetians being successfully pushed on the side of Albania, they sought for peace, and obtained it on condition of surrendering the city of Scutari in Albania, the isle of Lemnos, and the castle of Tenarus in the Morea, and paying an annual tribute of nearly eight thousand ducats. Yet within only two years, Mahomet sent a fleet to ravage Italy, and the Venetians were again obliged to sue for peace. Nor was it long after this, that Mahomet sent a large fleet to attack Rhodes, the siege of which, after much loss, the Turks were, by the bravery of the defence made, obliged to raise. Mahomet's next effort was to gain a footing in Italy, and accordingly he sent a force which took and fortified the city of Otranto: but his presence being required in Asia, when he had with all his forces passed the Bosphorus, he was seized with the disorders by which an end was put to his life. To Mahomet succeeded his eldest son Bâ-yezid, whose title was disputed by his brother Jem, the eldest-born to Mahomet after he ascended the throne; but the contest ended in the assassination of the last. His rival thus removed, Bâ-yezid, after securing the isthmus of the Morea by two strong castles, led all his forces to Moldavia, where, by taking the most important fortresses of the country, he not only put a stop to the piracies of the Moldavians in the Euxine, but opened himself a way to the invasion of a province often attempted in vain. At no great distance of time from this expedition, but whether before or after is disputed, Bâ-yezid succeeded in making an entire conquest of Caramania. Bâ-yezid and the sultan of Egypt had for some time entertained jealousies of each other, but neither dared to attack the other; for while the dominions and the armies of the Ottoman exceeded those of the other, the annual supply of Circassian troops which the Egyptian obtained, rendered him very formidable. At length, however, hostilities commenced between these potent adversaries; but, after great slaughter on both sides, were suspended by a peace, at which Bâ-yezid restored to the Egyptian sultan all the places he had taken from him. Yet discerning that the power of the Circassians in Egypt could never be subverted, unless they were prevented from

recruiting their forces, he turned his arms toward their native country, unexpectedly invaded and over-ran it, and carrying off a great number of captives, shut up the avenues in the surrounding mountains with castles. The sultan of Egypt seeing that through this measure his own troops daily diminished, while those of his enemy increased, is said to have died through vexation. The Mahometans in Andalusia having besought Bâ-yezid to assist them against the Spaniards, by a great fleet which he sent into the Mediterranean, the Christian naval force was defeated, the island of Malta laid waste, and the coasts of Spain and Italy plundered. Elated with this success, he next made a complete conquest of Croatia and Bosnia. Towards the close of the century he added to his possessions in Greece, by captures from the Venetians : and thus ends the history of the Ottoman empire in Europe during the fifteenth century.

One of the first occurrences of any importance which took place in Italy in the fifteenth century, was the duke of Milan's capture of the cities of Bologna, Pisa, Perugia, and Sienna ; but in the midst of his successes he was cut off by a fever, leaving his possessions to his two sons. The opportunity of recovering the cities belonging to the ecclesiastical estate which thus offered itself, the bishop of Rome seized, and recovered Bologna, Perugia, Ferrara, and some others. In the mean time the anti-pope Benedict, whom the king of France had imprisoned as a step towards ending the schism, escaped, and was again acknowledged by that king ; and the next year he sent to Boniface, proposing an accommodation ; but the audience which the nuncios had of his other holiness produced only mutual reproaches ; a contest which Boniface survived but two days : when the nuncios, in breach of the safe-conduct granted them, were imprisoned, and not released until they had paid five thousand florins. On the death of Boniface, the cardinals then at Rome elected Cosmato Melcorato, cardinal of the holy cross in Jerusalem, who assumed the name of Innocent the seventh. But such disturbances between the factions arose in Rome, that he was soon induced to quit the city, and retire to Viterbo. In the mean time Benedict having come to Genoa, made advances towards a negociation for an accommodation, which

Occurrences
in Italy
during the
15th century.

A. D. 1404.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1406.

Innocent deeming insincere rejected, on which the other triumphantly accused him of unwillingness to terminate the schism. The Romans next year intreated Innocent to return to their city, which he did, but, ere the year was run out, died : the cardinals of that party then elected Angelus Corrarius, a Venetian, cardinal of the title of St. Mark, who took the name of Gregory the twelfth, and previously promised to abdicate, provided Benedict would. But while their two holinesses were treating about a place of meeting, the Ghibelline exiles under Ladislaus, king of Naples, surprized Rome, and obliged the pope to save himself in the castle of St. Angelo ; but they were quickly expelled with considerable loss. The two popes manifesting but little willingness to abdicate, were in turns deserted by their cardinals, who united in assembling a council at Pisa, by which both were deposed ; when the cardinals elected Peter Philargi, a cardinal-priest, who assumed the name of Alexander the fifth ; with whom, as president, the council decreed, that within three years another should be holden. As Ladislaus, king of Naples, had seized Rome with several other cities, and was extending his conquests, the people of Florence and Sienna, with the cardinal-legate at Bologna, made an alliance with Lewis, duke of Anjou, his competitor ; who quickly recovered the city of Rome, and other places in the ecclesiastical state. Alexander lived only to issue a mandate to the archbishop of Prague, enjoining him to prohibit all discourse on the doctrines of Wickliffe ; a prohibition which John Huss, who had been elected rector of that university, represented as unauthorized.

A. D. 1410.

On the decease of Alexander, the cardinals at Bologna, where he died, chose cardinal Balthasar Cossa, who took the name of John the twenty-third. The following year he repaired to Rome, and appointed Lewis of Anjou king of Sicily, and Paul Ursini general of his own army against Ladislaus, to whom that commander soon gave a complete defeat ; but refusing to pursue his victory, Lewis became so disgusted at the conduct of the Italians, that he returned to France. On the day of the defeat of Ladislaus, the city of Bologna revolted from the Church, under the conduct of two butchers, who held the government of it for more than a year. When Ladislaus, making use of the respite allowed him, had

repaired his losses, his holiness published a crusade against him, alarmed at which, the latter agreed to an accommodation, under which John covenanted to pay him a tribute. The pope now assembling a general council at Rome, which, though so thinly attended that it was prorogued, advised him to publish a decree against the Hussites, ordering the books of Wickliffe to be burnt, and his followers to appear before the pope in nine months. Ladislaus again surprized the city of Rome, the pope and cardinals scarcely escaping, after which he reduced all the Ecclesiastical State. When John applying to the emperor Sigismund, then in Italy occupied with his differences with the Venetians, was prevailed on by him to publish a bull for assembling a general council at Constance, in the diocese of Mentz: but, ere he himself began his journey for that city, the tranquillity of Italy was in some measure restored by the death of Ladislaus, king of Naples. Two days ere the council opened, John Huss arrived at Constance with a safe-conduct, but continuing to preach to the people, in disobedience to the orders of the council, was apprehended, and detained in honourable custody. The council determining that, to put an end to the schism, John as well as the other popes should abdicate; the first read the form of his abdication, but afterwards retreated from Constance in disguise; and his holiness soon made a protestation before two notaries, that he was not bound to what he had promised and sworn at Constance, because he was influenced by fear and force. A paper war was then commenced between him and the council, and the latter at length summoned John to appear at Constance within nine days. Jerome of Prague, the associate of John Huss, who had not appeared to a summons of the council, was declared contumacious: next the writings of Wickliffe were prohibited, and ordered to be burnt, and his bones were commanded to be dug up and removed off from consecrated ground. In a subsequent session a decree of suspension from the pontificate was denounced against John, for simony and many other scandalous vices; and he, having declared his willingness to submit to the council, a definitive sentence of deposition was denounced against him, which he confirmed by a publick instrument, and then laid aside the pontifical ornaments.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

The council then turned to John Huss, who professed his readiness to renounce any of his errors on being better instructed, but protested against compulsion, and pleaded the safe-conduct he had received: still he was committed to prison. After pope Gregory the twelfth had by proxy renounced the pontificate, John Huss, though his judges had used no arguments to refute his doctrines, was condemned as an obstinate heretick, and burnt alive without the city; the emperor most nefariously not adhering to his own safe-conduct. John Huss displayed during his execution the firmest faith, and most cheerful fortitude: but though the council had got rid of two popes, his third holiness, Benedict, was so far from resigning, that he proposed the schism should be terminated by acknowledging him, who had now no longer a competitor, for pope. In the mean time Jerome of Prague, having first abjured the doctrines of Wickliffe, and then retracting his abjuration, endeavoured to escape from Constance, was, after defending his doctrines with intrepidity and eloquence, condemned, as a relapsed heretick, and burnt, suffering with great constancy. After this, Benedict was summoned, by his original name of Peter de Luna, to appear as a schismatick and a heretick; and when the time of the summons was expired, he was declared contumacious, and, after several more citations, solemnly deposed: after which it was determined, that the next election should be made by six deputies from each of the nations, joined with the cardinals; and in a conclave so constituted was Otho Colonna, cardinal-deacon of St. George, chosen pope, taking the name of Martin the fifth. This pontiff on repairing to Italy found Rome in the hands of Brachius, lord of Perugia, but he was expelled by Sfortia Visconti, constable of Naples: the queen of Naples, too, restored the places she had seized. On the pope's arrival at Rome he was received with the greatest demonstrations of joy, but found the Romans almost sunk again into barbarism, when he ordered the city to be repaired and ornamented, and applied himself to humanize the citizens. On a war breaking out between the duke of Milan and the Florentines, now governed by the family of the Medicis, Martin declared for the duke. Assisting, too, the queen of Naples against Brachius, such a victory was gained over the last, that the queen of Naples and her

adopted son Lewis the third, duke of Anjou, remained in quiet possession of Naples ; Martin recovered Perugia, and the other places in the Ecclesiastical State that had been usurped by Brachius ; and the Florentines were deprived of their chief support against the duke of Milan. Not long after, Benedict, the anti-pope, dying, two cardinals of his obedience, in compliance with the will of his holiness, chose Ægidius, a canon of Barcelona, to succeed him, who was compelled by the king of Arragon to accept the mock dignity, and assumed the name of Clement the eighth. Alphonsus, king of Arragon, rejecting the request of Martin to renounce this anti-pope, a most severe sentence was denounced by the actual bishop of Rome against him and his kingdom. About the same time, Martin mediated a peace between Philip, duke of Milan, and the Florentines and their allies ; and the next year, the king of Arragon being reconciled to Martin, the anti-pope Clement voluntarily abdicated his dignity ; and his cardinals elected Martin the fifth, thus at last closing the schism. But short was the pontificate of the new pope ; for, early in the ensuing year, he was seized with an apoplexy which carried him off. In whose room the cardinals elected Gabriel Condelmero, cardinal-priest, and bishop of Sienna, who assumed the name of Eugenius the fourth ; and scarcely was he consecrated, ere he confirmed cardinal Julian as his legate in Germany to carry on a war against the Hussites, and regulate what was requisite for holding a council at Basil, appointed by those of Constance and Sienna. This military legate, having provided for the opening of the council, led the troops which the German princes had provided into Bohemia, where they were entirely defeated, with the loss of artillery and baggage, among which was the pope's bull. Despairing, therefore, to reduce them by force, after his arrival at Basil, the legate offered the Bohemians a safe-conduct to the council, which was opened in December. In the mean time the emperor Sigismund entering Italy, received the iron crown at Milan : while Eugenius proceeded to publish a bull for the dissolution of the council by his apostolical authority ; but this bull was openly resisted by the prelates assembled, who were countenanced by the emperor, at that time detained in Italy by hostilities with the Florentines and Venetians,

A. D. 1430.

A. D. 1431.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

who were favoured by his holiness. After the council had passed many resolutions declarative of their own independence on the pope, the deputies of the Hussites arrived, but the council and they could come to no agreement on the disputed points; while the former continued to publish decrees in derogation of the papal authority, and even rejected a bull of the pope's, confirming the council, as captious and deceitfull. In Italy, in the mean time, a peace was concluded between the duke of Milan and the Florentines, Venetians, Luccese, and other allies on both sides; and the emperor, having sworn to such articles as the pope required, was crowned at Rome; whence he returned through the territories of the Venetians, and arrived at Basil. While the council and the pope were occupied in disputes about superiority, the duke of Milan, by invading the territory of the Church, made his holiness quickly publish a bull, revoking all his proceedings against the council, and declaring it lawfully assembled. Though this for the present satisfied the council, Eugenius was, by a revolt of the citizens, obliged to flee from Rome; and he retired to Florence: still his spirit was not so subdued, but that, on the death of the queen of Naples, he by a nuncio forbade the inhabitants to receive any prince not confirmed by the holy see. But they refused to accept any but René, duke of Anjou, adopted by the late queen: ere whose arrival, Capua and some other places were seized by Alphonsus, king of Arragon and Sicily. But being unable to prevail with Eugenius to favour his pretensions to the kingdom, he wrote to the council to send one to take the government of Rome, and of the patrimony of the Church, he being resolved to conquer and restore both. Still Eugenius again got possession of Bologna, and recovered several places which had been seized by the king of Arragon. But his differences with the council at Basil being renewed, he published a bull, transferring it by the plenitude of his power immediately to Ferrara; and in return they suspended him from the pontificate. Still a council met at Ferrara, whither, to render it oecumenical, came the emperor and patriarch of Constantinople; but before any thing was concluded as to the union of the Churches, the appearance of the plague drove the assembly from Ferrara to Florence; where, after some debate, the

disputed points were so explained, that both parties agreed to them; and an union was formed between the two Churches. While these things passed in one council, in that at Basil, now reduced to but a small remnant of its former number, Eugenius was deposed, and, contrary to the desire of both the diet at Mentz and the emperor, a new election was made; and Amadeus, duke of Savoy, who had resigned his dominions, and taken the habit of an hermit, was chosen pope; and, after great opposition on his part, assumed the name of Felix the fifth. Eugenius consequently anathematized his new holiness, and all his adherents, but had the tenderness to do so conditionally only; and what called itself Christendom was divided between the two pontiffs. In the mean time the union to which the Greeks had consented, was rejected by their Churches. The archbishop of Florence and patriarch of Aquileia having been entrusted by Eugenius with the command of his holiness's army, defeated the general of the duke of Milan, and for this very apostolical achievement was created a cardinal. The temporal arms of his holiness were afterwards successfull in recovering from Francis Sforza the territory of Picenum: he was also reconciled to Alphonsus, king of Arragon, who had conquered Naples; and who, for that kingdom and the remission of the debts which he owed to the apostolick chamber, consented to take the oath of allegiance to him, and to restore the towns which he had seized, and send four thousand horse against Sforza, and six gallies against the Turks. Not long after this, Eugenius returned to Rome; where, by some concessions, he induced the Germans, who had for some years observed a neutrality between the council of Basil and him, to attach themselves to him; and, a few days after, died. Thomas of Sarzana, a cardinal of but few years standing, was elected in his room, and took the name of Nicholas the fifth: he was quickly acknowledged by the emperor, and at length Felix abdicated; and the council of Basil having, to show their authority, approved of his abdication, then ordered all Christians to obey Nicholas, and dissolved themselves. The duke of Milan having died and left no will, Francis Sforza, who had married his natural daughter, laid claim to the duchy; and having stormed Piacenza, and compelled the Venetians to agree to a peace with

A. D. 1447.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

him, he turned his arms against the Milanese, who soon acknowledged him for duke. The next remarkable occurrences in Italy were, the celebration of the jubilee, and the coronation of the emperor Frederick the third at Rome: after which one Simonetus, an Augustine friar, exerted himself with success in the charitable work of persuading Sforza, the Venetians, and Florentines, to conclude a peace: an alliance likewise being concluded between all the states of Italy, except the Genoese, for twenty years. Quickly after which Nicholas died, with the character of a liberal patron of science, having bestowed much of both pains and expense in procuring ancient Greek authors, and causing them to be translated into Latin, as well as in collecting Latin manuscripts. The next cardinal raised to the pontifical throne, was Alphonso Borgia, a native of Spain, who took the name of Calixtus the third; and though in his seventy-seventh year exerted himself very earnestly in forming a league against the Turks, but was far from heartily seconded by the princes of Christendom, who, when they had got the money raised by tithes and indulgences, took of it for the prosecution of their own purposes. On the death of Alphonsus, king of Naples, the pope claimed that kingdom, but was prevented prosecuting his claim by death. After his interment the cardinals chose Æneas Sylvius Piccolomini, who assumed the name of Pius the second, and, like his predecessor, endeavoured to raise a force to impede the progress of the Turks, but found no better support. He confirmed the kingdom of Apulia to Ferdinand, who was then in possession, and created six new cardinals. During his absence from Rome to attend a convention he had assembled at Mantua, a great commotion was raised at Rome; but Pius, immediately repairing to the city, restored tranquillity by the execution of the ringleader, and his chief associates. John, the son of René, duke of Anjou, having led a considerable body of French into Italy, and defeated Ferdinand, Pius, who did not wish the French forces should increase in Italy, assisted Ferdinand; and countenanced the Genoese in expelling their French garrison. Yet he was for a little time on good terms with Lewis the eleventh, until the contest for the kingdom of Naples interrupted their good understanding. Pius, even when his health became

much impaired, persisted in his resolution of going in person against the Turks; but when he had reached Ancona, and was joined by the doge of Venice with a considerable fleet, his illness increasing, he expired. The decease of the pope put an end to the proposed expedition; and the cardinals, returning to Rome, elected for his successor cardinal Peter Barbo, who took the name of Paul the second. Before his election he swore to observe the articles for the better administration of the pontificate, agreed on in the conclave; an engagement which he repeated after he was chosen; yet his holiness afterwards laboured to abolish them. Of the state of Christianity at this time in Rome, a judgment may be formed, from the fact of learned men amusing themselves with disputations after the manner of the ancient academies on the articles of the faith, some of whom Paul is accused of having charged with heresy. On the other hand, he encouraged the ostentation of the cardinals, allowing them to wear, what had been before confined to the pontiff, red hats, and mitres of damask silk; while, to preserve his own superiority, his holiness took a new pontifical mitre with three crowns, adorned with jewels to the value of an hundred and twenty thousand crowns. The exhortations which this pope addressed to the princes of Christendom to unite against the Turks had much the same effect as those of his predecessors: but, by the assistance of the king of Naples, he became master of nine castles in the possession of the counts of Anquillara. Paul having reconciled several states of Italy, which had acted as auxiliaries to the opposite factions in Florence, was greatly alarmed by the report of a plot; and a great many individuals, and, among others, the historian Platina, were apprehended and examined; and though in a few days Paul was informed, that the report of the plot was groundless, his holiness, that he might not appear to have acted from levity, ordered Platina and a number of others to be put to the question, and divers died under the torture. Malatesta, prince of Rimini, revolting from the Church, the pope sent an army against him; but Malatesta being supported by the king of Naples, the duke of Milan, and the Florentines, his holiness's army was defeated, and he induced to make peace on very dishonourable terms. Paul after this having published

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1471.

a bull reducing the recurrence of the jubilee to the twenty-fifth year, and erected Ferrara into a duchy, and given the investiture of it to Borso, marquis of Este, died when alone of an apoplexy. The cardinals elected Francis della Rovere, a cardinal-priest, who took the name of Sixtus the fourth. This new pontiff exerted himself to effect a coalition against the Turks, but with no great success: yet a fleet of eighty-five sail of Venetian, Neapolitan, and Roman vessels sailed under the command of cardinal Caraffa; but the only achievement of it was plundering Smyrna. When the jubilee was celebrated at Rome, the concourse of pilgrims fell short of expectation; but among those that repaired thither was Ferdinand, king of Naples, who obtained from the pope the remission of his tribute, on condition of sending annually a white horse with his trappings to Rome. The plague having broken out at Rome, his holiness published a bull for celebrating the office of the immaculate conception of the Virgin Mary, promising indulgences for either the private or publick performance of it. Yet the doctrine of it was publickly controverted by several orders of monks, who asserted, that to believe it was a mortal sin, and that it was a crime even to be present at the office. The duke of Milan having been assassinated in a church, Italy soon became divided into factions. The duke's widow forming an alliance with the Venetians, and Laurence and Julian Medici, who ruled at Florence, and the pope making an alliance with the king of Naples, and entering into a conspiracy with the family of the Pazzi, the rivals of the Medici at Florence, to murder Laurence and Julian, and change the government of Florence. The plan, however, of his holiness and his friends did not quite succeed; as Julian only was killed in the cathedral church, Laurence escaping, the senate seizing and putting to death the archbishop of Pisa, and the greater part of the conspirators. His sanguinary plot having so far miscarried, his holiness resolved on open war, which he with the most shameless impudence began by laying the city of Florence under an interdict; but the Florentines, with the assistance of their allies, impeded the progress of the papal troops, until the season obliged them to quit the field; and both the Venetians and Milanese withdrew their obedience from the pope. Though embassies in favour of the Flo-

rentines arrived from several parts of Europe, Sixtus continued his war against them ; until they having detached the king of Naples from his alliance, and the landing of the Turks having greatly alarmed Sixtus, he intimated to them, that he was willing to come to an accommodation ; when, after some very mean compliances on the part of the Florentines, his holiness agreed to a peace, and gave them his benediction. Enraged at Ferdinand, king of Naples, for his peace with the Florentines, Sixtus entered into a confederacy with the Venetians to attack Ferdinand's son-in-law, the duke of Ferrara, and a quarrel being purposely picked with him, the Venetians over-ran the greater part of his territories, which they had agreed to divide with the pope's nephew Jeronimo. But when Sixtus found himself menaced with an insurrection at Rome, and his dominions ravaged by the Neapolitans, though by the succours he received these last were defeated, he was prevailed on to agree to a peace with Ferdinand, and an alliance for twenty years. To this peace the Venetians were too much elated with their successes to accede : on which his holiness denounced against them a sentence of excommunication ; but using at the same time temporal arms in conjunction with his allies, the Venetians were much pressed. At which time Lewis Sforza, governour of the duke of Milan, thought proper to agree to a separate peace with them ; a step by which the rest of the allies were compelled to make peace, too, to the high dissatisfaction of the pope ; whose anger at hearing it seems to have accelerated his death, which took place a few days after he was informed of it. To this pontiff is Rome indebted for the Vatican library. On the decease of Sixtus much confusion followed at Rome ; but the parties between which the city was divided, agreed to a truce for a month, that the pope might be elected ; and the cardinal-bishop of Melphi, John Baptista Cylio, was chosen, and assumed the name of Innocent the eighth. While this pontiff endeavoured to reconcile the Colonnæ and Ursini, whose contests kept the vicinity of Rome in disturbance, he himself engaged in a war with Ferdinand, king of Naples ; during the continuance of which, though several places were taken on both sides, no action of consequence took place : and the next year a peace was concluded ;

A. D. 1484.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1492.

some of the conditions of which the king very soon violated. The pope, who was married ere he took orders, married his son to a daughter of Lorenzo de Medicis, and entered into a treaty with the Venetians and several other states, and mediated a peace between the first of these, and the archduke of Austria. At this time he condemned a book of John Picus, count of Mirandola, a man of very extraordinary genius, who did not oppose the censure.* Innocent finding that he could not obtain from Ferdinand, king of Naples, satisfaction for his violation of the late treaty, even by menaces, excommunicated and deposed him, inviting the king of France to march an army into Italy : but Ferdinand remained yet unshaken. A general convention was holden at Rome to deliberate on a general expedition against the Turks; but, like the former projects, vanished in smoke. The next year produced a reconciliation between Innocent and the king of Naples; which the former survived but a few weeks. The pontifical throne was next filled by cardinal Roderick Borgia, in whose election bribery is said to have been of considerable avail. He assumed the name of Alexander the sixth: but so infamous was his character, that his election alarmed all Italy. This alarm was soon justified by the total want of principle which he manifested in his negociations with Lewis Sforza, the governour of Milan, and Ferdinand, king of Naples, concluding an alliance first with one of them, and then the other. Informed of the discovery of America, he by a bull granted to Ferdinand and Isabella all the lands discovered and to be discovered to the West of a meridian line, computed an hundred leagues Westward of the islands of Cape Verd, and the Azores. Having about the same time made a promotion of twelve cardinals, among whom was Cæsar Borgia, his

* He was descended from a family celebrated in Italy from the year 1110. He obtained the title of the Phoenix of his age, and is by Scaliger called *monstrum sine vitio*. At the age of ten years he studied the law, and published commentaries on it: at eighteen years he understood twenty-two languages, and had only entered his twenty-fifth year when he published his book containing nine hundred theses in logick, divinity, mathematicks, magick, physics, and the Cabbala, which he undertook to defend. Picus died at Florence in the thirty-second year of his age.

own natural son, to remove this impediment to his promotion, his holiness suborned false witnesses to swear, that he was the legitimate son of another person. Ferdinand, king of Naples, dying, Alphonsus his successor by presents prevailed on the pope to give him the crown of that kingdom; and this producing hostile preparations by the king of France, Alexander not only solicited the assistance of the king of Spain, but privately did the same from the Ottoman emperor. Still the French monarch entered Italy, where he was joined by Lewis Sforza, who on the death of his nephew the duke, suspected not to be natural, caused himself to be proclaimed duke of Milan, though his nephew had left a son. The king of France advanced without opposition to Rome; on his arrival in which city the pope, with two cardinals, retired into the castle of St. Angelo; but eighteen others urged the king to depose so wicked a pontiff. By presents properly distributed, however, Alexander prevailed to obtain an accommodation with Charles, who proceeded to take possession of the kingdom of Naples; and on hearing that his holiness thought himself no longer bound to observe the treaty he had so lately made with him, but had entered into an alliance with the king of Spain, the Venetians, and the duke of Milan against him, he repassed the Alps to France. On this departure of the French monarch, Ferdinand, king of Naples, (for his father Alphonsus had resigned the crown to him) recovered the greatest part of his kingdom: yet tranquillity was not restored to Italy. Many cities in the Ecclesiastical State still adhered to the king of France, and on his threatening to return, the Venetians invited the emperor to take the command of their army, who accordingly came into Italy, and was crowned emperor by cardinal Borgia at Milan, but returned to Germany without achieving any thing, and justly dissatisfied with the base conduct of the Venetians. Ferdinand dying at Naples without children, was succeeded by his uncle Frederick, who quickly completed the re-conquest of his whole kingdom. Not long after this, was disclosed a scene of wickedness, at which any heart, not entirely deprived of all moral feeling, can scarcely fail to shudder. One of his holiness's sons, the duke of Candia, was assassinated in

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the streets by his brother the cardinal of Valentia ; partly prompted thereto, it is suggested, by jealousy of his brother's having a greater share in their sister's affections than himself; while both the brothers are said to have been rivalled by their father : who for a few days manifested some apparently salutary impression from this occurrence, but then returned with increased eagerness to his old vices. Lewis the twelfth having succeeded to the crown of France, and declared his intention to support his claim to the kingdom of the two Sicilies, and the duchy of Milan, and being at the same time desirous of a divorce, Alexander, wanting his assistance in Italy, sent his son Cæsar Borgia, who had resigned the cardinalate, to Paris with a bull, authorizing an examination of the king's marriage. The preparations of the French king to take possession of the duchy of Milan, alarming Lewis Sforza, on finding that he could not obtain assistance from Germany, he requested the Turks to attack the Venetians ; and the emperor Maximilian taking the same step at the same time, they entered Italy from Bosnia, and ravaged the country with fire and sword as far as Lavenza. At length, a French army having passed the Alps, in less than twenty days made themselves masters of the Milanese ; Sforza fleeing with his family into Germany. And when Lewis the twelfth himself arrived, he received congratulations from all the potentates of Italy except Frederick, king of Naples ; and by his assistance, Cæsar Borgia, whom he had in France created duke of Valentinois, took several places in Romagna for the pope. The year fifteen hundred being now come, the war in Lombardy prevented any great concourse of pilgrims. But Lewis Sforza having suddenly repassed the Alps with several thousand Swiss and Burgundians, the whole Milanese revolted from the French ; who had rendered themselves detested by their insolence and barbarity. But it was not long ere Lewis Sforza, being seized by the Swiss in his own service, and delivered to the French commander, the king of France became more absolute master of the Milanese than before. After which, again supplying Cæsar Borgia with troops, he enabled him to continue his conquests in Romagna ; while his holiness, to supply the expenses of the war, made twelve

new cardinals, from whom he received a large sum ; and with this trait of the purity of the conclave must end the history of the fifteenth century in Italy.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in France
during the
15th century.

The duke of Burgundy, who had laboured all he could to protect the French people from the oppression of the queen and the duke of Orleans, whose intimate correspondence was not without scandal, being dead, his son was entirely excluded from the government, and such was the conduct of the queen and the duke of Orleans, that the king, in one of his lucid intervals, discovering, that his children were so cruelly used as even sometimes to want food, called a council of the princes of the blood ; and the duke of Orleans was compelled to acquiesce in a provision, that during the times of the king's incapacity, the government should be vested in a council of state composed of the princes of the blood. Still the dukes of Orleans and Burgundy hated each other, and their animosities had nearly kindled a civil war ; when, by the interposition of their common uncle, the duke of Berry, they consented to a reconciliation, solemnly swearing at the altar to live in perfect friendship for the future. Three days after which (what a reader would scarcely believe, who had not previously been apprized of the numerous instances of the enormous wickedness of men related in this History,) the duke of Orleans was assassinated by order of the duke of Burgundy, who retiring to his own estate, and raising troops, marched to Paris, and forced from the king a full pardon ; during his subsequent absence, however, this was recalled. But on his return to Paris with his forces, he again gave law to the king and his family ; though he lost the reputation he had until then maintained through the greater part of the kingdom : yet a reconciliation with the friends of the murdered prince was at length brought about. It was now the city of Genoa revolted ; and the French lost, what had been of use to their commerce, their influence in Italy. Neither was the reconciliation at home durable : on the contrary, the duke of Orleans, son of him who was assassinated, openly declared war against the duke of Burgundy, and all France became divided into two parties ; those who followed the duke of Orleans, stiled, from his wife's father, Armagnacs, and those who adhered to the duke of Burgundy, Cabo-

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

chins. Both parties called in assistance from England; but the duke of Orleans, that of an whole army, commanded by the duke of Clarence: yet, ere hostilities had proceeded far, both parties became desirous of peace, which the Dauphin had the honour of dictating. The country being now both exhausted and greatly dissatisfied, while it was menaced with a war from England, Lewis the Dauphin, an high-spirited prince, resolved to take on himself the actual direction of affairs. But an insurrection of the duke of Burgundy's friends among the mob of Paris soon took place; and the Dauphin, nay, the king himself, with the dukes of Berry and Burgundy, were forced to act as the rabble dictated; when, to deliver himself from this insupportable thralldom, the Dauphin wrote to the duke of Orleans, on whose advance to Paris, some of the Cabochins being slain, the rest withdrew into Flanders, whither they were followed by the duke of Burgundy; who previously made an attempt to seize the person of the king. Neither did the universal disapprobation which his conduct had excited, prevent his renewing his intrigues, by which he raised a mistrust of the Dauphin; and afterwards advancing towards Paris with a great army, sent an herald to acquaint the citizens, that he was come by the express desire of the king and Dauphin to deliver them out of confinement. But this stratagem not taking effect, he retired; and was afterwards obliged to accept of peace on the king's terms. These transactions were quickly followed by negociations with Henry the fifth of England; whose demands being too high to be granted, were followed by that monarch himself at the head of an army; who, after a fatiguing siege, having taken Harfleur by assault, determined to march to Calais, whither the best part of his fleet had been driven by the weather. But he was intercepted in his route by the French army; the command of which having, through the king's illness and consequent absence of the Dauphin and the duke of Berry, devolved on the constable, he took such measures as induced Henry to offer to restore Harfleur, and pay the expenses of the war, for a free passage to Calais; but, by the influence of the young nobility, ignorant of the invincible spirit of English soldiers under difficulties, this offer was contemptuously rejected; and the battle of Agincourt, so called

from a small village near the plain in which it was fought, took place between sixty thousand French, and of the English two-and-twenty thousand, of whom near one-half were ill of the flux; at the end of which the slain and prisoners of the former surpassed in number the whole host of the latter; while the French loss was, too, particularly heavy in point of nobility. The victorious monarch pursued his march to Calais: while the duke of Burgundy, on the one hand, sent him a defiance for the death of his brother, the duke of Brabant, who had been killed in the battle, and, on the other, marched with a great body of cavalry towards Paris; where the Dauphin died. On this event the queen sent for the count of Armagnac, and appointed him constable of France, which office had become vacant by the fall of the last at Agincourt. The judgment and activity of the count soon compelled the duke of Burgundy to retire with disgrace; and he so gained the favour of the king during his lucid intervals, that he was appointed superintendant of the finances, and had all the power civil and military lodged in his hands: and he broke the faction of Burgundy in Paris. John, duke of Touraine, now, by the death of his brother, become Dauphin, entered into the duke of Burgundy's interests in Flanders, but advancing to Compiègne, there died of an imposthume in his ear. The constable having convinced the king of the infidelity of his queen, that abandoned woman, and her daughter Catherine, were banished to Tours. To obtain her release she applied for the assistance of the duke of Burgundy; and co-operated with him by resuming the title and authority of regent, making Troyes the seat of her government. The scenes of duplicity and breach of faith which followed, it would be an endless task to relate; suffice it to say, that a party of the duke of Burgundy's troops having entered Paris by treachery, were joined by the populace, to whose savage fury the constable, the chancellor, and several prelates, fell a sacrifice; and there followed a sanguinary scene of unrestrained ferocity, little, if at all, exceeded by what has happened in the same city in our own days, and perfectly characteristick of the same people. Henry in the mean time reduced the greater part of Normandy; and though the queen, by carrying her daughter to an interview with him,

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

endeavoured to interest his heart on the side of peace, their conferences ended without any agreement. Still this appearance of treating by his mother, induced the Dauphin to settle his differences with the duke of Burgundy; but in a subsequent conference that duke was assassinated; a domestick of the duke of Orleans leading the assassins. This produced a confederacy against the Dauphin, though he disavowed, and it was generally thought truly, any participation in the murder; and that the confederates might be more at liberty to act, a truce between the kings of France and England was signed under the mediation of the new duke of Burgundy; and the following spring a treaty of peace was concluded at Troyes, and ratified by the king, the queen, the duke of Burgundy, and a number of the prime nobility, and afterwards approved by the parliament; by which Henry was, on condition of marrying the princess Catherine, declared next heir to the crown of France; and in the mean time, during the present king's life, was to exercise the royal power under the title of regent; that in subsequent reigns both nations should be governed by the same monarch, but each live according to its own laws: while the Dauphin was declared incapable of the succession, and an enemy to the state. But this young prince, now in the seventeenth year of his age, assumed also the title of regent and heir of France; while all the provinces beyond the Loire, most of the princes of the blood, and many of the nobility, declared for him. In the mean time Henry, being obliged to return to England, took his new queen with him; and, while he was absent from France, the Dauphin, by the help of some troops he had obtained from Scotland, gained a victory over the duke of Clarence, who fell in the engagement. And the next year Henry himself died; when, the duke of Burgundy declining it, the duke of Bedford succeeded to the regency: nor did the king of France survive his son-in-law two months. At the interment of that monarch, Henry of Windsor was proclaimed king of France and England, but the duke of Bedford had all the royal power; and in the mean while, the Dauphin, then in his twentieth year, took the title of king, with no other ceremony than that of displaying the banner of France. The commencement of his reign was unpromising; but far from

A. D. 1421.

A. D. 1421.

despairing, he manifested great generosity to those who entered into his service ; by which he drew together a considerable army : yet this he lost by the victorious arms of the duke of Bedford. So many friends, however, did he make by his affability, and all the testimony of gratitude that he could give, that he preserved the semblance of resistance until the remains of the French monarchy were saved by the misconduct that prevailed among the English ; by which the duke of Bedford was compelled to make a journey to England, and remain some months there. This leisure Charles improved to gain, by the offer of the dignity of the constable of France, Arthur, earl of Richmond, who had taken offence at being refused the command of the English army, and with him his brother, the duke of Bretagne. The former quickly recovered several places on the frontiers of Normandy, but behaved in a manner the most insolent to the king. Still the war was carried on with great vigour and various success in all parts of the kingdom ; till at length the duke of Bedford commanded Orleans to be besieged, when the importance of the place induced Charles to use every means to preserve it. Yet with all the valour with which it was defended, it must soon have fallen, when a stratagem, adapted to the superstition of the time, preserved both the city and the kingdom to the French sovereign. A young woman of the name of Joan d'Arc, a native of the village of Domremy, near Vaucouleurs, declared, that she had received a Divine revelation, that under her command the king's forces should raise the siege of Orleans ; and, being entrusted with a large convoy, and strong escort, she conducted it safely into the city ; and then joining the governour, the Bastard of Orleans, in the defence, she appeared in male attire on horseback, charged with great courage at the head of the troops, affected extraordinary piety, and was irreproachable in morals ; and so harassed the besiegers, that they were constrained to retire after having been before the city a year ; and from this exploit she obtained the title of the Maid of Orleans. She afterwards pressed the king to attempt the reduction of Rheims, that he might there be crowned ; and, actually overcoming the difficulties attending the achievement, Rheims was taken, the king crowned, and the French troops were elated with the opinion of having an inspired leader :

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

while the belief of this discouraging their opponents, Charles pushed his conquests as far as the Seine. But at length this heroine having thrown herself into Compiègne, when besieged by the duke of Burgundy, was in a sally taken prisoner by a gentleman of Burgundy, and sold to the English, by whom she was brought to trial as a witch, and condemned to perpetual imprisonment: but, on resuming man's apparel, which she had laid aside, she was considered as contumacious, and burnt in the market-place at Rouen. Yet the spirit she had raised in the French troops expired not with her; and though the French king himself was ruled by his ministers, and particularly by the constable, they, while he pursued his pleasures, managed his affairs with ability; and after Henry had been brought to Paris, and solemnly crowned, they so improved the differences which had arisen between the dukes of Burgundy and Bedford, that the former was induced to enter into a treaty with Charles; and after the death of the duke of Bedford, which occurred soon after that of the queen-dowager of France, openly declared in his favour: while the constable had made himself master of Paris; into which, however, Charles would not enter until by distinguishing himself in an assault on Montreuil he had raised his reputation with the citizens, and secured himself an honourable reception. The king, driven from Paris by the plague, accompanied with a famine, passed the next year beyond the Loire, where he received the canons which the council of Basil had enacted to restrain the papal power, and approving, caused them to be adopted as a law of the Gallican church, to which he gave the name of the Pragmatic Sanction, which has since been retained as the bulwark of the rights of that church against the tyrannical pretensions of the Roman pontiffs. The king having introduced into his army the best plan of discipline of which the state of affairs would admit, several malcontents appeared among the officers, and even among those of the royal blood, by whom the Dauphin was seduced to unite with them; but the firmness of the king broke their measures. After which, perceiving how much the manifestation of courage attached his subjects to him, he again distinguished himself in the capture of Pontoise from the English; at which, also, the Dauphin, who deceived his

father by appearing now all submission, behaved with becoming bravery. A new confederacy between the duke of Orleans, who had by ransom obtained his release from England, and those of Burgundy and Bretagne, was dissolved by the king's firmness and prudence, and the character of Charles was raised still higher by his exertions against the English; while the Dauphin acquired great reputation by the taking of Harfleur, and the extinction of a rebellion in Gascony. Both French and English continuing desirous of peace, a ten months truce was agreed on by the two monarchs; and to employ his soldiers, lest they should find worse employment for themselves, the Dauphin was sent with a numerous army to assist the House of Austria against the Swiss; and the king with another laid siege to the city of Metz for the duke of Lorraine; both which expeditions ended in an accommodation. On the return of these armies into France, the king, after a general review, signified to the troops that were to be disbanded, his resolution to treat as rebels such as should disturb the peace of the kingdom; however, he soon wanted them again. For the English most unwisely breaking the truce the next year, the war was renewed with almost unvarying success on the part of the French; who quickly reduced the whole of the duchy of Normandy. Neither was this success interrupted by the conduct of the Dauphin, who obtained his father's permission to retire into Dauphiné, where he acted as an independent prince. For the count of Longueville prosecuted the war in Guienne with such success, that he reduced all that province, which had been so long in the hands of the English. Yet, in less than two years, the earl of Shrewsbury again landed at Bourdeaux, and thence over-ran a great portion of Guienne; but being slain in an endeavour to raise the siege of Castillon, the king, who had himself come into that country, recovered the whole of it. The Dauphin, who in direct disobedience to the king's commands had married the daughter of the duke of Savoy, seemed to be a quiet spectator of his father's good fortune, yet he interfered in the wars of Italy; and on his father's shewing a dislike of an interposition to his prejudice, he declared war against him. At length the king determining to make him sensible of his duty, disposed every thing for the seizure of his person; when

A. D. 1461.

the Dauphin fled into Brabant. But receiving from the duke of Burgundy only respectfull behaviour, was content to make Genep, on the borders of Hainault, his residence, and accept a pension of three thousand florins a year for his subsistence. The prosperous situation of the king's affairs, induced the Genoese to put again that republick under the protection of France; and Charles accordingly sent a governour thither. The Dauphiness being delivered of a son, Lewis sent one of his household to acquaint his father with it; who caused publick rejoicings to be made, and wrote him a letter of congratulation with his own hand. This monarch's death was occasioned by the remarkable circumstance of his abstaining too long from food, on the receipt of a caution against poison: he died in the thirty-ninth year of his age. The news of his father's death did not even appear to grieve his successor, Lewis the eleventh. At his request the duke of Burgundy and his son accompanied him to Rheims, where he was crowned: after which he began his reign with measures the most inconsistent and contradictory. Still the general situation of the neighbouring countries was so distracted, as to enable the new sovereign of France to dictate to them. Being called in as a mediator between the kings of Castile and Arragon, he contented neither, but corrupted the ministers of both. He recovered from the duke of Burgundy the towns on the Somme, pledged to him by the treaty of Arras for the payment of four hundred thousand crowns, but deceived him in the execution of the treaty. The facility with which his designs at first succeeded, induced him, from a conceit of his talents, to form bolder projects: he attempted to seize the persons of both the duke of Burgundy and the count de Charolois his son, but was disappointed in both. And these princes joined with the duke of Bretagne in uniting the malcontents of all ranks in a league, ostensibly for the publick good; and a short civil war ensued. In this, one battle took place, when each army deemed itself defeated: but when the confederates had forces sufficient to have driven Lewis from his kingdom, the want of a preponderating leader rendered their army inefficient: they therefore complied with the king's desire of a negociation; and an accommodation was made by Lewis's granting to the confederates all they

thought fit to desire: while he in private protested against the articles, which he publicly ratified; and artfully recovered almost the whole of what he had been obliged to yield; having, ere the end of the year, either by force or fraud, freed himself from the most inconvenient clauses of the treaties to which he had consented. On the death of the duke of Burgundy, who was succeeded by Charles the Hardy, Lewis sent the cardinal Balue and St. Pol, whom he had made constable of France, to conciliate that prince; while, on the other hand, he endeavoured to excite the people of Liege to go to war with him. At length, however, though he succeeded not against the duke of Burgundy, he reduced the duke of Bretagne to accept of such terms of peace as he chose to grant. After which, thinking he could over-reach the duke of Burgundy in negociation, he very weakly trusted himself in his hands in the town of Peronne. During his stay in which, news was brought to the duke, that the people of Liege had been excited to insurrection by the emissaries of Lewis: this induced the duke to treat him as a prisoner; take him with him to witness the reduction of the inhabitants of Liege, and compel him to agree to a treaty of which the duke dictated the terms. The treachery of the cardinal of Balue and the bishop of Verdun, in holding a secret correspondence with the duke of Burgundy, being now discovered, the court of Rome interposing, though they were convicted, the king confined both of them in iron cases, of eight feet square, for upwards of eleven years. The restoration of Henry the sixth of England, and the flight of Edward the fourth to the duke of Burgundy, who had married his sister, presented to Lewis what he deemed a good opportunity of recovering from that duke the cities and towns which he held in Picardy; he contrived, therefore, to bring forward a cause for attacking him; and the constable took St. Quintin ere the duke had an army to face him. But this last, discovering that the duke of Guienne, the king's brother, and the duke of Bretagne, took part against him only with a view to induce him to give his daughter, the greatest heiress in Europe, in marriage to the former, gave the king of France an hint of the real state of things; and Edward the fourth, having re-mounted the throne of England, expressed his objections to the marriage pro-

posed to the duke, who perceiving that Lewis was inclined to negotiate on reasonable terms, converted the truce already existing between them into a peace; by which, on the restitution of St. Quintin and Amiens to the duke, he abandoned Monsieur and the duke of Bretagne to the king's vengeance; and the last left the duke of Nevers and the count de St. Pol to the duke's mercy. Yet at last the king refused to ratify this peace; the duke of Guienne, Monsieur, who had given him so much trouble, being dead of a lingering disease, suspected to be in consequence of poison. When the duke found Lewis resolved not to ratify the treaty, he declared war, under the plea of revenging the duke of Guienne's death: while the king not only came to an accommodation with the duke of Bretagne, but drew over to him the famous Philip de Commines, the historian, the duke of Burgundy's principal minister. That duke not having success in his renewed war, met the inclination of the king in concluding a truce, and then employed himself in Germany; at one time soliciting the alliance of the emperor, at another engaging in a war with him. Next year, the king proposed to the emperor to divide the duke of Burgundy's territories, but to that prince the proposal appeared premature; and the hostilities between the duke and the Germans were terminated by a treaty. On the other hand, Edward the fourth of England, having entered into several treaties with the duke of Burgundy, landed a fine army in France; but not finding that support which the duke had encouraged him to expect, he entered into a negotiation with Lewis, which ended in a treaty and an interview; Lewis receiving most hospitably all the English that repaired to his court; and according to his custom, and it may perhaps be justly added, that of his nation, corrupted the whole English council. After Edward's departure, the duke of Burgundy signed a truce for nine years; when the king abandoned René, duke of Lorrain, and the duke gave up the constable, who was carried to Paris, tried, and condemned to death by the parliament. After this, the duke of Burgundy, by his imprudent undertakings, weakened his power; lost Lorrain, which he had taken from its duke, and was at length treacherously slain in a battle against that duke. On this event Lewis seized Burgundy and the county of Artois; and, after

raising cruel disturbances in Flanders, he suffered the duke's daughter to be married to Maximilian of Austria, rather than to a prince of his own blood. Hostilities, however, soon took place between the archduke and the king; but so little to the advantage of the former, that he was glad to agree to a truce: when the king, besides arranging other matters, made an alliance with Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain. Hostilities were again commenced by the archduke Maximilian with no better success than before; and such was the loss at sea, that the inhabitants of the Low Countries in the next year concluded a truce with the king. This monarch's nephew, the duke of Savoy, dying, Lewis declared himself tutor to his brother Charles, and sent him from France, where he and another brother, John, were for education, to take possession of his dominions. The death of the duchess of Burgundy followed; and Lewis was thus enabled to succeed so far in the negociation he was privately carrying on with the people of Ghent, as to compell the archduke to consent to the marriage of his daughter Margaret with the Dauphin, already betrothed to the daughter of the king of England; whose death alone seems to have prevented his seeking vengeance for the insult and the perfidy. Lewis had now been successfull in diminishing the power of his nobility, and establishing his kingdom so firmly as to have nothing to fear from foreign attack. But he had not obtained happiness: for the terrours of conscience tormented him in his retreat at Plessis, where in a guarded fortress few had access to him; but he strove to divert his thoughts of approaching dissolution with the most ridiculous amusements. Having sent for his son the Dauphin, whom he had not seen for several years, and who had been bred up with equal privacy and severity, and given him the counsel he thought requisite, he received a third apoplectick stroke, from which he recovered so far as to order the chancellor to carry the seal to his son, whom he from that time stiled the king, and in a week expired. This wicked monarch is said to have been the first who used the title of Most Christian King constantly. His son, Charles the eighth, being, through want of education, incapable of administering the government, his sister Anne, Dame de Beaujeu, who had been named to it by the late king, was, by the states,

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

appointed to act for the king. This the duke of Orleans endeavoured to counteract, but was unable ; and found himself under the necessity of making the best terms he could with the princess, whose sagacity had broken all his measures. The immoral maxims of the late reign produced in this their natural fruit of fraud, violence, and disloyalty : the governess had nobody, except her husband, on whom she could depend without pay. Yet things for some time bare the appearance of tranquillity, until the duke of Orleans, having formed a new league, retired into Bretagne, and a civil war commenced ; while the archduke Maximilian took arms without. Yet the confederacy was broken ; the duke of Bourbon in particular, who had been made constable, returned ; and when the king marched into Bretagne, though the nobility of the country united with the duke to defend it, their efforts proved of little value ; a decisive battle was fought near St. Aubin du Cormier, in which the duke of Orleans and the prince of Orange were taken prisoners, and the duke of Bretagne was obliged to submit to the king's terms ; and, shortly after, he died by a fall from his horse, leaving only two daughters. In the mean time, a civil war having broke out in the Low Countries, the people of Ghent, with the assistance of the French, took prisoner Maximilian, now king of the Romans, and released him only on hard terms, and for an high ransom. The duke of Bourbon dying, his brother, the lord of Beaujeu, the husband of the governess, succeeded to that title, and consequently his consort became duchess of Bourbon. The young duchess of Bretagne, now in danger of losing her dominions, was solicited to marry the king of France ; and, after much intrigue and debate, was prevailed on by the duke of Orleans, whom Charles, now taking on him to act for himself, released from prison for that purpose, to consent ; and, to the astonishment of all Europe, the marriage was suddenly celebrated : and war actually commenced or was menaced on all sides. With England, however, peace was soon settled ; Maximilian agreed to a truce for a year ; and, by the cession of the counties of Roussillon and Cerdagne, Ferdinand of Spain was prevailed on to engage not to assist any of the enemies of France ; and to deliver Charles at once from all his old quarrels, the truce with Maximilian was, by a new treaty, converted.

into a peace, by restoring to her family the princess Margaret, with her fortune, and the counties of Burgundy, Artois, and Auxerre; a few places excepted. All these treaties gave the king opportunity for his expedition into Italy, which has been already noticed; and, after two years, returning into France, he was, by his favourite, advised to repeat the expedition; but this was prevented by the refusal of the duke of Orleans to take the command of the army. The king, however, spent his time in the southern parts of France as being near Italy, but was taken up principally with amusements and amorous pursuits, which induced an habit of inconstancy in his measures, that might have been of the utmost detriment, had the neighbouring princes been able to take advantage of it. However, finding his health decay, Charles renounced his pleasures, and spent only a small part of his time in the most innocent amusements. He made some excellent regulations respecting the administration of justice, recalled several old servants of integrity, and meditated an entire reformation of the state, and the relief of his subjects from the weight of taxes under which they laboured. But the fruit of these laudable resolutions was prevented by his sudden death, immediately caused, it should seem, by an accidental blow on his head; and in him ended the direct line of Philip de Valois, after governing France one hundred and seventy years. Charles leaving no son, was, without dispute, succeeded by the duke of Orleans, a prince equally esteemed by the nobility, and beloved by the people; and who ascended the throne with the name of Lewis the twelfth. He continued all the ministers and magistrates employed by his predecessor, and assured the duke and duchess of Bourbon of his affection. The queen-dowager he treated with every mark of respect, and permitted her to assume the sovereignty of her own dominions: and he at the same time manifested great resolution in restoring military discipline, and obliging the magistrates to do their duty. Having no issue by his queen, he obtained from his holiness Alexander the sixth, a dissolution of his marriage; and concluded a marriage with his predecessor's widow. The emperor having invaded the duchy of Burgundy, and there received a defeat, a truce was concluded; and the archduke Philip did homage for the counties of Flanders, Artois, and

A. D. 1498.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Spain
during the
15th century.

Charolois. After other steps requisite for securing tranquillity at home during his absence, Lewis sent an army into Italy, which meeting with rapid success, he passed the mountains himself; and those events occurred, which, as belonging to the history of Italy, are stated in another place; while here closes the history of France during the fifteenth century.

A. D. 1405.

In the opening of the fifteenth century, the wealth of Spain gave rise to many factions detrimental to the publick peace; but the king, Don Henry the third, interposing with equal equity and dignity, put an end to complaints. He then sent a complimentary embassy to Tamerlane; who returned the civility by an officer of his household, who, among other presents, brought two young Hungarian ladies of exquisite beauty, found among the spoils of Bajazet, and who were soon afterwards happily married in Spain. The queen being delivered of a daughter, the states acknowledged, and swore to maintain her right to the crown, if the king left no male issue: but two years after, a son was born; and, in the next, the Moors began to infringe the truce; and, on the king's expostulation, their king invaded Jaen with a considerable army, but was beaten in two actions. Don Henry drew together an assembly of the states to consult with them on attacking the kingdom of Granada with the whole force of Spain; but, during the deliberation, he himself died, in consequence, it was suspected, of slow poison given him by a Jewish physician. His son, Don Juan, being but fourteen months old, the states declared the queen-dowager, and the late king's brother, Don Ferdinand, regents. The latter pursued the war against the Moors with vigour and success; and on the decease of Martin, the king of Arragon, put in his claim to that kingdom; which was allowed by the judges appointed by the states of Arragon, and he was crowned at Saragossa. But a civil war was commenced against him by the count de Urgel, who held many strong places, and had a numerous party. Yet the nobles of Castile, on the application of Ferdinand, drew together such a force as placed him in quiet possession after a sharp contest, which ended in his competitor's surrendering himself at discretion. To cement the union which already existed between the crowns of Castile and Arragon, a

marriage was concluded between Alphonsus, the eldest son of Ferdinand, and the infant Donna Maria of Castile. Quickly after which Don Ferdinand died; and two years after died the queen-dowager of Castile; having been assisted by a council ever since the loss of Ferdinand. By some of the principal nobility it was thought most adviseable on the queen's death, to proclaim the king, though then scarcely thirteen, of full age; and, shortly after, he espoused his first cousin, Donna Maria of Arragon. The king having assumed the government, made a favourite of a Don Alvaro de Luna: while Juan and Henry, infants of Arragon, formed the same project of possessing themselves of the young king's person, and governing in his name. In the first, Henry succeeded; but, after a year, the king escaped. But Don Juan having married the daughter of the king of Navarre, when she was delivered of a prince, his grandfather declared him his successor. The next, the queen of Castile produced a daughter, who was named Catalina. While his younger brothers were disturbing the tranquillity of Castile, Alphonsus, king of Arragon, was in Italy endeavouring to obtain the kingdom of Naples; but, not succeeding, he returned home; when some differences arose between him and the king of Castile about the sister of the latter, who had taken refuge in Arragon, and the brother of the former, whom the king of Castile detained. In the next year the last had born to him a son and heir, who was named Henry. The differences subsisting between the two kings were settled, and Don Henry released, about the same time that his brother Juan succeeded, in right of his wife, to the kingdom of Navarre. The tranquillity thus produced lasted not long; for, after various intrigues and internal changes in Castile, war actually commenced between that kingdom and Arragon; and irruptions and devastations took place on both sides, though the king of Castile succeeded best; and a truce was at length concluded between him, and the kings of Arragon and Navarre. While these occurrences took place among the Spaniards, in the Moorish kingdom of Granada Mahomet, surnamed the Left-handed, who had been driven from the throne by Mahomet the Little, recovered it, and his rival was put to death. The king of Castile, having freed himself from other wars, turned his arms

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

against the Moors, and, in a general action, compleatly defeated them ; but, by the jealousy which his nobles entertained against his favourite, Don Alvaro de Luna, the constable, he was prevented from laying siege to the city of Granada, and at once delivering the country from the Moors. Before the end of that year, having concluded a peace with Portugal, the king of Castile enabled Joseph Ben Muley to dethrone Mahomet the Left-handed, and force him to flee to Malaga, while the new king acknowledged himself a vassal of Castile ; on which hostilities ceased. As soon as this war was ended, the troubles in Castile were renewed ; but the king succeeded in forcing Don Henry of Arragon to evacuate all the places which he held in his dominions, on certain conditions. Joseph Ben Muley dying, after a short illness, Mahomet the Left-handed for the third time placed himself on the throne of Granada, with whom the king of Castile thought fit to agree to a short truce. But, on the conclusion of it, the war was renewed, and continued for some time, without any thing on either side more decisive, than several towns on the frontiers of Granada submitting to the king of Castile. While the kings of Arragon and Navarre having suffered in their wars in Italy, after returning from the captivity into which they had there fallen, concluded a treaty of peace with the king of Castile, cemented by a marriage of the prince of Asturias with the king of Navarre's daughter, Donna Blanca ; and an arrangement of all the claims of the princes of Arragon on the Castilian monarch. Yet this promise of peace soon failed ; and a rebellion broke out in Castile, and the rebels were joined by Don Henry, and afterward by the king of Navarre, the queen of Castile herself, and the prince of Asturias. The pretended object of the league was to prevail on the king to dismiss the constable ; and, in the course of operations, they made themselves masters of the sovereign's person, who submitted to all their demands, while he endeavoured to over-reach them in intrigues ; yet was he reduced, by the proposal of his own son, to a condition little better than that of a prisoner. But the prince being prevailed on to act with something more of filial duty, the contest was renewed ; and the king's forces entirely defeating those of the malcontents, the infant Don Henry of Arragon died of his wounds. But

the severity which the king, at the advice of the constable, (the sway of which favourite over him seems to have been absolute) exercised after his victory, disgusted the prince of Asturias; who taking farther offence at other particulars, the misunderstanding between him and his father arose to that height, that it was no longer a secret, that, under the plea of repressing the insolence of Don Alvaro, he meant to transfer the crown from Don Juan to himself. To counteract this, the king would have come at once to an engagement; but, by the interposition of the people of discretion on each side, an agreement was patched up. In the mean time a revolution took place in the kingdom of Granada; and Mahomet Ben Osman, nephew of Mahomet Ben Nacer, at that time on the throne, took a favourable opportunity of confining his uncle, and placing himself on the throne. The wretched condition to which Castile was now reduced by civil broils, was rendered more miserable, on the one hand, by the king of Navarre's sending a large body of hungry Gascons to take up their winter-quarters in it, and on the other, by repeated incursions of the king of Granada, as a confederate of the king of Navarre, who burnt several places, and drove multitudes into captivity; while the prince of Asturias prevented the sending of succours, to render his father's government more odious. Don Alvaro de Luna judging it requisite for his own safety, that the king and his son should be reconciled, brought about an interview between them; but the prince did not submit in earnest to his father, until the pope sent a bull addressed to most of the prelates of Spain, requiring them to excommunicate those who, by not submitting to the king, prevented him from attacking the Moors; and in the same year in which this reconciliation took place, the princess of Portugal, whom the king had married, was delivered of a daughter, who was named Isabella, and whose destiny proved high. By the incessant efforts of his queen, the king, who no longer loved but only feared Don Alvaro, was persuaded to give him up to destruction; and he was at length brought to trial, condemned, and executed, when he died with a dignified firmness. While the conspiracy against Don Alvaro was carrying on, a civil war took place between the king of Navarre and his son, the prince of Viana, in which the last became

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1453.

his father's prisoner. And after Don Alvaro's death, a revolution happened in the kingdom of Granada ; and Ishmael seated himself on the throne. About the same time, the prince of Asturias was separated from his beautifull wife on account of a mutual coldness. His father was now much chagrined at the discoveries made by the king of Portugal, of a passage to the East Indies by the Cape of Good Hope, and menaced him with a war, if he did not desist from discovery ; but that monarch answering, that he would not invade his rights, continued to pursue his discoveries ; while Don Juan's further opposition was prevented by his death. To him succeeded his son, now Henry the fourth ; who applied himself quickly to settle all the subjects of dispute with his neighbours of Navarre and Arragon. He then entered on a war against the Moors, but achieved in it nothing more than ravaging their country ; but, during it, he espoused Donna Joanna of Portugal. The king's indolence and inattention proving very pernicious, a remonstrance on the subject was presented to him by several of the nobility ; and the king, having previously endeavoured to prevent the king of Navarre from countenancing this new confederacy, by espousing the infant Alphonso of Castile to the infanta of Navarre, and the infant Ferdinand of Navarre to the infanta Isabella of Castile, told the lords of the confederacy that, after the campaign, he would call an assembly of the states, in which the grievances complained of should be redressed ; Juan, then, leading a large army against the Moors, the king of Granada at length proposed to acknowledge himself his vassal, and pay a large annual tribute ; but yet hostilities continued with various success. The following year was marked by the death of Don Alphonsus, king of Arragon and Naples ; leaving all his dominions in Spain to his brother Don Juan, king of Navarre, who thus became a very potent prince. Though the former league among the nobility had been partly dissipated, yet it recovered new vigour ; and the king received no small uneasiness from knowing, that the king of Arragon and Navarre had subscribed to it. The next year, Henry took under his protection the Catalans, who had revolted from Juan in favour of his son the prince Carlos, and likewise invaded Navarre ; but that prince, from jealousy of the intrigues

carrying on around him, was thrown into a fever which cost him his life. The queen of Castile being delivered of a daughter, she was baptized by the name of Joanna, and acknowledged heiress of the crown; and her father soon after concluded a treaty of peace with the king of Arragon and Navarre; but, with his usual inconstancy, he quickly entered into new intrigues with the Catalans, who proclaimed him their sovereign. In the mean time, to the great satisfaction of Henry, the fortress of Gibraltar was taken from the Moors. The dispute with the king of Arragon being referred to the king, Lewis the eleventh, of France, he made an award, by which the king of Castile was to quit all pretensions to the sovereignty of Catalonia, and immediately withdraw his troops from Arragon and Navarre; while the king of these was to pay him fifty thousand golden florins, and cede to him the town of Estella and its dependencies; but neither of the kings would approve of the convention, though the king of Castile, on the formation of a league against him, ratified it. A scene of the utmost confusion now prevailed: the king, at one time, yielded to the confederates, then again refused to perform the articles to which he had agreed: they, on the other hand, got Don Alphonso into their power, and solemnly deposed the king, placing the other on the throne; who afterwards got his sister Isabella into his custody. During these commotions, Ishmael, king of Granada, dying, was succeeded by his son Albahacen. The firmness of the confederates was somewhat shaken by the pope's legate excommunicating them all; and the sudden death of Don Alphonso: when offering to proclaim the infanta Isabella queen, she declined a favour which they had no right to bestow; and only requested, that they would interpose with the king, to have her declared the presumptive heiress of the crown. This was accomplished; and, through the legate, the lords were released from the oaths which they had taken to the princess Joanna. The next important point was, the marriage of the presumptive heiress; and, by the proper employment of the money of the king of Arragon, the infanta Isabella was first clandestinely, and then publicly married to his son Ferdinand. With this the king of Castile was extremely displeased; annulled all he had said or sworn as to the succession of

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1473.

the infanta Isabella, and, with the most contemptible inconstancy, first espoused his own acknowledged daughter, Joanna, to the duke of Berri, then offered her to the king of Portugal, and, after all, to Henry, the nephew of the king of Arragon. While the courts were thus employed, civil war was raging in almost every part of the kingdom; in some places between the partisans of the princes, in others between noblemen deciding by arms their own differences. In many towns popular factions raised disturbances; so that there was scarcely any peace in the country. After many intrigues of his favourite, the king was accidentally brought into company with his sister Isabella, and apparently reconciled both to her and her husband; but, quickly after, entered into correspondence with their enemies. Yet this injured not Ferdinand or his wife; since, ere the year was quite ended, the king died. On the decease of Don Henry, Donna Isabella caused her husband Don Ferdinand and herself to be proclaimed king and queen of Castile and Leon, at Segovia; and on Don Ferdinand's arrival the necessary arrangements were made for their administration of the government. Much had these new sovereigns to accomplish, ere they could reduce to order the anarchical state in which they received the kingdom of Castile. Alonso the fourth of Portugal entered the country, and publicly espoused the daughter of the late king, and assumed the titles which he claimed from that marriage; but was defeated by Ferdinand, and forced to retreat. The queen Isabella by her natural interest recovered many places holden by the partisans of the malcontent nobility, on appearing before them with a flying army, and the rebellious nobility gradually made their peace; the king and queen traversing the provinces, and settling matters with an admirable mixture of clemency and justice. While in the southern provinces, Isabella was delivered of a son; and at length that most unprincipled prelate, the archbishop of Toledo, who held out longer than all the insurgents, was compelled to submit; and, to further the return of tranquillity, a peace was concluded with Lewis the eleventh, king of France. During the absence of Ferdinand to take possession of Arragon on the death of his father, the success of Isabella against the Portuguese and the Castilian malcontents led to a peace with the former, which

A. D. 1478.

completed the external tranquillity of Spain. Thus at leisure to turn their attention to the internal government of their territories, Ferdinand and Isabella neglected not to take immediate and wise measures for regulating the administration of justice, and remedying the distress in their finances. But they at this time established in their kingdom the formidable tribunal of the Inquisition ; when they had, with great firmness, disarmed the petty tyrants which infested the country, and punished no small number of criminals. By the attack of an individual, the justice of which by no means appears, the war with the Moors was renewed, and the queen declared, that the time was come when the Mahometans should be driven out of Spain ; and took care to support the war with vigour for ten years, by which all the dominions of the Moors, and at length the city of Granada itself was reduced, and all the Mahometans and their princes were either so dispersed in Spain, as to be conceived no longer formidable, or permitted to retire into Africa. Soon after the commencement of this war, the king behaved with such determined resolution towards the pope, that he obtained from him a bull, by which was granted to the Spanish king the right of nomination to all the sees in Spain ; and, on the conclusion of it, the Jews, to the amount of at least thirty thousand families, were expelled from Spain. At the same juncture, Christopher Columbus, after many difficulties and indefatigable applications, signed the contract with queen Isabella for the discovery of unknown countries, the whole expense of the armament fitted out on that occasion amounting only to seventeen thousand ducats. After this, Ferdinand and Isabella received from Charles the eighth of France the counties of Roussillon and Cerdagne, as mentioned in the history of that country. The marriages which had been proposed between the infanta Joanna and the archduke Philip, and between the archduchess Margaret, and Juan, prince of Asturias, were completed ; as was that between the prince of Wales and the princess Catherine : and in the following year, the king of Portugal demanded in marriage the infanta Donna Isabella ; which marriage was celebrated soon after the decease of the prince of Asturias, who left his wife pregnant ; but she miscarried ; and in the next year, to the loss of their only son was added,

A. D. 1491.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to Ferdinand and Isabella, that of their daughter the queen of Portugal, who died in child-bed of a son. A peace was now concluded with France, on the accession of Lewis the twelfth; and Ferdinand, with his son-in-law of Portugal, had spirit enough to admonish, by their ambassadors, the pope of his duty; exhorting him to mind his family less, and his pontifical dignity more. To put an end to the efforts of the inhabitants of Granada to restore the Moorish government, Ferdinand ordered pains to be taken for their conversion; and so far did these succeed, at least in producing the profession of Christianity, that the principal mosque in the city was consecrated, and turned into a Christian cathedral. In the next year the archduchess Joanna was delivered of a son, who was baptized by the name of Charles; and in Spain, the young prince Michael breathed his last: an event which did not prevent the marriage of Manuel, king of Portugal, with the infanta Maria, the sister of his former wife. The history of Spain, being now brought down to the end of the fifteenth century, must here be again suspended.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
15th century.

The fifteenth century was in England ushered in by a parliament, which, while it on the one hand endeavoured to obviate the papal encroachments by a revival of the statutes of *Præmunire*, did, on the other, pass an act for the burning of obstinate hereticks; and one William Sawtre, a Lollard, was, by the sentence of the ecclesiastical court, immediately burnt: of whom it is remarked, that he was the first man who suffered death in England for the sake of religion. But many more soon suffered on a political account, a report being spread, that Richard was living; and in the mean time the king married Joanna of Navarre, widow of the duke of Bretagne. The Scotch making an irruption into England, received a severe defeat from the duke of Northumberland, and his son, the renowned Hotspur, in which the earl of Douglas was taken prisoner. The king's insisting upon his having some of the chief captives on this occasion delivered up to him, totally alienated the duke of Northumberland, who had hitherto been one of his most usefull adherents, from his interest, and he united himself with Glendour, and the earl of March, to transfer the crown to the head of the last; but their conspiracy ended in a defeat, in which Hotspur fell, and his uncle, the earl of

Worcester, was taken, and afterwards beheaded. The king, deeming it requisite to his own security to destroy the power of Glendour, sent his eldest son Henry with an army against the Welsh, who gave them two defeats. Another conspiracy quickly manifested itself, but was dissipated by a stratagem, not more honest than stratagems generally are, by the earl of Westmoreland; and Scrope, archbishop of York, and Thomas Mowbray, earl marshal, were both taken and beheaded, as well as the lords Hastings and Falconbridge. While Henry was engaged in suppressing these conspirators, the French, in direct breach of the truce, made a descent in Wales, and, advancing as far as Worcester, carried off a great booty: neither could Henry obtain any redress from the court of France for the injury received. Robert the third, of the House of Stuart, king of Scotland, having, by his incapacity afforded both temptation and occasion to his brother, the duke of Albany, to seize the government, had left for himself little more than the badges of royalty; while the usurper of his power, extending his ambitious views, contrived to put an end to the life of his eldest son. The king, to preserve his younger from the same fate, had him put aboard a vessel for France; but landing for refreshment on the coast of England, he was seized, and carried to Henry, who basely ordered him to be confined in the Tower. Three days after hearing of this misfortune, the unhappy king of Scotland died, and the duke of Albany assumed the regency. Henry had yet another rebellion to encounter: the earl of Northumberland and the lord Bardolf levied, with the connivance of the regent, some Scotch troops, and invaded England, but were met and defeated by sir Thomas Rokeby, sheriff of York; when the earl of Northumberland was slain, and the lord Bardolf so wounded, that he died in a few days. The next meeting of parliament manifested, that the doctrines of Wickliffe had made in the kingdom considerable progress; yet the king rejected all the petitions which were presented by the commons, either against the clergy, or in favour of the Lollards, and signed a warrant for burning one of the latter. In the latter part of his reign, however, France being divided by factions, the power of Glendour in Wales sunk to nothing, and the regent in Scotland desirous of peace, Henry had an

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1413.

opportunity of endeavouring to render himself popular by the mildness of his government, and succeeded in that endeavour. The prince of Wales's dissolute life encouraged malignant persons to excite suspicions in his father's breast against him, but these the prince's conduct quickly dissipated; and the king, on his death-bed, gave him the best cautions for preserving the crown which he left him. Henry the fifth, denominated of Monmouth, succeeded his father with the favourable expectations of his subjects; and the manner in which he entered on his government confirmed them. His reclamation of the countries which were ceded to England by the treaty of Bretigny, caused protracted negotiations with the court of France, but which all ended in the king's embarking in that war, the success of which, as well as one great cause of it, his alliance with the duke of Burgundy, has already been stated in the history of France. While the king was in France, sir John Oldcastle was seized, condemned as an heretick, and burnt alive; a punishment which he underwent with the most determined firmness. After the war, interrupted, indeed, by truces, had continued five years, a peace was concluded, by which, on Henry's marrying the princess Catherine of France, he was to be acknowledged heir of the crown of that kingdom, and, until the decease of its present possessor, regent of the kingdom; and thus was the brilliant course of victories which Henry had achieved, crowned with the acquisition of the supreme power in France. Still it was but to a part of that kingdom to which this power reached, much of it still adhered to the Dauphin; and the conclusion of peace with what was, in fact, the party of the duke of Burgundy, was very far from putting an end to the war. The king, therefore, was obliged to return to England to get a supply from the parliament; but, though he did his best to make up an obsequious House of Commons, and a subsidy was granted, yet a petition was presented, representing, that the war was, in fact, ruinous to England. To add to the displeasure which the king conceived at this declaration, he was, at the same time, menaced with an attack by the Scots. James Stuart, who had been detained in England by Henry the fourth, and, very early in his detention, become, by his father's death, king of Scotland, was not yet released, but was now taken into

France by the king, in hope of making by his authority the Scots in the Dauphin's service return home. While Henry was in France, the queen, whom he had left in England, where the duke of Bedford was regent, was delivered of a son, to whom was given the name of Henry. The year after this, the king himself, when beginning to recommence his operations against the Dauphin, was seized, as before specified, with his last illness, and died at Vincennes. When A. D. 1422. this monarch died, his son and successor, Henry the sixth, was but nine months old ; and within two months after his accession to the throne of England, died his grandfather, Charles the sixth of France. What ensued in that kingdom has been already related ; here, therefore, need be stated only what took place in England : there, on the meeting of the parliament, the members of the council were nominated, and took their places independent of the protector. The duke of Bedford was declared protector whenever he should be in England, and, during his absence, the duke of Gloucester ; and for the king's governours were appointed the duke of Exeter, and his brother, the bishop of Winchester ; both great uncles to the king. By this arrangement internal tranquillity was enjoyed by the English, while, to secure it still more perfectly, Edmund Mortimer, the earl of March, was made governour of Ireland. To prevent what seemed to be menaced on the side of Scotland, the council thought it prudent to release the king of Scotland, still prisoner in England ; and Murdac Stuart, who had succeeded his father, the duke of Albany, as regent of Scotland, reflecting on the difficulty of governing that nation, proposed to negotiate for the king's liberty ; the terms of which being settled, that prince returned into his own dominions. In the mean time the duke of Bedford discharged with great ability his office in France, and promising was the appearance of his becoming finally triumphant, when his brother of Gloucester having married, not in an unexceptionable manner, Jaquelina, heiress of the earl of Hainault, employed, in endeavouring to secure the countries which he claimed in her right, the forces with which the duke of Bedford ought to have been reinforced, to enable him to preserve the superiority which he possessed in France. The earl of March dying this year, his right to the crown of England descended to Richard, duke

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

of York, his nephew, son of Ann, his sister, and the earl of Cambridge. But the stop put to the success of his arms against the French was not the only evil Henry suffered from those whose duty it was to promote his interests, but the dissensions between the duke of Gloucester and the bishop of Winchester, obliged the duke of Bedford to come over from France, when he held a parliament at Leicester, in which the charges of the duke of Gloucester against his uncle were declared groundless ; but the duke of Bedford took the last with him to France, committing the great seal, which he had hitherto held, to the bishop of London. And in France the bishop received a cardinal's cap, being soon after appointed legate in England : an appointment which rendered him, on his return to that country, more haughty than ever. On the great turn of affairs in France, elsewhere particularized, as it was thought proper that the king should be carried to Paris to be crowned, it was deemed right that the same ceremony should first take place in England ; after which the office of protector was suppressed by the parliament, its existence being considered inconsistent with the dignity of a crowned head ; and the duke of Gloucester remained first counsellor to the king. The ill success in France caused no small murmurings in England ; and, to prevent a renewal of the mischiefs flowing from the quarrels of the duke of Gloucester and the cardinal, the latter was sent to attend the king in France ; while the former remained in England as guardian of the realm. Under his auspices a five years truce was signed with Scotland, by embassadours at Edinburgh. Henry returned into England when he was full ten years old, but the management of affairs still continued in the hands of the duke of Gloucester, whose difference with the cardinal was no less bitter than ever ; and the war in France was neglected while these two great men thought only of their own quarrel : for the cardinal had returned to England to defend himself against the charges of the duke. Affairs in France still going on without success, the council of England became more intent on peace than on conquest, and listened to the proposals made by the duke of Orleans, still a prisoner in England, to open a conference for the conclusion of a general peace ; and the place at last agreed on for the negotiations, was, by

the contrivance of the duke of Burgundy, who was already privately reconciled to Charles, Arras. Here the impudent proposal of Charles's ambassadors to grant Henry the provinces of Normandy and Guienne, which he already possessed, on condition of his doing homage for them, and resigning the title of king of France, induced the English ambassadors to retire with becoming dignity from the conference, without condescending to reply. But this furnished a pretence to the faithless duke of Burgundy to make a separate peace; and the pope's legate most shamelessly pretended to absolve him from all his oaths to the two Henrys. But, before the conclusion of this treaty, the duke of Bedford, the great bulwark of the English cause in France, died at Rouen. On whose death the duke of York was appointed regent; but, through court intrigues, did not obtain his patent for a long time, to the great prejudice of the king's affairs. But now, on the one hand, Paris being taken, from the trifling garrison remaining for its defence, and, on the other, the bishop of Winchester's party preponderating in the English council, full powers were given to the duke of York to treat with Charles of France about peace, if he saw any hope of success. In the mean time, the duke of Burgundy having commenced the siege of Calais was, by the duke of Gloucester, who was sent over thither with a body of troops, compelled to raise it. In the same year, the Dauphin of France married Margaret, the daughter of James the first of Scotland, about twelve years old; and the very next year this monarch was assassinated by some hirelings of his uncle the duke of Athol, and was succeeded by his son James the second, then only seven years old. In England, as the king advanced in age, the credit of his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, sensibly declined; and that of the cardinal, who frequently lent the king money, increased. The duke of Gloucester having so lost his interest in the council, that an affectation of acting contrary to his opinion prevailed in it, the offer of the duke of Bretagne, made at the suggestion of the pope, to become a mediator between the kings of France and England, and that of the duke of Orleans to unite with him, if he were permitted to confer with him at Calais, were accepted; but no truce was then concluded: neither in the next year did the conferences holden

A. D. 1437.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

between the ambassadors of both nations, produce any greater effect. Yet a trading truce between England and the Low Countries was negociated by the duchess of Burgundy and the cardinal of Winchester ; and the duke of Orleans, notwithstanding the strong protestation of the duke of Gloucester, which ought particularly to have weighed with the king, as referring to a charge of his father on his death-bed, was set at liberty. The earl of Warwick dying, the duke of York was again sent into France as regent. The faction against the duke of Gloucester, taking advantage of a ridiculous piece of superstition of his wife, contrived to get a priest, who was supposed to be in her confidence, hanged, a woman burnt for being a witch, and the duchess herself imprisoned for life. While the brother of the great Henry, who had by himself been named regent of England, was obliged to bear all this without a murmur, lest he should expose himself to the further malice of the cardinal. Still the duke could not so far restrain his naturally impatient temper, but that he exhibited to the council articles of high treason against his eminence, which the members of it, being all the cardinal's creatures, refused to receive. The next year, a general truce was concluded between the king and the duke of Burgundy, of the cessation of which three months notice was to be given on either side ; and, in the following, one was brought about between England and France ; in the former of which it was consented to, principally for the support of the ministers. William de la Pole, earl of Suffolk, who, being introduced by the cardinal, engrossed the king's favour, was set at the head of the embassy on this occasion ; and when the truce was settled, he proposed a marriage between the king and Margaret, daughter of René of Anjou, nominal king of Sicily, a woman proper for the purpose for which the earl and his party wished to give the king a wife, that she might govern him, and support them. Henry not only taking his wife without a portion, but ceding the province of Maine for her, the marriage was soon concluded ; and on the new queen's arrival in England she as quickly obtained an absolute sway over her husband. This giving the cardinal's party great security, they proceeded in their persecution of the duke of Gloucester ; but not being able to obtain any legal sentence against him, he was

imprisoned under a false charge of a conspiracy, and the next day found dead in his bed : a month after this murder died the cardinal of Winchester. The conduct of the queen and her favourite, De la Pole, whom the king had created marquis of Suffolk, drawing on them the hatred and exciting the murmurs of the people, the duke of York, by his mother sole heir of the House of Mortimer, deemed it a good opportunity to diffuse, by secret emissaries, the claim he had to the crown in preference to the House of Lancaster, in being descended from the third son of Edward the third, when they were derived only from the fourth. To diminish his credit, therefore, his place of regent of France was taken from him, and given to the duke of Somerset ; which affront to the other duke was quickly followed by what gave as great disgust to the people, the creating of the marquis of Suffolk, a duke. The truce with France being infringed by an individual commander, Charles took that opportunity to renew the war ; and such was the inattention of the English government to it, that, in two years time, the French king became master of all Normandy. In the mean time, the people of England became still more indignant at the government. The duke of Suffolk being impeached by the Commons, was committed by the king to the Tower, but afterwards released and reinstated ; then, on a petition from the same body against him, banished ; but, as he was passing the sea, had his head cut off by the captain of a vessel, with which he fell in. The duke of York having been sent into Ireland to repress an insurrection, though, in truth, to remove him further from the court, having rendered himself popular there, sent Jack Cade, an Irishman, into Kent, where he assumed the name of John Mortimer, who had been put to death, and, under the pretence of reforming the government, quickly drew together followers sufficient to enable him to encamp on Black Heath ; but, though he met with some success at first, in a few days his followers were dispersed and himself slain. Still the numbers raised by the appearance of such a phantom, encouraged the duke of York to think, that he himself should be well supported ; and, therefore, when his government of Ireland was expired, he repaired to London, and, with his friends, resolved on what measures he should take to promote the design he

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

had now formed on the crown. The duke of Somerset had been selected to succeed the duke of Suffolk as prime minister; a letter, therefore, to the king, principally pointed against him was the measure adopted. But, not producing the expected effects, the duke openly took arms; but, partly by force, partly by policy, was defeated in all his measures, and, after renewing his oath of allegiance, obliged to retire to an estate of his own, and leave the duke of Somerset to the enjoyment of his authority at court. Under this minister, Henry next year was deprived of all his dominions in France, except Calais and Guisnes, and thus, by there being no more to fight for, ended the thirty-eight years war in France. While the French were proceeding thus successfully, Henry's queen was delivered of a son, to whom was given the name of Edward, and the king himself was seized with a long and dangerous illness, which rendered him, during its paroxysms, still more incapable of business than before. But the English having no longer the diversion of a foreign war, now commenced civil broils, which lasted until near the end of the century. Though the duke of York had renewed his oath to the king, he was still resolved to maintain his pretensions; but his two bosom friends, the Nevils, of whom the father was earl of Salisbury, and the son, universally esteemed for his valour and adored by the people for his engaging behaviour, earl of Warwick, were, with some others, of opinion, that he should not yet discover his intentions. They, however, so managed their intrigues, as to get the duke and his two principal friends taken into the king's council, where they immediately gained a preponderance. But this endured only until the king's health enabled him to act again, when the duke of Somerset was released from the Tower, whither he had been committed, and recovered his influence in the government. On which the duke of York, retiring into Wales, took to arms, engaged and defeated, chiefly by the exertions of the earl of Warwick, the army of the king, when the duke of Somerset was slain, and Henry fell into the hands of the duke of York, whom he was quickly obliged to appoint protector. But in this office he continued but a short time; the king recovering his health, the parliament assented to the dismissal of the protector. These internal dissensions encouraged the French to

send two squadrons to insult the English shores, and the Scots made an inroad into the northern part of the country; but the first plundered only two places, and with the last the truce was renewed for six years. After this, a formal reconciliation between the two parties in England took place; but the earl of Warwick being placed in danger, in consequence of a quarrel commenced by the servants, and finding an order to arrest him had been given, open hostilities were again recurred to, in which, though the duke of York's party were at first unsuccessful, by a victory afterwards obtained, the king fell into their power, and they consequently ruled in his name. During the confusion attending these events, James the second of Scotland, at the instance of the duke of York, broke the truce, and entered England; but, in the first siege he undertook, was killed by the bursting of a cannon, and succeeded by his son, James the third, then only seven years old. Although the duke of York was now possessed of power to compel the parliament to place him on the throne, he contented himself with submitting his claim to their consideration; and their debates ended in a resolution, that the king should retain the crown during his life, and the duke be declared his successor. But short was his triumph, for the queen having raised an army, the duke was tempted to engage it with an inferior force, was defeated, and lost his life in the battle; in which, too, his great friend, the earl of Salisbury, was taken prisoner, and afterwards beheaded. The duke's eldest son, the earl of March, not discouraged by the loss of his father, marched from Wales, where he had levied an army, in quest of the queen, and having on his march defeated the earl of Pembroke, as she did the earl of Warwick, near St. Albans, he advanced towards London, and being joined by the remains of the discomfited army, had so great a superiority of forces over the queen, that she retired again into the North, and he entered the metropolis in triumph; and under the plea of Henry having forfeited his life-interest in the crown, by breaking his agreement with the late duke, he was seated on the throne, by the name of Edward the fourth. But, a few days after he was proclaimed, he was obliged to march into the North against the queen, whom he again defeated, and compelled with her husband to take refuge in Scotland: after which, Edward himself was

A. D. 1461.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

crowned ; and the parliament confirmed his title with the same readiness with which they would have done his rival's, had he been victorious. The new king now created George, his eldest brother, duke of Clarence, and Richard, his younger, duke of Gloucester. Two years after this, queen Margaret having raised an army in Scotland, entered Northumberland with her husband, but they were quickly defeated by the lord Montague ; and this victory was followed by truces between Edward and the kings of France and Scotland. These leaving the unfortunate Henry no refuge, he conceived he could conceal himself in England ; but had no sooner entered it, than he was seized, and ignominiously conducted to London : while his queen retired with her son to René of Anjou, her father. His opponents thus subdued or dispersed, Edward was by his council pressed to marry, and sent the earl of Warwick to France to demand Bona of Savoy, the sister-in-law of Lewis the eleventh, in marriage. But while that nobleman was engaged in the negotiation, Edward conceived a violent passion for a subject of his own, Elizabeth, the widow of sir John Grey of Groby, whose estate had been confiscated for his attachment to the House of Lancaster, and notwithstanding the remonstrances of his mother, the duchess of York, married her. The queen's father, sir Richard Woodville, was immediately raised to the dignity of earl of Rivers. Great was the indignation of the earl of Warwick, who had concluded the marriage contract with Bona, but he did not avow his purpose of taking vengeance on the king. The following year the queen was delivered of a princess, who was named Elizabeth. The queen's relations now came into high favour with Edward ; who appointed her father, the earl of Rivers, both lord treasurer and high constable ; at the same time, the earl of Warwick and his brothers received but little attention ; which added to the resentment of the former. But ere this produced palpable fruits, the king married his sister Margaret to the duke of Burgundy. At length, the effects of Warwick's plots began to appear, by an insurrection in Yorkshire ; the insurgents partaking in which directed their march towards London ; and in their way met and defeated an army of the king's. The civil war thus commenced, was, in the following spring, openly prosecuted by the duke of Clarence and the earl of Warwick. In this Edward was first, by

his own negligence, made prisoner ; but, by his politick behaviour, soon escaped out of the hands of his enemies ; and in his turn defeated an important portion of their forces. But instead of improving this advantage, he resigned himself to sensuality, and when Warwick, who had retired to France for some months, returned, and proclaimed Henry the sixth, he was not prepared to meet him, but was driven out of the kingdom, and compelled to take refuge with the duke of Burgundy : while his queen sought an asylum in Westminster Abbey, where she was delivered of a prince, named Edward. In the mean time, the earl of Warwick raised Henry from his prison to fill the throne a second time : but short was the time which he now sate on it ; since Edward, returning to England, found so many followers, and was so effectually assisted by his brother the duke of Clarence's desertion of the earl of Warwick, that, at the end of seven months, the unhappy Henry was again confined in the Tower, and Edward the fourth again king *de facto*. This last lost no time in meeting the army, commanded by the earl of Warwick, and succeeded in defeating it near Barnet ; when that earl fell. But Edward was not yet secure ; queen Margaret, who with her son was just arrived from France, adding the remains of Warwick's army to what she had before, rendered it necessary for him to march in quest of her, when another engagement took place near Tewkesbury, in which the queen's army was completely routed, she and prince Edward were taken prisoners, and the last cruelly and basely murdered, when he behaved with magnanimity ; and his mother was confined in the Tower until ransomed, four years afterwards, by Lewis the eleventh. Edward, on his return to London, ordered Henry the sixth to be put to death,* and would have completed his triumph over the House of Lancaster, by cutting off Henry Tudor, the young earl of Richmond, but his uncle, Jasper Tudor, earl of Pembroke, escaped with him into Bretagne. Edward being thus again in quiet possession of the throne, after renewing the truces expired or about to expire with his neighbours, and accommodating those differences with foreign states, which had arisen during the confusion of the civil wars, entered into a strict alliance with the

* This prince founded Eaton College, and that of King's in Cambridge.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

duke of Burgundy, which was intended specifically against Lewis the eleventh of France. In consequence of this, an army was raised and money to maintain it, and Edward himself sailed with the former to Calais, where occurred the particulars already stated; and after which the treaty, already mentioned too, being concluded, he returned to England. The duke of Clarence thinking himself neglected by his brother, and being further irritated by an unjust and cruel execution of a confidant of his, indulged himself in such expressions of indignation, as afforded his enemies matter of accusation against him; and, by the co-operation of the queen and the duke of Gloucester, the mind of the king was so exasperated against him, that he was impeached of high treason, and as a favour permitted to choose the mode of his own death, which was that of being drowned in a butt of malmsey. Edward now abandoned himself to his pleasures; still he was alive to the insincerity of Lewis the eleventh, who deferred the execution of that part of the treaty concluded between them, which related to the marriage of the Dauphin and Edward's eldest daughter, and who incited the king of Scotland to invade England in breach of the existing truce: for the then reigning monarch, James the third, was a perfect tyrant, entirely governed by three favourites of low birth, and had had one of his own brothers put to death, and the other thrown into confinement. This last, the duke of Albany, however, escaping into England, entered into a treaty with Edward, who sending an army into Scotland, under his brother, the duke of Gloucester, the nobility agreed, that the duke of Albany should be regent of the kingdom; who generously restored his brother to his former state; when the last, quickly resuming his usual course, by an attempt to murder, drove him to take refuge in France. The war with Scotland over, Edward, who had received from Lewis an additional insult, in the Dauphin being espoused to the infant daughter of the deceased duchess of Burgundy, turned all his thoughts to a war with France; but while making preparations for it, was seized with an illness, which soon ended in his death. Edward left two sons, of which the prince of Wales was but twelve years old, and the duke of York, the younger, but nine. The former was proclaimed king by the name of Edward the fifth, which title he bore only two months and twelve days: for

his uncle, the duke of Gloucester, having during that time, by the murder of the best of the young king's friends, and under the most barefaced pretences of being pressed to take the crown by the nobility and people, prepared the way for seating himself on the throne, was proclaimed king, and in a fortnight after crowned with his wife. A crown thus nefariously obtained was most justly enjoyed but a short time; though, to secure his possession, Richard is said to have caused his two nephews to be made away with. For the duke of Buckingham, who had been the chief instrument in his advancement, either being disgusted with, or mistrusting the king he had made, entered into a plot for transferring the crown to Henry, earl of Richmond, on condition of his marrying Elizabeth, the eldest daughter of Edward the fourth, now become the heiress of the House of York. This scheme quickly found many friends, the mothers of the intended couple readily joined in it, and much pleased was the earl of Richmond at finding it on foot; still, ere he could reach England, Richard discovered that some design was going on against him; and suspecting the duke of Buckingham and marquis of Dorset, offered, when the former had taken arms, a large reward for the apprehension of either of them; and the first was betrayed by an old servant, and executed without any form of law. This attack obviated, the parliament, which met soon after, declared Edward the fourth's issue illegitimate, and confirmed Richard's claim to the crown. This usurper now applied all his efforts to secure himself from every foreign attack, nor did he omit earnest endeavours to get the earl of Richmond into his hands; a plot in whose favour he perceived was still in agitation, and even learned that it was founded on an intended marriage between that earl and the princess Elizabeth. To prevent this latter measure, he proposed to marry his niece himself; and the queen he had most opportunely dying, it is not very clear how, he was preparing the way for his other marriage, when he received advice that the earl of Richmond, who had fled from Bretagne to beg assistance from the king of France, had landed in Wales. He then soon saw, that it was requisite to assemble forces to oppose him, and he accordingly advanced to meet him with more than double the number of the earl's troops. Near

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1485.

Bosworth, in Leicestershire, the rivals met, an engagement took place, Richard's army was defeated, and himself slain; and Henry, the earl of Richmond, immediately assumed the title of king of England. The new king proceeded to London, was crowned ere the meeting of the parliament, and then had his title confirmed, and the descent of the crown limited to his issue by a statute. How reluctant soever Henry was to marry the heiress of an House, all of which were objects of his aversion, he still found it requisite to perform his promise of marrying Elizabeth; but, though he now married her, he meanly deferred her coronation for two years. An insurrection, quickly suppressed, intimated to Henry, that he would not in tranquillity enjoy his newly-acquired crown: in the same year, a son was born to the king, to whom he gave the name of Arthur. This event was quickly followed by a conspiracy to set on the throne a baker's son, named Lambert Simnel, personating the earl of Warwick, son of the duke of Clarence, Edward the fourth's brother, whom the king detained as prisoner in the Tower. But a single battle destroyed some of the leading conspirators, and threw the unfortunate puppet into the hands of the king; who, from a competitor for a throne, converted him into a turn-spit; though he afterwards generously advanced him to the office of a falconer. The affairs of Bretagne gave Henry an opportunity of manifesting the mean covetousness of his disposition, by neglecting to assist the duke, while he raised money from his own subjects to do it; which last measure gave birth to an insurrection in Yorkshire, that was soon quelled. In the mean time, in Scotland the tyranny of James the third having excited a civil war, that monarch fell in it, and his son James the fourth was proclaimed in his room; but the troubles which ensued in his kingdom, and which were fomented by the policy of Henry, rendered it difficult to him to maintain himself on the throne. For years did the English monarch continue his menaces of making war on France; and under this pretence did he, after making no use of that which he had received for the assistance of Bretagne, obtain another supply from his parliament: after which the queen was delivered of a second son, baptized by the name of Henry. Then, to complete the farce in which he had been so long

engaged, Henry passed with an army to Calais, found his allies unable to join him, and entering, therefore, into negotiations with the king of France, a peace was quickly concluded, and Henry returned to England. Another plot was now in agitation, and Henry's old enemy, the duchess of Burgundy, brought forward another puppet, under the character of the duke of York, Edward the fourth's son; who, it was said, had escaped from the Tower, where his brother was slain. The name of this impostor was Perkin Warbeck, the reputed son of a Jewish convert of Tournay, and the conspiracy in his favour afforded Henry an opportunity of gratifying his favourite passion by the confiscation of the estates of those who were convicted of partaking in it. The first of those that fell was no less a man than sir William Stanley, the lord chamberlain, who was executed early in the year fourteen hundred and ninety-five. In the same year, Perkin Warbeck himself was, by the duchess of Burgundy, sent to make a descent in Kent, but met with such a reception, that he was compelled to return to Flanders. In the parliament which met this year, was passed a statute, by which those who assisted the king, *de facto* were secured from impeachment or attain. While the parliament was yet sitting, Perkin Warbeck landed in Ireland; but, not finding sufficient encouragement, he proceeded to Scotland, where James the fourth publicly acknowledged him for the duke of York. The following year, the emperor Maximilian having given the government of the Low Countries to his son Philip, this last made a treaty of peace and commerce with Henry; and, in the same year, Henry granted a patent to John Cabott, a Venetian, and his three sons, to go in quest of new lands under English colours. In the mean time, the king of Scotland, under the plea of striving to place Warbeck, the pretended duke of York, on the throne of England, invaded and ravaged Northumberland. The parliament having granted the king a subsidy, it was levied with so much rigour, that an insurrection took place in Cornwall, and the insurgents marching towards London, increasing in number, and having found in James Tuchet, lord Audley, a leader, gave the king battle on Black Heath; where they were entirely defeated, and their three principal leaders being taken prisoners,

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

were executed. Another irruption of the Scotch giving Henry disturbance, he contrived to have negotiations opened for a peace between the kingdoms ; and the Scotch being also desirous of concluding one, Perkin Warbeck was obliged to return to Ireland. Thence he was again invited into England by some Cornish insurgents, who, encouraged by the king's late lenity, offered to support Perkin in another attempt on the crown ; but though on his arrival he assembled three thousand men, his enterprize met with no success, and he surrendered himself, on a promise of having his life spared, was sent to the Tower, and afterwards escaped from thence ; was re-taken, and at last, being tried on a charge of having conspired with four servants of the lieutenant of the Tower to kill their master, and escape with the earl of Warwick, he was condemned and executed : and, ere his death, the earl of Warwick himself was arraigned before the House of Peers ; and, on confessing that he had consented to the project laid by Perkin, was condemned to be beheaded ; by suffering which sentence he delivered Henry from all his fears of a male heir of the House of York. A plague, which drove the king for a time to Calais, was the last memorable occurrence of the fifteenth century in England.

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
15th century.

At the close of the fourteenth century we left Margaret on the throne of Sweden, who survived until the fifteenth year of this, when she was succeeded by her great nephew, whose name she had changed to Eric, and who proved to the Swedes a most intolerable tyrant, not only most severely oppressing them with taxes to support his wars, but permitting the most enormous barbarities to be exercised on them, until the province of Dalecarlia was goaded into insurrection, and drove out their governours : an example which was followed by other provinces, until the Danes were massacred, and the king's fortresses destroyed. Engelbert Engelbrachtson, a Swedish gentleman, who conducted this revolt, obtained by his intrepid resolution an act from the senate of Sweden renouncing their allegiance to king Eric. To this resolution the governour of Finland and grand marshall of Sweden, Charles Canutson conformed, and immediately joined the mal-contented ; who made him general and commander-in-chief of the peasant army. In the mean time,

Eric having irritated his other subjects also by oppression, both Norway and Denmark declared Christopher of Bavaria their king: while, after a civil war of some continuance, the Swedes committed the administration of affairs to Canutson, Eric having retreated to the isle of Gothland. Eric Pache, a brave Swede, who had contributed much to the revolt, jealous of the good fortune of Canutson, and indignant, perhaps, at his having treacherously slain Engellbert, endeavoured to drive him out of the kingdom, but was quickly circumvented and murdered by him. The diet finding that Eric would not take the crown with the limitations with which they offered it, and detesting Canutson, entered into negotiations with Denmark for uniting the three northern crowns on the head of Christopher of Bavaria, a nephew of Eric, who had spent many years at the court of Denmark; and, after great efforts on the part of the murderous Canutson to prevent it, a general diet of the three kingdoms was holden, and Christopher elected: when Canutson, yielding to necessity, was not only suffered to retire with impunity, but, as has been done in a later instance, most unjustly rewarded with an ample appanage for the guilt he had contracted. Christopher ascended the throne under the same conditions as his immediate predecessor, but too closely copied his example, by breaking through all his obligations. To complaints of the piracies and remorseless ravages committed by Eric, he jocularly answered, that his uncle must live. He preferred foreigners to Swedes and Danes, and intolerably oppressed the Swedes with taxes: such, in fine, was his conduct, that his decease alone seems to have prevented another revolution. In the diet which succeeded, strong debates took place, whether the treaty of Calmar should be adhered to, or a new monarch elected for Sweden. The supporters of the latter part of the alternative, at the head of which was the ambitious Canutson, prevailed; and the election fell on him: he was, however, disappointed in his hope of being elected by the other two kingdoms. To revenge himself on both Denmark and king Eric, Canutson attacked the isle of Gothland; but Eric obtained assistance from the Danes, was removed from thence by them, and the Swedes were at length compelled to evacuate the island, which was immediately annexed to the crown.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1458.

of Denmark. But this loss was recompensed to Charles by the offer of the crown of Norway ; which diadem being received, a peace was made with Denmark, but quickly broken by the last ; and the war continued, until, by the sufferings resulting from it, and the haughty violence of Charles's government, his enemies, at the head of whom was the archbishop of Upsal, had an opportunity of fomenting the seditious disposition of the people, and executing their purpose of driving him from the throne of Sweden : on his abdication of which, and retreat to Dantzic, the chief nobility of the kingdom united with the archbishop in calling Christian, king of Denmark, to the throne of Sweden, and renewing the union of Calmar. Though the new monarch began his reign with moderation, he at length became very arbitrary and oppressive in his taxes, and, adding to this the most cruel severity, he incurred, not only as an arbitrary prince, but as a bloody tyrant, the publick hatred. When some further oppressive measures, executed by the archbishop, produced a mutiny of the peasants ; and Christian disapproving of the prelate's conduct, a difference rose between them. When the king requiring him not to remove from Stockholm, another prelate, Katil, bishop of Liucoping, took up his cause ; and on Christian's sending the archbishop prisoner to Copenhagen, openly revolted, and conducted a large army from East Gothland and Norway to Stockholm, and so vigorously attacked the city, that the king deemed it prudent to retire to Denmark : he returned, however, with numerous forces, but was by the warlike bishop defeated, and again driven from Sweden. When some of the peasants declaring their resolution to recall their late king Charles, an invitation was sent him to return ; and on his arrival at Stockholm, he was received with general testimonies of joy. But he soon offended the turbulent Katil so highly, that he entered into an engagement with Christian to restore him to the crown of Sweden ; and the archbishop being released, these two pious prelates made war on Charles ; and, at length becoming masters of his person, compelled him to make a formal resignation of his crown. A scene of anarchy now followed ; and the archbishop, who had assumed the office of regent, to quiet the outcry raised against him, convoked a diet, in which Eric Axelson was chosen

administrator. But this prevented not a civil war: two powerful factions were formed, one headed by the archbishop, and the other by Eric Axelson; the former being supported by a very great number of gentry and magistrates, and the other by the city of Stockholm, and a majority of the peasants. Inconceivable was the fury of these factions; massacres were perpetrated in every part of the kingdom, and the peasants and mechanics of the different parties gave each other no quarter. After much bloody contention, during which the archbishop died, and the administrator's party had the most success, the people, wearied out with fruitless sufferings, demanded and obtained the restoration of king Charles. Yet the submission to this prince was far from universal, since he was attacked and defeated by Eric Carlson; who was, too, in his turn defeated, and obliged to retire into Denmark: after which Charles died at Stockholm. His nephew, Steen Sture, was chosen administrator of the kingdom: but Christian, appearing with a fleet to maintain his claim, had the support of a large party, yet was defeated by Steen Sture, and compelled to return to Denmark wounded, leaving Steen Sture firmly established. From this time to that of the death of Christian, nothing material occurred in Sweden: Steen Sture is said to have gained the affections of the people, yet at length manifested such determination to keep the government in his own hands, that the Danes and Norwegians proceeded to elect prince John, the eldest son of their late king Christian; and a treaty of union between the three kingdoms was immediately concluded at Calmar. Still, the Swedes refusing to acknowledge king John, because he would not swear to some articles which they wished to impose on him, Steen Sture found means to continue the government in his own hands ten years longer; during which there happened several wars with the Danes. At length, a difference arising between Steen Sture and the senate, it so increased as to come to an open rupture, and the senate requested the protection of the king of Denmark; who coming into Sweden defeated Steen Sture, and obliged him to sign a treaty acknowledging him king of Sweden, according to the union of Calmar; while he had a considerable territory assigned for his own maintenance, was acquitted of all past offences,

A. D. 1470.

A. D. 1481.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

and taken into the king's favour. After Stockholm was surrendered to John, and he had been crowned king of Sweden, he so ingratiated himself with the nobility, that they not only appointed his son Christian his successor, but gave the king the disposal of all offices. During the first years of this prince's reign, Sweden enjoyed perfect tranquillity; but afterwards the king, misled by his favourites, rendered himself odious to his subjects, whose discontents Steen Sture, provoked at having forced from him some of the provinces given him by treaty, secretly fomented. But ere these discontents broke out into open revolt, the fifteenth century closed.

Occurrences
in Denmark
during the
15th century.

At the end of the fourteenth century, Denmark was in profound tranquillity, and continued undisturbed, until a report, set on foot it was supposed by the nobility, offended at the great partiality which Margaret manifested for the clergy, prevailed, that Olaus, the queen's son, was not dead, and an impostor who endeavoured to pass for him daily gained credit. By the exertions of Margaret, however, the pretender was proved to be the son of the nurse of Olaus, and being taken he was tortured and burnt. After this, more than a tenth of the inhabitants of Denmark are said to have perished by a famine and pestilence; and in the year following that calamity king Eric was married to the daughter of Henry the fourth of England. Wars now ensued for some years with the House of Holstein, which had possession of the duchy of Sleswick; but during these the sister of Eric was married to John, duke of Bavaria, son to the emperor Rupert: and after a five-years truce was at last concluded, queen Margaret was carried off by a sudden death. Her successor, Eric, inherited neither her power or her policy: he contrived, however, to obtain from the diet a sentence of forfeiture of the duchy of Sleswick against the House of Holstein, which he enforced by arms; at the same time securing the favour of the emperor Sigismund, by complying with his request to induce the citizens of Lubeck to re-establish their senate, which they had abolished. Still the Holsteiners defended themselves so vigorously as to protract the war until the Hanse Towns were persuaded to become their allies; nor could Eric, with all his military efforts or political negotiations, break this powerfull alliance, until the great increase of the trade of Holland in the Bal-

A. D. 1411.

tick brought those trading cities in the year fourteen hundred and thirty-two to conclude with him a truce for five years. In the mean time Eric had lost his queen, of whose merit he became sensible too late: and when he had made the truce with the Hanse Towns, he concluded, too, a treaty of perpetual amity between Denmark and England. Of the commotions in Sweden which began in the following year, and the consequent revolt of the Swedes from Eric, notice has been already taken. It was the situation to which he was reduced by the insurrections in that kingdom, that induced the king to enter into a treaty with the Holstein princes, allowing Adolphus, the then reigning duke, to hold the duchy of Sleswick for his life without dispute, and referring the claims of both parties to a new arrangement after his death. With the Hanse Towns, also, Eric came to an accommodation for an annual sum of money. The king's proposal of nominating a successor to the kingdom being opposed by the diet, he suddenly retired to Prussia, but, on a representation from the senate, returned to Denmark; but there gave further offence, by appointing several foreigners to places of trust. Affairs in Sweden having taken a favourable turn for Eric, and he being again acknowledged sovereign of that kingdom, a general diet of the three kingdoms was convoked at Calmar, in which the treaty of union was renewed, and several regulations connected with it established. Soon after the conclusion of this diet, Eric set out for Gothland, carrying with him a large body of troops, all the crown jewels, the very great treasure laid up by his ancestors, and heaps of deeds and manuscripts. In the course of the following year, insurrections of the peasantry took place in Denmark; during which, and the unsettled state of Sweden, Eric kept close in Gothland. His intellects, indeed, seem to have been impaired, since, among all the confusion of his dominions, he treated the remonstrances of his subjects with contempt. This infatuation induced the senate of Denmark, to request Christopher of Bavaria, as the nearest relation of Eric, to accept the crown. They afterwards sent Eric a formal notice of having renounced their allegiance to him, and elected a new sovereign. Earnest were his remonstrances against these measures, but as ineffectual as earnest: Christopher was acknowledged king of

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Denmark, and Eric continued in the Isle of Gothland ten years, and then removing from thence to Pomerania, he lived there in the same retirement about the same time, and then died unlamented. Christopher was the nephew of Eric, by his sister Sophia, who married John, duke of Bavaria. Some time after his accession to the throne of Denmark he gave the investiture of the duchy of Sleswick to Adolphus, duke of Holstein, and repressed an insurrection of the Jutlanders in favour of Eric. But his long stay in Sweden, when he went to receive the crown of that country, afforded an opportunity for fresh disturbances, raised more by the governours than the people; these, however, the justice of Christopher tranquillized. The year after this he was crowned king of Norway, and then of Denmark, to which country he particularly attached himself; and so administered the government, as to make a favourable impression of himself on the minds of the people. Christopher having married a German princess, this marriage drew so many Germans into Denmark as to give umbrage to the Danish nobility; but the king by his able management both parted with the foreigners without offending them, and stopt the complaints of his own subjects: three years after which, a short illness put an end to his life. Adolphus, duke of Sleswick and Holstein, having declined both the crown of Denmark and the hand of the widowed queen, recommended to the choice of the Danes his nephew Christian, son to the count of Oldenburg, a prince of high character, whom the Danes elected. But Charles Canutson secured to himself the crown of Sweden, as has been stated in the history of that kingdom. The attack made by Canutson, now king Charles of Sweden, on Eric in his retreat in Gothland, caused the latter to apply for assistance to the Danes; and their compliance with his request led to Christian's conquest of the island. A war then ensued between this monarch and Charles, carried on by the last with particular barbarity, but ending in his abdication of the throne of Sweden, and the election of Christian to fill it. The acquisition of the crown of Sweden soon gained Christian that of Norway; to which was added the further acquisition of the duchy of Sleswick by the death of its duke without issue. Yet in the course of four years, those other commotions in Sweden which led to the

A. D. 1448.

A. D. 1458.

restoration of Charles, and which have already been stated, occurred. And though this king was again deposed, yet did Christian, as has been seen, never re-ascend the throne of Sweden : but he applied himself to endeavours to leave Denmark and Norway in a flourishing state, by enforcing the laws, and mending them where they were ineffectual ; and by his liberality, and encouragement of merit, he gained the affections of the clergy, who had the greatest weight in guiding those of the rest of his subjects. Having paid a visit to the pope, Christian on his return founded an university at Copenhagen ; and, three years after, the hereditary prince was married to the daughter of the elector of Saxony ; and on this occasion, it is said, that the Order of the Elephant was instituted. Christian endeavouring to restore the union of Calmar, met with the most determined opposition from the Swedes to his becoming their sovereign ; yet was there gained from them a promise to elect John, the prince of Denmark, on his father's decease : soon after which, that prince was associated with his father in the throne of Denmark. Before his death, which took place unexpectedly after a short illness, Christian had another son, named after himself. On the death of his father, prince John was acknowledged king of Denmark and Norway ; but Steen Sture, unwilling to resign his office as administrator of Sweden, prevented the states of that kingdom from performing their promise, and John wisely refrained from attempting to enforce it. To his brother Frederick he gave with less prudence Holstein in inheritance, and Sleswick as a revocable fief. The terrifick visitations of a plague and famine, which ravaged Denmark for nearly two years, afforded the king an opportunity of manifesting both his wisdom and his humanity in the regulations, and the liberality by which he endeavoured to alleviate the sufferings of his people. But his hopes of obtaining the crown of Sweden were for a long time disappointed by the perfidious policy of Steen Sture. At length, John excited the Russians to invade Finland, and while the administrator was opposing them, a diet was assembled, in which he was solemnly deposed. John supported this sentence by arms, gained a decisive victory, and compelled all the nobility that opposed him, and even Steen Sture himself, to sue for pardon ; which at length was granted, and John.

A. D. 1481.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Germany
during the
15th century.

crowned king of Sweden. This century ended in Denmark with an unsuccessfull attack on the Dithmarsians, a people whose capital was Meldorp, and who had for many years thrown off the Danish yoke, aspiring at independence, though the district they inhabited was not seven miles in extent. Against these the Danish monarch marched with a powerfull army, which, by the brave resistance of the Dithmarsians, was completely defeated; and another attack prevented by the mediation of the German princes.

Robert, who had succeeded to the empire of Germany on the deposition of Wincelaus, found it necessary to endeavour to restore affairs in Italy to their former situation, and therefore marched into that country; but not receiving the reinforcements he ought to have had, and meeting with powerfull opposition from John Galeazzo, duke of Milan, he was obliged, ere he had gained any advantage, to return into Germany. Here he employed himself in calming the troubles of the empire, and reducing to obedience the towns which refused to acknowledge him, and aggrandizing his own electorate. But, in spite of all his endeavours to preserve peace, a war raged for two years between Catharine of Burgundy, wife of Leopold of Austria, and the citizens of Basil. During this contest in Alsace, the preaching of John Huss, rector of the university of Prague, excited new commotions in Bohemia, and great was his success under the protection of Wincelaus and his queen. Of what the bishop of Rome did, in opposition to this reformer, an account has already been given: his success, however, in the university itself, where he deprived the Germans of two votes in three, which they had in the election of a rector, caused a secession from that university to others. The effects of the schism in the Church, before spoken of in the history of Italy, were severely felt in Germany, where, to the bishoprick of Liege, were appointed two different ecclesiasticks by the different popes; and the rival competitors had recourse to arms, and, by the help of the duke of Burgundy, John of Bavaria entered Liege in triumph; where he celebrated his victory with what may be fairly stiled a massacre of his opponents. The emperour had nearly extinguished all the factions in Germany, when his inveterate enemy John, elector of Mentz, began to build a castle in Höchst

against his will ; to prevent his proceeding in the work, the emperor put his troops in motion, but was frustrated in his purpose by a fever, under which he sunk. After the death of Robert, one emperor, Jodocus, marquis of Moravia, was elected at Frankfort, and another, Sigismund, king of Hungary, proclaimed by the archbishop of Triers, and the count-palatine. But the former died within three months after his election ; when the last was chosen by the unanimous choice of the electors : he was son of the emperor Charles the sixth, and brother to the deposed Wenceslaus, and the character he had gained in Hungary contributed to fix on his head the imperial crown. When he had taken possession of the empire, he endeavoured to remedy the disorders and oppression which prevailed in the provinces : but, ere he had proceeded far in this, he was engaged in a quarrel with the Venetians for Dalmatia, on which and many other places belonging to the empire they had seized ; yet, after taking several fortresses, finding himself unsupported by the Germans, he, on the first opportunity, concluded a peace. His transactions in Italy have been noticed already : on re-passing the Alps he made a progress through Germany to dispose the minds of his subjects to concur in finishing the schism which was then prevailing in the Church. Of the council of Constance and its acts, as far as it is requisite to detail them in this Abridgment, an account has before been given. But it has not been mentioned, that Frederick, duke of Austria, for being accessory to the flight of pope John, was put under the ban of the empire, and the Swiss were authorized to subdue his dominions, and actually did conquer and keep to themselves the country of Thurgau. When the council had condemned John Huss, and caused him to be burnt, Sigismund was justly offended at his safe-conduct being deemed of no value ; but his complaints were answered by the plea, that the authority of the council was superior to that of the emperor. Wenceslaus, king of Bohemia, having died of the terror with which he was seized on an insurrection excited by the Hussites in Prague, Sigismund was acknowledged for his successor, and conferred the regency on his brother's widow, Sophia, who was obliged to take refuge in a fortress from the arms of John Zisca, who is said to have retaliated on the papists the cruelties which

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

they had inflicted on the Hussites: nor could the emperor reduce these determined insurgents. Extraordinary was the conduct as well as the valour of their leader Zisca: during the space of four years did he maintain a triumphant contest with all the power of Sigismund; and in that interval the Hussites, elated with the advantages which they had gained over their sovereign, invited Coribut, nephew of the duke of Lithuania, into Bohemia to take the crown of that kingdom; yet he was by Zisca, who approved not of his election, soon compelled to abdicate it. But this chief himself, when he had by repeated victories compelled the emperor to offer him advantageous and honourable terms of peace, was carried off by the plague. The loss of their leader did not break the resolution of the Hussites, who were now divided into three bodies, under the distinct appellations of Thaborites, Orphans, and Horebites; and had for their leader one who had been a priest, and was called Procopius the Shaven, under whom the course of their victories continued uninterrupted. To this unopposed success, the intestine feuds of Germany, and the continual state of alarm in which Hungary was kept by the Turks, greatly contributed. At length, however, the pope having published a crusade against the Hussites, in a diet which the emperor assembled at Nuremberg, a great many of the princes voluntarily engaged in it; and an equal number of cavalry and infantry, forming an army of eighty thousand, under the command of Frederick, marquis of Brandenburg, (in whose favour Sigismund had first alienated that electorate from the empire) marched into Bohemia, where they were routed by the very sight of the enemy. Yet the triumph of the Hussites was short: for, after their leaders had entered Hungary with success, one of them who commanded the Orphans, was defeated, and scarcely two thousand of his men escaped. From this time, it should seem, the power of the sect began to decline: for while their deputies were engaged in fruitless debates with the council of Basil, the Thaborites were defeated by the Catholics, joined by the Bohemian barons and nobility, who had separated from the rest of the Hussites through disgust at the tyranny of their chiefs: after which the Orphans and Thaborites opposing the treaty drawn up by the bishops of the council, and

called Compactata, were suddenly attacked by the noblesse in the city of Prague, and twenty thousand of them slain. The same body then attacked Procopius the Shaven, and totally defeated his army, leaving him mortally wounded: the bravest of the prisoners were burnt in a large barn, and those that fled were pursued, and massacred without mercy; and thus was the most violent part of the sect exterminated. Of this conjuncture Sigismund so availed himself, that the deputies of the states of Bohemia, and of the remains of the Thaborites, did homage to him as their king. In a diet soon after assembled at Frankfort, the emperor confirmed Frederick the Peaceable, marquis of Misnia, in the duchy and electorate of Saxony. After the Bohemians had by a solemn act promised obedience to the Church, and been absolved from all its censures, a small remnant holding out against Sigismund, under a gentleman named John de Rohac, he was by a stratagem made prisoner, and hanged with an hundred of his adherents; while the reduction of the town of Gratz completed the subjection of the kingdom of Bohemia to its monarch; who endeavoured to perpetuate the peace thus regained by reforming the police of the country, and employing the remains of the Thaborites in Hungary, where they did good service against the Turks. Yet Sigismund's zeal for the Church permitted him not to retain the favour which he had gained in Bohemia; his violence in compelling several principal men to abjure their religion, revived the hatred of his subjects so much, that finding it unpleasant to live among them, he had determined to retire to some more peaceable spot: but, ere he could execute this resolution, he was seized with the illness of which he died; having previously nominated Albert, duke of Austria, who had married his daughter, king of Hungary and Bohemia. This prince was immediately acknowledged in Hungary; but in Bohemia a strong opposition was excited against him from a part of the states, who elected, and even crowned Casimir, the brother of the king of Poland. Yet, after a short war, this rival being driven out of the whole of Bohemia, except a fortress or two, Albert was crowned at Prague also, having previously received intelligence of having been elected emperor at Frankfort. After his coronation at Aix-la-Chapelle, he applied himself to reform the

A. D. 1437.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1439.

abuses that had crept into the administration of justice,* and afterwards concluded a peace with Poland, on condition of giving his eldest daughter in marriage to Ladislaus, and his younger to prince Casimir with Bohemia for her dower. The Turkish sultan, Amurath, having invaded Bulgaria, Albert, who was in alliance with George, the despot of it, took the field to assist him, but, by eating too plentifully of fruit during the great heats, brought on a disorder under which he soon expired. This prince may be said to have formed the basis of that power and grandeur to which the House of Austria hath since attained. He left his empress pregnant, and the states of Austria immediately appointed Frederick, son of the count of Tyrol, his nearest relation, administrator of that duchy, until the empress should be delivered; and even the factions in Bohemia laid aside their mutual animosity, and agreed to wait the same event, ere they proceeded to the election of another sovereign; and four months after she was delivered of a son, named Ladislaus, who was crowned king of Hungary. But the electors of Germany unanimously chose for emperor, Frederick of Austria, the third of that name, surnamed the Pacifick, cozen-german of his predecessor Albert. To this prince's protection the infant Ladislaus, who had been crowned king of Hungary, was by his mother recommended, to screen him from the ill offices of a part of his subjects, while the states of Austria had previously appointed him tutor to the young duke. The Bohemians finding nobody to accept of their crown, or of the administration of their kingdom, elected two administrators from among their fellow-subjects. In the mean while, the dowager-queen of Hungary being attacked by the king of Poland, the war was put a stop to by the mediation of pope Eugenius. And at the same period the states of Prussia, grievously oppressed by the Teutonic Order, revolted from them, and acknowledged the king of Poland as their sovereign.

* Still it appears, that one very gross, practised at Klagenfurt, the capital of Carinthia, escaped his notice: it was, that a person accused, or even suspected of theft, was hanged upon the spot, and tried the next day, when, if he was convicted, his body was left suspended on the gibbet; but if his innocence appeared, it was honourably interred at the publick expense.

Although Frederick failed in his efforts to put a stop to the schism in the Church,* he repulsed an attack of his brother Albert on the capital of Carniola ; yet, by the ravages which the mercenaries of that prince committed, he was compelled to make some temporary cessions to him, and bribe his troops to cease from their depredations. The Swiss having attacked the city of Zurich, which had put itself under the emperor's protection, Frederick finding that none of the princes of the empire would assist him, applied to the king of France, who sent the Dauphin with a large army, by whom the Swiss being defeated, they were obliged to raise the siege. . So much did Frederick neglect the interest of his pupil Ladislaus, that the king of Poland had opportunity of forming so strong a party in Hungary, as to be actually acknowledged king of that country ; and on his being slain in an action with the Turks, the Hungarians, having in vain solicited Frederick to send to them his pupil as their king, committed the administration of their kingdom to Hunniades, whom they revered as the saviour of their country, and on Frederick's refusing to give up their crown, which he had in his possession, they made a successful irruption into Austria, when he gladly concluded a truce with them. After a long duration of contests between the two administrators of Bohemia, Podiebrad, appointed by the Hussites, and his adherents, raising a commotion, attacked and imprisoned the other administrator, Maison Neuve, who died within a few days after he was confined, and in consequence of his death his rival continued in quiet possession of the whole kingdom. Quickly after which the emperor's efforts to terminate the schism in the Church were crowned with success by the abdication of the papacy by Felix. Fresh contests arising in Bohemia, and Frederick being alarmed at the suggestion of the Bohemians electing a king from among themselves, because he would not send the young Ladislaus among them,

* About this time (1442) the art of printing was first invented, or at least first known in Europe. This, like other discoveries, has several claimants ; the Dutch ascribe it to an inhabitant of Leyden, Laurentius Janson ; while the citizens of Mentz attribute it to John Guttenburgh of their city ; and others contend for John Mentel and John Faustus, inhabitants of the same place.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1458.

he sent his secretary, Æneas Sylvius, to the Bohemian diet, who persuaded them to acquiesce in the emperor's purpose of sending Ladislaus, as soon as he was capable of discharging the regal functions, and gained over Podiebrad to the interest of Frederick. This monarch having betrothed himself to Eleonora, sister of the king of Portugal, and promised to meet her at Sienna, passed into Italy, where he received the crown of Lombardy, was married, and with his empress received the imperial crown. On his return to Austria, his continued refusal to send their young king, and restore their regalia to the Hungarians, induced them to have recourse to arms, when Frederick was compelled to part with his pupil, who was the next year carried to Prague, and crowned king of Bohemia. On the death of the brave Hunniades, which occurred soon after he had obliged Mahomet the second to raise the siege of Constantinople, such was the sloth and timidity of Frederick, that he made no exertion to stop the progress of the Turks. Yet the necessity that this should be done, induced the pope to attempt a reconciliation between the emperor and Ladislaus, who had now proceeded to wage open war with each other; but, ere this reconciliation could be completed, the young king of Bohemia died of a sudden illness: on whose decease, though several claimants arose to the crown of that country, Podiebrad, the former administrator, got himself proclaimed king, with scarcely any opposition. For the throne of Hungary, too, there were several competitors; but all the suffrages were united in favour of Matthias, the son of Hunniades. As for the dominions in Austria, vacated by the death of Ladislaus, after some hostile contests, they were, under the mediation of the count-palatine, divided between the emperor, his brother Albert, and Sigismund, count of Tyrol. An attempt of Lewis, the duke of Bavaria Landshut, on the city of Donawert, brought on a three years civil war in the empire, which was at length terminated by the mediation of Podiebrad, king of Poland, on the cession of some other possessions to Lewis. But scarcely was this difference healed, when new ones arose between Frederick and his brother Albert, in which much blood was shed, and which ended only with the death of the latter, reported to have been accelerated by poison. The emperor now inheriting his part of Austria,

and Sigismund ceding to him that portion which he inherited from Ladislaus, Frederick found himself in possession of the whole duchy. To this he wished to add the kingdom of Hungary, and actually entered into a war to wrest it from Matthias ; but at length growing weary of hostilities, he consented to restore the crown which he had until then kept, and concluded with Matthias a treaty by which it was stipulated, that if the latter left neither children or nephews, the crown of Hungary should devolve to Frederick, and the heirs of his body. The indolence and timidity of the emperor made him look with indifference on all that was passing in Luxemburg and Flanders, and endeavour neither to prevent the annexation of the first to the duchy of Burgundy, nor the desolation and subjugation of Liege to the same duke. Nor did Frederick interest himself more in the troubles of Bohemia, which was menaced with civil war in consequence of the pope having excommunicated Podiebrad, for forcing the ritual of the Calixtins on his Roman Catholick subjects. These, thinking themselves absolved from their allegiance, offered the crown of Bohemia to Casimir, king of Poland, who declined it through dread of the power and policy of Podiebrad ; and his example was followed by Matthias of Hungary at first : yet he afterwards accepted it, and made an attempt to wrest his kingdom from Podiebrad, but was obliged to return to Hungary without success. The emperor having made a journey into Italy to confer with the pope on the means of uniting the Christian princes against the Turks, found on his return that (as he seems, too, to have been previously apprized by Lewis the eleventh of France,) Charles, duke of Burgundy, had been privately intriguing with the electors to be chosen king of the Romans. During these transactions, Matthias being by the papal party proclaimed king of Bohemia, Podiebrad proposed to the states to settle the kingdom on Ladislaus, son of Casimir, king of Poland ; a proposal that was readily embraced, and the acceptance of which so restored tranquillity to the nation, as to enable Podiebrad to compell Matthias to flee again to his own country. The next year George, that is, Podiebrad so often mentioned, vacated by his death the throne of Bohemia, to which, after a great contest with the party of Matthias, Ladislaus, the king of Poland's eldest son, was

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

raised. Charles, duke of Burgundy, finding his attempts on the imperial crown counteracted by Frederick, who sought to secure it for his own son Maximilian, determined to make the emperor his friend ; but in his efforts at this was over-reached by that politick, though indolent monarch. The restless ambition of the duke caused Lewis the eleventh of France to form an alliance against him with the duke of Lorrain, Sigismund of Austria, and the Swiss Cantons ; and in the war which ensued with these allies, Charles was defeated in three several battles, and in the last of them so wounded, as the next day to be found dead on the ice. The fortune of his only daughter and heiress has been elsewhere stated ; here it need only be added, that having become the wife of Maximilian, the emperor's son, she the next year bare him an heir, who was baptized by the name of Philip. Maximilian exerted great activity in appeasing the troubles of the Low Countries, and succeeded in making himself acknowledged by the refractory cities and states. But in the midst of his success he lost his wife, who left him two children, Philip already mentioned, and a daughter named Margaret, who, on the conclusion of a peace with France, was espoused to the Dauphin, and sent to Amboise to be educated as his future wife. The disputes concerning the guardianship of his son, and the care of his dominions, produced a civil war which ravaged Flanders for three years, but was at length concluded by allowing that guardianship to Maximilian under certain restrictions. Frederick still continuing to assume the title of king of Hungary, and having, too, offended Matthias by refusing him one of his daughters in marriage, that restless prince attacked his dominions, and by degrees made himself master of all Lower Austria. But the states of the empire interposing, a compromise was made, under which Matthias was to hold Austria, until the sums due to him were discharged ; yet, should he die ere that period, it should return to its own master ; who should still retain the title of king of Hungary : after which Maximilian was unanimously chosen king of the Romans, and crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle. But the conduct of the German troops he led into Flanders, and the preference to the natives which strangers there found, soon occasioned an insurrection of the Flemings ; by whom Maximilian was himself seized,

and detained prisoner in the castle of Bruges for ten months, and at length released on terms which, when at liberty, he did not observe.* The Hungarians having again invaded Austria, because Frederick had neglected to pay the money for which he had engaged, while negociations for the restoration of peace were carrying on, Matthias died; and the Hungarians, notwithstanding the emperor's demand of the throne for himself or his son, elected Ladislaus, king of Bohemia. The war still continued in Flanders, till an accommodation was made between Maximilian and the king of France, which had nearly been interrupted by the latter's breach of his contract of marriage with the daughter of the former, that he might marry Anne of Brittany. Two years after the crown of France was thus strengthened by the union of Brittany, died the emperor Frederick, A. D. 1493. having filled the imperial throne fifty-three years. Maximilian, as already king of the Romans, succeeding his father as emperor, signaled his accession by such rapid preparations to oppose the Turks, who had entered Croatia, that they ventured not to wait his arrival. He therefore turned his attention to domestick affairs, and married Blanche, sister to John Galeazzo, duke of Milan, and convoking a diet at Worms, there, for the convenience of the people, fixed the imperial chamber, which had till then travelled about with the court; and was afterwards settled at Spire. Maximilian having entered into a league against the king of France, in which Ferdinand and Isabella of Spain were parties, took that opportunity of proposing a marriage between his son Philip, and Jane, one of the daughters of their Catholick majesties. What occurred in Italy, in consequence of the above-mentioned league, has been stated in the history of that country: but while the emperor was there, the Frieslanders expelled the governour which he had appointed (but more it should seem of his own good pleasure than by any right) over their country, and placed themselves under the protection of the duke of Guelderland. The papal nuncio in Germany was now rapidly preparing the way

* About this time the emperor erected Austria into an archduchy, and conferred the title upon Philip, the son of Maximilian, who was the first of the family of Hapsburg distinguished by the name of archduke.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

for that revolt from the tyranny of the Church of Rome, which took place in the following century, by collecting with the rapacity of a farmer of taxes, the money for which he sold indulgences to all who would contribute to the crusade against the infidels; and not content with the money of which he thus drained the empire, he employed part of it in trade, and the rest at usury, for his own advantage. While Maximilian was endeavouring to enforce his claim to the duchy of Guelderland, the incursions of the Swiss into the Austrian territories, obliged him to turn his arms against those republicans, who were victorious over the Austrians in no less than seven engagements in six months, which compelled the emperor to make advances towards a peace; when one was concluded. Such, however, was the reputation gained by the Swiss in this war, that Basil, Schaffhausen, and afterwards Appenzel, engaged in their league, and completed the number of their thirteen Cantons. The peace with the Swiss was succeeded by an accommodation in Guelderland, which was granted as a duchy to Charles d'Egmont to be holden as a fief of the empire. This century closed in Germany with a diet, in which the league of Suabia was prolonged for twelve years, and other internal regulations established.

Occurrences
in Poland
during the
15th century.

A. D. 1435.

The history of Poland was last suspended in the reign of Uladislaus, generally called the fifth. This prince, by not making a moderate use of his victory over the Teutonic Knights, drove them to a resistance so desperate, that by the intrigues, as well as the courage of their grand-master, he was at length induced to grant them an advantageous peace. Uladislaus lived to a very advanced age, and died at the end of a reign of forty-eight years: on his decease, his son of the same name, though but eight years old, ascended the throne. The beginning of his reign was disturbed by an irruption of the Tartars, who, after routing the troops opposed to them, retired with a great booty: and ere the young king was of age to assume the civil government, the Hungarians earnestly applied for assistance against the Turks, and so successfull were the body of Poles sent to reinforce them, that Uladislaus was elected king of Hungary, and Amurath sued for peace; which was concluded with mutual oaths. But, to the scandal of the Christian name, the pope's

legate produced a special commission from the bishop of Rome to absolve Uladislaus from the oath which he had taken, and persuaded the young monarch to penetrate into Thrace in breach of his treaty. But when Amurath had assembled an army, they met near Varna in Moldavia, where, though Uladislaus fought with undaunted courage, he was deservedly defeated and slain, and that vile instrument of wickedness, the cardinal-legate, with him. The Polish sovereign was succeeded by his brother, Casimir the third, who, with the favourable circumstance of the revolt of the Prussians from the Order, reduced, after a vigorous contest, the Teutonic Knights to yield to the terms he dictated, and take an oath of fidelity to him and to the republick. Next, the protection of Poland was, at the request of the Hospodar of Moldavia, extended to him, on condition of an oath of fidelity from him and his subjects, and the payment of an annual tribute: about the same time, Casimir's eldest son, Uladislaus, was chosen king of Bohemia. Neither was his father content with this, but taking advantage of the dissensions in Hungary, he marched a large army into that kingdom, and deposed Matthias Cervinus. The three crowns which Casimir thus got into his family increased his power, but added not to the happiness of his people. The peasants were oppressed with taxes, the gentry greatly diminished by the sanguinary engagements, and industry was neglected amid the din of war; and before there was time to apply a remedy to these evils, Casimir was removed by death. Contrary to all expectation, a particular conjuncture of affairs and opposition of interests, led to the supply of his father's place by John Albert, the third son of Casimir; in whose reign, though it extended beyond the close of the century, nothing worthy of record took place, but an unfortunate expedition against the Turks; in which Albert, finding himself betrayed by the vaivode of Moldavia, turned his arms against him; but, after in vain besieging his capital, lost by an ambush six thousand men, and from an irruption of his combined enemies into Poland, had an hundred thousand of his subjects carried into captivity: after which peace was made with the vaivode.

A. D. 1445.

A. D. 1492.

Basilius Demetriwitz, at the end of whose reign the story of Russia was last suspended, though he had a son, left his crown to his

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
15th century.

CHAPTER
IX.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

brother Gregory, the people's dislike of whom induced them to assert the son's right and proclaim him. Yet Gregory by force drove his nephew from the throne ; and though on his uncle's death Basilius returned to Moscow, he was attacked and taken prisoner by Gregory's son, who put out his eyes : whence he gained the surname of *Blind*. But the subjects of this unfortunate prince forced the perpetrators of this cruel treatment to flee to Novogrod, and reinstated their lawful sovereign at Moscow, where he died. These anecdotes excepted, in the first half of the fifteenth century all is darkness in the history of Russia, which was become a prey to the Poles as well as to the Tartars, who seemed to contend, who should have the disposal of the empire and its sovereigns. In the midst of this general confusion, Basilowitz the first, who succeeded his father, Basilius the Blind, became the deliverer of his country, and laid the foundation of its future grandeur. Taking advantage of the Tartars being at war with the Poles, he disclaimed all subjection to the former, attacked their dominions, and made himself master of Casan, where he was crowned, and afterwards assumed the title of czar. The province of Permia, with great part of Lapland and Asiatic Bulgaria, soon submitted to him ; and great Novogrod being, after a seven years siege, reduced by his generals, yielded him a vast treasure. With trembling astonishment did all the North behold the rapid increase of his power ; foreign nations courted his alliance, and several petty princes of Russia submitted to him without resistance. In Lithuania he made himself master of several towns ; and Casimir of Poland was obliged to purchase of him a truce for two years, during which the Moscovite made new accessions to his dominions. The Servians next put themselves and their country under his protection ; and John Albert, the son and successor of Casimir of Poland, was weak enough to bind himself by treaty not to assist the Lithuanians if attacked by the Russians. Encouraged by this, Basilowitz caused his armies to enter the country of the former ; where they reduced several places, and retired in safety with their plunder. And thus closed the fifteenth century in Russia.

CHAPTER X.

The History of Europe during the sixteenth Century.

THE sixteenth century began with some advantages gained by the Venetians over the Turks, but these were balanced by those which the Turkish sultan gained; and both parties feeling more burden than profit from the war, a peace was, two years afterwards, concluded between them. The next remarkable event was an earthquake at Constantinople, which lasted eighteen days, and in which perished thirteen thousand people.* Bâ-yezid having formed a resolution to resign the empire in favour of his eldest son Achmed, was, by the great men and the janizaries, compelled to do so to a younger of his sons, named Selim; and, ere he had arrived at the place of his intended retirement, was himself murdered. Selim, who was surnamed Yavûz, or fierce, had his new dignity contested, first, by his brother Achmed, and then by another, named Korkûd; but both these rivals were vanquished and put to death. Selim then entered into a war with Persia, in which, though he gained one brilliant victory, and made himself master of the Persian camp, he in the end came off with no great honour, being much harassed in his retreat. During this absence of Selim's in Asia, the sanjack of Bosnia recovered that country from the Hungarians, taking from them, too, several places on the frontiers. Selim's next achievement was the conquest of Syria and Egypt, after a most determined and brave

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Turkey
in Europe
during the
16th century.

A. D. 1512.

* This happened A. D. 1509.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1520.

resistance from the mamelukes or Circassians. And while he was in the neighbourhood of Cairo, the sheriff of Mecca brought the keys of that city. On his return to Constantinople, his increased arrogance induced him to make a vow that he would conquer the Persian empire; but want of money obliging him to defer this attempt, ere he could enter on it, he died of an imposthume in his thigh. To Selim succeeded his son Solyman, surnamed by the Turks Ranuni, or Institutor of Rules, and by Christian historians the Magnificent. This monarch determined to extend his dominions in Europe, and with that view opened a way into Hungary by the capture of Belgrade, and then took several less important places: after which he turned his arms to the islands, and took that of Rhodes with two others, after a most gallant resistance had been made in the former. Solyman next resumed the war with Hungary, where, after having defeated the Hungarians, whose young king Lewis fell in the retreat, he took Buda, Pest, and other places.* After this battle the vavode of Transylvania prevailed by intrigues with the Hungarian nobility to get himself elected king, but was quickly forced to flee by Ferdinand, archduke of Austria; who claimed the crown in right of his wife Anne, sister to the late king, and retook Buda from the Turks. To these the routed vavode attached himself; and Solyman again entered Hungary, and again took its capital: while he was in the neighbourhood of which, the prince of Moldavia offered to hold of him both the Moldavias as a fief of the Ottoman empire on honourable conditions, and particularly the preservation of their religion; terms which were readily agreed to. Solyman having refreshed his

* The singularity of the following anecdote justifies its introduction: about two years after this, Kabûzi Azem, a man of great learning among the Turks, publicly maintained, that the Christian religion stood on a firmer foundation than the Mahometan; and, when carried before the mufti, he argued, that the Gospel was more excellent in its precepts than the Coran. Afterwards, disregarding the admonitions given him to abandon his opinions, and paying as little attention to the menaces uttered against him, he was at length, by the sultan's command, punished with the loss of his head; and an edict was published, subjecting to the same penalty every one who should, even by way of dispute, prefer the doctrine of Christ to that of Mahomet.

army, marched on to Vienna, destroying the country and unnumbered inhabitants by the way ; but after losing in the siege, it was computed, eighty thousand men, he was obliged to retreat without taking that capital. But the kingdom of Hungary he restored to the vayvode of Transylvania, whose name was John Sepuvius, to be holden by him as his vassal. The archduke Ferdinand having laid siege to Buda, though, as it in the end proved, unsuccessfully, Solyman marched into Styria and Carinthia, but finding the emperor, Charles the fifth, with a very large army in the neighbourhood of Vienna, the sultan thought fit to return to Belgrade with thirty thousand captives which he had taken. While these things were passing on the continent, the emperor's admiral, Andrea Doria, harassed the Turks by sea. But his visits to the Turkish coasts were, in a few years, repaid by the renowned corsair Barbarossa, who was the son of a renegado Greek of Mitylene, and having, through piracies and various accidents, risen to be king of Algiers, offered his services to Solyman for the conquest of Africa, and was appointed one of his admirals ; when having ravaged different parts of the coast of Italy, and alarmed Rome itself, he passed over into Africa, and reduced the kingdom of Tunis. Solyman having spent two years in prosecuting his war against Persia, he afterwards, accompanied by two of his sons, marched into Albania, and quieted the disturbances which had been raised there. Being afterwards solicited to attack Italy, he assembled a large army for that purpose ; but the storm was diverted by the Venetians, provoked at some captures by whom, Solyman attacked the island of Corfu, where his forces were repulsed. But the Turkish admiral had better success with the islands of Ægina, Pavia, and Naxos : these were followed by other successes ; and though Charles the fifth, the Venetians, and the pope, united their arms, and employed the two celebrated commanders, Andrea Doria, and Ferdinand Gonzaga, Barbarossa triumphed by sea, the Venetians were compelled to sue for peace, and Solyman by land took possession of Buda, and there established the Mahometans. Francis the first of France requesting Solyman's assistance against Charles, Barbarossa was sent with a large squadron into the Mediterranean, where extensive were the ravages which he

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

committed ; and Solyman himself afterwards prosecuted his conquests in Hungary until a peace was made between him and Charles the fifth, which extended to Ferdinand of Austria. Having peace on this side of his dominions, Solyman carried his arms with great success into Persia ; after which, his commanders added to his dominions in Africa by the capture of Tripoli ; which was succeeded on the other hand by that of Temeswar and its territory in Hungary. Another expedition into Persia enabled Solyman to make Van Marâsh and Mosul the boundaries of the Ottoman empire in that direction : when, having strengthened his dominions on every side, he gave his army some respite, and employed ten years in regulating civil affairs ; during which, the most remarkable occurrence was, an attempt of one of Solyman's sons, Bâ-yezid, against both another, named Selim, and his father ; which ended, justly, in the destruction of the young man himself. The continual damages done to his subjects by the Knights of Malta, induced Solyman to attempt the reduction of their island ; but, after the loss of twenty-four thousand men and twenty-four pieces of cannon, the Turks were obliged to leave the island unsubdued ; having given the grand master, a Frenchman, named Valette, and his knights, an opportunity of displaying almost incredible efforts of valour and military skill. Solyman after this, in pursuit of his favourite purpose of overturning the German empire, was leading a large army from Adrianople, when he was seized with a fever, which increasing, put an end to his conquests and his life. Selim, the only surviving son of the last sultan, succeeded him in the throne ; and being as desirous of peace as Maximilian himself, one was concluded for eight years, on the condition of *uti possidetis* : and this was followed by another treaty with Persia. Two years after which, though then at peace with the Venetians, Selim sent a force to attack Cyprus, which succeeded in reducing that island, but with no small loss on the part of the assailants. A league having been now entered into by the king of Spain, the Venetians, and the pope, Selim being informed of it commanded his admirals to commit every hostility which they could against the territories of the confederates : these, after ravaging the coasts of Dalmatia and Istria, put with their fleet into the Gulf of

A. D. 1566.

Lepanto, whither Don John of Austria, having collected the confederate fleet, sailed after them. The Turks, far from declining an engagement, came out of the Gulf, and a very well-supported battle took place, which ended in the total defeat of the Turkish fleet, the capture of one hundred and sixty-one gallies, the destruction of forty more, and of small vessels sixty were taken. Such was the grief of Selim, on advice of this great defeat, that he neither ate or drank for three days. By the next summer, however, he had at sea another fleet, which appeared to have but little inclination to come to another general engagement; nor did the allies, and particularly their commander-in-chief Don John, manifest more eagerness for battle; so that the Venetians, finding themselves coldly supported, applied to Selim for peace, and obtained it on terms to which they were obliged to submit. The vavvode, who had been appointed over Moldavia, having revolted after peace was concluded with the Venetians, Selim turned his attention to him, and overwhelming him with numbers, slew him, and reduced the whole province to subjection. Not long after this triumph Selim was taken off by a short illness. Amurath the third, Selim's son, succeeded his father without opposition; and on his accession had his five brothers strangled in his presence. Having then exerted himself in the enactment of some wholesome laws, altering the coin, and in shewing bounty to the poor, and secured his dominions on that side by a league with the king of Poland, he entered on a war with Persia, which continued with various fortune for upwards of ten years, nor could Amurath himself be persuaded to go to it in person; yet at length his generals prevailed over the Persians, and having over-run Georgia, as well as other provinces, the Shah, discouraged by so many losses, sued for peace, and obtained it on condition of ceding all the countries which the Turks had subdued, and sending his brother to the Porte as an hostage for his not attempting any thing against the dominions of Amurath. While peace was established with Persia, a mutiny of the janizaries at Constantinople gave Amurath an opportunity of displaying great firmness in quelling it. But a state of peace suited not the restless disposition of a people delighting in war; an attack on the emperor of Germany was determined on, and a war began,

A. D. 1575.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A.D. 1596.

which proved very sanguinary, and continued raging with various success until the death of Amurath. The eldest son of that prince, Mahomet the third, was his successor ; on whose accession nineteen of his brothers were murdered. The princes of Transylvania, Walachia, and Moldavia, having formed an alliance with the emperor Rodolph the second, these allies met with considerable success, while their opponents suffered under the most distressfull famine and plague. To stop the progress of the allies, Mahomet himself advanced at the head of a vast army into Hungary, and took Erlau. But afterwards, near Karesta, he met with a severe check from the imperialists, which would have proved a complete defeat, had not the eagerness of the troops for plunder snatched the victory out of the hands of their commanders. The next year the ravages of the enemy in his territories compelled the vayvode of Walachia to submit once more to the Turk, yet in another year he returned to the side of the emperor. To the end of the century the war continued to rage, and generally in favour of the Christians, though the closing act, the capture of Cenissia, was in that of the Turks.

Occurrences
in Italy
during the
16th century.

At the beginning of the sixteenth century in Italy, while the ambition of the pope Alexander and his nefarious son Cæsar was grasping at every increase of territory and power, the two kings of Spain and France divided the kingdom of Naples between them, and Frederick retiring with his family into France, was there created duke of Anjou. The kings, however, agreed not in dividing the spoil ; and the French monarch sending an army into Italy to stop the progress made by the Spaniards, the pope hesitated for which party to declare. But his son, to raise the money necessary for his intended undertakings, resolved (whether with or without the concurrence of his holiness is not ascertained) to poison all the rich cardinals, that he might seize their estates. To effect this he sent to an entertainment, where they were to meet, some flasks of poisoned wine, but on his own head did the Divine justice turn the infernal plot ; and, by an accident unthought-of, Borgia and his father only partook of the envenomed liquor ; the first, having had it much diluted, after a long illness did, by the assistance of antidotes, recover, but the last the very next day yielded up his deeply-polluted soul.

A. D. 1503.

A. D. 1503:

To supply the vacant papacy, after some delay, occasioned by the state of Rome and the adjacent country full of troops, the cardinals elected Piccolomini, cardinal of Sienna, who took the name of Pius the third, but died within a month after his election, not without suspicion of poison. To succeed him was rapidly chosen Julian de la Rovere, cardinal of Ostia, who assumed the name of Julian the second. The Venetians seized this opportunity of extending their territory, by taking possession of several places in Romagna, nor did either the authority or the power of his holiness prevent them from adding Faenza to their other conquests;* yet the kings of France and Spain having concluded a truce, they ventured not to irritate Julian. This ambitious pontiff forming an alliance with the king of France, would have excited both him and the king of Arragon to attack the Venetians; but differing with the former on the subject of Genoa, his holiness scrupled not to accuse him of the most inexcusable designs to the emperour. Yet in a short time, such are the variations in human politicks, a league between the emperour, the king of France, Ferdinand of Arragon, and the pope, was concluded against the Venetians; whose republick was at that time in a most flourishing state of wealth and power. With great spirit did the Venetians oppose this formidable alliance; and though, on some early losses, they had determined to abandon the continent, on seeing the little achieved by the allies, their hopes revived; and at length their concessions to the pope, who was unwilling to see them too much depressed, procured not only a peace with him, but even the military service of his vassals and subjects. So many, so powerfull, and of such various interests were the parties who now interposed in the affairs of Italy, that the country exhibited a most confused state of both war and politics. Those who were one day allies, were the next opponents, and then they found it expedient to unite again.

* As the reader must feel some desire to know what was the end of so remarkable a villain as Cæsar Borgia, be it here stated, that, after having been arrested by order of Julian, and again obtained his liberty, he went to Naples; whence, by order of Ferdinand, he was sent to perpetual imprisonment in Spain: yet escaping thence by bribery to the king of Navarre, whose sister he had married, he was there soon after slain in a skirmish.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

His holiness declared war against the king of France and the duke of Ferrara, but small was the success with which his military measures were attended ; and, after he had refused to accede to a general peace, some of the cardinals appointed a general council to be holden at Pisa, for the reformation of the Church in its head and members. To counteract this menacing step, Julian published a bull for assembling a general council at Rome : that called at Pisa, which was attended only by the convokers and some French clergy, met and transferred themselves to Milan. In the mean time, his holiness's army entered the duchy of Ferrara ; but this, though reinforced by some auxiliaries, the French general drove before him. Still this commander, Gaston de Foix, afterwards gained a complete victory over the allied forces, and the pope, by the dispersion of his army, was reduced to the greatest distress, while the council at Milan pronounced a sentence of suspension against him ; yet the successor of Gaston, who himself fell in the above-mentioned battle, not at first making the proper use of the advantage gained, and afterwards having part of his troops withdrawn for the defence of France itself, his holiness, thus freed from immediate apprehension, opened the council of the Lateran. On the other hand, the emperor now openly declared for him, and the Swiss joined the Venetians : circumstances which led to nearly the total expulsion of the French from Italy ; where Julian triumphed by putting Maximilian Sforza in possession of the duchy of Milan, and compelling the Florentines to surrender the government of their city to Laurence de Medicis the second, nephew of the cardinal. While Julian was meditating other designs to manifest or establish his power, he was overtaken by death. The subsequent election passed quietly, and fell on the cardinal of Medicis, who took the name of Leo the tenth ; a few days after whose election the schismatick cardinals voluntarily submitted to him. The parties to the war in Italy continued still to change sides ; another French army passed the Alps, rapidly recovered the duchy of Milan, and as quickly lost it. The pope's endeavours were pointed to the prevention of the foreign potentates marching forces into Italy, and to uniting the Christian princes against the Turks. To raise supplies for a war against these last,

A. D. 1513.

the council published indulgences, menacing with the divine wrath all who impeded their distribution. Francis the first, who had succeeded Lewis the twelfth in the throne of France, having led an army into Italy, and by one victory recovered the Milanese, Leo, who had acceded to an alliance against him, now saw it requisite to conclude a peace with him. Yet when the emperour came into Italy, his holiness assisted both the opponents at the same time: he then, under the plea of disloyalty in the duke as a vassal of the Church, seized on the duchy of Urbino, to give the investiture of it to his nephew Laurence. The eleventh session of the council of the Lateran having concluded their acts, with the imposition of a tithe upon all ecclesiastical revenues for three years for the Turkish war, that assembly was dissolved. Though the general peace, which was now concluded among the Christian princes, procured tranquillity to most parts of Italy, it involved Leo in a new war, by supplying the duke of Urbino with foreign soldiers sufficient to attempt the recovery of his duchy; still, being unable to support his troops, he was soon obliged to consent to a peace, by which he resigned his duchy to Leo, and all hostilities ceased in Italy, which had for so many years been the seat of ruinous wars. The pope himself, too, having suppressed a conspiracy at Rome, and to strengthen himself in the college, made a promotion of thirty-one cardinals, without any regard to merit, found his temporal power raised higher than it had ever been before, while his spiritual authority was submitted to over all Europe. Thus secure from contradiction, Leo, who was in great want of money, took a step which, under the direction of the Divine Providence, led to the most important moral consequences, even to what may be justly termed a re-publication of the Gospel among the nations,* from whom its real contents had now been long concealed. In addition to the indulgences granted by the Lateran council, his holiness published others, to be disposed of indiscriminately to all purchasers. The Dominican friars, to whom the archbishop of Mentz had given commission to preach these indulgences, boasted, that by them not from temporal penalties only, but from future

* See the preaching of Luther predicted under this emblem, in Rev. xiv. 6.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

punishments were those individuals to whom they were granted absolved. The scandalous use thus made of the indulgences, excited much murmuring in Germany; but the shameless preaching of one monk in particular, John Tetzel,* excited the indignation of Martin Luther, an Augustine monk, and professor of divinity in the academy at Wittemberg in Saxony;† who preached against the indulgences, wrote to the archbishop complaining of the proceedings of the Dominicans, and at length published ninety-five theses against indulgences, penance, purgatory, and the authority unwarrantably assumed by the pope. Immediately the flame of controversy began to rage; when Luther, to prevent his adversaries from prejudicing Leo against him, wrote a submissive letter to him: but his holiness, more alarmed at the conquests of the Turks than at commotions in a distant part of Germany, paid little attention to the new disputes. What passed in Germany, in relation to these, belongs properly to the history of that country; but, to put a stop to them, his holiness most strangely confirmed his indulgences by a new bull, in which he affirmed, that all ought to believe, that the pope had the power of forgiving sins. Charles of Austria, king of Spain, having been elected emperor, Leo, to prevent a war in Italy, granted him the

* It is affirmed, that among the other enormities of this wretched zealot for the papacy, in describing the efficacy of those indulgences, he was not ashamed to say, that even had any one ravished the Mother of God, he had wherewithal to efface his guilt: he boasted, too, that he had saved more souls by these indulgences, than St. Peter had converted to Christianity by his preaching. To such a pass had the preachers of the apostate Church now come.

† Martin Luther was born in 1483 at Islebe, in the county of Mansfield, in Upper Saxony: his father, whose name was Lotter or Lauther, intended that he should follow the law; but Martin having finished his course of philosophy, took the vows of his Order in the twenty-second year of his age. Being soon after appointed professor at Wittemberg, he distinguished himself by his active genius, great memory, and natural eloquence. In fifteen hundred and twenty-four he persuaded himself that his monastick vows were no longer obligatory, quitted the habit, and the next year married, and had three sons: he died in 1546. Like most prominent characters, he had many faults, but always preserved that devotion which appeared in his youth, had an ardent zeal for the glory of God, and the reform of the Church, and a firmness of mind unappalled by dangers.

investiture of the kingdom of Naples. In the following year, the pope having assembled the cardinals and divines at Rome, condemned by a bull forty-one propositions of Luther, ordering them and all his writings to be burnt, and commanding him and all his followers to recant within sixty days, under pain of excommunication, and being deemed hereticks. This bull meeting with contempt only from Luther, he was, at the commencement of the next year, formally excommunicated with all his supporters. His holiness now, in hopes of expelling the French and Spaniards from Italy, fomented the jealousies between their two sovereigns, and united himself, first, with the king of France, and then with the emperor; but, in the midst of his conquests, was cut off by a sudden death. After a long contest among the cardinals, the throne of Leo was filled by Adrian, cardinal of Tortosa, who had been preceptor to the emperor Charles the fifth, and, contrary to custom, retained his own name on his elevation to the papacy. Ere his arrival in Italy, the French had lost all their possessions in Lombardy but three castles; and when he came there, he was quickly reconciled to the dukes of Urbino and Ferrara. Francis the first of France preparing to enter Italy with an army, the pope published a bull, commanding all Christian princes, under pain of excommunication, to observe a truce for three years; and he was afterwards persuaded to accede to the alliance formed by the emperor and other princes against Francis: who yet sent an army into the Milanese, and recovered several towns; while Adrian himself died at Rome. After long disputes, the cardinal de Medicis was chosen pope; and though he at first would act only as mediator between the emperor and the French king, when the last became successful in Italy, he concluded a treaty with him, but unfortunately only a little previous to his reverse; when being defeated by the imperialists, he was taken prisoner at the battle of Pavia. The pope, whose attention was fixed more on his own than the general interest, while forming a confederacy against the emperor, had the secret betrayed, yet concluding an alliance with the Venetians and king of France against him, he was surprized in Rome itself by the imperialists; and, notwithstanding a truce, to which he then agreed, he again attacked

A. D. 1521.

A. D. 1523.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the party of the emperor ; when, though another truce was made with the viceroy of Naples, the duke of Bourbon, who commanded the imperialists in Lombardy, marched, partly constrained to do so by his soldiers, to Rome, in an assault on which he himself was slain, but his troops under the prince of Orange carried the city by storm, and plundered it unsparingly for several days, the pope and cardinals having retired into the castle of St. Angelo ; where, for want of money to pay the sum he had covenanted to pay on his release, he was detained for six months, and at length escaped by stratagem. The success of the combatants frequently varying, his holiness's measures varied with them, and as Francis or Charles was successful, each had the pope for his ally. At length, a treaty was concluded with the emperor, by which were made concessions very advantageous to Clement ; who now grievously offended Henry the eighth of England, by calling the cause of his divorce from Catharine of Arragon to Rome. Charles and the pope had a conference at Bologna ; and the former being prevailed on by the latter to restore the duchy of Milan to Francis Sforza, and conclude a peace with the Venetians, he having before made one with the French monarch, tranquillity was restored to Italy after a destructive war of eight years. Yet the city of Florence, which had thrown off the government of the Medicis, and refused to restore it, must be excepted. Charles received the imperial crown at Bologna, being unable to go to Rome, from the pressure of affairs in Germany. After these were settled, and the danger of a Turkish invasion had passed away, Charles returned to Italy ; and his holiness, however displeased at the temporary liberty of conscience granted to the Protestants in Germany, renewed his alliance with him, as a counterpoise to the kings of France and England ; the last of whom he laid under an interdict for his second marriage. His holiness having made a journey into France, to conclude a marriage between a niece of his and the second son of the duke of Orleans, on his return was, by the imperial ambassadors, prevailed on to excommunicate the king of England and all his subjects, because the former had rejected his lawful wife, and married another ; and, ere the end of the year, he died. The papal throne was soon filled by cardinal Farnese, bishop

of Ostia, who assumed the name of Paul the third,* was inclined to peace, and as he could not effect an accommodation between the emperor and the king of France, he observed a strict neutrality. Being informed of Henry's seizure of the monasteries in England, and his violent proceedings against those who would not acknowledge his ecclesiastical supremacy, he published a bull, declaring him, unless appearing at Rome by proxy in ninety days, excommunicated and deposed, and all his subjects absolved from their allegiance, and his allies from the obligations of their treaties. Francis Sforza, duke of Milan, dying, the dispute concerning that duchy between the emperor and the king of France commenced anew; and the former coming to Rome, and there renewing his instances for the convocation of a general council, a bull was drawn up for assembling one at Mantua; but it was the next year appointed to be holden at Vicenza. But the Protestants at Smalcald protested against any council in Italy, as under the influence of the pope, who had already declared himself their adversary. Yet a few prelates assembled at the appointed time at Vicenza, when the council was prorogued to the following Easter; and then no prelates appearing, it was further postponed for an indefinite time. At length, his holiness declared by his nuncio to a diet at Spire, that as the Protestants objected to a city in Italy, a council should be assembled at Trent on the confines of Germany; and a bull was accordingly published, but more than two years passed ere the council was opened: when, after some previous sessions, an anathema was denounced against those who did not receive as canonical the

* In the year of his accession, Ignatius Loyola, a gentleman of Biscay, instituted the Order of the Jesuits at Mont Martre, near Paris. Having, when in military service, been wounded at the siege of Pampeluna, he vowed that he would embrace a monastick life; and on his recovery applied himself to study in Spain and France, and, after many difficulties, he, with six others, took the vows of the Society; of which the principal are, to renounce all temporal pomp and grandeur, to preserve chastity inviolate, to receive nothing for celebrating mass; to go to preach at Jerusalem, but if prevented, to offer their service to the pope without any reserve. Eight years before this, the Order of Capuchins had been instituted, by Matthew Basio, a monk, born in the territory of Romagna.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

sacred books as published in the old Latin vulgate. The Scripture was ordered to be received according to the sense of the Church, which alone, it was asserted, has a right to interpret the sacred writings. In the mean time, his holiness sent his troops to join those of the emperour in attacking the Protestants: but being offended with the accommodation which that prince made with them, as well as because he would not permit his legate to preside in the army, and had not, according to the treaty, shared with his holiness *the contributions raised from the Protestant towns*, he recalled his forces, and refused to continue the grant of the subsidy from the Church revenues in Spain. In the eighth session of the council, the greater part of its members agreed to a resolution for a temporary translation of it to Bologna, on account of a contagious disorder prevailing in Trent; but the imperial party remained in the latter city; and so few were there in the other, that, after one session, the council was prorogued, and, in another year, the prelates dispersed, except a few pensionaries of Rome; and, ere the end of the same, the pope himself died. The cardinal de Monte was next elected pope, and assumed the name of Julian the third, immediately celebrating a jubilee: he quickly made a promotion of twenty cardinals, and bestowed his own hat on a boy of thirteen years of age and mean parentage, whom he also adopted into his family. By this pontiff, at the request of the emperour, the council of Trent was re-assembled, but the first sessions were interrupted by the re-commencement of hostilities in Italy, where Octavius Farnese, fearfull of the imperial commander, called in the assistance of the French, which led to a new war between the emperour and Henry the second of France. In the mean time, the Protestants having obtained the safe-conduct which they demanded, ambassadors from the elector of Brandenburg, the duke of Wirtemberg, and the city of Strasburg, repaired to Trent, but would not confer with the pope's legates, lest they should seem to acknowledge their right of judging. His holiness, tired of the expences of the war, prevailed first on the king of France, and then on the emperour to agree to his neutrality. When the Protestants received from the council a new safe-conduct, they perceived that there were omitted in it four articles which they had

required: *That the Protestants should have a right to vote; that the holy Scripture, the practice of the primitive Church, the ancient councils, and the fathers, whose writings agree with the Scriptures, should be the judges of all controversies; that all ambassadors during the continuance of the council should be allowed the free exercise of their religion in their own lodgings; that nothing should be said or acted in contempt or ridicule of their religion:* and when the council would not allow their confession of faith to be read, they caused it to be printed and dispersed. The legates fearing the emperor should, in concert with the Protestants, attempt to reform and depress the court of Rome, embraced all pretences for delay; and it being reported that the confederate army of the Protestants were marching to seize the passes of the Alps, on the flight of the greater part of the Italian prelates, the pope by a bull suspended the council for two years. The emperor now laid aside his hopes of bringing the Protestants back to the Church of Rome, and their military success induced him to consent to the peace of Passau; by which it was finally covenanted, that no one should be molested on account of his religious opinions. The pope, too, appointed several cardinals to consider of a reformation of the abuses of the Church, and of the dissolute manners of the clergy; but, after various meetings, nothing of any consequence was effected. Some fresh commotions in Italy called the attention of his holiness, and he offered his mediation to the emperor for a general peace, but without success. Being soon after this requested so to do by Mary, queen of England, he sent cardinal Pole as his legate à latere to that country, where, after the marriage of the queen with the emperor's son Philip (for Charles would not permit him to pass before), he was received with great demonstrations of joy, and formally absolved the nation from the papal censures which had been pronounced on it. Advice of the return of such a nation to his communion, was by the pope celebrated with publick supplications and general indulgences; and in a few months after this he died. The deceased pontiff was succeeded by Marcellus Cervinus, cardinal of the holy cross at Jerusalem, who retained his own name; but lived only three weeks after his election: when cardinal Caraffa was elected pope, and assumed the name of

A. D. 1552.

A. D. 1555.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Paul the fourth. He entered on his pontificate with great magnificence, his holiness declaring, that he would be served as became a prince ; yet he soon published some severe edicts for correcting the dissolute manners of the city, reformed different offices, and ordered the priests to be more moderate both in their dress and their tables. On the Romans he conferred several new privileges ; while they erected a marble statue to him in the capitol, and chose more than an hundred of their nobles to serve without pay, as a life-guard to the popes, and these were by Paul created Knights of the Faith. His holiness having long harboured in his breast a wish to revenge himself on the Spaniards for a personal injury he had received from the viceroy of Naples, now formed a design to deprive them of that kingdom ; hoping by the seizure of it to aggrandize his own family. But the measures which he took for this purpose succeeded not ; after miserably harassing his subjects to support the war, he was compelled to consent to a peace, on his allies, the French, having been defeated in Flanders. Having been unsuccessful, too, in proposing himself for a mediator between the kings of France and Spain, he applied himself to other pursuits ; and ordered the inquisitors to compose an index of books proper to be condemned and prohibited as impious and heretical ; which ‘ index expurgatorius ’ was published two years afterwards. To the tribunal of the inquisition, too, he committed the cognizance of several crimes, before under other jurisdictions ; and by his active search for criminals, he quickly filled all the prisons of that court. In the following year, he had the presumption to refuse to acknowledge the emperor Ferdinand, under the plea that the resignation of Charles was null, because not made into the hands of the pope : neither would he ever acknowledge Ferdinand as emperor. This arrogant pontiff, however, was just enough to banish his own nephews for their ill behaviour ; he ordered, too, all bishops to proceed to their dioceses, and monks to their monasteries ; and many vagrants of these last he imprisoned, and sent several to the galleys. Of the enormous increase of these wretched pests of society some idea may be formed from the statement, that, in consequence of the edict of Paul, thirty thousand monks of different orders, who could not be received into monasteries,

took refuge in the state of Venice, where the papal authority is much restrained. He nearly finished his life with another instance of consummate arrogance, in asserting, that Elizabeth of England could not justly assume the administration of that kingdom without his permission. After recommending to the cardinals not only to choose a worthy successor, but to continue the Inquisition, he expired of a dropsy. The dissensions of the cardinals occasioned a four-months vacancy of the papal throne; at length they became unanimous in their choice of John Angelo Medicini, cardinal of Sancta Prisca, who assumed the name of Pius the fourth. He received the ambassadors of the emperour Ferdinand, and had for their enormous crimes the nephews of the late pope condemned and executed. Yet on his own nephews he conferred several dignities and benefices, and particularly he created one of them, Charles Boromeo, then only in the twenty-second year of his age, a cardinal. Alarmed at the prevalence of the Hugonots in France, and fearfull that a national council would be there assembled, he published a bull, taking off the suspension of the council of Trent; a step which met the disapprobation of almost every Christian court in Europe. The council, however, was opened, and a resolution, sufficiently expressive of what might be expected from the meeting, carried, that no question should be debated in it, but what was proposed by the legates. And, in fact, this council only confirmed the apostacy from the pure doctrine of the Gospel, which had been so long increasing in the Church of Rome, and more strongly established the usurped authority of the pope, by declaring, that he had full authority to dispense with any of the canons made by it, and, after sitting nearly two years from the re-opening was finally dissolved, the general reformation it made amounting only to mere mockery. After the council was dissolved, some enthusiasts, under pretence of a revelation from Heaven, conspired to murder the pope; but, being detected and apprehended, were all put to death; and, in the following year, Pius himself died of a surfeit. The cardinal of Alexandria was now unanimously elected pope, and assumed the name of Pius the fifth. Being earnest to promote a reformation, he made several regulations respecting the clergy and the officers of his own court: but so far was he from

A. D. 1566.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1572.

attempting to restore purity of divine worship, that he granted his benediction to certain little images worn by the Papists in the Low Countries, to distinguish them from the Protestants, bestowing indulgences on those who wore them and recited certain prayers. He afterwards sent the duke of Alva a consecrated cap and sword, for his success against the Protestants. In Italy this pontiff took on him to create the duke of Florence and his successors grand dukes of Tuscany, and finding the plots he had laid against the queen of England unsuccessfull, he published a bull of excommunication and deposition against her. In the next year, Pius at length prevailed with the king of Spain and the Venetians to join him in a league against the Turks, and the command of the united armament was given to Don John of Austria, Philip's natural brother. The victory gained by this fleet in the Gulf of Lepanto, has been already stated. This success the idolatrous pontiff ordained to be annually commemorated by a divine service, in honour of the Virgin Mary. But while he was making great preparations against the Turks, he was seized with a painfull disorder, under which, after languishing some weeks, he died. The choice of a successor to this pontiff was likewise quick and unanimous; it fell on the cardinal of St. Sixtus, who assumed the name of Gregory the thirteenth; and of whose character possibly some notion may be formed from the fact of his publishing a jubilee over all Christendom, as well for the great blow given to the Protestants by the massacre of St. Bartholomew in France, and the sanguinary triumphs of the duke of Alva in Flanders, as for the victory gained the year before over the Turks. But in the following year, his joy was abated by the Venetians being compelled to conclude a peace with these last. Dangerous divisions having been caused in Genoa, by the old nobility opposing the election of the new nobles and commons to the offices of the state, Gregory prevailed on the Genoese to compose their differences amicably, and all the three parties were admitted to hold any office in the administration of the republick. While this accommodation was negotiating, a great plague desolated the northern parts of Italy, when cardinal Boromeo distinguished himself by most eminent acts of charity. Gregory himself erected a college at Rome for the education of the

children of the Greeks, and another for converts from Judaism, and he afterwards founded an English college at Rome, as he had formerly at Rheims. One Antonio Lilly having suggested to him the propriety of correcting the Calendar, he sent for the most eminent mathematicians from all parts, by whose advice that usefull work was accomplished, and the amendment adopted in Italy, France, Spain, and Poland immediately, and since that it has been more widely received. Two years after this, Italy, and Rome in particular, was severely distressed by a famine, chiefly through the rapacity of his holiness's relations. The distress increased the number of banditti, before very numerous, over all the Ecclesiastical State, and the seizure of one of the chiefs of these in the palace of the Orsini gave rise to a tumult in Rome; to divert the attention of the citizens from which, Gregory made a promotion of nineteen cardinals, mostly individuals eminent for their virtues and abilities. In the following year, he received an embassy from three kings in Japan, who had been converted by Francis Xavier and other Jesuits: Gregory gave the ambassadors audience in a publick consistory, where he received their obedience with tears of joy, and admitted them *to the honour of lifting up the hem of his garment*.* In a few days after this, he died of a quinzey. Notwithstanding his attempts at reformation A. D. 1585. during his pontificate, the greatest crimes were committed with impunity, and the whole Ecclesiastical State was overspread by a general corruption; and on his death the disorders increased, all restraint being thrown off, and one scene of debauchery and barbarity prevailing; and at Rome assassinations, murders, and rapes, being committed by all degrees of people, clergy as well as laity. When the cardinals entered the conclave, the equality of interest among the most powerfull, and the hypocritical appearance of great debility as well as humility put on by himself, led to the election of

* But the reader ought to be apprized, that many have asserted, that this embassy was an imposition of the Jesuits, who hired and instructed some mean persons to personate ambassadors, and forged their credentials; several Spanish merchants then at Rome, who had lately been in Japan declaring, that when there they heard no mention of any embassy, or of the conversion of any king.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

cardinal Montalto ; who no sooner was secure of his election, than he dropt the mask which he had worn for years, and entered on his pontificate with a vigour and firmness, which astonished all, and alarmed the guilty : the name he assumed was that of Sixtus the fifth. In less than six months time the wholesome severity of his measures had made all the banditti disappear : neither was his conduct towards foreign potentates less determined than towards his own subjects. He quarrelled with the king of France, and excommunicated the king of Navarre, the prince of Condé, and all their adherents. But the spirit with which the king of Navarre replied to that bull, was so congenial to the mind of Pius, that he admired his courage, and refused to contribute any more money to the war against him. When he had established his character both abroad and at home, he began to shew his gratitude to his former benefactors, and remunerated many who had forgotten the favours he returned. He made, too, a promotion of eight cardinals, all men of extraordinary merit, and most of them of high rank : but he never would patronize the Jesuits, though he used them as spies. Magnificent in all his ideas, and not to be deterred by difficulties, this extraordinary prelate adorned Rome with several new works, and raised the Egyptian obelisk, which had lain on the ground from the time of Totila. For facilitating the administration of affairs, he established, or new modelled, fifteen congregations of cardinals. At the earnest solicitation of the Spaniards he excommunicated the queen of England, who returned the compliment to him and all his adherents. His wish to see the formidable power of the Spaniards diminished made him more earnestly press Philip to his great attempt on England ; and most unsparing was he in his presents to the Spaniards of Agni Dei, crucifixes, indulgences, and the like, for the use of the armada : yet, on the defeat of it, consoled Philip in such a style, that that monarch declared, that for the future, he would leave him to fight the battles of the Church with his own weapons. Sixtus after this completed the Vatican library, collecting with much labour and expence manuscripts in various languages from all parts of the world. Being extremely incensed at Henry the third of France for putting to death the cardinal of Guise and imprisoning him of

Bourbon, and the archbishop of Lyons, on receiving advice of his assassination his holiness made a speech in the Consistory in praise of the assassin. Among his other eccentricities Sixtus caused an Italian translation of the vulgar Latin Bible to be published, at which the Romanists in general were offended; nor could even the king of Spain prevail with him to suppress the edition.* In the year of his decease all Italy, and particularly the Ecclesiastical State, was afflicted with a severe famine; he therefore excused the people their taxes, and lent them money, though but sparingly: he died at Rome in the sixth year of his pontificate. His successor, Urban the seventh, enjoyed the pontificate only thirteen days. Upon the decease of Urban, the factions in the conclave kept the see of Rome open more than two months, when Nicholas Sfondrati, cardinal of Cremona, was elected, taking the name of Gregory the fourteenth. He declared for the league in France, and even sent an army into that country under his nephew, whom he had created duke of Mont Marcian. He created, too, seven cardinals, and gave the investiture of Ferrara to duke Alphonso, and died of the stone, ere he had reigned two years. Still shorter was the pontificate of his immediate successor Innocent the ninth, who filled the papal throne only two months. Cardinal Aldobrandino was next chosen, and assumed the name of Clement the eighth. Great was the confusion with which he received the news of his promotion: he espoused the interests of the league in France; and even when Henry the fourth had basely professed himself a Romanist, he would not believe his conversion, but in the Consistory swore that he would never grant him absolution. However, the prosperity of the king persuaded his holiness of the justice of his cause, and therefore, on certain conditions, he at length with great solemnity did grant it him. Alphonso, duke of Ferrara, dying, after some dispute with the legatee of his estates, Clement united the city and duchy of Ferrara to the see of Rome. In the following winter such an inundation occurred in Rome, that

A. D. 1590.

A. D. 1591.

A. D. 1591.

* It is stated, that when several of the cardinals, and the Spanish ambassador, ventured to expostulate with him on this subject, he contemptuously said, "We do it for the benefit of you who do not understand Latin."

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

more than a thousand people were destroyed: during which the charity of the pope and several cardinals availed much towards alleviating the distress of the people; and the former ascribing the calamity to the sins of the nation, by a bull exhorted all to repentance, and appointed supplications for pardon. The last year of the century he published a bull for celebrating a jubilee at Rome, and very great was the resort to that city on account of either religion or curiosity. The pope again manifested his charitable disposition in this year, founding an hospital for the poor girls, who for want of a home wandered about the streets of Rome; having before established one for poor boys: having, too, formerly been the protector of the Scotch nation at the court of Rome, he now founded and endowed a college for young men from that kingdom. Being now arrived at the end of the sixteenth century, the history of Italy must here be suspended.

Occurrences
in France
during the
16th century.

Lewis the twelfth, after the dissolution of his marriage with Joan, the daughter of Lewis the eleventh, having, by marrying the widow of his predecessor secured to himself the duchy of Bretagne, took all the requisite precautions to preserve his own dominions from attack, while he made his meditated expedition into Italy, to promote the success of which he had promised the Venetians a part of the Milanese. The event of this expedition has been already related, it is therefore sufficient here to say, that the ill success that finally attended him in this, and in his war with Spain, threw him into a fit of sickness, and induced him to wish for peace, which he at length concluded with the emperor and the archduke Charles, who, on the death of queen Isabella, had assumed the title of king of Leon and Castile; but on Ferdinand he had so little dependence, that he declined negotiating with him. Still when this prince proposed to marry his niece Germain de Foix, he willingly received the proposal, and the kingdom of Naples being settled by Ferdinand on his posterity by this new queen, Lewis renounced all his pretensions to it. The Genoese having revolted and expelled the French governour, the king led an army in person to their city, and, quickly mastering all their defences, entered it in triumph; yet punished them only by a fine of three hundred thousand ducats, and the death of two leaders

of the insurrection. The dislike which both the king and his council entertained to the Venetians, induced them to accept the proposal made by the emperor Maximilian for a league against that republick, and the treaty of Cambray was concluded, by which the state of Venice was doomed to destruction, and the king of France obtained the investiture of the duchy of Milan simply for himself and his heirs. The war that ensued on this confederacy has been already spoken of. After Lewis had returned into his own territories, he lost his minister, the cardinal d'Amboise, to the regret both of himself and the nation. Lewis, weary of the war, used all his exertions to obtain a peace, but was so opposed by his holiness, that he called a general assembly of his clergy at Tours, where they decided that, when the pope was the aggressor, it was lawfull to make war on him, and seize his territories; in which case his censures were not to be regarded. But in Italy, after various operations, and, as has been stated, the death of the duke of Nemours, the French forces were nearly dispersed, and the pope laid the kingdom of France under an interdict; and his successor, Leo the tenth, joined in a league for destroying France in the same manner in which the ruin of the Venetians had been proposed. But Lewis regained the Venetians, and quieted the king of Arragon by agreeing to abandon Navarre to him, yet were his forces completely expelled from Milan. The pope, however, on some concessions, consented to a reconciliation: but Henry the eighth of England made a descent in France, routed the French army in the neighbourhood of Terouenne, and took that fortress as well as Tournay. In the mean time, the Swiss invaded Burgundy, but were by Lewis de la Tremouille prevailed on to retire. The queen of France now died, and the king offered Ferdinand of Arragon his second daughter for either of his grandsons, with a renunciation of his claims on Milan and Genoa: the proposal was accepted, the truce renewed for a year, and the emperor included. After which Lewis married his eldest daughter to Francis, count of Angoulesme, and soon after gave him possession of the duchy of Bretagne. The conduct of the emperor and the king of Arragon was so offensive to Henry of England, that he readily listened to the suggestion of a marriage between Lewis

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1513.

the twelfth and his sister Mary; on which a treaty was quickly concluded. Henry was to have a million of crowns, and keep Tournay, and Lewis was left at liberty to execute his intentions in Italy, without prejudice to the peace, by which a treaty offensive and defensive was concluded between the two crowns. The princess passed the sea with great pomp, and the marriage was celebrated at Abbeville. The king did not survive his wedding three months, but died with the reputation of manifesting as many royal virtues, with fewer defects, than any prince that had filled the throne of France. To Lewis immediately succeeded Francis, count of Angoulesme: the two first offices in the state happening then to be vacant, those of chancellor and constable; he bestowed the former on Anthony du Prat, and the latter on Charles, duke of Bourbon. He eagerly renewed the existing treaties with the Venetians and the crown of England; but determined to pursue his predecessor's scheme for the recovery of Milan. Having found means to raise money for this purpose, Fregosa, the duke of Genoa, was prevailed on to resign his office, and accept the title of perpetual governour under the crown of France; and the army raised by Francis from various quarters amounted to forty thousand infantry and forty thousand cavalry. Having, on his entrance into Italy, defeated the Swiss in a most obstinately-contested battle, he rapidly reduced Milan, prescribed a peace to the pope, and returned to France with honour. Yet the emperor made an irruption into Italy, as has been stated; and the king recalled the constable of Bourbon from the command in that country. To secure the Low Countries, Charles of Austria entered into a treaty very advantageous to Francis, to which the emperor acceded, and the whole of the Swiss Cantons at length acceded to that of Friburgh, which subsisted for more than two centuries between the two nations. The birth of a Dauphin gave great pleasure to the king and his subjects; and by a treaty with Henry, or more properly with Wolsey his minister, Tournay was restored to France. The imperial throne becoming vacant by the death of Maximilian, Francis endeavoured to secure the voices of the electors; but Charles of Austria succeeded, which made his competitor his enemy ever afterwards. In consequence of this, Francis revived the project of

recovering the kingdom of Naples, and having concluded an alliance with the pope, began to make preparations for another Italian expedition. In the mean time, he sent a force into Navarre, by which that kingdom was quickly reduced, and still more rapidly lost by an unsuccessfull engagement, in which the French commander was taken prisoner. Scarcely was this war over, when another broke out between Charles and Francis in the Low Countries; during the first operations of which, the king of France, influenced by his mother, whose favours the constable had slighted, put an affront and injury on that officer. In Italy, as has been stated, all things went wrong, the pope openly declaring for the imperialists. The news of the misfortunes in that country led to enquiry, the commander alleged his want of money; the minister of finance very truly pleaded, that Madame d'Angoulesme, the king's mother, had received it; but the acquittances which she had given, his deputy had stole, and delivered up; and, in the end, the minister, an honest venerable old man, was hanged as a publick plunderer and false accuser, instead of Madame d'Angoulesme: the base deputy was made president of the parliament. By the influence of Wolsey, now in the pay of the emperour, the king of England was led in defiance of his treaty to make war on Francis; and, by the continued persecution of the king's mother, the constable of Bourbon was driven to retire from his master's service into that of the emperour. The desertion of so considerable a person was very pernicious to the king's affairs, and prevented his at present sending succours into Italy; by which he lost the few places yet left to him. Still, though the attacks made on every side by the confederates were in themselves unsuccessfull, and the army which afterward entered Italy recovered part of the Milanese, this only opened a new way to add to the miseries which France had already suffered from her Italian expeditions: the French, as has been stated, were again forced to repass the mountains, with great loss in their retreat.* The constable of

* Among those who fell on this occasion, was the celebrated Peter du Ferrael, better known by the title of the Chevalier de Bayard, to which has been added the epithet *sans peur et sans reproche*. Though one of the worthiest as well as bravest

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Bourbon, by the joint assistance of the emperor and the English monarch, entered France, and reduced several places; but being compelled to retreat before the king, Francis seized that opportunity of making the expedition into Italy, which ended in the fatal battle of Pavia, and his own captivity. In the engagement, it is stated, that the gallant Francis killed five of his enemies, ere he fell from his horse, and two after he rose from the ground. The king's mother, to whom on his departure he had committed the regency of France, was now extremely embarrassed on all sides; but by the fidelity of the French nobility, and extraordinary conduct of the king of England, was relieved. In the mean time, the emperor insisting on very high terms for his ransom, Francis was removed to Madrid; where at length, weary of his captivity, he signed a very disadvantageous treaty, having, with the basest dishonesty, previously made a protestation in secret before certain notaries and witnesses, that what he did was by constraint, and therefore null and void. After this treaty was signed, Francis was exchanged for his two eldest sons, placed in the hands of the Spaniards as hostages. But, when at liberty, he complied not with the request of the Spaniards to ratify the treaty of Madrid, and in two months time entered into the holy league against the emperor, which has been already mentioned, as well as the operations in consequence of it. Francis and Henry having conjointly sent heralds to the emperor, with the alternative of accepting their terms, or being attacked by both, his treatment of the French herald produced a personal challenge from Francis, which, however, had no consequences. The war continued in Italy much to the disadvantage of the latter, who urged his allies to make the utmost exertions, while he was himself negotiating the peace of Cambray; in which, while he in fact secured the duchy of Burgundy, he gave up the sovereignty of Flanders and Artois, and all his pretensions in Italy: yet, with the duplicity he had before practised, both Francis and his attorney-general privately protested

men of the age, and the ablest officer in France, he never (it is said, through his probity and contempt of the arts of a court,) rose higher than to be a captain of a troop of gens d'armes.

against this treaty before he ratified it. The king received, on payment of the sum stipulated, his sons from the emperor; and at the same time Leonora, the emperor's sister, queen-dowager of Portugal, to whom he had been contracted. Peace thus renewed, Francis turned his attention both to the cultivation and encouragement of learning: by John Lascaris, a noble and learned Greek, he laid the foundation of a royal library, to which he added a printing-house; and he instituted both a Greek and Hebrew professorship in the university of Paris. After this, the king lost his mother, the duchess of Angoulesme. Being desirous of finally annexing the duchy of Bretagne to the crown of France, through the president of the parliament of the duchy he carried that point, the province retaining its privileges: he next formed a resolution of establishing a national infantry, that for a military body he might not depend on foreign mercenaries. To gain once more an entrance into Italy, he concluded a marriage between his second son Henry, duke of Orleans, and the pope's niece, Catherine de Medicis, styled duchess of Urbino. After this, determined on a war to recover the Milanese, he resolved to attack the duke of Savoy for denying him a passage through his dominions; but, previously to it, he took occasion, from the publication in Paris of some arguments against transubstantiation, to manifest his zeal for the Church of Rome, by causing six persons to be burnt; yet he had a minister from the Turk then at his court, and afterwards scrupled not to act with the Mahometans both by sea and land. On the death of Francis Sforza, duke of Milan, the emperor offered the investiture of that duchy to Francis, and a negotiation of great length and little sincerity followed. The duke of Savoy having rejected some proposals of peace made by the king, the forces of the latter entering Piedmont reduced Turin, and several other important places, and were restrained in their progress only by dread of the imperial army in the neighbourhood. This Francis soon understood was intended for the invasion of his dominions, and took such wise precautions, that when the emperor executed the menaced invasion both in the North and South of France, he was, in less than three months, obliged to retire, after the loss of more than half his army: but, during these transactions, the

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Dauphin of France died of poison. Elated with the event of the late campaign, Francis marched into Artois, and took Hesdin; yet, by the interposition of the queen of France and her sister, the governess of the Low Countries, a truce of a few months was concluded for that frontier, and not long after one took place in Piedmont, through the mediation of the pope, and was, through the same, prolonged for ten years. The emperor, while going by sea to Spain, was driven on the coast of France, when he sent to the king, then at Avignon, proposing a conference; and the monarchs consequently met, and having reciprocally entertained each other, parted with great marks of cordiality. The treatment he met with seems to have encouraged Charles to request a passage through France into the Low Countries, which was granted him with every polite attention; a favour which he meanly returned by deceiving Francis concerning the investiture of Milan, and misleading him, to the diminution of his credit with the Italian princes and the Turkish sultan. The vexation arising from these circumstances produced a great alteration in the temper of the king, who became irritable, vindictive, and suspicious: the marshall Montmorency, whom he had made constable of France, retired in disgrace: the admiral, the next favourite, was sent prisoner to Melun; and though, after an investigation, he was restored to his employments, he died of chagrin: the chancellor, who had been his unjust accuser, was in his turn condemned by the parliament, and reduced so low in his old age, as to be obliged to support himself by giving opinions. The king, after taking some time to prepare for war, prevailed with the king of Denmark to join him in declaring it against the emperor. Extensive and varying in their success were the operations of this war, but in it Francis, count of Enghien, the son of Charles, duke of Vendosme, eminently distinguished himself, and, had he been supported, would have recovered the duchy of Milan. At length the success of the emperor and his ally the English monarch, who yet did not co-operate with him as he should have done, induced Francis to make the treaty of Cressi, by which Charles bound himself to give to the duke of Orleans in marriage his own or his brother's daughter, and either the duchy of Milan or the Low Countries, with the counties of Bur-

gundy and Charolois, and to make restoration of all the places taken. The war with England still continuing, Francis fitted out a mighty armament for the recovery of Boulogne; and making descents on the English coasts; but little success attended the last, and in carrying the duke of Orleans to the siege of the former, the young prince was seized with an epidemick distemper, of which, to the inexpressible grief of his father, he died. The war having answered the purpose of neither of the kings, both grew weary of it, and peace was, after much negociation, concluded: an event which neither of the parties long survived, Henry dying first, and, three months after, Francis. The latter was succeeded by his son Henry the second: in the appointment of his ministers and choice of his counsellors, this king slighted every injunction of his father. While the king was employed in inspecting the fortresses on his frontiers, and preparing for the hostile measures he meditated, an insurrection broke out in Guienne, on account of the oppression committed in exacting the duties on salt; but, after many enormities by the insurgents, it was quelled, at Bourdeaux with great severity by the constable, and in other parts of the province with more lenity by the duke of Aumale, whose conduct gained the affections of the people for his family, the House of Guise. The state of England being such as to convince Henry, he could now easily recover Boulogne, he treacherously attacked the place, but being compelled to change the siege into a blockade, he declared war against England to justify his enterprize; when the English minister, unable to relieve the place, proposed a treaty, by which for a sum the town was ceded to France. In the subsequent transactions in France, their family became so conspicuous, that it may here be mentioned, that Claude, duke of Guise, and his brother John, cardinal of Lorraine, dying, Francis, duke of Aumale, assumed the title of duke of Guise, and his brethren, Charles and Lewis, both cardinals, were styled the former of Lorraine, and the other of Guise. Henry taking an opportunity of engaging in a war with both the emperor and the pope, soon obliged the latter to sue for peace; and though he himself had burned many Protestants, and lately issued a violent edict against them, he negotiated a league with the Protestant princes of the empire against Charles. In the war which

A. D. 1546.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

ensued, he was attended with great success during the first campaign, but in the next his Protestant allies having agreed to the treaty of Passau, the imperialists prevailed: in the close of which year, the duchess of Vendosme was delivered of Henry, afterwards the fourth of France. The attempts of both the pope and cardinal Pole to effect a peace having failed, Henry took the field; and though, when the emperor did the same, it was deemed not prudent to engage his superior army, some places were added to the French territories, and much security to the frontier, ere the campaign closed. In the following, both sides appeared enfeebled by the war, and Charles finding himself so in faculties, resigned his hereditary dominions to his son; a measure in which France was considerably interested. And so likewise did Henry find himself in the death of Henry d'Albret, king of Navarre, to whom succeeded, much against the inclination of the former, Anthony, duke of Vendosme, in right of his wife. While the king was actually treating with the pope for the partition of the kingdom of Naples, he concluded a truce with the emperor, on which his holiness openly congratulated, and privately prevailed on him to break. But his French allies meeting with little assistance, and their forces being wanted at home, the hypocritical pontiff was obliged to accept of peace from the king of Spain, whose moderation and respectful behaviour won his heart. In the mean time, Henry narrowly escaped assassination in his own palace, from one Cabocke, apparently insane, but hanged by the sentence of the parliament. Mary, queen of England, having married Philip of Spain, now joined in the war against France: and a battle was fought near St. Quintin, in which the French were routed with great loss, and the duke d'Enghien and the viscount Turenne, and six hundred gentlemen of note, fell. The duke of Savoy, who commanded the Spaniards, reduced several places, but was arrested in his progress by the English troops leaving him, through disgust at the haughtiness of the great lords, and a great body of German infantry deserting for want of pay. The duke of Guise, therefore, on whom Henry had bestowed the title of lieutenant-general of his armies, had time to collect sufficient troops to prevent his renewal of it, and added to his own reputation by taking Calais, not sufficiently

garrisoned, from the English. The king in the mean while held an assembly of the States, or, as styled by some, the Notables, which cheerfully granted him the sum of three millions of livres. The House of Lorraine, to perpetuate the predominancy they had obtained, pressed the marriage of the Dauphin with Mary, queen of Scotland, niece of the cardinal of Lorraine, and the duke of Guise. After this, marshall de Termes, being sent to penetrate into the enemy's country, not being timely supported by the duke of Guise, his army was defeated, and himself taken prisoner. At the close of the summer, however, the duchess of Valentinois, through pique at the princes of the House of Lorraine, so strongly represented to the king the sufferings of his subjects, that he consented to the opening of negociations for peace, and separate treaties were concluded with the English and the Spaniards. While these negociations were depending, the House of Lorraine prevailed to have celebrated the marriage which had been promised between the duke, the chief of their House, and the princess Claude, the king's second daughter. But Henry's reign now drew towards its close; the duke of Savoy, who was to marry the king's sister Mary, having come to receive her for himself, and at the same time the princess Elizabeth for king Philip, at a tournament given on occasion of this last marriage, Henry was mortally wounded in the eye by the splinter of a lance, and in a very few days expired. The Dauphin at his father's decease was not quite sixteen, of small capacity, and both his mother and wife being in the interest of the House of Lorraine, he declared, that he meant to confide the management of affairs to the Guises, the duke taking the direction of all relating to the military, and the cardinal of Lorraine that of the finances and domestick œconomy. The king of Navarre, being the first prince of the blood, had, on the king's being wounded, been pressed by the constable to come to court. But when he had advanced as far as Vendosme, he was there met by the admiral Coligni, with several other persons of distinction, and afterwards joined by the prince of Condé. Having debated on the measures to be taken, they determined not to resort to force: but the faction of the Guises seized the opportunity of being settled in power to accomplish what they deemed to be for their security, and added a chamber

A. D. 1559.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

to each of the parliaments in the kingdom for the prosecution of hereticks ; which tribunals from their fury were named the *Chambres Ardentes*. This violence produced meetings of the Protestants to consider of their own defence ; but the measures which they concerted being betrayed, were defeated, and some of their chiefs executed with tortures in the presence of the queen-dowager and the females of her court ; while of the commonalty so many were put to death at Amboise, that the streets of the place absolutely ran down with blood. As there was danger of this severity exciting fresh troubles, the queen-dowager asked the admiral Coligni's advice, who recommended the dismissal of the Guises, and the grant of liberty of conscience ; and though these things were then out of her power, she raised Michael de l'Hospital, the son of the constable of Bourbon's physician, to the high post of chancellor of France ; by whose advice an assembly of Notables was holden ; in which the admiral presented to the king a petition in favour of the Protestants, who now began to be called Hugonots. On this it was determined, that the prosecution of the Protestants should be suspended until a meeting of a general assembly of the States, which was by the court insidiously assented to ; and the prince of Condé, and his brother the king of Navarre, being, by the strongest assurances of personal safety, drawn to Orleans, the former, after being put on his trial, was thrown into prison, and the last very narrowly escaped a plot laid for his assassination. But they were delivered by the death of the weak and wicked Francis, who contrived to die with a gross falsehood in his mouth, by declaring to the king of Navarre that what had been done against him proceeded from himself, and not from the Guises : yet this was styled the king without vice ! Charles, duke of Orleans, now succeeded to the throne, being between ten and eleven years old ; but the chief authority was vested in the queen-mother, though she did not assume the title of regent, and the king of Navarre was declared the king's lieutenant-general. In the assembly of the States, which was opened not many days after the death of Francis, all persecution against the Protestants was suspended : but the constable, the duke of Guise, and the marshall de St. André, entered into a close alliance, and obtained the name of the Triumvirate. The prince of

A. D. 1560.

Condé was declared innocent by the council and parliament; in which last assembly all meetings of the Protestants were forbidden, under pain of death; and after a conference between the prelates and the ministers of the Protestants at Poissi, the weak king of Navarre left the reformed, and joined the triumvirate. A new assembly of the States being called, liberty of conscience was granted to the Hugonots, until a general council. Still the differences were not abated; but a fray taking place between the attendants of the duke of Guise and some Hugonots, gave a beginning to a civil war, when the triumvirate got possession of the persons of the king and the queen-mother; and the Hugonots, after having surprized several places, concluded a treaty with the queen of England. The king of Navarre fell in the siege of Rouen, and, in a battle near Dreux, the Hugonots were driven from the field, and the prince of Condé was wounded and taken prisoner; while the admiral made an excellent retreat, the loss of the triumvirate being much the greatest, and including that of the marshal de St. André. While this struggle for power in reality continued in France, the duke of Savoy recovered nearly all the places which the French still held in Piedmont. To prevent the further success of foreign enemies, the duke of Guise determined to put an end to the civil war as soon as possible: but with this view besieging Orleans, he was there assassinated. The queen laboured successfully to accomplish a treaty: to the Protestants were granted a pardon and liberty of conscience, and they laid down their arms, restored the places they had taken, and renounced their treaty with England. Against that country war was declared, and Havre recovered, not very honestly, by the prince of Condé: but the queen-mother being urged to perform her promise of making that prince lieutenant-general of the kingdom, and the Protestants having taken some liberties with her character, she became, through spite, a most zealous Romanist. Now, too, having none to controul her, she concluded a peace with England: and the emissaries of Spain and the House of Guise, exciting the Romanists to hostilities, the treaty with the Protestants was broken by an edict issued in the king's name, restraining them from the exercise of their religion within ten leagues of the court. The queen after this entered on a

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

long course of deep dissimulation with an intention of at length destroying the Protestants; but this being penetrated by some of their chiefs, the prince of Condé was warned of the danger in which he really was, and convinced, that he had throughout been the dupe of the queen. He then laid a bold plan for seizing the whole court, and, being frustrated in it, commenced at once another civil war. An action was fought in the plain of St. Denys, in which the court gained the victory, though the constable was mortally wounded, nor on his death would the queen appoint another. The war quickly spread through all the provinces, and well satisfied were the Spaniards to see the French destroying each other. Another peace, however, was agreed to, but several places refused to be included in it, and particularly Rochelle, which, from that time, became the bulwark of the reformed. But within six months, by a treacherous attempt of the court to seize the admiral and the prince of Condé, the war was renewed, and in the following spring an action took place between the army of the prince, and that commanded by the duke of Anjou, with the assistance of three very able generals, in which the Hugonots were defeated, and the prince, when wounded and placed on the ground, assassinated by the captain of the duke's guards. The admiral retiring into Poictou, Jane, queen of Navarre, brought to him her son Henry, prince of Bearn, and Henry, now prince of Condé. More misfortunes having reduced the Protestant cause very low, the spirit of the queen of Navarre supported their exertions, and the two princes of Bearn and Condé achieved great things, and then, under the conduct of the admiral, marched through France to join their German reinforcements; the success of which expedition terrified Catherine de Medicis, the queen-mother, into the conclusion of a third peace, as favourable to the Protestants as if they had had a course of victories, instead of accumulated defeats. The king, now about twenty, appeared in a new light, claimed the peace as his own, and affected to govern for himself, and that in a manner so equitable as to perfectly deceive the admiral. The negociation which had long been depending for his marriage with Elizabeth, the daughter of the emperor Maximilian, was at length terminated, and the marriage celebrated. Neither the Spanish faction nor the

Guises knew what to think of the sudden change, and high rose the credit of Charles the ninth both at home and abroad ; but under all this appearance of good lurked one of the most diabolical purposes, that even a pupil of apostate Rome ever concealed. By caressing the admiral, and freely conversing with him of making his subjects of the two communions live in peace with each other, and of the right he had to take the people of Flanders under his protection, and by his kindness to the prince of Orange and his brother, he so perfectly lulled all suspicion in the breasts of the leading Protestants, that they would not regard the intelligence transmitted to them from all parts, that the court was meditating their destruction. At this time the queen of Navarre died, having been received at court in the most affectionate manner by the king ; and her son was, two months after, married to the princess Margaret, much against her consent. Four days after this, the admiral was shot at in the street, and wounded in his right hand and left arm, and visited by the king with the most consummate hypocrisy, which prevented him from complying with the request of his friends to permit them to carry him from Paris, and consigned him to destruction : since, that very night, the queen-mother fixed in her council the execution of the plot she had for years meditated of massacring all the Protestants, and the direction of the whole design was committed to the infernal duke of Guise : the young king of Navarre, and the prince of Condé, with the marshalls Montmorenci and Damville, were alone to be spared. At the appointed hour, on ringing a bell near the Louvre, the dreadful scene began with the murder of the admiral Coligny, and the troops and militia being previously stationed for the purpose, they and the papal inhabitants were let loose on the Protestants, and for three or four days they were destroyed by all the variety of cruel deaths that the most unbounded malice could invent. By orders dispatched from Paris on the eve of St. Bartholomew, the slaughter begun in the capital was continued in the provinces, and in the space of two months thirty thousand Protestants were murdered by the slaves of Satan : the king of Navarre was at that time, as afterwards, prevailed on to abjure the Protestant religion. The towns which had been given to the Protestants were then attacked : Rochelle made the

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1572.

longest resistance, and the duke of Anjou, who commanded against it, being chosen king of Poland, thought proper to end the affair by a peace, which the court as usual did not intend to keep, and to which the Protestants, grown wiser by sad experience, never trusted. The king accompanied his brother to the frontiers, when he went to take possession of the crown of Poland, and during the journey was seized with an illness, under which, after suffering the most dreadful agonies for some time, he at length expired; having declared the king of Poland his heir, and his mother regent until his arrival. Signal were the abilities which Catherine de Medicis exhibited in her government, and as great the iniquity she manifested. Being highly displeased at the Protestants for entering into a league with marshall Damville, as governour of Languedoc, and declaring the prince of Condé their captain-general, to strike terror into her enemies, she caused the count of Montgomery to be publicly beheaded, after being cruelly tortured, though on his surrender his life had been promised him. Henry the third was in his twenty-third year at his accession, and was obliged to leave Poland by stealth, returning by way of Italy and Savoy; and ere he arrived at Lyons, the Protestants, who were again in arms, seized part of his baggage; at which he was exceedingly incensed. He received very coldly the duke of Alençon and the king of Navarre, yet heard their apologies civilly, and at length gave them their liberty. He determined vigorously to continue the war with the Hugonots; on which marshall Damville dropt the mask, and assembling the states of Languedoc, informed them, that he had put himself at the head of a confederacy to restore vigour to the laws, tranquillity to the state, and drive foreigners from the court and kingdom. Henry, though at first affecting to apply to business, soon returned to his habits of idle and lascivious indulgence. Ere he was crowned, a conspiracy against his life, to which the duke of Alençon was privy, was detected: the day after his coronation, he espoused Louisa, daughter of the count of Vaudemont, of the House of Lorrain. The war with the Protestants was continued, and an endeavour was made to remove marshall Damville by poison, but he recovered. The queen-mother extorted an order to dispatch the marshalls Montmorency and Cosse; but thinking

proper to supersede it, the king was persuaded to set them at liberty. Catherine soon became desirous of bringing about a peace ; and the escape of the king of Navarre to his government of Guienne, and the declaration that his abjuration was forced, the prince of Condé's joining a body of Germans which he had hired, and the duke of Alençon's putting himself at the head of the army thus formed, and consisting of thirty-five thousand men, rendering her more eager to conclude one, the Edict of Pacification was agreed on. By this, liberty of conscience, and the publick exercise of their religion, with some securities for the continuance of them, were given to the Protestants. The Guises took this opportunity of introducing, what had been long in contemplation, the Catholick League, which was signed by all the angry Papists in the kingdom. The king seeing that this struck at the root of his own authority, to obviate the ill effects of it, declared himself the head of the league, though it was directly calculated to annul the Edict of Pacification ; and ere the close of the year, in an assembly of the states at Blois, that edict was formally cancelled. This was followed by a declaration against any indulgence to the Protestants, the king's avowing himself the head of the league, and a renewal of the war against the Hugonots : but neither side being at union among themselves, some months produced another peace, during which, however, frequent enterprizes were executed by each party. While the court was in the utmost confusion with the insolence of the Guises, and the profligacy of the king, the queen exerted herself to make another peace with the king of Navarre, which, as usual, lasted but a short time. Neither did the subsequent hostilities continue long, before they were interrupted by another, through the ratification of which, with the consent of the deputies of the Hugonots, by the king of Navarre, that prince was placed in a more conspicuous light than ever. In the mean time, the duke of Anjou was endeavouring to promote his marriage with the queen of England, by whom he was in the end deceived. Though the court of France affected to take no share in the war in the Low Countries, it was notorious, that the king permitted the duke of Anjou, who did, to raise men in his territories, and that the queen-mother and the queen of England supplied him with money.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

But, not content to act against the Spaniards, the duke, at the suggestions of his hungry followers, formed the project of seizing for himself some of the places garrisoned by the French ; but miscarrying in the first attempt, he so ruined his credit, that he returned to France an object of contempt. The queen-mother having now lost her power, it was divided between the minions of Henry and the Guises ; and while these two factions were struggling for the superiority, the duke of Anjou was taken off by a rapid disorder. This occurrence gave another turn to the counsels of the Guises, who had formed a plan for exciting the people to arms : for the king of Navarre standing next in the succession to the crown, they added to their other complaints the dread of an heretical king. Henry, informed of these plots, sent advice of them to the king of Navarre, exhorting him to secure the succession by returning to the Church of Rome ; that king thanked him for his kindness, but excused himself as to the question of religion. Henry, as if he had resumed his understanding, now diminished the taxes, and did many things to render himself popular : while, on the other hand, the Guises concluded, with great secrecy, a treaty with Spain, by which they engaged, on the demise of the crown, to acknowledge the cardinal of Bourbon as king, to receive the council of Trent, and restore Cambray to Philip, on condition of his furnishing them with fifty thousand crowns a month for carrying on the war against the Hugonots. The states of the Low Countries having offered their sovereignty unconditionally to Henry, the emissaries of Philip forced the duke of Guise to declare, ere he was ready. A manifesto was published in the name of the cardinal of Bourbon, as the rightfull heir to the crown, containing a dreadfull picture of publick affairs, and calculated to render the king odious and contemptible. The duke of Guise then commenced hostilities, and Henry acting with his usual weakness, and again submitting to the influence of his mother, a peace was shortly made with the league upon their own terms. A deputation was then sent to invite the king of Navarre to return to the Roman Church ; while the marshall Montmorency declared himself the head of a third party, such as should remain firm to the constitution in Church and State. A burgher of Paris, named Rocheblon, formed

in that city a particular confederation, and to keep up the correspondence between the members of it, he fixed on sixteen people in different parts of the city. This measure being highly approved of by the duke of Guise, they assumed the title of the council of sixteen, raised a considerable sum for the service of the league, and became formidable to the king and kingdom. Though the new pope, Sixtus the fifth, would not countenance the league, he issued his infamous bull against the king of Navarre, and the prince of Condé; which, through its virulence, failed of doing those princes the harm which was intended. The French monarch, too, publishing an edict, commanding all his subjects, on pain of forfeiting their goods, to return to the old religion in fourteen days; and proceeding to a rigorous execution of it, the war began on all sides; in which there were, in fact, three parties—that of the king, no less afraid of the league than of the Protestants; that of the league, who, as they severely persecuted the Hugonots on one side, sought on the other to get the government of the kingdom into their own hands; and that of the Protestants, who adhered to the king of Navarre. Henry the third, in this deplorable situation, took his measures with such prudence and spirit, that he extricated himself from it better than his best friends expected. The licentious king of Navarre, having by his courage and conduct gained an important victory over an army of Henry's, lost all the benefit of it, by dispersing his troops, and going to visit his mistress. The consequent success of the duke of Guise so increased the insolence of his adherents, that they demanded of the king what was, in fact, his dethronement. He therefore now determined to put that duke to death, but was dissuaded by treacherous counsellors, and obliged to retire from Paris, where the duke arranged things as he pleased. Fearing, however, the impression which the king's menaces might have on the Parisians, he hastened to finish the treaty of peace with him. On this, the king received into favour the chiefs of the league, and the queen-mother manifested remarkable kindness to the duke of Guise, who seemed to have entire confidence in her. In the mean time, the greater part of the kingdom was in a state of anarchy; while the king, surrounded by enemies only, derived courage from the prospect of his danger. An

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

assembly of the States being called, proved to be highly favourable to the duke of Guise; and though, to manifest the sincerity of the reconciliation between the king and him, these two partook of the same consecrated wafer, a most insolent speech of the duke's sister made the king determine to get rid of him some way or other; a resolution which he executed by having him assassinated as he was obeying an order to come into his cabinet; and the cardinal of Guise was dispatched in a similar manner the next day. The death of the duke so enraged the Parisians, the brutality of whose malice appears to have been in every age the same, that they attacked the royal statues, pictures, and arms, and could find no epithet too abusive to bestow on the king. At this extraordinary conjuncture that extremely wicked female, the queen-mother, was called from the world, recommending to the king in her last words to have the king of Navarre always about him, and grant his subjects liberty of conscience. In the mean time, the league at Paris openly organised their rebellion, and the duke of Mayenne was declared lieutenant-general of the state royal and crown of France, receiving with this strange title almost regal power. In all the provinces troops were now raising for the king and for the league, and with the last sided the king of Spain and His Holiness. At this period of distress, the princes of the blood did themselves great honour by joining the king, except the old doating cardinal of Bourbon, who was in prison, yet by the league styled Charles the tenth. The king of Navarre offered Henry his forces; and not only a reconciliation, but an union of armies took place; when the two kings undertook the blockade of Paris. But scarcely was it commenced, when Henry of France was assassinated by a jacobin friar, named James Clement, urged on by abler heads and wickeder hearts probably than his own. The king of Navarre was quickly acknowledged for sovereign of France by the Hugonots and Swiss in the royal army; and, after some hesitation, and his signing some moderate propositions which they laid before him, the Roman Catholick lords took the oath to him. Yet the duke d'Espernon, under pretence that the marshalls Biron and d'Aumont had signed before him, refused to concur, and marched off with his troops. Great and undissembled was the joy of the adhe-

A. D. 1589.

rents of the league on hearing of the death of Henry the third : the duke of Mayenne, on whose head some of them would have placed the crown, published a manifesto, exhorting the nation to renew the oath they had taken to preserve the Catholick religion, and to acknowledge for their sovereign the cardinal of Bourbon, as the king of Navarre was an heretick. This monarch, no longer able to continue near Paris with a diminished army, transferred the scene of action into Normandy, whence after gaining Dieppe, Caen, and some less important places, and repelled an attack of the duke of Mayenne, he again appeared before Paris, slew some of the rebels, and took thirty pieces of their cannon. In the mean time he received the agreeable news, that the Swiss and the Venetians had acknowledged him for king of France, and the not less acceptable reinforcement of four thousand infantry from England. The duke of Mayenne having declared the pope protector of the league, strengthened himself by dissolving the council, and, under the plea of his own governing by royal authority (though the prince he had proclaimed was a prisoner), appointed a privy council. As some of the parliaments and cities now declared for the king, so some remained neuter. Henry now manifested himself an active and an able general, but his plans were frequently rendered abortive through want of money. One of his great objects was the reduction of Paris ; but one time by the advance of the prince of Parma, at others by other incidents, his attainment of it was prevented. In the mean time his holiness, Gregory the fourteenth, declared him a relapsed heretick, and such was the virulence of some of the papists against him, that on the bishop of Evreux, when taken prisoner, was found a treatise justifying the murder of Henry the third, and maintaining the lawfulness of treating his successor in the same manner. Arduous was the struggle which the king for some time supported ; whenever the duke of Mayenne was hardly pressed, then the duke of Parma came to his assistance. And on the death of this last the former called an assembly of the states, but resisted the proposal of the legate and the Spaniards, that they should bind themselves by an oath never to admit a reconciliation with the king of Navarre. After this, the Spaniards endeavoured to gain the duke of Mayenne by high offers ;

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

yet conferences were opened with deputies from the papists in the king's service; and, notwithstanding the various propositions made on the part of the king of Spain to obtain the crown for his daughter, no conclusion was formed before Henry took his resolution to apostatize from the truth, and return a second time to the idolatrous Church for the sake of an earthly crown. In consequence of his hearing mass and receiving absolution, a truce was proclaimed for three months. The duke of Mayenne, however, still continued treating with the Spaniards; and the king, losing all opinion of his sincerity, at length declared the truce void. In the mean time, his holiness would not receive the king's submission, until he had ascertained that his cause was likely to triumph; several provinces gradually declared for the king, and Paris was again, in some measure, blockaded. Henry thought proper to have himself solemnly crowned at Chartres; and the legate having published a declaration, that the pope never would absolve the king, many gentlemen, viewing this as an artifice of the Spaniards, left the league, and joined the king. The situation of the duke of Mayenne now becoming very perilous, he retired from Paris, into which city the king and his troops were shortly admitted; and both the parliament and the university now found his title good. The example of the capital was quickly followed by that of Rouen, and many other important places. Even the young duke of Guise surrendered the province of Champagne to the king, and the duke of Lorraine made his peace. While Henry was considering of attacking the Spaniards, an attempt on his life was made by a simple youth, instigated by the doctrines of the Jesuits to the nefarious deed, that by an act so meritorious he might expiate his own sins. The king resenting the conduct of the Spaniards, now declared war against them, and met with considerable success against the duke of Mayenne, who, after the pope had at length absolved Henry, made advantageous terms with the last, and experienced from him a reception so cordial, that he became attached to him for the remainder of his life. Though the king's affairs were improved by the surprize of Marseilles, an irruption of the Spaniards into France, Henry's want of money, and the discontents of the Hugonots, reduced him to a very distressfull situa-

tion, from which he was delivered by the advice of the baron de Rhosny (afterwards duke of Sully), and the exertions of his friends, and enabled to recover Amiens, which the Spaniards had taken; and so much was the state of his affairs now improved, that both the duke of Savoy, whose enmity had given him much trouble, and the king of Spain, were inclined to peace with him; and conferences for a general peace were accordingly agreed on. While the negotiations for this were carrying on, Bretagne, of which the duke of Mercœur had possession, was partly taken and partly resigned to the king, on condition of a marriage between his natural son, called in flattery Cæsar Monsieur, and the duke's only daughter. After which the Hugonots obtained from the king, while he was at Nantes, the edict which takes its name from that place; by which not only all the concessions previously made to them were confirmed, but a free admission to all offices, the institution of chambers in which the numbers of the two religions should be equal, and the unrestrained education of their children in any of the universities, were granted to them. Henry proposed to the queen of England and the Dutch to concur with him in his peace with Spain; but both refusing, he, in the course of four months, concluded one himself; and then did the same with the grand duke of Tuscany. Peace thus made, Henry disbanded great part of his troops, and turned his attention to the regulation of his finances, while the continuance of the tranquillity he had obtained was, on one side, assured by the decease of Philip the second. The œconomical measures and faithfull administration of the baron de Rhosny, brought regularity out of confusion, and affluence out of poverty, and enabled the king to remit twenty millions of taxes that were due. The edict of Nantes was now, on the peremptory order of the king, formally registered by the parliament of Paris. The king having made to the pope applications for a divorce on very slight grounds, he, after some time, succeeded in obtaining it, and then married Mary de Medicis, niece to the grand duke of Tuscany. The duke of Savoy having endeavoured to form a party in the French court, and being encouraged to hope for support from Spain, refused to ratify the treaty which he had made with Henry; but, by the consequent war, was obliged to submit to a dis-

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Spain
during the
16th century.

advantageous peace. With the birth of a Dauphin, to whom was given the name of Lewis, closes the history of the sixteenth century in France.

In Spain the sixteenth century commenced with the archduke Philip and his wife, the princess Joanna, coming into that country and receiving the oaths of the states of Castile and Arragon; and, two years after, she was delivered of a son, who was baptized by the name of Ferdinand, and from that time her understanding was impaired. The next year died queen Isabella herself, leaving her kingdom to her daughter Joanna, whom Ferdinand immediately caused to be proclaimed. But Isabella had also appointed Ferdinand regent until her grandson Don Carlos should attain the age of twenty. The archduke, who was highly prejudiced against his father-in-law, affected to treat the deceased queen's testament as supposititious or invalid, and therefore was highly provoked at Joanna's sending Ferdinand full power to govern Castile and its dependencies; where he was by the states acknowledged for administrator with scarcely any opposition. To counteract his son-in-law in attempting to gain Lewis the twelfth to support him, Ferdinand concluded a marriage with the niece of that monarch, the beautiful Germain de Foix, and entailed on his heir by it the kingdom of Naples. Philip, however, persisted in his resolution of getting the kingdom of Castile out of Ferdinand's hands; and the latter being deserted by most of the nobility, Philip and his wife repaired to Spain; and there a treaty was concluded, by which Ferdinand consented to retire to his own dominions; and Philip taking possession of the government of Castile soon rendered himself universally odious; the consequences of which, however, were prevented by his death. Through much opposition from his former adversaries, Ferdinand now succeeded to the government of Castile, and, after two years, persuaded his daughter, now decidedly insane, to retire to the castle of Tordesillas, where she spent the remainder of her days; while his firmness and policy quieted all opposition. An expedition, undertaken by cardinal Ximenes, for the conquest of Oran, was the commencement of another war with the Moors, in which some advantages were obtained. Of Ferdinand's transactions in Italy, and share in the

league of Cambray, mention has been elsewhere made. John d'Albret, king of Navarre in right of his wife, being suspected of attachment to France, Ferdinand sent the duke of Alva to subdue his kingdom, which was very quickly accomplished: after which a truce for a year was concluded with France; during which Ferdinand fell into an ill state of health, yet was not prevented from attending to business. On the accession of Francis the first to the throne of France, perceiving that the war would be renewed, he prepared for it by raising money, to which he got the states of Castile readily to assent, by annexing Navarre for ever to the kingdoms of Castile and Leon. The nobility of Arragon would have done the same, if he would have repealed the law by which their vassals had a right to sue for redress in the king's courts; but this Ferdinand magnanimously refused, applying to several cities for a free gift, which they cheerfully granted him to the great regret of the nobles. The king intending to pass the following winter in Andalusia was in his progress thither taken ill; when, after having by his will declared his daughter Joanna heiress of all his dominions, and after her his grandson, Don Carlos, he expired. As soon as Don Carlos, known better by the name of Charles, received at Brussels the news of his grandfather's death, he confirmed cardinal Ximenes in the regency of Castile, to which Ferdinand had appointed him: and whose firm administration caused more extensive powers to be sent him, which he exercised for the benefit of both sovereign and people. But when the king himself came into Spain, as he was on the road to meet him, he was poisoned, by those, it was suspected, who did not wish Charles to have an interview with him. The king having met the states of both his kingdoms of Castile and Arragon, and received a free gift from both, and, to the disgust of the former people, bestowed the archbishoprick of Toledo on the nephew of his Flemish minister, Chievres, was in the diet at Augsburg elected king of the Romans, and in the beginning of the next year was, on the death of the emperor Maximilian, chosen to succeed him; thus uniting in himself a vast extent of dominion. When the ambassador from the empire arrived, Charles assumed the title of Majesty, in which he was imitated by other kings. In the following year, Ferdinand Magellan

A. D. 1515.

A. D. 1519.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

sailed with the emperor's commission and a squadron of five vessels, in quest of a Western passage to the Moluccas. The little care Charles had taken to conciliate the Spaniards, added to the differences before subsisting between the nobles and the commons, seems to have led to the troubles which began before, and greatly increased after he left the peninsula for Flanders. At length an absolute civil war broke out, in which, however, the nobility, assisted by the army which the regents raised, subdued their opponents. The emperor returning into Spain was well received, and, excepting about fourscore persons from it, published a full and general pardon. In the following spring Fontarabia was taken by the Spaniards; and the disputes which had arisen with Portugal concerning the Moluccas were terminated, or suspended at least, in consideration of a sum of money, and the marriage of the monarch Don Juan with the emperor's youngest sister. Of the capture, captivity, and release of Francis the first an account has already been given; on which release the emperor celebrated his own marriage with Donna Isabella of Portugal; who in the following year was delivered of the prince Don Philip. Francis the first and Henry the eighth of England declared war against the emperor, but, ere the close of the next year, it was put an end to by the peace of Cambray. In the following, the emperor formally ceded the isles of Malta and Gosa, together with Tripoli in Barbary, to the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem. While the emperor was engaged in Germany, the number of bulls sent by the pope into Spain, and the seditious preaching of the inferior clergy, required all the activity and firmness of the ministers to obviate their ill effects. On the other hand, the subsequent year was marked by the success of Andrew Doria, the emperor's admiral, against the Turks in the Morea. But the possession of Coron, his chief conquest, was found so expensive, that in two years time it was evacuated. In the mean time, Charles having returned into Spain, held assemblies of the states of both Arragon and Castile, from which he obtained supplies of money. Provoked by the damage perpetrated by the Turkish corsairs, and in compliance with the request of the king of Tunis, whom Barbarossa had driven out of his dominions, the emperor undertook an expedition

into Africa, in which he received from his neighbours succours which surpassed his expectations. His own forces being united with these, he sailed for Africa, made himself master of the fortress of Goletta, and then of the whole kingdom of Tunis ; to which he restored its old monarch, who became his vassal, and ceded to him that fortress. On his return from Africa, he heard of the decease of the duke of Milan, and of his troops having taken possession of that duchy under his will. This produced a renewal of the war with France, attended with little success to the emperor, either in the siege of Marseilles, undertaken by himself, or on the side of Picardy, where count Nassau commanded for him, both armies suffering by an epidemick distemper. A few months after this, the attacks on one side of the French, and on the other of their allies, the Turks, gave the emperor no small trouble ; but he was powerfully supported by his Spanish subjects, and at length a truce for three months was concluded ; which was afterwards, by the mediation of the pope, prolonged for ten years ; after which the two kings had a conference, which has been already mentioned : when the emperor had again returned to Spain, he lost his empress in child-bed. The city of Ghent having revolted, the emperor having, as has been mentioned, passed from Spain to Flanders through France, punished the citizens very severely. In the absence of the emperor, Gibraltar was surprized and plundered by one of Barbarossa's captains, but a squadron of gallies from Sicily overtaking the enemies, killed or took them all, and recovered the booty and the captives. The same year Spain was so ravaged by pestilence and famine, that one-eleventh of its inhabitants are said to have perished. The emperor, determined in the execution of any project he had once formed, passing from the Low Countries into Germany, and thence into Italy, there embarked late in the season, and contrary to the advice of his officers, to the attack of Algiers ; and having reached Majorca, the appointed rendezvous of his forces, sailed from thence with a fleet of nearly four hundred vessels, great and small, and twenty-four thousand land forces ; but having besieged the place for several weeks, was obliged, after his fleet had suffered greatly from tempests, to raise the siege, and return to Spain with great loss. While the war was proceeding against France in

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1544.

various places, as well as with varying success, the emperor assembled the states of Arragon, Catalonia, and Valentia, that they might swear fidelity to his son Philip, as well as present himself with a free gift, after which he married the prince to the infanta Maria of Portugal. The emperor committing the regency of Spain to Philip, assisted by the duke of Alva, repaired to the Netherlands, where those military transactions took place, which have been noticed in the history of France, and which ended in a treaty of peace concluded at Chateau de Crespy. In the beginning of the subsequent year, the princess of Asturias was delivered of a son, who was named Carlos, but died herself immediately. The emperor, while he was detained in Germany, being desirous of having the prince of Asturias near him, prevailed on his own brother, the king of the Romans, to send his son Maximilian into Spain; where he married the emperor's daughter, the infanta Maria, and took the administration of the government on him, while Philip set out for Barcelona with a most splendid train; exhibiting in this early action of his life that dignity, circumspection, and magnificence, joined with regularity and œconomy, which were discernible in his subsequent conduct. On his arrival at Brussels his father caused him to be acknowledged duke of Brabant. Francis the first of France having died soon after Henry the eighth of England, his son, Henry the second, entered into a secret confederacy with the Protestant princes of the empire, and a general war was soon re-kindled. The prince Philip having returned into Spain, there concluded the marriage of his sister, the infanta Joanna, with the prince of Portugal, which last lived not to see the birth of his son; who, coming into the world a few days after his decease, was named Sebastian, because he was born on the feast of that saint. A treaty of marriage being now concluded between Philip and Mary of England, that prince left Spain under the care of his sister, the princess-dowager of Portugal, settled the household of his son, Don Carlos, paid his devotions at the shrine of St. James of Compostella, and sailed from Corunna, attended by the principal nobility of Castile and Arragon, to England, where he celebrated his marriage with as cruel an idolater as himself. The multiplicity of cares in which he was implicated, joining with his ill health to affect

his spirits, and these being still more depressed by the news of his mother's death, the emperor sent for his son Philip into Flanders, and formally resigned to him all his hereditary dominions. On advice of which being received in Spain, Philip was proclaimed; and the emperor, after some stay at Brussels, set out to embark for that country, which he chose to make the place of his retreat: but ere he finally left Flanders, he by an edict committed the government of the empire to his brother Ferdinand. On his arrival in Spain he retired to a small house, built near the convent of St. Justus, seated in the Vera de Placentia, described as one of the most pleasant spots in Europe. Here Charles employed himself in acts of piety and devotion, and practised for amusement some of the mechanick arts: neither did he actually resign the empire until the year fifteen hundred and fifty-eight, in the course of which he died. When Philip first ascended the throne of Spain, finding the conclusion of a peace impracticable, he made a truce with France for five years; which, however, the French soon violated; thus leading to that renewed war, the particulars of which have already been stated in the history of France, and which was terminated by the treaty of Chateau Cambresis. After the conclusion of which, Philip hastened back to Spain; where, in an assembly of the states of Castile, he acknowledged Don John of Austria for his brother; and where this true son of apostate Rome, Philip, was present at an Act of Faith; as the Papists impiously term the burning of those who will not join in their apostacy. In the beginning of the following year, the princess Elizabeth of France arrived in Spain, and was married to Philip. An unsuccessfull attempt was now made to recover Tripoli for the Knights of Malta. The king removed his court from Toledo to the city of Madrid, thus rendering the last the capital of Spain; and the persecution of the Protestants was pursued with unrelenting severity. In two years more, was laid the first stone of the monastery of the Escorial, about seven leagues from Madrid, which was after increased to that group of magnificent structures, of which the present Escorial consists. The king of Algiers having, though without success, besieged the fortresses of Oran and Mazalquivir, Philip ordered the Moors of Valentia to be disarmed, as he had those of

Granada before. In the following winter, making a progress to Saragossa, on information of great acts of injustice committed by the magistrates, he caused many to be put to death, and restitution to be made out of their estates to those whom they had injured. Troubles had now subsisted in the Low Countries for two years, occasioned by the rigour and haughtiness of the bishop of Mechlin, better known by the title of cardinal Granvelle, whom Philip still neglected to remove from thence. But when the king in the next year ordered the decrees of the council of Trent to be enforced throughout his dominions, the inhabitants of those countries determined to prevent the introduction of the Inquisition, and to defend their liberty of conscience by the sword, though Granvelle had been at length removed. Don Carlos, the king's son, having been detected in intriguing with the malcontents of the Low Countries, a resolution was taken to send the duke of Alva to support the Inquisition, and force the Flemings to continue good Papists. By the suggestions of the pope, Philip sent express orders to the Moors of Granada, at once to change their dress, manners, and language; nor could all the representations of themselves or their governours do more than procure a small respite for them. The duke of Alva, on setting out for the Low Countries, had an audience of leave of Don Carlos, who said, he would command there himself, and attempted to stab the duke; who, when he arrived in the Low Countries, caused the counts of Egmont and Horn to be arrested, directed a citadel to be built at Antwerp, and paid so little attention to the princess Margaret, that she resigned the title of governess, and retired into Italy. The prince Don Carlos acted so much the part of a madman, that his father put him under confinement; his impatience and intemperance under which soon brought him to his grave. The king's orders, in respect to the Moors of Granada, no sooner were begun to be executed, than they determined to revolt; when, after much secret preparation, they proclaimed a rich, brave, and able young man, named Ferdinand de Valor, king of Granada and Cordova, by the name of Mahomet Aben Humeya, and then proceeded to commit the most inexcusable excesses and cruelties, and manifest the utmost detestation of Christianity. The king now named Don John of Austria, his half-brother,

captain-general of the galleys of Spain: and the queen Isabella died in consequence of a miscarriage. The war in Granada continued: but Aben Humeya giving the reins to his passion for women, created such jealousies, that a conspiracy was formed against him, and he was put to death, declaring himself a Christian. Lopez Aben Abo, who had been set up against him, assumed the name of Muley Abdallah, and found means to sustain the war to the end of the year: when acting perfidiously, he murdered a noble Moor, who was striving to put a stop to the troubles, and was treated himself in the same manner by another of his countrymen; and on his death public tranquillity was soon restored. During these troubles at home, an open rupture took place with England, on Elizabeth's seizing a large sum of money, which was on its passage to the Low Countries from Philip. And after they were tranquillized, this monarch celebrated his marriage with his niece, the archduchess Anne of Austria; to such abomination did the bishop of Rome give his sanction: after which Philip entered into what has before been noticed as the holy league, of which Don John of Austria was appointed generalissimo; and the confederate fleet, engaging that of the Turks, gained the great victory of Lepanto. Towards the close of the same year, the empress was delivered of the prince Ferdinand; to whom, two years after, she added the infant Carlos. Philip having given assignments on his revenues for many sums he had borrowed to support his wars, did, by the advice of the states, but to the total ruin of his own credit, supersede those assignments; for embracing which expedient the states gave him a supply. Still against the attacks of the Turks sufficient preparations were not made; but they retook Tunis and the Goletta, while Oran was abandoned. The queen this year bare another son, who was named Diego, but she lost his brother Carlos. The duke of Alva having been removed from the government of the Low Countries, and his successor being dead, the king resolved to send thither his brother Don John, and left all the measures to be pursued to his discretion; except that he absolutely refused to grant liberty of conscience. To expedite his arrival at his government, Don John passed in disguise through France: but, in two years time, he was carried off by a fever. In an earlier part of the same year,

A. D. 1578.

A. D. 1580.

A. D. 1581.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the queen was delivered of the infant Philip, who succeeded his father ; and in a later died prince Ferdinand, then sixteen. This year, too, was fatal to Don Sebastian, king of Portugal, who perished in his rash expedition into Africa ; and was immediately succeeded in his throne by the cardinal Henry : who, ere his death, which occurred in two years, appointed five commissioners to determine the question of the succession to his crown between Philip and the duke of Braganza in right of his wife. To their determination, however, the former did not mean to submit ; but, from the death of his nephew, had a fleet and army ready to put him in possession of the kingdom. The command of this army was given to the duke of Alva, on whose entrance into Portugal the populace proclaimed Don Antonio, prior of Crato, whom Henry had considered as illegitimate, king ; and whom the duke having defeated in two battles, without much trouble reduced the kingdom : into which Philip coming the next year, was acknowledged by an assembly of the states, in which the duke of Braganza, and his son the duke of Barcelos, were the first who took the oaths, Don Antonio escaping to England : in the following year died the prince Diego. The king growing weary of his residence at Lisbon, and having caused his son Philip to be acknowledged as his successor, and lost his great commander the duke of Alva, on leaving Portugal appointed the cardinal archduke Albert regent of that kingdom : after which he sent a fleet, which reduced to his obedience the Azores, that had hitherto refused to acknowledge him. Having had his son Philip acknowledged for his successor by the several states of Spain, the king, hurt at the damage done his subjects by the naval attacks of the English, and incited by the pope and others to make queen Elizabeth feel the weight of his arms, issued orders for the whole maritime force of his extensive dominions to assemble at Lisbon, and gave instructions to the prince of Parma to provide in the Low Countries the greatest force he could for effecting a descent on England. With other motives concurred the fury of the Papists to pull down a princess, whom they considered as the protectress of hereticks, to animate the preparations for this extraordinary undertaking, which, by the time his fleet was assembled, cost Philip more

than thirty-six millions of pieces of eight, and the armament consisted of an hundred and thirty ships of war and gallies, having on board twenty thousand land forces. The marquis of Santa Cruz, who was to have commanded it, dying, the duke of Medina Sidonia was, against his own will, appointed to the charge; in which he was unsuccessfull: for what with the unfavourable weather, the skilfull attacks of the English, and the receiving no support from the prince of Parma, the Spanish commanders were reduced to exchange their hopes of conquest for efforts to escape themselves; and, after sailing up the English Channel, were forced to return home north about, in which navigation such were their losses and dispersion, that the duke returned to St. Andero with only a few ships; while through this miscarriage the marine of Spain received a blow which it has never recovered: yet Philip supported his disappointment with great equanimity. This visit to the coast of England was the next season returned by an English fleet and army, which bringing Don Antonio with them, sacked Corunna, and did a great deal of mischief, and would have effected more, had not a misunderstanding taken place between the English commanders. Still small was the detriment which Philip suffered from this attack of the English, in comparison with what he received from the assistance which he gave to the league in France: by this he weakened his own army in the Low Countries, and exhausted his treasury. Some disturbances in Arragon, on account of the disgraced secretary of state Antonio Perez, gave the king an opportunity of enforcing such measures as entirely extinguished the liberties of Arragon; neither did the people of that kingdom afterwards succeed in their efforts to get their privileges restored. Henry the fourth of France by again apostatizing to the Church of Rome broke all Philip's designs on the French crown. On the decease of the archduke Ernest, governour of the Low Countries, Philip appointed for his successor at present Pedro Henriquez de Toledo de Fuentes. Of the war which Henry the fourth of France declared against Spain notice has been already taken. The English having taken Cadiz, and carried from thence much spoil, and searched the harbours of Corunna and Ferrol, produced great dread on the coast of Spain; and Philip, to revenge the

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1598.

dishonour, which was still heavier than the loss he had sustained, assembled a fleet and army for the invasion of England ; but it being late in the season, a storm destroyed forty of the ships, and forced the shattered remainder into Ferrol. While an English fleet sailed, but without success, to reduce the Azores, another Spanish armament left Corunna for the coast of England, but, when approaching it, were entirely dispersed by a storm, and obliged to return in a shattered condition ; the Spaniards themselves confessing, that all their attempts against England were defeated by the immediate interposition of Providence. In about three months after the conclusion of the treaty with France at Vervins, Philip breathed his last at the Escorial. The prince Philip, who on the death of his father became the third king of Spain of that name, was at his accession in the twenty-third year of his age. On Don Francisco de Rayas y Sandoval, marquis of Denia, his favourite, he bestowed the title of duke of Lerma, and in the next spring solemnized his own marriage ; and in the ensuing summer negociations for peace with England were opened at Boulogne ; during which the first fleet in which the Dutch acted alone against Spain, was sent to the islands. At the same time, Philip assisted the rebels in Ireland ; and with this ends the Spanish history of the sixteenth century.

Occurrences
in Britain
during the
16th century.

The year fifteen hundred and one was marked in England by the marriage of Arthur, prince of Wales, with Catherine of Arragon, daughter of Ferdinand and Isabella. When the treaty for the king of Scotland's marriage with princess Margaret was concluded, another was signed of perpetual peace and amity between the two kingdoms : quickly after this marriage died prince Arthur in the seventeenth year of his age. In the end of the year in which this prince expired, letters patent were granted to James Elliot and Thomas Ashurst, merchants of Bristol, John Gonzalez and Francis Fernandez, natives of Portugal, to go in quest of unknown countries under English colours : Henry soon after this lost, without much grief, his queen Elizabeth. Henry's avarice now employed two most iniquitous ministers, Sir Richard Empson and Edmund Dudley, to extort by suits and indictments, well or ill founded, money from every individual they could ; nor was he ashamed to take the

meanest measures to bring treasure into his coffers. The discontents thus raised, encouraged the earl of Suffolk to form a conspiracy against the king, which was discovered by Henry, and ended in the imprisonment and death of some of those who were seduced into it. To prevent his being obliged to restore the portion of prince Arthur's widow, this prudent monarch conceived the project of marrying her to his surviving son Henry, and for that purpose obtained, in conjunction with the Spanish monarch, the pope's dispensation. The archduke Philip and his queen Jane being driven by a tempest into Weymouth, Henry contrived to take advantage of the accident, and detained Philip in England, until he had both made with him an advantageous treaty of commerce, and prevailed on him to deliver up to him the earl of Suffolk. Henry was now grown so absolute, that no one dared even to manifest discontent, though he went so far as to levy a benevolence by his own authority; by this and the means before mentioned he accumulated a vast sum for those days, eighteen hundred thousand pounds sterling, which the miserable prince kept under his own key in secret repositories at Richmond. But he now found himself in a declining state, and laboured to bring to a conclusion the marriage of his daughter Mary with Charles, archduke of Austria; and the lord de Berghes, as proxy for him, espoused her publicly. Ere he died, the king not only granted a general pardon, but ordered by his will that his heir should make restitution of whatever his officers had unjustly taken from his subjects; an order with which his successor did not think proper to comply. Henry died at Richmond.* At his father's decease, A. D. 1509.

* In the fifth year of this king, the conservation of the Thames from the Stone at Stanes to the waters of Yeusdale and Medway, was granted to the lord mayor of London. In his eighteenth year being, as six of his predecessors had been, a brother of the Tailors' Company, he gave them the name of Merchant Tailors. In his reign dean Collet founded St. Paul's school; and in the thirteenth year of it, Vasco de Gama, a Portuguese, first passed the Cape of Good Hope. The colleges founded in the two universities in this king's reign were—Christ's and St. John's in Cambridge, by Margaret, countess of Richmond, the king's mother: Jesus college, in the same university, by John Alcock, bishop of Ely: Corpus, in Oxford, by Richard Fox, bishop of Winchester: and Brazen Nose by William Smith, bishop of Lincoln.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Henry, then prince of Wales, was only in his eighteenth year, and had had a literary education. One of the first measures of the new reign was the prosecution of Empson and Dudley; and since they so fenced themselves in their oppression with the letter of the law, that they could not be condemned for what they had really done, at length they were attainted, and put to death for what they had not done, forming a conspiracy against the young king. But while measures were pursued for destroying these two ministers, the king's council also debated and resolved on his marriage with his brother's widow, which was accordingly celebrated. Lewis the twelfth of France sending to renew the alliance between the crowns, Henry entered into a new treaty with him, covenanting for the continuance of peace during their joint lives. Yet such was Henry's incogitancy, that within a few months he signed a treaty with Ferdinand of Arragon, in which was a clause obliging him, in case the king of France attacked that monarch, not only to declare war, but to march against him in person with a powerfull army. But Henry attended but little to business; the wasting in amusements the money his father had amassed, occupied too much of his time; while there was gradually rising at court an individual, whose aim it was to take on his own shoulders as much of the burden of government as he could. This was Thomas Wolsey, a man of mean birth, being the son of a butcher of Ipswich; but who had in the late reign by his abilities and exertions raised himself to the deanry of Lincoln, and in this been introduced to the king by the bishop of Winchester; and to whom, being already his almoner, the king now gave an house that had been Empson's. Henry was first induced to break the peace which his kingdom enjoyed by the persuasion of his father-in-law, Ferdinand; on whose sollicitation he joined him in an embassy to Lewis the twelfth, requesting him to desist from his war against the pope; and on Ferdinand's further offering to supply him with troops, artillery, and provision requisite for the recovery of Guienne to the crown of England, he joined at once in the league which the Spanish monarch, the Venetians, and his holiness Julius the second, had formed against the king of France, and made an additional treaty with Ferdinand himself on the subject of Guienne, in which it soon

appeared that he was only the dupe of that crafty monarch, who made use of the army he sent to overawe the French, while he made himself master of Navarre. Henry, though he perceived that he had been deceived, exposed himself to still further imposition, and crediting his allies in their profession of being determined to invade France, he concluded a new league with the pope, the emperor, the king of Arragon, and Charles of Austria, sovereign of the Netherlands. In consequence of this he prepared to carry the war into France, and though none of his allies thought of supporting him, he bound himself by another treaty so to do: it was during his preparations for this expedition, that he appointed Wolsey his prime minister. The success of the campaign he made has been stated in the history of France; here it need only be added, that, as he had before been the dupe of the king of Arragon, now he became that of the emperor Maximilian, and his own new favourite, Wolsey, who seems to have led him both to besiege and to retain Tournay, that he himself might become administrator of the bishoprick. During Henry's absence from England, James the fourth of Scotland made an irruption by way of a diversion in favour of the French king; but was by the earl of Surrey defeated near Flodden, and never seen after the engagement. Henry on his return home rewarded the earl of Surrey with the title of duke of Norfolk; and he soon after obtained of the pope the archbishoprick of York for Wolsey, who had before been preferred to the see of Lincoln. Perceiving how he had been imposed on by his allies, he was persuaded to conclude a peace with the king of France, to whom he gave in marriage his sister, the princess Mary, though she had been before solemnly affianced to Charles of Austria. While these things passed in England, in Scotland James the fourth having left two sons, of which the eldest was not two years old, had appointed his queen regent, but only during her widowhood. The fear of Henry, who was her brother, led the states of Scotland to submit to this unprecedented appointment: but a widow the queen did not choose long to remain; taking for her husband Archibald Douglass, earl of Angus. On this a new regent was to be elected; and the young king's nearest relation, John Stewart, duke of Albany, who was born in France, and still con-

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

tinued in that country, was declared regent; whose absence gave time for the dissensions among the leading nobility to increase. Lewis the twelfth of France dying, his successor Francis renewed with Henry the subsisting treaties.* In the mean time, the power and arrogance of Wolsey became daily greater: Francis the first, to secure his favour, procured him a cardinal's hat, and Henry made him high chancellor of England. The commencement of the year fifteen hundred and sixteen was marked by the birth of the princess Mary; and in the latter end of it Henry entered into a defensive league with the emperor and the king of Spain, of which the pope was declared the head. The ensuing year the sweating sickness swept away great numbers, and particularly in London; most of those seized with it died within three hours. By the persuasion of Wolsey, Henry concluded with the French king a treaty for the restoration of Tournay, St. Amand, and Mertagne, and a marriage between the Dauphin and Henry's daughter the princess Mary; the cardinal having at the same time secured himself against the loss he should undergo by having the administration of the bishoprick of Tournay taken from him. The jealousies between Francis the first and Charles the fifth, after he attained the empire, tended, by the caresses with which both those sovereigns loaded him for the sake of his master's friendship, to increase the cardinal's credit, and he got himself appointed sole legate, in which office he behaved with consummate arrogance, and treated the clergy with that rigour, as induced the archbishop of Canterbury to complain to the king; and the judge of the legate's court being convicted of great misdemeanours, Henry so sharply reprimanded the cardinal, that he became more cautious for the future. While Henry was preparing for the interview with the French monarch, which had been agreed on in their last treaty, and the regulation of which had been by

* As there was a statute passed this year to mulct of their wages all those members of parliament, who should absent themselves from their duty without leave of the Speaker and the House, the reader may like to know what those wages were. It is stated then, that a knight of the shire had four shillings a day, and burgesses two at least, besides the charges of going and coming, and fees for writs.

Francis committed to Wolsey, the emperor landed in England in his way from Spain to Flanders ; a visit probably contrived by the cardinal, who, in hopes of being raised to the papacy through his means, was now in Charles's interest, and from which the last departed well satisfied. Henry now proceeded to his interview with Francis, where every thing was so magnificent, that the assembly was denominated the Camp of the Cloth of Gold.* Still, amid the splendid entertainments and variety of amusements, the business on which the monarchs met was not neglected ; and when it was arranged, they parted, and Henry returned to England after having seen the emperor. In the differences which soon arose between the last and the French monarch, Henry, entirely under the guidance of Wolsey, feigned to mediate between them, though it was determined he should join the emperor ; with whom and the pope the favourite did, by a commission from him, conclude a league against Francis. Yet the cardinal, not satisfied with the power he had, procured a bull from Leo the tenth, augmenting his privileges as legate ; and his pride increasing with his power and wealth, being informed of a menace uttered against him by the duke of Buckingham, he persecuted that nobleman until he brought him to the block. Francis, convinced that Henry meant to take part against him, permitted the duke of Albany, the regent of Scotland, who had imprudently left that country a prey to factions to go into France, and had at Henry's desire been detained there four years, to return home, who immediately compelled the earl of Angus, the queen dowager's husband, as an adherent of Henry's, to quit the kingdom. Luther having in his writings ridiculed Thomas Aquinas, an author much esteemed by both Henry and his favourite, the former undertook to defend indulgences, the papal authority, the number of sacraments in the Roman Church, and other articles against the rough attacks of Luther ; and the royal composition was presented to the pope in full Consistory ; who rewarded the exertions

* The first meeting took place on the seventh of June, and the kings took not leave of each other until the twenty-fourth of the same month, the intermediate time being filled up with tournaments, balls, and other diversions.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

of the monarch by bestowing on him and his successors the title of Defender of the Faith. Henry having declared war against France, and, without authority of parliament, raised a forced loan, sent an army to the continent, which joined the imperialists, but had gained no material advantage by the end of the campaign ; and, ere another began, Wolsey had wrought an alteration in the politicks of his master : while for himself he obtained from the pope, Clement the seventh, authority to suppress religious houses to the value of three thousand ducats a year, and transfer their revenues to his own new colleges. When the news of the battle of Pavia and the captivity of Francis the first reached England, in accordance with the inclinations of both the king and the cardinal, the council were of opinion, that Henry should strive to preserve the balance of power in Europe by assisting France in her distress. A treaty was accordingly made with the regent of France, on which the imperial ambassadors were recalled from England, and the English from Spain. Yet Henry neither commenced hostilities, nor would be prevailed on to supply money, as usual, to those who were engaged on the same side with himself ; though to comfort the pope, who, in consequence of his league against the emperor, was overburdened with expense, he sent him thirty thousand ducats. At length, however, he concluded another treaty with Francis, by which he engaged to contribute to the support of the troops which he should employ in Italy against the emperor. But Henry's thoughts were soon turned to a very different object, that of procuring a divorce from his queen, Catherine of Arragon, for which was alleged the illegality of his marriage to the widow of his brother. But the king could not obtain the consent of his holiness so easily as he hoped ; and when at length all the necessary commissions seemed to have been given, such were the reservations made, that Henry was, in fact, no surer of having his marriage dissolved than before ; while his eagerness to procure a divorce was increased by his having conceived a passion for Ann, the daughter of sir Thomas Bulleyn. The king having at last got the two legates, Wolsey and Campegio, to enter on the cause, the queen having appealed to the judgment of the pope, and the last having made his terms with the emperor, he issued a bull

calling the cause to Rome. The part which Wolsey had taken in this affair drew on him the resentment of Ann Bulleyn, who took advantage of the king's altered disposition towards him to suggest all she could to his disadvantage: when an apparent accident brought forward another candidate for the royal favour; and Thomas Cranmer, the son of a Northamptonshire gentleman of very ancient family, who had been reader in divinity at Cambridge, was introduced to Henry's notice by the opinion which he had given to Fox and Gardiner concerning the wished-for divorce. Campegio having left England, the king's resentment against Wolsey broke forth; and he was by the attorney general indicted for a breach of the statute of Præmunire, had the great seal taken from him, and other charges being then made against him, he was declared guilty, and pronounced out of the protection of the law: when, too, the parliament met, articles of impeachment were exhibited against him. In the mean time the peace of Cambray, to which Henry became a party, took place between the emperour and the king of France. Henry, still intent on his divorce, an embassy sent to the pope, and with which went Thomas Cranmer, now in great esteem with the king, having been of no avail, and the opinions of the universities, both foreign and English, being against the legality of his marriage with Catherine, determined to bring the matter before the parliament and clergy of his own kingdom; and, by publishing an abstract of his case, endeavoured to prepossess the people in his favour. But while these things were passing, Wolsey was arrested on a charge of high treason, and died in his way to London. At length the matter of the divorce was laid before the parliament, with the opinion of the universities and other requisite documents. The case was laid also before the convocation, who declared themselves satisfied, that the marriage was contrary to the divine law. This determination, however, did not save them from being proceeded against as guilty under the statute of Præmunire, in submitting to the legantine authority of Wolsey; and they were obliged not only to purchase a pardon, by presenting the king with more than an hundred thousand pounds, but obliquely to acknowledge him for supreme head of the Church of England. The humiliation to which the clergy thus

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

submitted, was by no means displeasing to the people, in the disposition they were then in. These circumstances gave such encouragement to those who wished for a reformation, that the king, to prove that he was no friend to Lutheranism, commanded the laws against hereticks to be rigorously executed, and three Protestants were consequently burnt. The king of France thinking the appearance of friendship between himself and Henry would render the pope more compliant with his wishes, another interview took place between these monarchs, though not with so much magnificence as the former. When the parliament next met, the first step towards a reformation was taken by several regulations to restrain the exorbitant immunities of the clergy, as well as by act to release them from the payment of annates, and secure them against the measures which the pope might take to enforce it. Thomas More, who was lord chancellor, perceiving that the king's proceedings would produce a total rupture, but not having penetration enough to discover the grossness and blasphemy of the assumptions of the bishop of Rome, resigned the great seal, and sir Thomas Audley was made lord keeper. The fear of the emperour preventing the pope from contenting the king as to his divorce, Henry in this parliament obtained a statute, expressly forbidding all appeals to Rome; having undoubtedly a view to the case of his own divorce.* Archbishop Warham's death having vacated the province of Canterbury, the king fixed on Cranmer, then in Germany, to fill it; but this preferment he most unwillingly accepted. The difficulties which presented themselves in procuring the necessary bulls,† and the great expences attending the getting possession of the primacy, were removed by the king. But that of Cranmer's scruple of taking the oath of obedience

* In this parliament (in 1533) passed a statute, in which it was enacted, that no person should take more than one halfpenny for a pound of beef or pork, or above three farthings for one of mutton or veal. There was also now passed an act for paving the street-way between Charing-cross and Strand-cross.

† The shameless rapacity of Rome had contrived to render necessary on this occasion no less than eleven bulls, and the weakness and ignorance of the English did, until this period, submit to such imposition.

to the pope was overcome in a manner much less to his honour, by his being prevailed on to take it, after he had protested that he would be bound by it only to a certain extent. Cranmer being fixed in the province, and Henry, now sure of having his divorce pronounced, avowed his marriage with Ann Bulleyn, which must have been invalid, if there was any occasion for a divorce from Catherine. That divorce, however, was pronounced by Cranmer, and the king's second marriage confirmed; and thus ended an affair sufficiently iniquitous in itself, though, through the mercy of Divine Providence, leading to the most beneficial results. When the parliament next met, by the repeal of the act of Henry the fourth against hereticks, the arbitrary proceedings of the ecclesiastical courts were happily limited; and on the arrival of advice of the pope having pronounced sentence against the king, a statute was passed abolishing annates, depriving the pope of all authority in the nomination of bishops, and prohibiting all applications to the bishop of Rome for bulls, palls, and the like. Another statute swept away Peter-pence, and various other means which the popes had used to draw money from the country. On the breaking up of the parliament oaths were administered to the abbots and fryars of all orders, in which the king's supremacy was acknowledged, and obedience to the bishop of Rome renounced. Still Catherine refused to acknowledge the legality of the divorce, or lay aside the title of queen. In the next parliament, not only the title of supreme head of the Church was confirmed to the king by a statute, but the first fruits and tenths, which were wont to be paid to the pope, were continued for the use of the king. Soon after the parliament broke up, all the bishops voluntarily swore to renounce all obedience to the bishop of Rome. As the Reformation gained ground in England, the zeal of its enemies was inflamed. Sir Thomas More, ere his imprisonment, had spared no pains utterly to destroy the Protestants. But the king's negotiations with the German Protestants, the favour of Ann Bulleyn, Cranmer, and Cromwell, now chancellor of the exchequer, contributed to counteract the efforts of their enemies. During these occurrences, the truce with Scotland was turned into peace; in which country, after a series of changes according to the success of

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the various factions, the young king James the fifth had at length taken the government into his own hands. Henry in the mean time, determined that his subjects should think as he did, made himself odious to both Papists and Protestants by the rigour with which he treated those who differed on any point from himself; while both parties, in hope of gaining him to themselves, submitted to his tyranny, which became grosser as he advanced in life; and the parliament, by passing whatever laws he pleased, became his obsequious instruments in oppressing the people. The monks becoming very violent in their invectives against the king, he enforced the new statutes establishing his supremacy; and, for refusing to take the oath prescribed by these, Fisher, bishop of Rochester, and Sir Thomas More, were both publicly executed. The pope, Paul the third, having heard of these executions, drew up a bull excommunicating Henry, and absolving his subjects from their oaths; he ordered all ecclesiasticks to leave his dominions, and the nobility to take arms against him: the kingdom, too, was put under an interdict. But he deferred the publication of the bull to a more convenient season; yet no great care was taken to keep it from the knowledge of the king. Henry, enraged at those great supporters of the papacy, the monks, for their continued invectives against him, but perceiving that he should offend the greater part of his subjects by an immediate suppression of the monasteries, whose wealth, too, he longed to seize, resolved to lessen the people's prejudices in favour of them by exposing their enormities; and therefore committed to Thomas Cromwell, under the title of visitor general, the task of having the titles of their estates investigated, and the behaviour of the fryars and nuns, and their observation of the rules of their Orders, examined. Cromwell having appointed a number of commissioners to act under him, by the menacing hints of these many priors, with the consent of their monks, were induced to resign their houses to the king; and for the justification of the last, the reports of the visitors were published *. In the following year died the unhappy

* The first surrender was by the abbot of Langden, in Kent, on November 13, 1535; who, on Dr. Leighton's breaking open his door suddenly, was found in bed

queen Catherine, whose virtues had gained her universal esteem. When the parliament again met, the king recommended it to the Houses to think on some measures to remedy the evils arising from the great number of monasteries yet in the kingdom; and an act was passed for the suppression of all of which the revenues did not amount to two hundred pounds a year, and for giving their effects to the king: by which fell to the crown a revenue of thirty-two thousand pounds a year, and above an hundred thousand pounds worth of plate and goods. In the convocation, a motion was made for an English translation of the Bible; and Henry, not seeing to what such a measure finally tended, assented to it, that the people might see, that there was nothing contrary to Scripture in what had been done against the pope: and in three years time a translation, made under the king's orders, was printed at Paris. Now came on an event, in which it should appear, that a thoughtless woman by her unguarded discourse gave her enemies, instigated by the worst of malice, that of bigots, the opportunity they wished, to excite in Henry's breast a jealousy of her; and Ann Bulleyn, her husband being probably at that time enamoured with Jane Seymour, one of her maids of honour, was accused of adultery with several people; and though all but one (who was never confronted with her) constantly denied it, and the evidence on which the sentence was grounded was not produced, and one of her greatest enemies presided in the court by which she was condemned, she was executed in a week after sentence was pronounced on her; and the next day the profligate Henry married Jane Seymour. A new parliament being called, on the king's having caused a sentence of divorce to be pronounced between him-

with an harlot, who went in the habit of a lay-brother. In the houses the visitors found great factions, which exercised barbarous cruelties against one another: they were extremely addicted to idolatry and superstition: in some they found implements for coining. But for the lewdness of the confessors of the nunneries, and the great corruption of the professed, almost whole societies being found pregnant; for the dissoluteness of abbots and other monks, not only with harlots but married women; and for their unnatural lusts; "these," says Burnet, "are not fit to be spoken of." In the same year that this took place, Wales was annexed for ever to the crown of England.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

self and Ann Bulleyn, on the plea of her having confessed a prior contract, a new act of settlement was passed, both the king's daughters declared illegitimate, and incapable of inheriting the crown; and this was settled on Henry's issue by Jane Seymour, or any other wife he might marry. Nay, the obsequious assembly proceeded still further, and gave the king full power to declare the succession to the crown by either letters patent, or his will signed with his hand. The convocation, too, agreed upon certain articles, to all of which neither Papists or Protestants could honestly consent; yet the king's power forced all down; and the reformed gained something by its being expressly declared, that the Holy Scriptures were the foundation of faith, jointly with the three creeds, and the four first general councils. The discontents raised by the suppression of so many monasteries were enflamed by the monks, and at length an insurrection took place in Lincolnshire, but was quickly quelled by the offer of a general pardon. One of still more importance occurred in Yorkshire; but this, after some negotiations, was reduced without any bloodshed. Still a third taking place in Cumberland, Henry was so enraged, that he ordered executions inconsistent with his former promises of pardon. Convinced, too, that the monks were his enemies, and having his rapacity sharpened by the plunder he had already had, he resolved on the suppression of all the rest of the monasteries, and accordingly ordered a strict visitation of them. In the mean time he lost his queen in child-bed, twelve days after the birth of her son, who was named Edward. In the next died, too, the queen-dowager of Scotland; whose son, James the fifth, demanded in marriage Mary, the sister of the duke of Guise. In the visitation of the remaining religious houses now ordered by the king were detected numerous frauds in respect to reliques and images; these the king industriously exposed; and whatever had served to engage the people in superstition was publickly burnt: among which were the bones of the insolent and blasphemous Thomas Becket. The pope, convinced by these proceedings that no change was to be expected in Henry, at length published the bull of excommunication, which had now been drawn and signed three years: and the king in return ordered a copy of the new translation

of the Bible to be set up in every church. So that while these two potentates were prosecuting their own views, they were both rendered instrumental in re-publishing that Gospel, which had been long studiously concealed from those who called themselves its disciples. Still Henry proceeded with most savage severity against all who denied transubstantiation, and concluded a debate he himself held with one Lambert, by offering him the alternative of acknowledging the doctrine, or being burnt; when this faithful servant of God chose the latter. Cardinal Pole endeavouring to excite disturbances in the kingdom, four men of rank, accused of corresponding with him, were condemned and executed. When the suppression of the monasteries was accomplished, the favourers of the Reformation found in it great cause of joy. But this was soon abated by Henry's obtaining a statute for abolishing diversity of opinions in certain articles concerning the Christian religion. The parliament which passed this, which was named the Bloody Statute, because all its penalties were capital, gave the same authority to royal proclamations as to acts of parliament. The great sum of money arising from the suppression of the monasteries, which was now completed, pensions being awarded to the abbots, priors, monks, and nuns, was sufficient to make many foundations usefull to the Church and State. But the greediness of the courtiers and favourites seized the greater portion of it, and the king contented himself with applying a revenue of only eight thousand pounds a year to the founding of six bishopricks, and establishing canonries in some cathedrals which the monks had possessed, and laying out some money in fortifying ports: the rest was lavished in presents and needless expenses. Cromwell having negotiated a marriage between the king and Ann, the sister of the duke of Cleves, the princess was brought to England, and though Henry took a dislike to her at first sight, the marriage was, from political considerations, celebrated. At the next meeting of the parliament, the Order of the Knights of St. John of Jerusalem was suppressed, and the king had their lands. Cromwell being, through Henry's dislike of his new queen, now out of favour, and the king having set his eyes on Catherine Howard, niece to the duke of Norfolk, that nobleman had sufficient influence to persuade him, that the sacrifice

of Cromwell would appease the discontents of the people, and that minister had accordingly an act of attainder passed against him. The next injustice of the king, who seems by this time from the subserviency he experienced in both clergy and parliament to have deemed it scarcely worth while to use any cover for his licentious wishes, was causing himself to be divorced from Ann of Cleves, under pretence of a pre-contract on her part; though that had been investigated before the marriage. The convocation and the parliament both voted the divorce, and the queen submitted to accept a pension and reside in England. The king having privately married Catherine Howard, she was now declared queen; and by the ascendant she had over the king, her uncle and the bishop of Winchester did all they could against the reformed. While Henry was exercising in England the most absolute despotism over both the parties into which his subjects were divided, of Papists and Reformers, his nephew, James the fifth of Scotland, had two similar parties in his court; and, after some consideration, closed with that of the former, and suffering the clergy to pursue their own course, a violent persecution of the Protestants ensued. Henry, seeing his nephew governed by the adherents of the pope, began to fear he might form a connection with the emperour, and therefore proposed an interview, which proposal James accepted: yet, when his uncle had repaired to York, sent an excuse; at which Henry was, not unjustly, much displeased. But a much greater cause for resentment presented itself when he returned to London: his new queen, with whom he acknowledged himself to be very happy, was accused, and, by her own confession, convicted of the grossest incontinence prior to her marriage to the king, while she denied the adultery of which she was accused after it. She was, however, condemned and beheaded; and several of her accomplices suffered, particularly the lady Rochford, who had accused her own husband of a criminal intercourse with Ann Bulleyn, and so caused both their deaths. After the queen's attainder was passed, the parliament confirmed an act of that of Ireland, by which that island was erected into a kingdom. Henry having determined to endeavour to compell the king of Scotland to come into his measures, ordered an army under the duke of Norfolk

to Scotland, carrying with it the ambassadors which his nephew had sent to him. These having made an irruption into the country, retired to Berwick on account of the season, and the Scotch army following them, by the weak conduct of James, his troops were in great confusion exposed to the attack of a small body of English horse, who slew great numbers of them, and took prisoners seven lords and two hundred gentlemen, with twenty-four pieces of cannon. This defeat, and his dread of the consequences, so affected James, that, in less than a month, he died of grief: seven days previous to his decease his queen was delivered of a daughter, afterwards named Mary, who was his only surviving child. In the parliament which next met, Cranmer moved for and obtained an act, by which leave was given to lords, gentlemen, and merchants, to have in their houses an English Bible, with some other religious books there specified, for the instruction of their families. In the mean time, the late king of Scotland having appointed no regency, cardinal Beaton, archbishop of St. Andrews, forged a will, in which himself was appointed regent. But Mary's next heir, the earl of Arran, a man without ambition and of little genius, being urged not to cede the regency to him, and supported by the prisoners released from England, the pretended will was examined in the parliament of Scotland, the forgery detected, the iniquitous cardinal removed, and the earl of Arran declared regent. But the crafty priest soon found means to give his own party the superiority; and though a treaty of marriage had been concluded between Henry's son and the young queen, it was determined to set this aside, and the prisoners, who had been released in consequence of the treaty on their parole, all but one refused to return; and the regent himself was at length driven to unite with the cardinal and the queen-mother. When such was the state of affairs in Scotland, Henry married a sixth wife, the lady Catherine Parr, widow of John Nevil, lord Latimer; and an attempt made by the enemies of Cranmer to deprive him of the king's favour ended only in manifesting the forbearance of the primate, and further convincing the king of his worth. While, in consequence of Henry's league with the emperour, preparations were making for the invasion of France, part of the troops were sent on a predatory expedition

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

into Scotland, and the king formed a treaty with the earl of Lenox, who at that time stood in the line of inheritance to the crown next to the regent, and headed a party in opposition to him and the cardinal. But when at length the king passed over into France, little, as has been stated in the history of that country, was done by the allies; and they mutually charging each other with failure in the performance of their agreements, all confidence between them perished; and the justice of its being withdrawn Charles soon demonstrated, by concluding a separate peace in direct breach of the oath he had taken: a step which compelled Henry to return to England, after having made himself master of Boulogne. The next year the French fleet came on the coast of England, but, after making some descents on the Isle of Wight, returned home without much benefit from their visit; neither had their land forces more success in their operations against Boulogne. While in England, through Cranmer's exertions, some vacant bishopricks were filled by prelates who favoured the Reformation; the war with Scotland went but faintly on, though the French king had sent a considerable body of troops into that country. Indeed both Henry and Francis now saw strong reasons for accelerating the return of peace, and therefore the negotiations, which had continued some time, terminated in a treaty, in which the usual covenants for the payment of the sums due from France were made, and afterwards performed as they have been to this day. Henry becoming most unwieldy through corpulency, and being troubled with a sore leg, grew sterner than ever, and deemed it an unpardonable crime to contradict his opinions: yet could not the enemies of the queen or Cranmer prevail to embitter him against them; their attempts to do it on the contrary recoiled on themselves; and the king, perceiving that they wished to overthrow the alterations in religious worship which he had established, began to hate them. Gardiner, bishop of Winchester, was turned out of favour, and the duke of Norfolk and his son, the earl of Surrey, were, on some general charges, arrested and sent to the Tower; and the last of them, ere the king's decease, was condemned and beheaded on a very ill-supported charge of high treason; while the former had an act of attainder passed against him, and the

warrant was actually sent to the Tower for his execution on the following day, when, happily for him, the king expired that night. On the death of Henry, his only son Edward, then in the beginning of his tenth year, succeeded to the crown under the guardians and regents appointed by the will of his father. But these, for the better execution of business, agreed on appointing one of their body protector of the realm and governour of the king's person; and the earl of Hertford, Edward's maternal uncle, was selected as the individual most proper for this high office: and it being proved that Henry had designed to bestow on several of his courtiers higher titles than they then possessed, these were granted them; and thus the earl of Hertford was created duke of Somerset: while he also obtained the offices of lord treasurer and earl marshal, and made his brother Thomas Seymour, just created lord Sudley, high admiral. The duke of Somerset having by plausible pleas brought the other regents to consent to his having letters patent to confirm him in the protectorship, they were so drawn as to invest him with almost the whole power of the government; which he was inclined to use for the promotion of the Reformation; in favour of which the young king, who already manifested a premature genius, was prepossessed. The affairs with Scotland, however, demanding the protector's attention, when he found that, through the influence which the French had gained, negociation would be fruitless, he entered seriously into war, took himself the command of the army, gave the Scots a signal defeat, and returned home with glory to resist the intrigues which his brother the admiral was pursuing against him. On the meeting of parliament the protector experienced no opposition: some of the obnoxious acts passed in the last reign were repealed, and several new ones favourable to the Reformation enacted. The protector's efforts to put an end to the war with Scotland failing, the young queen was sent over to France, not with the approbation of the greater part of the nation except the clergy. The military operations in that country were of no great consequence, but less to the honour of England than of Scotland. At the next meeting of the parliament in England, an act passed for enabling the priests to marry, another for confirming the new liturgy, that which is still termed Edward

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the sixth's. The protector's brother, the admiral, having now carried his seditious practices to such an extent, that either he or his brother must fall, the protector had him arrested, accused, attainted, and beheaded, and it should seem not unjustly, though the duke certainly at first entered on these decisive measures reluctantly. Whatever might be said to justify the execution of the admiral, the *burning* of an Anabaptist, however pernicious her doctrines, was totally inexcusable. The great changes produced in the want of labour and price of corn by the dissolution of the monasteries, gave rise not only to discontents, but various insurrections, the chief of which were in Devon and Norfolk: and during the prevalence of these insurrections the lord-lieutenants of counties were first instituted. The protector's enemies, at the head of whom was the earl of Warwick, who longed to supplant him in his power, having at length brought their designs to maturity, got possession of the king's person, drew up certain charges against the duke of Somerset, some of which were well founded, and had him committed to the Tower. On the meeting of the parliament being attainted, he was fined in all his goods and places, and two thousand pounds a year in land: after which he was released from the Tower, received the king's pardon, and, two months after, had a place in the council again given to him. The earl of Warwick, who now led the council, thought it requisite to put an end to the war with France, by selling, as has been already noticed, the town of Boulogne to Henry the second, though he had censured the duke of Somerset for thinking of restoring it: by the same treaty peace was made with Scotland. Though Warwick had caused himself to be created duke of Northumberland, he still did not deem his power sufficiently established, while the duke of Somerset continued about the king. He took measures, therefore, both to excite in Edward a dislike of him, and to provoke the duke to some violent step, of which advantage might be taken to destroy him. He succeeded in both projects; and Somerset, irritated by the affronts he received, had laid some plot to recover his former post, and for this he was arrested, and tried by his peers for designing to seize the person of the king and the administration of affairs, to imprison the duke of Northumberland, and raise an insurrection in London; and

A. D. 1553

was convicted of felony, condemned, and executed; and four, who were said to be his accomplices, were afterwards legally murdered. The duke of Northumberland now governed every thing, but had not time to execute those plans of which he was suspected. Yet having married his fourth son, lord Guildford Dudley, to Jane Grey, eldest daughter of the duke of Suffolk, by Frances Brandon, who was by Henry the eighth's will next in the succession to the princess Elizabeth, he prevailed on the king, when in a dying state, to make an assignment of the crown to Jane Grey; soon after which Edward died of a consumption; leaving behind him the character of a most extraordinary youth in faculties, attainments, and morals. Though the duke of Northumberland endeavoured to conceal the death of Edward, the princess Mary, being quickly apprized of it, withdrew into a place of safety, whence she wrote to the council requiring them to cause her to be proclaimed queen. In the mean time, the duke of Northumberland having prevailed on the lady Jane Grey to accept the crown under Edward's assignment, she was proclaimed in London: but short was the contest between these competitors. The dislike in which the duke of Northumberland was generally holden, and Mary's declaring, while yet in Suffolk, that she would leave religion in the state in which she found it, though herself a zealous Papist, soon drew to her many supporters. And no sooner had the duke of Northumberland left London to head an army against her, than the whole council were brought round to her party; she was proclaimed in London, and lady Jane resigned her short-lived dignity with more pleasure than she had accepted it. On advice of these events the duke of Northumberland caused Mary to be proclaimed at Cambridge; still he was soon arrested, and, with three of his sons and other adherents, sent to the Tower. Mary now met with no more opposition; but the lady Jane Grey, her husband, and several others, were by her orders either detained or sent to the Tower. Scarcely was the new queen seated on her throne, than great alarm arose among the Protestants, and fully justified was it by what followed: a proclamation being issued, seeming much at variance with what the queen promised in Suffolk, the inhabitants of that county petitioned her to remember the word she had given;

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

which petition was haughtily rejected, and a reply made, that subjects were not to controul the actions of their sovereign. All the bishops deprived in the reign of Edward were then restored, and five Roman Catholick bishops substituted in the room of five reformed. In the mean time, the duke of Northumberland was convicted and executed. Though the queen owed her life to Cranmer, she permitted him to be sent to the Tower on a charge of treason, and publishing seditious libels: to the same prison was committed old Latimer, who had been bishop of Worcester. Ere the parliament met, the queen was crowned: care, too, was previously taken to pack an House of Commons, which would be subservient to the design of the court to restore the papal worship. When it did meet, the act for the divorce of the queen's mother was immediately repealed, and some time after an act was passed for the repeal of king Edward's laws in respect to religion. And even ere these laws could go through the Houses, lady Jane Grey, her husband, and two of his brothers, with archbishop Cranmer, were brought to trial. The emperor Charles having proposed to Mary a marriage with his son Philip, the negociations for this purpose were entrusted to Gardiner, to whom Mary had committed the great seal, and a treaty was accordingly made and signed, to the great discontent of the people. Some insurrections consequently took place, but were all successively quelled; yet the duke of Suffolk being at the head of one of them, the queen determined to sacrifice his daughter lady Jane Grey, who with her husband was accordingly executed, as her father was within a few days after. Numerous were the executions in consequence of the late insurrections, but much more numerous were the clergy deprived of their benefices for having wives, while the mass was every where restored. At length Philip arriving in England the queen was married to him; and this marriage was, in a few months, followed by the arrival of cardinal Pole as the legate of the pope; who enjoining as a penance on the kingdom the repeal of all the laws against the papal authority, granted to both Houses of Parliament on their knees a full absolution, and extended the same to the whole kingdom. For the legate thought those who had left the Roman church were to be brought back by gentle means,

while Gardiner advised persecution ; and to this the queen herself being inclined, she committed to the cardinal the reformation of the clergy, and to her chancellor the extirpation of hereticks. The latter, perceiving that the burning of four clergymen had not the effect he expected, transferred his commission to Bonner, bishop of London, who distinguished himself by even a savage fury. The executions of the Protestants were continued, the bishops condemning without mercy all who were brought before them, and the magistrates executing the sentences even more rigorously than commanded by the laws ; while, on the least relaxation perceived, the king and queen interposed to stimulate the perpetrators of their cruel purposes. In the year fifteen hundred and fifty-five, were burnt sixty-seven persons, among whom were the bishops Ridley and Latimer. The queen's pregnancy proving imaginary, and there appearing no probability of her bearing children, Philip grew cold towards her, and left England for Flanders, to her great mortification. Neither Gardiner's death, which soon followed, nor Philip's absence prevented the continuance of the persecution : Cranmer was tried at Oxford before two commissioners, confessed the charges, was degraded, receiving great indignities from Bonner, and at length having, by the efforts made to shake his resolution, been prevailed on, in hope of having his life granted him, to sign a recantation, he was, notwithstanding that, burnt at Oxford, with shame retracting the cowardly recantation he had made, and holding in the flame the hand that signed it until it dropt off, repeatedly exclaiming, " that unworthy hand !" The other cruelties perpetrated by the emissaries of Satan in hope of stifling the truth, are too atrocious to transcribe.* Still the number of Protestants rather increasing, twenty-one commissioners were empowered by the infuriate queen and her ministers to sit on trials of heresy, with powers and

* In the year 1557 an embassy arrived in England, from Evan Basilowitz, emperor of Russia, to settle a trade between that empire and England ; three English ships having first, in the year 1550, sailed to Russia under sir Henry Willoughby, to settle a trade in that country. In the year 1555, queen Mary incorporated the merchants-adventurers to these parts into a company.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1558.

extent of jurisdiction unlimited : and under the sentence of this tribunal seventy-nine Protestants soon perished. Philip having prevailed on his queen to join him in the war against France, the incapacity of herself, and negligence of her ministers, occasioned the loss of Calais, and of every fortress England yet retained on the coast of France. The prospect of death, which now opened fast upon her, did not soothe the ferocity of that wretched woman ; since she published a proclamation, denouncing immediate death by martial law to all who did not burn the heretical books they possessed ; and expressly forbade all to pray for those who were executed. At length a dropsy delivered the kingdom from so vile a sovereign : and, in less than a day, cardinal Pole followed his bigotted mistress. The same day that Mary died, her sister Elizabeth was proclaimed queen ; and hesitated not, on the first meeting of the parliament, to have religion restored to the same state in which it was in the reign of Edward the sixth. But the re-investment of the sovereign with the supremacy, gave rise to a new court, called the High Commission Court, which exercised the same power as was vested in the vicegerent in the time of Henry the eighth. The facility with which these changes were made, and the little scruple which the greater portion of either parliament, clergy, or people, manifested in changing, as the sovereign changed, well deserve the notice of every serious reader. Philip of Spain, when deprived of all hope of marrying Elizabeth, made a separate peace with France ; a step which obliged the queen to do the same on the best terms she could obtain ; and on the same day a treaty of peace was concluded with Scotland. In this last kingdom great were the troubles occasioned by the attempts of the queen-regent's brothers, the princes of the House of Lorrain, to render the royal authority absolute, and suffer no other religion in Scotland than the papal. The Protestants associated, insurrections took place, and the discourses of the reforming preachers, on the one side, and the characteristick duplicity and bad faith of the regent on the other, so inflamed things, that a civil war actually commenced, in which the latter was assisted by troops from France, and the former solicited the aid of Elizabeth, who concluded a treaty with them ; at whose head were now the duke of Chatele-

rault (formerly earl of Arran), and his son who bare that title, the next heirs to the young queen: but the operations in consequence were but few, a peace between all parties being soon agreed on. The difficulties with which Elizabeth was surrounded, and the ability displayed in parrying them, are prominent points in this reign, and render it necessary to notice her chief ministers; which were, at first, the lord Dudley, afterwards created earl of Leicester, and the queen's great favourite, the keeper of the seal, sir Nicholas Bacon, and the secretary of state, William Cecil. Francis the second, her husband, being dead, Mary queen of Scotland returned into that country, where she found the Reformation established by severe laws, yet a strong party of papists still remaining. In the mean time Elizabeth attended to the defence of her kingdom, raising a fleet, repairing her fortified places, and preparing store of artillery and ammunition, and to the internal tranquillity of it, by reforming abuses, promoting the administration of justice, and introducing œconomy into the publick expenditure. She narrowly watched the discontented among her own subjects, and the intrigues of the friends of Mary of Scotland, whose uncles aimed at fixing her on the throne of England; and she omitted no opportunity of supporting the malcontents of those countries, whose rulers she suspected of designs against herself. But the great object of her jealousy was the queen of Scotland: a scene of dissimulation deeper than that which took place between these two queens can scarcely be exhibited. At length Elizabeth having, with views of her own, advised Mary to marry an Englishman, the latter pitched on one who was, too, in the line of succession to the crown, lord Darnley, son to the countess of Lenox, who being a Papist, the marriage was so strongly opposed by some confederated Scotch noblemen, that some hostilities took place between the queen and them, and the latter were obliged to retire into England. But the king made by this marriage, if he ever had been, was not long an object of affection to Mary: she had for a favourite an Italian musician, of the name of Rizzo, whose affected familiarity with her, according to some writers, joined to the mortifications which she made her husband undergo, and both aggravated by the intrigues of the friends of those lords who were driven

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

into England, and whose ruin Rizzo, a partizan of the pope's, earnestly sought, excited jealousy in the breast of Darnley, who determining to deliver himself by any means from such a competitor, had him seized in Mary's presence, and then he was presently murdered. This unjustifiable step rendered Darnley still more odious to his wife, who fled from his company, and took into her confidence another favourite, the earl of Bothwell. Though Mary was now delivered of a son, she continued to offer her husband such insults, that the whole kingdom noticed them, and at the same time did not think it worth while to conceal her regard for Bothwell, who seems to have conceived hopes of marrying her, when once he had made her a widow. The ill usage the king experienced, made him resolve to withdraw from the court; but scarcely had he quitted Edinburgh, when the effects of poison appeared on him; but by strength of constitution and the aid of medicine his life was then preserved. After which the queen, by pretending affection to him, prevailed on him to return to Edinburgh; where, though he was lodged in an house without the walls, which had been long uninhabited, she omitted nothing that could induce him to believe, that she entertained no ill intentions towards him; yet in a few nights the king was strangled, and the house in which he lodged was blown up, and Bothwell suspected of the murder; yet the queen scrupled not to have him always with her: nay, after she had been apprized of his being generally deemed guilty, and supplicated not to marry him, and a farce of his carrying her off by force, when no violence was used, and his getting himself divorced from his wife, she married him. Such a marriage was naturally followed by great discontents, and a confederacy was formed by several noblemen to bring the murderers of the king to justice, and cause the queen's marriage to be dissolved. By these Mary was soon compelled, on the retreat of Bothwell, to resign the throne to her son, then but a year old; and the earl of Murray accepted of the regency from them: but quickly another party was formed in favour of the queen. While these things passed in Scotland, Elizabeth demanded of the French king, according to treaty, the restitution of Calais, but was by her situation prevented from enforcing her demand, and therefore obtained it not: she then

pretended to be disposed to marry the archduke Charles of Austria, but broke off the negotiations, under the plea of some religious scruples. In Scotland, on Bothwell's being finally driven from that country, the queen's party growing stronger, and she herself making her escape from confinement, a battle took place between her army and that of the regent, in which Mary being vanquished, she retreated into England, and claimed the protection of Elizabeth. This it was at first determined amply to give her; but the nobles of the party having requested Elizabeth to act as umpire, this was an offer she could not refuse, but called on the regent to come into England to clear himself of what was said against him. With this the earl of Murray thinking proper to comply, Elizabeth appointed three commissioners to hear what the advocates for both parties could say, not being displeased with the opportunity of detaining Mary. Conferences were holden first at York, then at Westminster, and then at Hampton Court, but Elizabeth waved giving a decision, and under the excuse of the regent's presence being necessary in Scotland, the conclusion of the affair was adjourned. While Elizabeth assisted the French Huguenots with an hundred thousand crowns of gold, and a good train of artillery, the persecution carried on in Flanders by the duke of Alva, drove into England many Flemish manufacturers, who, being permitted to settle in various towns, contributed much to the increase of the trade of the country.* While Elizabeth was arranging a treaty of commerce and friendship with the czar of Russia, the duke of Norfolk, who had conceived a project of marrying Mary queen of Scots, pushed his intrigues so far, that on Elizabeth's being formally apprized of them, and having consequently obtained further information, the duke was sent to the Tower. In the mean time, the queen having notice of the earls of Northumberland and Westmoreland being engaged in some intrigues, she ordered both to court, when they openly took arms, and published a manifesto, in which they declared it was their purpose *to restore the religion of their forefathers, remove evil counsellors from*

* This year (1568) was published the translation known by the name of the Bishop's Bible, because done by several bishops, assisted by other learned men.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

the queen, and cause justice to be done to the duke of Norfolk, and the other lords in prison or under disgrace : but their chief design was to release the queen of Scots, and set her at their head. By the rapidity of the queen's measures, however, all their designs miscarried ; the earl of Northumberland was obliged to conceal himself in Scotland, and Westmoreland to escape into the Netherlands, while of their followers many were hanged, and many banished. This rebellion was succeeded by one of still less importance, and which, too, was quickly quelled : some commotions in Ireland, excited or encouraged by the king of Spain, about the same time, were easily allayed. The duke of Norfolk's arrest almost extinguished Mary's party in Scotland, as well as in England, for a time. But the heads of it, who had unwillingly submitted to the king, deemed it necessary, it is said, to put the earl of Murray out of the way ; and he being assassinated, an irruption was immediately made into England, with intent to provoke Elizabeth to hostilities against the whole nation ; but that queen was too prudent to fall into the snare : she offered to mediate between the two factions, and sent an army to ravage the lands of the families which had invaded England. At length the states meeting, on her recommendation elected the earl of Lenox regent. Various plots against Elizabeth now took place ; a bull of excommunication against her was stuck up in London, and the practices of the Papists and partizans of Mary gave her a good plea for not setting her at liberty, while the answers of the last returned to some proposals made to her, were not calculated to render the queen of England more favourable to her. Secretary Cecil, being created baron of Burleigh, was very earnest to effect a marriage for the queen, but she herself was too desirous of retaining her power to risque any others taking part of it, and therefore a negociation for a marriage with the duke of Anjou at length came to nothing. The intrigues of the partizans of the queen of Scots continued ; and the duke of Norfolk, who had been released, was again arrested, and Mary's ambassador, the bishop of Ross, was put into confinement and examined ; and the plots appeared to be of that nature, that the parliament passed an act for the better security of Elizabeth's person and crown. In Scotland, the new regent

was murdered by the opposite faction, and the king's party elected the earl of Mar in his room. The duke of Norfolk being brought to trial before his peers, was, after a very weak defence, convicted of high treason, and six months after executed, having confessed the justice of his sentence, but declaring, that he died a Protestant: in the interval between his sentence and execution, Walter d'Evreux was made earl of Essex. After the duke of Norfolk's death, Mary's domesticks were reduced, and she herself was more closely confined; to explain which, some persons were sent to expostulate with her on the particulars which had transpired through the prosecution of the duke of Norfolk and his accomplices. After much negociation, Elizabeth concluded a defensive treaty with the king of France; about four months after the signing of which, the massacre of St. Bartholomew was perpetrated. The hypocrisy which the unprincipled Charles practised towards his Protestant subjects, he used towards the queen of England; and while he professed the greatest desire to preserve a good understanding with her, he privately took measures to excite disturbances in both England and Scotland. On the other hand, Elizabeth did not permit her treaty with Charles to prevent her assisting, when she deemed it for her own interest, the Huguenots whom he was endeavouring to destroy. At this juncture the earl of Northumberland, who had been seized in Scotland, and delivered up to Elizabeth, was beheaded. In that kingdom the earl of Mar dying, the earl of Morton was chosen regent; and at length making a treaty with some of the queen's party, he was, by the assistance of Elizabeth, enabled to take Edinburgh Castle from the rest; when, the commander and some others being executed, an end was put to the civil war in Scotland. For some years did the earl of Morton continue regent, but at length his own ill conduct raised him enemies; and having in particular disoblinded the king's governor and preceptors, they prejudiced young James against him; when the earls of Argyle and Athol being sent for, they persuaded the king to take the government into his own hands, though he was not then twelve years old; a step which, on their meeting, the states of the kingdom confirmed: but the earl of Morton, in a short time,

A. D. 1578.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1530.

again making himself master of the king's person, resumed his office. Though all this time England continued free from foreign war, those restless adversaries to her peace, the partizans of Rome, and especially the Jesuits, the two most notorious of whom were Robert Parsons and Edmund Campion, were spreading their pernicious principles, under various disguises which they assumed. Four of these emissaries, who maintained that the queen had been legally deposed, were convicted, and justly executed; and in the same year, a descent was actually made in Ireland by a body of Spaniards and Italians, who were quickly obliged to surrender, and, with their partizans, found no quarter. This year, too, was marked by the return of Francis Drake from his voyage round the globe, which he performed in something less than three years. In the mean time that perpetual slave to favourites, James of Scotland, having given his affections to two individuals sent over from France to support in Scotland the views and interest of that court, he made one duke of Lenox, and the other earl of Arran: and these brought about the ruin of the earl of Morton, who was accused of being concerned in the late king's murder, condemned, and beheaded. The negociations for a marriage with the duke of Anjou, brother to the king, which Elizabeth had continued for a long time, at length were ended by her renouncing all thoughts of the match with gross breach of faith, she having given the duke a ring. The two favourites in Scotland giving great offence to the nobles, who disdained to be governed by a young king under their direction, a confederacy was formed, and the king's person seized, and the favourites were compelled to retire; the duke of Lenox withdrawing into France, where he soon after died. Elizabeth sending to offer her services to James, he expressed himself contented with his situation: yet his mother applied to engage Elizabeth to interpose for his deliverance, and this application produced some negociations between the two queens for the release of her of Scotland; which boon, however, it should seem, the other never meant to grant. The lords who had detained the king, seeing the favourites gone, assembled the states, and when James had declared himself satisfied with what had taken place,

they left him entirely at liberty : after which he publicly declared, that he would soon publish an act of oblivion ; and appointed twelve counsellors to assist him in the government. But soon did that weak prince recall the earl of Arran ; and, with the most scandalous breach of a promise which he had given to his counsellors, did he keep him with him, and again submit to his sole guidance ; when, instead of an act of oblivion, he was persuaded to issue a proclamation, commanding the lords concerned in the seizure of his person, to come and beg pardon for their offence. Elizabeth thinking it would be easier for her to secure the favourite, by whom she might govern James, than to support an opposition to the court, contrived to attach the earl of Arran to her interest ; who, as one of Elizabeth's greatest fears was James's connecting himself with France in marriage, engaged to keep him unmarried for three years. The intrigues and machinations of the Papists and friends of Mary continued in England ; and when any of these engaged in treasonable practices were discovered and executed, if they were Papists, a cry was raised that they were persecuted for their religion, while it was for crimes against the state that they really suffered. This year Florida was discovered by Walter (afterwards Sir Walter) Raleigh. A conspiracy to assassinate Elizabeth being detected, the parliament approved of a general association, which had, by the exertions of the earl of Leicester, been formed to prosecute to death all who should attempt any thing against the queen ; and passed an act by which any person for whom, or by whom, any attempt to raise a rebellion, or against the queen's life, should be made, was rendered utterly incapable of succeeding to the crown, and was directed to be prosecuted to death, if declared guilty by four-and-twenty commissioners whom the queen was empowered to appoint. That this law was enacted against Mary, of whose correspondence with the pope and king of Spain Elizabeth was informed, not even the queen of Scots herself was unaware ; yet she followed not the conduct which prudence would have dictated. The intrigues of Elizabeth in the court of James, succeeded so far as to put the king into the hands of counsellors, from whom she had nothing to fear. To support the United

A. D. 1584.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Provinces against Spain, she made a treaty with them, advancing them money, and sending an army to their aid; and, lest Philip should resent these things, she, by way of prevention, sent a squadron to the West Indies, in which was Sir Francis Drake, under the command of the earl of Carlisle. Considerable damage was done to the Spanish colonies by this expedition; much booty brought home, and tobacco first introduced into England: at the same period John Davis discovered the strait called by his name. The earl of Leicester, who was sent as commander-in-chief into Holland, excited great disgust in that country by his pride and ambitious projects. But in the mean time Elizabeth prevailed on the king of Scotland to enter into a treaty defensive and offensive with her, against all who should attack the Protestant religion in either of their kingdoms. Soon after the conclusion of this treaty, a conspiracy for the assassination of Elizabeth, and the release of Mary, was detected; and of the concern of the last in which, there is the strongest testimony, her own papers being by a stratagem obtained. In consequence of this, and, probably, of a determination before taken to put her to death, she was, under the statute of the last year, brought to trial before thirty-six commissioners appointed by Elizabeth, whose sentence of condemnation was afterwards, notwithstanding all the irregularities in the trial, confirmed by the parliament; which petitioned the queen for the safety of herself to have Mary put to death; and, after much pretence of unwillingness, she was, by their pressing application, prevailed on to consent to what she had long wished, and not, apparently, without cause. Still she contrived to have Mary put to death by her warrant, indeed, but in such a manner that she was able to throw the blame of sending it on the secretary of state, who was fined and imprisoned for it. The anger of James for his mother's death was soon soothed: but from another quarter now arose alarm. The king of Spain was making vast preparations, and Walsingham's policy ascertained, that the meditated expedition was intended for England; Sir Francis Drake was, therefore, sent with a squadron to the coast of Spain, where he destroyed a great number of vessels laden with provisions and ammunition, thus impeding the progress

of the armament; while Cavendish was plundering the Spanish settlements in the South Sea.* When Philip's preparations were in sufficient forwardness, the pope Sixtus the fifth issued a bull against Elizabeth, absolving her subjects from their oath of allegiance, and awarding her dominions to the first that should seize them. The Spanish armada, so arrogantly termed invincible, consisted of an hundred and thirty great ships, in which were embarked nineteen thousand men, and two thousand six hundred and thirty pieces of cannon. On the other hand, the duke of Parma had caused an army of thirty thousand men to advance towards the coast of the Netherlands, and collected a number of vessels to transport them to England. Nor was Elizabeth tardy in providing for her defence; Charles lord Howard, of Effingham, who commanded her grand fleet, had under him three of the best sea officers then in the world, Drake, Hawkins, and Forbisher; and forty sail of English and Dutch ships were stationed on the coast of Flanders to intercept the duke of Parma; while her land forces altogether amounted to seventy-nine thousand men, besides militia in each county. On the nineteenth of July, in the year fifteen hundred and eighty-eight, the Spanish fleet, commanded by the duke of Medina Celi, entered the Channel, and the next day the English fleet got the weather-gage of it; but this advantage, from a shift of the wind, they soon lost: yet in the engagement which consequently took place, the enemy gained nothing but a lesson of caution. At length the Spaniards dropt anchor off Calais; but while they lay there, the English admiral sent one night eight fire-ships into their fleet, when with terror they cut their cables and put to sea. The subsequent course of this fleeing armada has been already stated; of which had been taken or destroyed, in the Channel, fifteen great ships; and afterwards, on the coast of Ireland, seventeen underwent the same fate. Great, it may be supposed, was the joy in England on the retreat of this baffled fleet, and publick thanksgivings were rendered unto the Almighty in

* It is said, by the information which the English now obtained from the papers of a ship from India taken by Drake, they were encouraged to establish an East India Company.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

all the churches of the kingdom. Elizabeth now enjoyed a tranquillity which she had never experienced before; and having no subject for apprehension, she became willing to prove to the Spaniards that she also could in her turn attack. Yet her parsimony restrained her from doing more than finding some ships and some money towards an expedition, in which Sir Francis Drake and others embarked against Spain; but which did not succeed sufficiently to repay the cost. When Henry the fourth came to the crown of France, Elizabeth assisted him with a supply of both men and money. James of Scotland having contracted a marriage with a princess of Denmark, the lady on her voyage for Scotland was driven on the coast of Norway, and there detained so long, that the gallant James went to her, and passed the winter in Norway and Denmark. Attempts were now made almost annually to intercept the rich homeward-bound fleets of Spain. The queen experienced much deception in Henry the fourth of France; any surprize, however, which she felt at this must have been diminished, when he confessed to the agent she sent to dissuade him from apostacy, that he had changed his religion against his will, and after as long a delay as possible; but at last being convinced, that he should never be fixed in his throne while a Protestant, he had determined to embrace the Catholick religion; since, after such a declaration, she must know, that the great Henry had not a grain of real principle: still, to counteract the king of Spain, she made with him a league defensive and offensive. After this, Elizabeth escaped the hands of some more assassins, hired by the Spanish governours of the Netherlands, and the wretches themselves underwent the sentence of the law. After for some time rejecting the intimations of Elizabeth, of the danger to be apprehended from them, the king of Scotland took effectual measures for banishing from that country the Roman Catholick lords, who appeared too zealous for the Spaniards. But in Ireland the earl Tiroen rebelled, in expectation of being assisted by the Spaniards; nor was the civil war, thus begun, closed for some years. To counteract the preparations making by the king of Spain to attack her, Elizabeth sent an expedition to Cadiz, which took that town, did the Spaniards very great damage, and returned

freighted with plunder. Philip preparing to revenge this affront and loss, the queen accepted the offer of the French king to make another treaty with him; after which, the Spanish armament being dispersed by a storm, all danger on that side ceased. When Henry the fourth, after a course of bad faith towards Elizabeth, made peace with Spain, the queen took advantage of the need in which the United States stood of her assistance, to make a new treaty with them favourable to herself: and the death of Philip the second, which soon followed, diminished the uneasiness of both her and her allies. At this time the earl of Essex, who had succeeded Leicester as favourite of the queen, treating her with great insolence, received from her majesty a box on the ear, while she bade him *Go and be hanged*. The high-spirited earl laid his hand on his sword, but being prevented from drawing it, retired in anger from the court; nor was he easily induced to make those submissions, which were necessary to restore him to favour. This year died William Cecil, lord Burleigh, in a very advanced age; in the same, too, closed the days of Spenser the poet. Affairs in Ireland going on badly, the earl of Essex procured the command of a considerable army in that country, but shamefully abused the trust reposed in him; when, finding himself suspected by the queen, he returned home to justify himself, without waiting or asking for permission; and on his arrival at the court, he was committed to the custody of the lord keeper. On hearing of his arrest, Tiroen broke the truce which he had concluded with him, and reduced the whole province of Ulster; but his hopes of becoming master of the whole kingdom were checked by lord Montjoy, who succeeded Essex as lord lieutenant of Ireland. The age of Elizabeth induced the Papists to exert themselves for preventing a Protestant from succeeding to the crown of England; and, among other measures, a conspiracy was formed in Scotland to murder James, from which he somewhat miraculously escaped. This year Elizabeth incorporated the East India Company. The earl of Essex's partizans spreading reports among the people of his innocence and harsh treatment; Elizabeth had him brought before the privy council and some other commissioners, by whom his case being examined, he was, at their recommendation, removed from the

A. D. 1600.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

council-board, and his offices of earl marshall and master of the ordnance. To this humiliation he at first submitted with great propriety, until he was egged on by some of his own domesticks to endeavour to restore himself to favour by force; when his house became the resort of malcontents and suspicious people. But the destructive consequence of this line of conduct belongs to the tale of the next century, that of the sixteenth in Britain ending here.

Occurrences
in Sweden
during the
16th century.

The commencement of the sixteenth century was, in Sweden, marked by Steen Sture driving king John from Stockholm, and procuring himself to be declared administrator of the kingdom, under the plea that the king had not fulfilled the treaty of Calmar, had not terminated the differences about Gothland, had granted fiefs of the kingdom to foreigners, and carried into Denmark all the wealth of Sweden: but, after considerable success against the king, and Sweden suffering equally under the hands of both parties, the administrator died. The diet now assembling, Suante Nelson Sture was elected administrator, and hostilities continued with Denmark, under which both countries suffered severely, until an agreement took place by which John was bound to refrain from all hostilities, on condition of receiving from Sweden an annual sum. But this treaty the senate refusing to ratify, the administrator renewed the war with vigour; having made an alliance with the regency of Lubec, and a peace for sixty years with the czar of Russia. But the king of Denmark, by the offer of favourable terms, prevailed on the Lubeckers, after having suffered greatly from their hostilities, to make peace. Suante Sture dying, after some debate the son of Steen Sture was elected administrator; who, on the decease of John, king of Denmark, obtained of his son Christian a truce for four years. The archbishop of Upsal was succeeded by Gustavus Trolle, whose father had been competitor with young Sture for the administratorship; and no sooner had he taken possession of his province, than he attacked Sture, and all who had opposed his father's election, with anathemas. Neither could the mildness of Sture, who strove to overcome his violence by forbearance, bend the virulent spirit of this prelate, intoxicated by his elevation; but he pushed things at length to a civil war, in which he was

deservedly deposed, and confined in a monastery. Christian of Denmark, however, landed a great body of forces at Stockholm, but received from Sture a most complete defeat: enraged at which he laid an iniquitous plan to get Sture into his power; but, failing in that, he offered to go in person and confer with the administrator, demanding six individuals for hostages. But no sooner were these, all men of the first nobility, on board his fleet, than he sailed off to Denmark with them. Here he made fresh preparations; and again invading the Swedish territories, Sture, in opposing him, fell into an ambush, and received a wound which proved mortal. This loss led the Swedes to the reception of Christian as their king; who, hesitating not to sign all the articles to which they required him to agree, took possession of the crown, and then made as little hesitation at taking measures for the destruction of all the Swedish nobility; and entered upon a course of cruelty as ferocious and unrelenting as almost any recorded in history. Among the hostages which, it has been mentioned, Christian perfidiously carried off with him to Denmark, was Gustavus Ericson; whom, not being able to detach from the administrator, the iniquitous monarch would have put to death, but was, by remonstrances, prevented from the nefarious deed; and Gustavus was committed, by the desire of Eric Banner, a Danish nobleman, to his care; on condition, that if he escaped, Banner should pay six thousand crowns for his ransom. The generosity and kind hospitality of Banner did not prevent Gustavus from escaping; trusting, it is said, that he should be able to pay Banner his ransom. Thus at liberty, however, after a course of most romantic adventures, with no small mixture of sufferings, he at length reached Dalecarlia; where, after meeting with imbecillity, and experiencing perfidy, he excited an insurrection among the peasants; at the head of a small body of whom, finding at first some success, his army so increased, as to encourage him to lay siege to Stockholm; but he was forced to relinquish the attempt. The progress of Gustavus, whose forces increased rapidly, so incensed the sanguinary Christian, that he put to death, with tortures the most cruel, his mother and sisters. This barbarity increased the eagerness of Gustavus to take vengeance on the tyrant; and assembling the states of

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1522.

Sweden at Wadstena, he was unanimously chosen administrator. Now followed a most bloody scene of massacres on the part of the Danes, and reprisals on that of the Swedes. Gustavus having again laid siege to Stockholm, a general insurrection in Denmark, by which Christian was compelled to retire into Germany, deprived the garrison of all hope of relief. But ere Gustavus would grant them any terms, he assembled a general diet, in which he was, by acclamation, elected king of Sweden. After his election, Gustavus returned from the diet to the siege of Stockholm, the governour of which immediately surrendered at discretion, and with his garrison met with that treatment which the really brave are ever disposed to give to the brave. No sooner had Gustavus possession of his capital, than he became indefatigable in the discharge of the royal functions; and the people, lately so oppressed, began to breathe: commerce revived, and Sweden, under a generous monarch, tasted the sweets of liberty and peace; and even more taste and refinement sprang from ease and wealth. But this harmony was quickly interrupted, in consequence of the necessity under which Gustavus found himself of demanding contributions from the clergy; and the bishop of Lincoping actually embarked in rebellion. About this time, too, the reformed religion was introduced into Sweden by some German merchants, by some soldiers of the same country, in the king's pay, and by some young gentlemen educated at Wittemberg. To Olaus Petri, a celebrated disciple of Luther's, Gustavus himself favourably listened. But some prejudice against the reformers was occasioned by the fanatical proceedings of some German anabaptists who arrived in Stockholm. Gustavus, however, proceeded so far to oppose the papal usurpations, that he declared himself head of the Church; and at length, in an assembly of the states, declared openly in favour of the Protestants: while the burghers of Stockholm ordered the doctrines of Luther to be preached freely in all their churches, and Divine service to be performed in the Swedish language. Still the majority of the country adhered to the papacy; and it was not until Gustavus had threatened to abdicate the crown, and had shut himself up in his palace for four days, that the states resolved to conform to his will: when the temporal power of the

bishops was immediately diminished by seizing their castles, and certain articles, of which the first was, that the Scriptures should be taught in the schools, were agreed on by the states. This assembly prorogued, the king re-annexed to the crown all the grants that had been made to sees, churches, and monasteries, for nearly two centuries; and notwithstanding the intrigues of many of the chief nobility, the revolts of the Dalecarlians, and even a request made by several of the discontented lords and bishops to the king of Poland, to accept of the crown of Sweden, after the ceremony of his coronation was over, in an assembly of the clergy he renounced several tenets of the Church of Rome, substituting for them those of the Lutherans; and ordained that, in every diocese, a professor of theology should be established to expound the Scriptures according to the Protestant doctrine. More insurrections in Sweden were followed by an attack from the old enemy of that country, Christian; but his progress was soon stopped, and he was compelled to surrender himself to the Danes, whose king, Frederick, detained him as a prisoner. A difference arising between the Lubeckers and Gustavus, the former entered into a conspiracy with some burghers of Stockholm to destroy the king, and alter the government, but the plot was detected, and the Swedish conspirators were punished. Still Lubeck, with the other Hanse Town, prosecuted the war; and Christian the third, who had succeeded, on the death of Frederick, to the throne of Denmark, entered into a treaty of alliance with Gustavus; when the republick turning their arms against the former, Denmark became a principal in the war begun against the Swedes. Yet Christian afterwards concluded a peace without acquainting Gustavus with his intentions, or mentioning him in the treaty: after which, too, he scrupled not to intrigue with his subjects, or endeavour to alienate their affections from him. The menacing appearances around him stimulated Gustavus to look out for new allies, and he entered into a treaty offensive and defensive with Francis the first of France. After which he prevailed on the states of Sweden to make the crown hereditary in his family; his son Eric, then only eleven years old, was chosen his successor, on condition, that if the male line should become extinct, the election of a king should devolve to the senate and the states. In the same assembly, the states swore to

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1560.

maintain the true evangelical religion, and never tolerate any other. Gustavus, having established the publick tranquillity, applied himself to every measure that could render his people happy, and himself powerfull. He made settlements on his younger children, and was engaged in a project to marry his eldest son to queen Elizabeth of England, when his infirmities, which had for some time been visibly increasing, brought him to his grave at the age of seventy. Gustavus was succeeded by his eldest son Eric, who by no means manifested generosity to his father's younger children. The city of Revel having put itself under his protection, his success in maintaining it against the king of Poland and the grand master of the Teutonic Order, encouraged him to call the king of Denmark to account for quartering the arms of Sweden with his own. In other instances he manifested a vigorous conduct; but at the same time exhibited a most contemptible inconstancy, in making proposals of marriage first to one princess and then to another; while his brother John married the daughter of Sigismund, king of Poland. This marriage increased the differences already subsisting between Eric and his brother, and which arose at length to that height, that the king commenced hostilities, took captive him and his family, in which captivity he was detained for some years in uncertainty of his fate. In the mean time, Eric was involved in a war with Poland, Denmark, and other powers, which he maintained with spirit and considerable success. But all this was marred by the effects of a malady which his father seemed to have suspected in Eric; and, after much unaccountable conduct, his insanity decidedly appeared. But the crimes he had committed, and the iniquity he had perpetrated, raised him some implacable enemies; and against these, when recovered from his paroxysm, he endeavoured to arm himself, as well as against the attacks of Denmark. With this view, to the great joy of the Swedish nation, he set his brother John at liberty, and conceived the nefarious project of giving up that duke's wife to the czar of Muscovy. But when he had taken some previous steps, John and another brother, Charles, becoming apprized of his intrigues, determined to depose him, and accordingly entered on a war against him; and having made themselves masters, first of Stockholm, and then of the citadel into which Eric had retired, he was dethroned, and the duke John

solemnly elected king. The new monarch delayed not to announce to the czar of Muscovy his elevation, with his intention to make peace with Denmark, and inclination to live on good terms with the czar. He then sent an embassy to Copenhagen, to complete the treaty already begun ; but to such disadvantageous and dishonourable terms did his ambassadors agree, that when the states of Sweden were assembled, after formally renouncing their allegiance to Eric, swearing allegiance to John, and condemning the former to perpetual imprisonment, they resolved rather to renew the war than ratify a peace so injurious and disgracefull to the country. The Danish monarch refusing to depart from any of the articles, the war was renewed with barbarous ferocity on both sides ; while the czar arrested and imprisoned the ambassadors which John had sent to him, and afterwards carried on his hostilities so briskly, that the king found himself necessitated to conclude in haste the best peace he could with Denmark. An irruption of the Tartars, at the instigation of the king of Poland, in which they pillaged and burnt Moscow, induced the czar to open a negociation : but so high were his demands, and so insolent his menaces, that John determined to continue the war ; and, after some losses, a small body of Swedes so completely defeated the czar's whole army, that, in great consternation, he humbly sued for peace. But the two monarchs not being able to agree about the place of negociation, the war was renewed, much to the disadvantage of the Swedes ; whose exertions were damped by the king's efforts to restore popery at the instigation of his queen. These, for the space of three years, produced the utmost confusion in the country ; but, on the queen's death, the king became less zealous, saw the danger into which he was running through the growing influence of his brother Charles, discountenanced the Roman clergy, and banished all the Jesuits. While these contentions were going on, John ordered his brother Eric to be poisoned, lest the people should become desirous of restoring him. The change in the king's conduct induced his brother Charles to seek for a reconciliation with him ; but John summoning him to justify himself before the states, had not these interposed, the rupture had been widened : however, they prevailed on the duke to beg the king's

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1568.

pardon, and on the latter to grant a general amnesty to the duke, and the army which he had raised ; when the king thought his brother might be prevailed on to accept the new liturgy, but which he and all his clergy positively refused. The king of Poland, brother-in-law of John, now dying, his widow succeeded in obtaining the votes of a great majority of the nobility for her nephew, the Swedish prince Sigismund ; and, after much debate how to secure the several interests of the two kingdoms thus likely to fall under one sovereign, the prince took possession of that of Poland. His son thus settled, John published manifestoes, declaring all the clergy who opposed his new liturgy guilty of high treason. The clergy of his brother's duchy, against whom chiefly this was levelled, and whom the king had not scrupled to call servants of the Devil, refuted the calumnies brought against them ; by which the king became only more incensed against them, and by charging their conduct on the duke, widened the breach already subsisting between that prince and himself. The truce with Russia expiring, and the czar demanding high terms of peace, the king would have persuaded his son Sigismund to have left Poland, and reside wholly in Sweden. But, by the interposition of the Swedish senate, this unadvised measure was prevented ; and a false report that his brother Charles had rebelled, led the king, on the refutation of it, to a reconciliation with the duke, and to entrust him with a share of the government. The Russians re-commenced the war with success, but hostilities had not long continued, ere the king was taken off by a sudden illness. As soon as his death was made known to duke Charles, he took on himself the administration of affairs until the arrival of Sigismund, and was afterwards confirmed in the regency by the senate. Sigismund, having obtained the consent of the Polish diet, returned to Sweden ; but the general joy on his arrival in his hereditary kingdom, was checked by his being accompanied by Malaspina, the pope's nuncio. Some of the first acts of Sigismund tended to render him unpopular : he insisted, that in every city and town one church should be allowed the Papists, and that his coronation should be performed not by a Protestant bishop, but the nuncio. The encroaching insolence of the Papists would not submit to be checked even by the king's rebukes,

and to the request of the states, that ere he was crowned he would give sufficient security for the preservation of religion, he, through the influence of his Polish ministers, paid little attention. To duke Charles, therefore, the states made application; who, at their request, advised his nephew by letters to grant their intreaties, and particularly to prevent their coming to extremities, by securing their religion. The king's answer not being satisfactory, the duke's reply became menacing; and the states pressing their demands with great warmth, a rupture appeared near. But Charles undertaking a conference with the king, made such an impression on him, that he promised all that was required: yet with no better faith than that of a Papist. For, though matters were to outward appearance compromised, Sigismund formed the base design of murdering his uncle; and when disappointed of accomplishing that atrocious deed, he resolved to introduce into Sweden a Polish army; in contemplation of the early arrival of which, he broke through all his engagements, and began building Romish churches in various parts of the country. These things did not lessen the bad understanding already subsisting between the king and the states; and on his going to Poland, resolutions were passed by them, directly contrary to his regulations. At length the duke, though he had quarrelled with the senate, and met with much opposition from its members, being supported by a majority in the assembly of the states, openly took arms; and when his remonstrances had no effect, and the king had brought a Polish army into the country, some hostilities took place, in which the king's troops suffered a total defeat, which led to an accommodation, and hopes that the quarrel was healed. But the conduct of the parties quickly manifested the contrary: the king, when returned to Poland, made no secret of his intention to break the treaty; and the duke, at Stockholm, as openly declared his resolution to take arms in defence of his own character, which his nephew every where traduced, and of the religion and liberties of the Swedes. Nor was it long before he put this resolution in practice; and being supported by the states, when Sigismund had declined sending his son into Sweden to be educated a Lutheran, he succeeded so completely, that the states were induced to pass an act to exclude from the throne Sigismund

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

Occurrences
in Denmark
during the
16th century.

and the young prince Uladislaus, and either just on the conclusion of this century, or at most in the fourth year after, the crown of Sweden and Gothland was unanimously voted to Charles, his son Gustavus Adolphus, and their male issue, with reversion in case of failure to prince John, the half-brother of Sigismund.

In the history of Sweden are stated the first transactions of John, king of Denmark, in this century. Much was he vexed when, by the intrigues of Steen Sture, the Swedish administrator, the Norwegians were prevailed on to join Sweden against Denmark; but his son Christian recovered that country in one campaign. While John was prosecuting with Sweden the war, already detailed, he was provoked by the Lubeckers, who assisted the Swedes with supplies, to attack them, and much reciprocal mischief was done. Yet the Danish fleet, in fact, rode triumphant in the Baltick; and the Lubeckers at last complied with the king's terms of peace: when Sweden also sought and obtained a treaty. John took advantage of this release from war, to apply himself to the cultivation of religion and learning in Denmark. When he had settled the affairs of Zealand, he passed over into North Jutland, and in his passage was in great danger from a storm: but having escaped from this, he was, by a fall from his horse, thrown into a fever, which deprived of life as wise and as amiable a prince as ever swayed the Danish sceptre. Christian, the son of John, and the second of his own name, succeeded his father by election; and, immediately after his coronation, set out to make proposals of marriage to the emperour's daughter Isabella; two years after which that princess arrived in Denmark, and the marriage was solemnized. After shewing the most affectionate attention to the comfort of his bride, in a country to which she was unaccustomed, he turned his mind to commercial regulations for the enriching of his capital, and attracting a conflux of merchants to it. Ere Christian commenced those attempts to reduce Sweden, which have already been mentioned, by the arbitrary condemnation and unjust execution of Torbern Oxy, bailiff of the citadel of Copenhagen, he alienated from himself the affection of the Danes. Neither did the inclination which he manifested for the doctrines of Luther, by sending for skilfull professors to teach the Protestant religion,

A. D. 1513.

render either the clergy or nobility more partial to him. While the oppression which was practised to raise the money necessary to support the war in Sweden, increased the general disaffection. Christian was, at this time, absolutely governed by a woman, of the name of Sigebrette, of an intriguing genius. She it was, who, after he had succeeded in reducing Stockholm, and had been crowned king of Sweden, suggested to him the massacre of the Swedish senate, nobility, and bishops, under pretence of an excommunication which the pope had been prevailed on to thunder against them; and no less than seventy senators, lords, and bishops, were beheaded in one day. The consequences of this nefarious act in disposing the Swedes to co-operate in a revolution planned by Gustavus, whose father, Eric Vasa, perished in the massacre, have been already related in the history of Sweden. While this was in progress, all Denmark was in confusion; the number of malcontents daily increased, while the king became furious in trampling on the laws. By menaces he strove to extort the duchy of Holstein from his uncle Frederick; he irritated the Vandal cities to lay Elsinour in ashes, and his whole conduct assured his subjects that he intended to govern by military law: when, at length, a general insurrection took place in Jutland, and Christian was formally deposed in a general diet; and finding himself unable to resist his opponents, he embarked all his treasure and his family on board a fleet; and after, through the badness of the weather, beating about the Baltic for three weeks, he arrived at Wesel; meaning from thence to solicit the aid of his brother-in-law, the emperor. The Danes in the mean time, except the capital, which was joined by Norway, elected for their sovereign Frederick, duke of Sleswick and Holstein, uncle of Christian; whose first achievement was the reduction of Copenhagen; and when by a general diet he had been proclaimed king of Denmark, the states of Norway proclaimed him likewise, and he obtained the consent of the diet to his assuming the title of king of Sweden; being persuaded to attempt the recovery of that kingdom from Gustavus Vasa. But such was the reception which his ambassadors met with from the Swedish diet and from Gustavus himself, and such were the reasons which the last by an envoy suggested to Frederick

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

for an union between themselves against their common enemy, Christian, that the Danish monarch offered to form with him a league offensive and defensive, and sent back all his prisoners to Sweden. The revolt of admiral Norby, who seized for himself the island of Gothland, was the cause of a renewal of hostilities with the Swedes; but Frederick was at length successfull enough to recover the island from the hands of the rebel. While Frederick enjoyed perfect tranquillity in temporals, warm disputes prevailed among his subjects in respect to religion; when, in a general diet, convened to make regulations for the repose of the kingdom, he openly avowed himself a Protestant; and an act was passed establishing freedom of conscience. In consequence of which Lutheranism was publicly preached and embraced in all quarters. The city of Malmoé prohibited mass, idols, and other superstitions of the Romish Church, and the example was soon followed by the rest of the cities, to the utter extinction of popery. About four years after this, Christian, by the assistance of Margaret of Austria, made an attempt to recover his throne, which ended in his own captivity; neither was he released from confinement until Frederick's decease, which occurred in the year fifteen hundred and thirty-three. During the contests that ensued about a successor, some being for Christian, governour of Sleswick and Holstein, and eldest son of the deceased monarch, others for his brother John, and a third party wishing to restore Christian the second, the regency of Lubeck attempted to execute that ambitious project of conquest which has been already noticed in the history of Sweden, and actually became masters of great part of Denmark. The election of Christian, however, now the third Danish sovereign of that name, who formed an alliance with Gustavus of Sweden, led to the gradual expulsion of the republicans from their conquests; and the progress which the elector palatine was, by the support of the emperour, making to secure to himself the throne of Denmark, induced them to seek for peace, to which Christian readily agreed. For in Norway the money of the governess of the Netherlands had excited a revolt, and archbishop Olaus had caused himself to be crowned king, in the name of Christian the second. When, by the recovery of Copenhagen, Christian found

A. D. 1527.

A. D. 1534.

himself in possession of his capital, he began to reduce the temporal power of the clergy ; for they had been firm opponents of his election. The diet passed a decree, annexing all the Church lands and fortresses to the crown ; and so far did they proceed in stripping the clergy of their power, that even Luther wrote from Germany to the king, representing to him, that the total abolition of the temporal power of the Church, was depriving the throne of one of its strongest pillars. And, indeed, by not attending to this, Christian destroyed all equipoise in the Danish state ; the four different orders of the people were absorbed in the grandeur of the nobility ; and even the royal prerogative dwindled into a dependence on their will. After archbishop Olaus, terrified at the approach of Christian's forces, had abandoned Norway, that country submitted to the king, who was there solemnly crowned. Denmark having for two years enjoyed profound tranquillity, this was suddenly disturbed by the elector palatine making an incursion into Holstein, and destroying every thing with fire and sword ; but the Hamburgers interposing, he was obliged to retire with precipitation. Though several subjects of dispute continued between Christian and Gustavus, their common dread of the emperor's ambition and ability not only deterred them from coming to a rupture, but induced them to conclude a treaty with the king of France, in which Christian promised to deny the passage of the Sound to all the enemies of France. The negotiations for a peace between Christian and the governess of the Netherlands proving unsuccessfull, a war of privateers was carried on between the subjects of the two states, and towards the close of the following year he openly declared war against the emperor ; but the formidable armament he consequently fitted out for the Netherlands, was dispersed by a storm ; and the next year, a peace was made, by which, in direct breach of the covenant with France, the free navigation of the Baltic was granted to the Flemings, and Charles and Christian mutually renounced all alliance contrary to the interest of each other. The king, desirous of providing for his brothers, broke through an act of the diet prohibiting the separation of Sleswick or Holstein from the crown, by bestowing them on his brothers John and Adolphus. Christian was now one of the happiest princes

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1558.

in Europe, his eldest son Frederick being crowned king of Denmark and Norway, with the consent of the diet ; nor does the profound repose enjoyed by his dominions during the remainder of his reign afford any transactions demanding notice. He died, after reigning twenty-four years, sincerely lamented by all his people. Frederick, the son of Christian, succeeded his father in the throne of Denmark, and the first measure of his reign was the subjection of the Dithmarsians, suggested by his brother Adolphus. Two years after this, a war broke out between Sweden and Denmark, in which the last was joined by the city of Lubec, and which has been noticed in the history of Sweden. The sanguine complexion of this war had a remarkable effect in inducing most of the neighbouring powers to offer their good offices for the accommodation of matters ; but these humane attempts succeeded not, and the war continued until, on the deposition of Eric from the throne of Sweden, it was closed by the peace mentioned in the history of that country. But this lasted no longer than it might have been presumed it would, from the disadvantageous terms to which Sweden was obliged to submit ; yet the pernicious effects of the renewal of the war to both parties, soon produced new negotiations for peace. When the inhabitants of Livonia throwing off all allegiance to the Muscovites, Poles, and Swedes, all of whom had claims upon the province, offered to put themselves under the protection of the duke of Holstein, who should take the title of king of Livonia ; and he consenting to pay a certain tribute to the czar, this monarch assented to it, and the Muscovites and Danes united to drive the Swedes out of the country. This circumstance induced John, king of Sweden, to accelerate a peace with Denmark, which was accordingly concluded. Frederick now thought of establishing the succession of the crown in his family, and therefore married Sophia, the daughter of the duke of Mecklenburgh. It was in the year fifteen hundred and eighty-three, that several commercial powers began to complain of the duties exacted in the Sound ; and the Hanse Towns in particular carrying their complaints before the emperour, the king ordered all the duties on their ships to be doubled ; yet did not long continue that punishment. In the course of the same year, the duchy of Courland reverted to the crown of

Denmark: but the king of Poland disputing it with the Danish monarch, they both consented to abide the arbitration of George Frederick, duke of Prussia. And he politickly persuaded them to leave the duchy in trust in his hands, and thus became possessed of a province, which justly belonged to the crown of Denmark. Having for several years preserved his kingdom in peace, rendered its commerce flourishing, and gained reputation to his own counsels, Frederick the second died in the twenty-ninth year of his reign. Christian the fourth, the son of Frederick, being but eleven years old when he was proclaimed his father's successor, four regents were appointed to conduct the government during his minority; and such was the state of tranquillity which Denmark enjoyed, that the chief care of these was to attend to the education of the young monarch. Neither did any thing, but his marriage to the daughter of the elector of Brandenburg occur before the end of the century worthy of being noticed in the annals of Denmark. A. D. 1588.

The sixteenth century having commenced in Germany with the conclusion of a treaty between the emperor Maximilian and the king of France, the electors, being solicited by the pope to engage in a crusade against the Turks, entered into an association to furnish a certain number of troops to march against the infidels; which association, on the emperor's conferring high and peculiar privileges on the archduke of Austria, they renewed and extended, to assisting each other against all violence, to the maintenance of their rights in the election of an emperor, or king of the Romans, opposing every attempt to diminish the authority of the Germanic body, and the appearing personally every two years, at an appointed time and place, to deliberate on the affairs of the empire. Ere any effectual measures were taken against the Turks, the German peasants rose in formidable numbers, wishing to establish a republick, in imitation of the Swiss: and the war with them was succeeded by one for the succession to Bavaria, which, after great ravages, was settled in the diet. The archduke Philip dying, the Flemish provinces finding themselves involved in a war with the duke of Guelderland, were obliged to give the regency of their country to the emperor, who declared his daughter, Margaret of Austria, their governess. Maxi-

Occurrences
in Germany
during the
16th century.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

milian being disappointed in the war he had declared against the Venetians, and having, therefore, entered into a truce with them for three years, still scrupled not to engage in the league formed expressly against them ; having, indeed, the sanction of the pope for so doing ; it being contrived that his holiness should call upon him, as champion of the Church, to assist him in recovering his dominions. Of the consequences of this league some account has been given in the history of Italy. All the transactions there passed over then, the next prominent occurrence was the commencement of the Reformation under Luther ; who having been selected by John Stulpitz, vicar-general of the Augustines, to assist him in his attack on the sermons of the Dominicans, and the abuses committed in the distribution of indulgences, in reading for this purpose discovered so much more than he expected, that he was led to expose the papal assumptions, and raised against himself opponents, who prevailed on the pope to summon him, and pressed the emperour to act against him and his adherents. But that prince deemed it requisite to attend to the troubles then existing in Hungary, and to the guardianship of the young king Lewis, before he noticed these religious disputes. As soon as he was at leisure, however, he convoked a diet at Augsburg, and having endeavoured to engage the electors to elect his grandson Charles for his successor, at the solicitation of the Dominicans he summoned Luther to the diet, sending him a safe-conduct. When the reformer appearing before the papal legate, cardinal Cajetan, far from retracting, undertook to defend his doctrines ; at the same time professing a readiness to submit to the judgment of the Church, or refer himself to the other universities, and retract his errors, as soon as he was convinced of them. But the legate mixing threats with his exhortations to recant, Luther deemed it prudent to retire, and appeal from the legate to the pope. This diet had not long been closed, when the emperour, through want of sufficient caution when labouring under a slow fever, increased his disorder, and sunk under it. The decease of Maximilian was followed by an interregnum of six months, when the electors, not fully approving of either the competitors, Charles, king of Spain and archduke of Austria, or Francis the first, king of France, offered the imperial crown to Frederick

A. D. 1519.

the Wise, elector of Saxony; on whose refusal of it, the choice of the college fell on Charles; who directly left Spain and repaired to Aix-la-Chapelle, where he was crowned. As no small part of the transactions of Charles's reign have necessarily been noticed in preceding parts of this Abridgment, to avoid repetition, the statement now made of them must be confined as strictly as possible to those which occurred in Germany, and even of these many relating to the Reformation have been already stated. Luther having, under a safe-conduct sent him by Charles, appeared at the diet at Worms, and refused to retract, though privately tampered with by the bishop of Triers, was dismissed in safety; the emperor rejecting with disdain a proposal made to violate the safe-conduct. But at the same time the reformer was, by publick edict, condemned as an heretick, and all persons were commanded, after the expiration of his safe-conduct, to apprehend and bring him to justice. But his patron, the elector of Saxony, afforded him a safe asylum, whence he occasionally sent forth his compositions, and by them augmented greatly the number of his followers. In another diet in the following year, the regulation by which Germany was divided into ten circles was enacted. Charles having appointed his brother, the archduke Ferdinand, lieutenant-general of the whole empire during his own absence, exerted himself with the diets against the Lutherans; but little being effected in stopping their progress, the legate prevailed on the Roman Catholick princes to enter into a league to carry into execution the decree of the diet of Worms against Luther, to alter nothing in religion, punish all ecclesiastical apostates, expel the Lutherans from their territories, and assist each other if attacked. After Charles's success against Francis the first in Italy, Thomas Munster, a fanatick preacher in Thuringia, with an associate of his, named Pfeifferus, who had been a monk, fanned the coals of sedition among the labouring people in Germany, who suffered much oppression; and so influenced their minds against the magistrates and the clergy, that they boldly rose, and Germany was filled with tumult. A writing, published in Suabia, containing their grievances, and menaces of redressing themselves, was spread through different parts of Germany. At length the peasants appeared in arms in

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

numerous bodies and various places, laying waste the country with fire and sword, sparing nothing profane or sacred. Luther endeavoured to assuage their barbarous rage by admonitions and entreaties; but these failing, he exhorted the princes to arm in defence of their country; and, by the measures consequently taken, in a few months more than an hundred thousand peasants were slain in different engagements; and Munster and his companion put to death. The progress of the doctrine of Luther, which had now gained ground in the most considerable cities of Germany, and was openly espoused by the landgrave of Hesse, so engrossed the attention of a diet convened at Spire, that no resolution was taken for the assistance of Lewis, king of Hungary, who being attacked by the Turks, and advised to give them battle, lost both the victory and his life. To him succeeded the archduke Ferdinand, having previously convened a diet at Spire, whose decree on the subject of the profession of Lutheranism was protested against by five Lutheran princes and fourteen imperial cities, who appealed to a general council; and by this step the Lutherans first acquired the name of Protestants. These dissensions among the Germans encouraged the Ottoman sultan, Solyman, to lay siege to Vienna; but he met with a defence so gallant from Philip, count palatine of the Rhine, and the other commanders, that he was compelled to return home, with the loss of sixty thousand men. The deplorable situation of the empire now induced Charles to conclude a peace with the king of France and the pope, and hold a conference with the last on the measures to be pursued in respect to the Protestants; when it was determined, that if the emperor could not in a diet effect an union between the two communions, the pope should assemble a council, and in the mean time Charles should prevent any further innovations in the religion of the Papists. In a diet which the emperor accordingly assembled at Augsburgh, the Protestant princes presented their confession of faith, from which they refusing to recede, the diet was prorogued; with which the Protestants shewing themselves dissatisfied, the emperor put an end to the diet by another decree, in which he forbade the exercise of any but the papal religion, and all innovation in doctrine or ceremonies, on pain of corporal punishment, and confiscation of

goods. This decree induced the landgrave of Hesse to enter into an association with the cantons of Zurich and Basil, and the city of Strasburg. The emperor exerting himself to get his brother Ferdinand elected king of the Romans, the Protestant princes, instead of attending the meeting appointed for that purpose, assembled the same day at Smalcalde, and entered into a defensive alliance against all who should attack them, either generally or individually; a league which was signed not by the Protestant princes only, but by the deputies of twelve cities. Their reasons for this league were then transmitted to Charles, as well as a protestation against the precipitate election of a king of the Romans. But notwithstanding this, Ferdinand was elected, and crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle; and the Protestants were commanded by the emperor to acknowledge his brother. But, instead of paying any regard to his orders, they applied to the kings of France and England for succour; and the former promised to assist them in maintaining the rights and privileges of the empire. The emperor, wishing to avoid a rupture, came at length to an accommodation with the Protestants, under which a general peace was to be proclaimed throughout Germany, both parties forbidden to molest each other on account of religion, until a council was assembled, and the Protestants were to assist the emperor against the Turks. Of Charles's expedition against these last, and the event of it, notice has been already taken. Ulric, duke of Wirtemberg, having, under the plea of his having been guilty of oppression, been expelled from his dominions by the states of Suabia, and the investiture of them bestowed by Charles on the king of the Romans, the landgrave of Hesse, being a near relation of the duke's, took the occasion of the emperor's being absent from his German dominions, to enter into a negociation with the king of France; by whose assistance, purchased with a part of them, after defeating a body of imperialists, he recovered all his dominions for Ulric: and all differences between him and Ferdinand were afterwards accommodated by an agreement, under which the former was to hold his duchy as a fief of the princes of Austria. The Protestants seeing that pope Paul the fourth wished, like his predecessors, to avoid the assembling of a general council, renewed the league of Smalcalde

A. D. 1531.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

for ten years, comprehending not only the members of the old alliance, but all who received the confession of Augsburg, and were willing to engage in it: and to this assembly the kings of both France and England sent ambassadors. The sanction which the success of the confederates gave to innovation in religion produced great disorders in the principal towns in Germany.* Munster, in particular, suffered almost to desolation from the anabaptists, who, led by one Bernard Rotman, expelled the magistrates and clergy, formed a new government, legalizing polygamy, and at length chose for their king, John of Leyden, a Dutch tailor, who pretended to Divine communications, and supported his authority by actions equally cruel and absurd. But the city, after a very obstinate defence, was taken by the bishop, and the mock monarch and his accomplices put to death, too much after the example of their own barbarity. The Protestants having objected to the assembling of a council at Mantua, as well as to the pope's presiding at it, the German princes of the papal communion were induced by the nuncio to enter into an association for eleven years for the defence of themselves and their religion; declaring the emperour and his brother Ferdinand chiefs of the league. The necessity of union between the states of Germany, to stop the progress of the Turks, being undeniable, a general assembly was holden at Frankfort, in which it was decreed, that the emperour should grant a truce of fifteen months to all the Protestants, that all processes against them on account of religion should be suspended, that a conference should be holden at Nuremberg, between learned persons of both communions; and that the Protestants should hold in readiness their succours against the Turks. The emperour, on advice of a revolt in Ghent, having, as already noticed, passed through France to that city, and punished the chiefs of the sedition, and largely mulcted the whole town, was during his stay visited by deputies from the Protestants, at whose

* That the happy effects of the Reformation would be accompanied with some very pernicious consequences, the reader may see forcibly intimated by the spirit of prophecy, in the fourteenth chapter of the book of the Revelation in the 12th and 13th verses.

request he confirmed the result of the proceedings at Frankfort; and, after holding some more diets, at which nothing was concluded, a conference was agreed on between three doctors on each side, under two presidents, Frederick, count palatine of the Rhine, and Nicholas Granvel, the emperor's prime minister. But when the doctors met, as they could agree on only a very few articles, the decision was referred to a general or national council, or rather to another diet. Yet the emperor wishing to conciliate the Protestants, lest they should seek the protection of France, privately granted them liberty of conscience, and ordered the imperial chamber at Spire to impartially administer justice to them. The ill success of affairs in Hungary inducing the emperor to convoke a diet at Spire, the pope's nuncio there gave notice, that Trent was selected as the place for assembling a general council. The duke of Cleves having solicited the assistance of the French king to maintain him in the possession of the duchy of Guelderland, to which Charles laid claim in right of his grandmother, Mary of Burgundy, after Francis had declared war against the emperor, he sent forces to the duke, to stop the progress of these confederates. Charles was recalled from his Spanish dominions, and acted so successfully against them, that the duke quickly submitted, resigned Guelderland, and received pardon with the duchy of Juliers. Another diet appeared still more favourable to the Protestants; after which, having made considerable progress in an irruption into France, Charles concluded a peace with the French monarch. Still the troubles concerning religion were unsettled; and the Protestants refusing to yield to the decisions of the council of Trent, and being informed that the emperor and his brother sought only to amuse them, they determined to prolong their confederacy, and prepare for war; a resolution which was, some time after, justified by a treaty between Charles and the pope to assist each other during an unspecified war. But what that war was, the former declared in a manifesto, in which he heavily accused the Protestant princes of rebelling against the decrees of the diets, and of endeavours to destroy the publick freedom and security. The confederate princes replied to this manifesto, and supported their answer with an army of ninety thousand men with an hundred and thirty pieces of

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1549.

cannon. The war which was then commenced was rendered unfavourable to the allies by dissensions between the elector of Saxony and the landgrave of Hesse, in whose operations appeared want of unanimity and vigour; so that by the end of the campaign the elector was deprived of his dominions, and the duke of Wirtemberg, and no less than eight cities, withdrew from the confederacy. The following campaign was still more unhappy; since the elector of Saxony was both defeated and taken prisoner by the emperor: but by the solicitations of the elector of Brandenburg, his life was spared, though he was obliged to renounce the electoral dignity, and submit to every condition imposed by Charles. The same elector, and Maurice, duke of Saxony, completed, as they thought, an accommodation between the emperor and the landgrave of Hesse on similar terms, except the loss of his estates: but, by an iniquitous prevarication, Charles still kept the landgrave, who appeared personally before him, a prisoner. At the following diet at Augsburg, the regulation, denominated the Interim, was agreed on, and letters patent issued, requiring all the states to assist at the council of Trent, and *promising that all points should be examined and discussed according to the Scriptures and the doctrine of the Fathers; and that the prelates and theologians of the Protestant faith should be as favourably received as those of the other persuasion.** From this diet Charles repaired to the Low Countries, the states of which then did homage to his son Philip as his heir apparent. Some time after this, the zealous emperor issued an edict against all who should profess any but the papal doctrine, and established tribunals of inquisition for the prosecution of them. This edict filled the Netherlands with consternation, and induced the Lutheran princes and states to protest against the Interim. Though Charles complained

* About this time Vergerius, the pope's nuncio to the German princes, renounced the Roman religion, and embraced Luther's doctrine. He had undertaken to write against the Protestants; but, in examining the arguments on both sides, he was so stricken with the truth, that he became a zealous defender of the doctrine which he intended to impugn; and afterwards made a convert of his brother, John Baptista, bishop of Pola, in Istria.

of this protest, he abolished the inquisition in the Netherlands, as far as related to foreign merchants. Maurice, the elector of Saxony, who had continued his solicitations to the emperor for the release of the landgrave of Hesse, seeing no hope from the justice of Charles, and being at the same time desirous of regaining the esteem of the Protestants, determined on attacking him. Having, then, secured the assistance of several princes, and secretly continued his preparations, until Charles's absence in Italy afforded him a favourable opportunity, he took the field, and, in a manifesto, published his reasons for having recourse to such a measure. The rapid progress which he made so alarmed the emperor, that he immediately directed his brother Ferdinand to enter into negotiations with him. Maurice, on the one hand, amused the king of the Romans, while, on the other, he endeavoured, and nearly succeeded in his endeavour, to become master of the emperor's person. Charles, however, escaping, by threatening to put the landgrave, whom he so basely detained, to death, induced Maurice and the chiefs of his party to agree to the treaty, celebrated under the name of the Pacification of Passau. In consequence of the peace thus concluded, the landgrave of Hesse regained his liberty, and, at length, his own territories. Still the marquis of Brandenburg refusing to accede to the pacification, continued the war against the Papists, and, though he joined the emperor in his last attack upon the French frontier, even his exhortations could not make him desist from kindling, by his relentless ravages, a civil war. To the extinction of this, after he had married his son to Mary of England, Charles turned his attention; and Albert, the marquis, after suffering two defeats, was compelled to take refuge in France, and was comprehended in the truce soon after concluded between the emperor and the French king. While his brother was in the diet regulating the affairs of Germany, consistently with the treaty of Passau, Charles took the resolution, mentioned in the history of Spain, of retiring from publick life, and afterwards executed it in the manner there related. At the time of Charles's abdication of the empire, his brother Ferdinand was, in right of his wife, king of Bohemia, and, in consequence of ancient treaties between the kings of Hungary and the House of Austria, he

A. D. 1558.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

had also been crowned king of Hungary, and was now elect-
 our of Germany. But short was the time during which
 the imperial throne : in this, however, he made no attempt to deprive
 the Protestant princes of the free exercise of their religion in their
 own dominions, though they refused to submit to the council of
 Trent. But, desirous of continuing the imperial crown in his own
 family, he prevailed to have his son Maximilian elected king of the
 Romans, having previously-secured him the crown of Bohemia. He
 joined with the king of France in a memorial to the council of Trent,
 pressing for a reformation in the clergy : but his holiness would not
 permit the council to take cognizance of that point, affirming that it
 belonged solely to himself : neither would he consent to the emper-
 our's proposal, that the communion under both kinds, and the
 marriage of priests, should be allowed in Germany. Very shortly
 after the rejection of this proposal, Ferdinand was seized by the dis-
 order which put an end to his life. He left behind him a very high
 character, having governed both his kingdoms and the empire with
 uncommon equity and moderation. Maximilian the second suc-
 ceeded his father in the empire, as well as in his humanity and pru-
 dence : in consequence of such a disposition in its head, the internal
 peace of the empire was at first disturbed only by John Albert, duke
 of Saxony, who took arms to punish the insurrections of the inha-
 bitants of Rostock, and sufficiently chastised them. But Maximilian
 was obliged to suspend his pacifick intentions in respect to John
 Sigismund, prince of Transylvania, who had assumed the title of
 king of Hungary ; and soon would that prince have been expelled
 from all his dominions by the imperial arms, had not Solyman the
 second interceded to effect an accommodation between him and
 Maximilian. The emperour having convoked a diet at Augsburg,
 the pope, Pius the fifth, had the arrogance to give his nuncio orders
 to protest publickly against the discussion of any point of religion,
 and threaten the whole assembly with excommunication should they
 proceed to such ; and in particular to declare, that his holiness would
 depose the emperour, and divest him of all his dominions. In this
 diet the states granted large supplies for the war against the Turks,
 of which Maximilian appears to have made very inadequate use :

A. D. 1564.

yet he concluded a truce for twelve years with the enemy, rather advantageous to himself. The Protestants of the states of Austria having been formerly denied the free exercise of their religion, took advantage of the mild disposition of the emperor, and the favour they had done him in cancelling a considerable debt, to request that indulgence; and their earnest solicitations obtained for the Protestant nobility the free exercise of their religion in their castles, cities, and villages. The humanity of his disposition led Maximilian even to send his brother Charles to Philip, king of Spain, to entreat him to be more moderate in his proceedings against the Protestants in the Netherlands; but these requests had no effect, and the persecution was continued until it produced the separation of seven provinces from the crown of Spain. The emperor having secured the peace of Hungary, by a treaty with the prince of Transylvania, prevailed on the states to elect his eldest son Rodolphus for his successor in that kingdom; and he afterwards succeeded in setting him on the throne of Bohemia, and getting him elected king of the Romans. The further purposes he had conceived for the advantage of his family, he was induced to relinquish, by the access of the distemper which brought him to his grave in the fiftieth year of his age. A. D. 1576.

Rodolphus the second, king of Hungary and Bohemia, succeeded his father Maximilian in the imperial throne: this monarch had not that moderation which induced his father to indulge the Austrian Protestants with the free exercise of their religion, but restrained it to the country-houses of particular gentlemen. The confederate states of the Netherlands having, at length, thrown off the Spanish yoke, solicited the emperor's brother, the archduke Matthias, whose reputation for valour and prudence already stood very high, to accept of the government of their provinces; but after he had, with the consent of Rodolphus, embraced their proposal, gone thither, and conducted their affairs satisfactorily, their jealousy of all the princes of the House of Austria, led them to discharge him, though honourably, supplying his place with the duke of Anjou. After this, Rodolphus, at the desire of the king of Spain, sent ambassadors to exhort the confederate states to listen to terms of accommodation. To this they replied, by a representation of the oppression which they had suffered,

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

and that in direct breach of the treaty of Ghent; they therefore implored the good offices of the emperour, and sent an ambassador to the diet to supplicate for the assistance of the empire. But the influence of their oppressors precluding them from success with either, they put themselves under the protection of Elizabeth, queen of England. The archbishop and elector of Cologne having embraced the doctrine of Luther, finding his endeavour to obtain from the diet liberty of conscience in his diocese, opposed by the senate and chapter of Cologne, took arms, granted liberty of conscience to his subjects, and married Agnes, canoness of Gurishim. The pope and emperour finding all their endeavours to reclaim this apostate from Rome by admonition and exhortation ineffectual, he was excommunicated, and formally deposed; and, after hostilities of some continuance with his successor, was compelled to retire to Holland with his wife, who was a celebrated beauty. Amurath the third, though he had renewed the truce with Rodolphus, without any provocation made an irruption into Croatia. But the emperour sending with great expedition an army to oppose the Turks, they were entirely defeated, with the loss of a bashaw; while that of the imperialists was very trifling: this success was followed by other victories still more important in Hungary. The emperour having after this obtained the supplies which he wished, from a diet he convoked at Ratisbon, was enabled to prosecute the war with fresh vigour; and having received a new ally in the prince of Transylvania, the Turks were on every side worsted. This war continued with varying success and much enterprize, especially on the side of the Germanis, to the end of the sixteenth century; of which, therefore, the history in Germany may here be closed.

Occurrences
in Poland
during the
16th century.

It was in the very first year of this century, that John Albert, king of Poland, was prevented by death from pursuing his plans against Prussia. The diet which met for the election of a successor, presented a scene of intrigue, corruption, and animosity: the candidates were three; of whom Alexander, grand duke of Lithuania, and one of the sons of Casimir, Albert's predecessor, was elected. The repulse of an attack of John, duke of Muscovy, and that of an irruption of Moldavians and Tartars, with great slaughter of the enemy,

are the two most prominent events of this reign, which lasted but five years. Alexander at his death did, with the consent of the diet, leave his dominions to his brother Sigismund, who had been twice a candidate for the crown of Poland. This monarch having reformed, as far as he was able, the abuses which his brother's lavish generosity and inconsiderate liberality had introduced into the state, found that Glinski, to whom he had entrusted the government of Lithuania, had, with a view of rendering himself independent, secretly entered into a treaty with the czar of Muscovy; he therefore not only prepared for war, but actually marched to meet the Russian army, which fled in dismay before him. He put to flight also the predatory bands of the Walachians and Moldavians, obliging them to sue for peace: but, while he was preparing to re-establish the affairs of Lithuania, he was again attacked by the Russians, who reduced Smolensko, ere he could oppose them. Yet he quickly deprived them of their conquest, and totally defeated their army, killing thirty thousand, with little loss on his own side; on which they retired with precipitation. The Teutonic Knights having elected the marquis of Brandenburg for their grand master, Sigismund compelled him, on his refusing to acknowledge the sovereignty of Poland, to submit to his clemency; and the marquis being obliged, on embracing the doctrines of Luther, to break off all connection with the Order, entered into a treaty with Sigismund; who, to form a barrier against the Knights, granted to him, as a secular duke, half the province of Prussia, as dependent on the crown of Poland; thus depriving the Order of the best part of their dominions. The jealousy of the House of Austria, after this, excited many assailants against Sigismund, over all of whom he triumphed; but the defeat and death of Lewis, king of Hungary, whose dominions, in consequence of his daughter's marriage to Ferdinand of Austria, devolved to that prince, is supposed to have affected the health of Sigismund, who, about that time, was seized with a lingering disorder, under which he sunk. Previous to

A. D. 1548.

his decease, this able monarch had secured the election of his son Sigismund Augustus: he therefore ascended the throne without assembling a diet; and when on it employed himself diligently in reforming abuses, enforcing the laws, enriching the treasury, and

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

promoting industry. The Russians having, under the plea of succouring the Teutonic Knights of Livonia in some differences with the archbishop of that province, entered it, the king of Poland marched in behalf of the latter with so overwhelming a force, that the whole Order put themselves under the protection of Poland, and turned their arms against their late allies; and Livonia was annexed to Poland. In exchange Gothofred Ketter, the grand master, was declared duke of Courland and Semigallia. Still the czar John Basilides, relying on the number of his forces, would not listen to Sigismund's proposals of peace, and led his army of three hundred thousand into the great duchy of Lithuania, where every thing sunk beneath so great a force. These triumphs, however, continued but one campaign: for when Sigismund had arranged the affairs of Livonia, the courage of the Poles turned the scale, and penetrated far into Russia. Still they subdued not the spirit of their enemies, and the mutual incursions and ravages exhausted both nations, and necessity at length suggested to the czar the thoughts of a truce; and one was accordingly concluded for three years. Ere this period closed, Sigismund was carried to his grave; and in him ended the male line of the family of Jagello, which had governed Poland for nearly two hundred years. But he left two sisters, Catherine, who by her second husband, John, king of Sweden, was mother to Sigismund the third, king of Poland and Sweden, and Anne, herself afterwards raised to the throne of Poland. On the decease of Sigismund, the whole kingdom of Poland became a scene of faction, corruption, and confusion. The courts of Vienna, France, and Saxony, each aimed at placing a prince of their own nation on the throne of Poland. The Protestants conceived hopes of carrying by their unanimity the election for one of their communion; while the pope's legate, at the head of the Papists, most strenuously endeavoured to secure it for a Papist: yet all parties agreed that the future king should swear to cherish his subjects of all persuasions without distinction. After much time spent in intrigue, Henry, duke of Anjou, brother to the king of France, was thought of as a proper person to fill the vacant throne; and it being suggested to the French court, that a solemn embassy to request the crown for him would

A. D. 1574.

A. D. 1575.

succeed, such was sent, Henry elected, a formal embassy sent into France to notify his election, and he repaired to Cracow, and was crowned. But, soon afterwards, being apprized that by his brother's death the crown of France had descended to him, he privately left his palace, and set out for France. The Poles greatly enraged, and finding he would not return as quickly as they desired, solemnly divested him of the regal dignity, and declared the throne vacant. On this, the emperor Maximilian so exerted himself as to form a party strong enough to get him proclaimed king of Poland; but another party starting up in favour of a native of Poland, the election was upset as violent and illegal: after which, the princess Anne, sister of Sigismund, and Stephen Battori, prince of Transylvania, to whom it was proposed to marry her, were proclaimed. This prince, while Maximilian lost time in disputing about conditions, entered Poland, married the princess, and was crowned: happily, too, for the country, the menacing contest between him and the emperor was prevented by the death of the latter. But the citizens of Dantzic, who had embraced his party, refused to acknowledge Battori, and by their refractory conduct compelled him to lay siege to their city, which, after an obstinate defence and much bloodshed on both sides, capitulated; the citizens asking his pardon, and acknowledging his sovereignty; and he confirming all their privileges, and granting them liberty to adhere to the Confession of Augsburg. During the siege of Dantzic, the czar of Muscovy, having in vain attempted to take the city of Revel, plundered Livonia in the most barbarous manner. But when Battori had collected a sufficient army to encounter them, his troops penetrated into the enemy's country, and returned with the spoils of two thousand towns and villages; which, great as the chastisement was, would not appear to the reader an adequate retaliation for the very horrid cruelties committed by the Russians, could they be here detailed. Battori made great preparations for the next campaign, and so much did the Russians suffer in it, that, through the pope, the czar made proposals for an accommodation; to which Battori lent so favourable an ear, that a peace was concluded, on condition that Livonia should be ceded to the Poles, and all the places taken from the Russians be

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1586.

restored. Battori having established the publick repose, applied his attention to internal regulations, among which was that of the Polish cavalry; which body, when put on a good footing, he sent to the frontiers of Tartary, and by their means the Ukraine, then a vast desert, was filled with towns and villages, and converted into a strong barrier against the Turks, Tartars, and Muscovites. The Cossacks, who inhabited a very fruitfull territory above an hundred leagues in length, Battori, too, undertook to attach to Poland: and gaining their affection by his liberality, they accepted from him officers of all degrees. Thus discipline was established among them, their arms were altered, and they were formed into a regular militia: all the trades and manufactures of Poland were introduced, as well as its agriculture. Battori having broken his promise of granting liberty of conscience to the inhabitants of Riga, and sent thither a mission of Jesuits, they were preparing to receive into their city a Swedish garrison: this was prevented by the vigorous measures of the king; but the vengeance he intended to take on them was obviated by his sudden decease. Fresh scenes of confusion were now spread over Poland; several candidates for the crown appeared. The Lithuanians chiefly supported the czar; and the Lutherans, during the interregnum, obtained both perpetual liberty of conscience, and certain important political immunities. It was singular, that they joined the Austrian faction, and made it much the more numerous party: but Sigismund, prince of Sweden, was supported by the senate, the flower of the army, and the wishes of the people, and was at length proclaimed king. Of this the nuncio and Austrian faction no sooner heard, than they proclaimed Maximilian of Austria, and invited him to repair immediately to Poland, which he did with a body of forces; but was defeated, and obliged to retreat precipitately. But in this retreat he was followed by Zamoski, who commanded the Polish army, again brought to action, defeated, and afterwards obliged to surrender himself a prisoner. This victory firmly fixed the crown of Poland on the head of Sigismund; and he, on application from the emperour, released Maximilian without ransom, but on condition of his laying aside all pretensions to the crown. Sigismund, now in quiet possession of the throne, recommended it to

the diet to consider of means to remedy the corruption that prevailed in the state, and this they undertook. The barbarous incursions of the Cossacks into Tartary, now brought on a war with this last country, in which, though the former had on the whole the advantage, the Ottoman emperour, Amurath, appeared so inclined to attack Poland, that, to prevent the further advance of so formidable an enemy, a negociation was entered into, and a treaty concluded. What occurred to Sigismund, in relation to Sweden, has already been stated in the history of that country; neither does any thing more occur in the story of Poland before the end of the century.

Occurrences
in Russia
during the
16th century.

A. D. 1503.

The history of Russia was last suspended in the reign of the czar John Basilowitz; the small part of which that ran into the sixteenth century was spent in unsuccessfull attacks on the Livonians and the Poles, with the last of whom the czar made a truce of six years, in that in which he died, having declared his grandson Demetrius his successor. But no sooner was Basilowitz dead, than his son, Gabriel Iwanowitz, stimulated by his mother Sophia, threw young Demetrius into confinement, under which he perished. During the short time he did survive, Gabriel styled himself only guardian of the realm; but on his death he ascended the throne, being crowned by the name of Basilius. Much of his wars with Poland have already been mentioned in the history of that country. After these had continued seven years, the Russian forces suffered a complete defeat at the battle of Orsova; after which, the king of Poland, desirous of putting an end to the war, incited the Tartars of the Crimea to invade Muscovy on their side, while he did so at another point. To counteract these measures, Basilius represented to the same banditti, that Lithuania would afford them a rich booty. As it was indifferent to the Tartars which they first attacked, they entered Podolia, and ravaged it without mercy; and then, while Basilius, profiting by the diversion they had made, was himself attacking Lithuania, they with eighty thousand horse entered his dominions, and defeated an army which he sent to oppose them. Various was the success of the Russians and Poles, and mutual embassies passed between them without any peace being agreed on. In the mean time, the Tartars unexpectedly entered Russia, and penetrating to Moscow, reduced

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

that capital, and, quickly after, obliged Basilius to acknowledge himself their vassal, and promise them a tribute: but as soon as their conquerours retired, the Muscovites shook off the yoke. That he might be at leisure to take vengeance on the Tartars, Basilius concluded a truce for five years with the Poles: he then, by a base act of treachery, got possession of the duchy of Servia. But the subsequent operations of his forces against the Tartars were of little avail: still they were persuaded to send to him ambassadors to treat for peace. While these negociations were pending, Basilius put away, on account of her sterility, his consort Salomea,* and married Helena, the niece of Michael Glinski, a Polish governour of Lithuania, who had on disgust fled to Moscow; where, though at first well received, he afterwards fell into disgrace, and was by Basilius thrown into prison, but now, on the elevation of his niece was released, and promoted to greater honours than before. Basilius having prolonged his truce with the Poles for five years, sent an army against the Casan Tartars: but these were far from being forced to submit, and their allies of the Crimea defeated the Russians, and entering their territories ravaged them with fire and sword. The last truce with Poland having expired, ere hostilities were recommenced, Basilius died, leaving by his wife Helena two sons, John and Gregory; to the first of whom he bequeathed his empire. Glinski was appointed one of the regents, but venturing to reprove the czarina, an abandoned woman, she feigned a charge against him of designing to usurp the crown; and so supported it by suborned witnesses, that the states and people of Russia put him under confinement, in which he died miserably. But soon discovering the truth, they poisoned Helena, and seized her gallant, and roasted him alive: such was the lenience of Russian justice! Iwan, or John Basilowitz the second, being not five years old when the crown descended to him, the Poles took advantage of his minority to pursue

* This lady the czar had chosen out of fifteen hundred assembled for him to select a czarina; but she was now compelled to take the veil; and, on her uttering some invectives against the czar for his treatment of her, his prime minister chastised her with an horsewhip.

the war, which was continued with no peculiar triumph on either side. Basilowitz having applied to the studies becoming his station, when he had entered his nineteenth year, sent a splendid embassy to the emperor Charles the fifth, to beg him, among other things, to send him some experienced statesmen to civilize the wild people under his command, and likewise artists of every kind. With this request Charles readily complied: but when the Russian ambassador had engaged more than three hundred artists, and they were advanced as far as Lubec, the envious spirit of trade interfered, and the Lubeckers stopt them; and, by their representations of the danger which would arise to Germany from affording instruction to the Russians, prevailed on the emperor not to resent their sending them home again. They arrested, too, the czar's ambassador, and imprisoned him at the suit of the Livonians: he soon, indeed, made his escape, but his master vowed vengeance on the insolent republicans. At that time, however, he was engaged in a war with the Tartars of Casan, and obliged even to leave that, when he had nearly subdued them, by a mutiny of his own troops. The chiefs of this sedition he thought it necessary to punish, and, when he returned to Moscow, he did so, after a solemn manner: immediately after which, he again invested the Tartarian capital, Casan; and having forced an entrance, by means of a mine, he took the city, and made prisoners both the king and queen; soon after which he reduced the province of Astracan and its capital. The Livonians having made a truce with the czar, and then formed an alliance with the Swedes with intention to break it; to punish these last Basilowitz invaded Finland, where his troops suffering greatly, and making little progress, he gladly accepted the offer of a peace from the Swedes. Livonia having been much exhausted by a civil war between the grand master of the Livonian Knights and the archbishop of Riga, the Livonians applied to the czar, who consented to receive their ambassadors, on condition of dismissing their German mercenaries. But while these ambassadors were at Moscow, waiting for an audience, Basilowitz heard of the Livonians having concluded a perpetual confederacy with the Poles against the Russians; when, therefore, at their audience, they acknowledged that they brought

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

him no tribute, he ordered them to be led back to the frontiers of his dominions ; and, ere they could get home, declared war against their country, and supported the declaration by an army, which laid waste every thing before them, and retired with a very great booty, and a prodigious number of prisoners. The Livonians sued for and obtained a truce ; but the governour of Narva wantonly infringing it, an army of three hundred thousand Russians entered Livonia, and subdued great part of the country. The next year they repeated their ravages, and penetrated even to the gates of Revel ; the inhabitants of which, in their distress, threw off their allegiance to the grand master of the Livonian Knights, and put themselves under the protection of the Swedes. Gothard Kettler, the grand master, in this forsaken state closed with the offers of Sigismund, king of Poland, and suppressed the Order of the Cross, of which he was chief, on condition of receiving the duchy of Courland for himself and his heirs, as a fief of the crown of Poland. A treaty of marriage between the czar and the sister of the king of Poland, having been broken off by the unreasonable demands of the Poles, and the czar yet continuing his suit to the princess, the Poles provoked him to vow perpetual enmity against them, by the low and wanton insult of sending him a white mare finely caparisoned, as a wife good enough for him. Two armies sent against the Poles proved unsuccessfull, and the discontents of his subjects, and a consequent conspiracy against the czar proceeded so far, that he feigned to abdicate the throne, but permitted himself to be prevailed on by the entreaties of the Moscovites to resume the government. Having done this, he caused the principal ringleaders of the late conspiracy to be executed, and raised for himself a body-guard of two hundred men from the distant provinces. Basilowitz having in person marched to oppose an invasion of the Poles, Iwan Petrowitz, the nobleman to whom he had entrusted the government of his dominions during his own absence, having conspired to prevent his return, he put him to death with his own hands. A large army of Turks, which had advanced towards the city of Astracan, were defeated by the governour of the province, and so pursued, that very few of them returned home. The news of this victory was followed by the arrival of an ambassador from

England, who was received with great distinction, and on his return accompanied by one from the czar, carrying a treaty to be confirmed by queen Elizabeth on oath ; but she not sending another envoy to see the czar also confirm it, he was much offended, though he might, it should seem, have considered it as a proof of the queen's confidence ; but a letter of explanation arriving from Elizabeth, he became satisfied, and the good understanding between them continued. Novogrod and some other places having planned a revolt, in which they were encouraged by the czar's brother George, this last and his children were put to death, and signal was the vengeance taken on the city of Novogrod. The attempt to establish a king over Livonia, dependent on Russia, having failed, the Crim Tartars, by the persuasion of the Poles, invaded Russia, plundered Moscow and set it on fire, and the whole city was quickly reduced to ashes, though its circumference is said to have exceeded forty miles. Having done this mischief, the Tartars retreated, with much spoil, and menaces of further vengeance. These misfortunes subdued not the courage of the czar : having made a truce with the Poles, he turned his arms against the Swedes, ravaged Finland, and reduced several places in Livonia ; but afterwards receiving a defeat, he wrote to the king of Sweden, expressing a desire of peace ; but the Swedish monarch not accepting the offer, the war was continued very vigorously on both sides ; until Basilowitz becoming more compliant, a truce for Finland only was concluded for two years. Basilowitz having returned a favourable answer to an embassy from Stephen Battori, on his election to the crown of Poland, again attacked Finland and Livonia ; in the last of which he met with great ingratitude and perfidy from Magnus, to whom he had given the title of king of it : yet with great generosity pardoned, when he might have punished him. The king of Poland, having made an alliance with the Swedes, sent a formal declaration of war to the czar. In the subsequent hostilities great was the success of the Poles ; neither were their allies, who acted separately, without their advantages. At length, however, by the mediation of the pope, rendered more efficient by the rise of jealousies between the Poles and Swedes, a peace was concluded between the former and the Russians. It was not long prior to the

A. D. 1582.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

A. D. 1584.

conclusion of this treaty, that Basilowitz, under a persuasion that his eldest son had been intriguing against him, when the young prince attempted to justify himself, angrily struck him with a staff which he had in his hand, and, unhappily, the blow took place on the temple, and occasioned the prince's death in the course of four days : inexpressible was the grief of the czar at this accident, which caused, too, no small sorrow among his subjects. When the Swedes saw that the diversion made in their favour by the Poles was at an end, they sought peace from the czar ; but obtained only a truce for two years. The Tartars beginning to renew their incursions into Russia, Basilowitz suddenly marched against them ; but losing a great number of men in the expedition, he made peace with them, and returned to Moscow, where he soon after died. Basilowitz left only two sons, Theodore and Demetrius, the last of which being an infant, his father committed to the tutelage of Bielski, a man of great genius, but haughty, cruel, and unboundedly ambitious ; who, even before his accession, began to prejudice the people against Theodore, as well as to sound the inclinations of the nobles concerning him. But they penetrating his interested designs, explained them to the people, and, after commencing a rebellion, he was compelled to banish himself. In the mean time, the young czar's first measures of abolishing some heavy taxes, releasing several prisoners, and breaking his father's licentious and insolent body-guard, rendered him highly popular. Theodore married the sister or daughter of Boris Gudenow, the grand master of his horse : this officer taking advantage of the czar's incapacity, and of his own powers of insinuation, gradually raised himself to the post of prime minister, commander-in-chief, and co-regent of the empire, with the general approbation. He, too, on the decease of Stephen Battori, king of Poland, endeavoured to obtain that crown for Theodore, but without success : he afterwards gave a check to the Crim Tartars, who invaded Russia. A Don Cossack, named Stroganow, having, after committing great ravages, fled before the troops of the late czar, made himself master of great part of Siberia, together with its capital : this conquest, to procure his pardon, he offered to Theodore ; and thus that extensive country first came into the hands

of the Russians. The truce with the Swedes having expired, and these rejecting the terms of renewal, Theodore and his minister, at the head of an hundred thousand men, made such a progress, that another truce for a year was readily signed. However, the next year, the Swedes, with the assistance of the Tartars, repaid the visit, penetrating to the gates of Moscow, but there they were defeated and dispersed. All this time Gudenow did, in fact, exercise all the imperial functions; yet, dissatisfied with this, he determined alone to fill the Russian throne: he first, therefore, had the young prince Demetrius assassinated; on being suspected of which, to recover the good-will of the inhabitants of Moscow, having caused that city to be privately set on fire in several places, he shewed himself remarkably active in striving to repress the flames, and penetrated with concern at their progress; and, when the conflagration had ceased, he promised the chief citizens and principal sufferers, not only to obtain for them a compensation from the czar, but that he himself would rebuild their houses with stone; thus persuading them to be cordially satisfied at having such a man at the head of the government. Six years after this, during which peace was at length concluded between the Swedes and the Russians, and the commerce of the North was opened, after having been interrupted by a war of thirty-seven years, Boris contrived, it is with considerable appearance of truth asserted, to have Theodore taken off by poison; who, in his last illness, seeing his staff, which he meant to deliver as designating his successor, refused by several, at last threw it on the ground, declaring, that whoever took it up should have the throne; when Boris took it up, to the great mortification of all the Russian nobility. In Theodore ended the line of Ruric, princes of which had governed Russia for seven hundred years. Boris, by very crafty management, induced the people to solicit his acceptance of the imperial crown, which he endeavoured to secure to himself by removing, by one mean or other, all who could form any pretensions to it; while he himself became haughty, reserved, and suspicious. Thinking to marry his daughter to Gustavus Ericson, natural son of Eric the fourteenth, king of Sweden, he invited him to Moscow, treated him magnificently, and loaded him with presents; but finding him not

A. D. 1597.

CHAPTER
X.
SEVENTH
PERIOD.

inclined to marry, and of a narrow genius, he took away his presents and banished him to the duchy of Uglitz, with a pension of four thousand roubles for his support. These proceedings alarming the Poles, they sent to Moscow to negotiate a peace, and one was concluded for twenty years: which event closes the occurrences of the sixteenth century in Russia.



00031873

